

UNIFORM WITH THE PRESENT VOLUME  
 MYTHOLOGY AND FOLK-LORE  
 INTRODUCTION TO THE SCIENCE OF  
 COMPARATIVE MYTHOLOGY AND FOLK-LORE.

By the Rev SIR GEORGE W. COX, BART, M.A.  
*Author of 'The Mythology of the Aryan Nations' &c.*

Second Edition Crown 8vo cloth, price 7s. 6d.

'The purpose of this interesting volume is, as the author explains, to give a general view of the vast mass of popular traditions belonging to the Aryan Nations of Asia and Europe, and in a slight degree of other tribes. One of the most striking results is the clearness with which folk-lore is shown to be inseparable from mythology.'—*DAILY NEWS*

SCIENCE OF LANGUAGE  
 INTRODUCTION TO THE SCIENCE OF  
 LANGUAGE.

By the Rev ARCHIBALD HENRY SAYCE.

New and Cheaper Edition Two vols Crown 8vo cloth, price 9s.

'A brief, clear account of the present state and past history of the science of language, which might not only serve as a handbook for the student, but should also be intelligible and interesting to the general reader. Within the compass of some 700 pages, he has managed to include a masterly sketch of his subject, and convey an immense amount of information bearing on it, without once losing his hold upon the reader's attention.'—*TIMES*

MASTERS OF GENRE PAINTING  
 INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF GENRE  
 PAINTING.

By FREDERICK WEDMORE.

With Sixteen Illustrations Large crown 8vo cloth, price 7s. 6d.

'A book in which special knowledge is moulded with much literary skill into an attractive form. Mr. Wedmore is master of his subject.'—*GUARDIAN*

'The light and dextrous touch shown in the treatment of a well chosen subject imparts a charm to this book.'—*ATHENÆUM*

London: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRUBNER, & CO.

*INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY  
OF ENGLISH HISTORY*

BY

SAMUEL R. GARDINER, M.A.

FELLOW OF MERTON COLLEGE, OXFORD

AND

J. BASS MULLINGER, M.A.

LECTURER ON HISTORY TO ST JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

*FOURTH EDITION*



LONDON

KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRUBNER & CO LTD.

PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING CROSS ROAD

1903





# PREFACE

TO

## THE THIRD EDITION.



IN the Supplement given with the present edition some further corrections have been made, new editions of works already referred to have been noticed; and the new literature which has appeared since the original publication of this volume has been included. Works of a distinctly partisan character have, however, been omitted, the design being simply to assist the student engaged in independent historical research. The writer has again been under repeated obligation to Professor Gardiner, and also to Professor Maitland, Professor Cunningham, Mr. Reginald L. Poole, Professor G. W. Prothero, Mr. Thornely, and Mr. J. R. Tanner, for help and advice very kindly given on various points.

CAMBRIDGE: *September* 1894.



# CONTENTS.

---

## PART I.

### INTRODUCTION TO ENGLISH HISTORY.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### *Introductory—The Ancient World.*

	PAGE
1. What is history? . . . . .	I
2. Savage tribes . . . . .	I
3. Introduction of slavery . . . . .	I
4. The great Asiatic monarchies . . . . .	2
5. Governments established by them not permanent . . . . .	3
6. The Greek republics . . . . .	3
7. Rome's constitutional system . . . . .	4
8. Roman patriotism . . . . .	5
9. Italy united under Rome . . . . .	6
10. Rome the head of the nations . . . . .	7
11. The Empire and the Roman Law . . . . .	8
12. Abstract conception of Rome . . . . .	10
13. The individual sacrificed to the society . . . . .	10
14. The Christian Church . . . . .	11
15. Organisation of the Church . . . . .	11
16. The Empire and the Church . . . . .	12
17. Fall of the Empire in the West . . . . .	13
18. The Church and the Teutonic conquerors . . . . .	13

## CHAPTER II.

*The English Settlement and the English Kingship, 449-1066.*

	PAGE
1. The Roman province of Britain . . . . .	15
2. The English settlements . . . . .	16
3. Institutions of the settlers . . . . .	17
4. Changes produced by war . . . . .	18
5. The King and the Witan . . . . .	19
6. Administration of justice . . . . .	20
7. Moral needs of the population . . . . .	21
8. The Christian missionaries in England . . . . .	22
9. The monastic system . . . . .	23
10. The penitential system . . . . .	24
11. Church organisation . . . . .	25
12. The Church compared with the Empire . . . . .	27
13. Church and State . . . . .	27
14. Union of the kingdoms under Egbert . . . . .	28
15. The Danish wars . . . . .	29
16. The struggle of the West Saxon kings with the Danes . . . . .	29
17. Growth of kingly authority . . . . .	30
18. Growth of a military aristocracy . . . . .	31
19. The Eorls superseded by the Thegns . . . . .	32
20. The change gradual . . . . .	34
21. The King and the Witenagemot . . . . .	35
22. Dunstan's ecclesiastical policy . . . . .	36
23. The secular laws of Edgar . . . . .	37
24. Ethelred and Edmund . . . . .	37
25. Cnut's reign . . . . .	38
26. Edward the Confessor . . . . .	38
27. The House of Godwin . . . . .	39

## CHAPTER III.

*Norman and Angevin Organisation, 1066-1199.*

1. North and South . . . . .	41
2. New ideas in Italy and France . . . . .	42
3. Norman adaptability . . . . .	42
4. Norman organisation in England . . . . .	43
5. The national kingship . . . . .	44
6. Institutions of the first Norman kings . . . . .	46
7. Their imperfection . . . . .	46
8. The Cluniac Reforms . . . . .	47

# CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE
9. The Hildebrandine Papacy and the Conqueror . . . . .	48
10. The spiritual and the temporal powers . . . . .	49
11. The Church under William Rufus . . . . .	50
12. Anselm and Monasticism . . . . .	51
13. Anselm and William Rufus . . . . .	52
14. Anselm and Henry I. . . . .	52
15. Principles involved in the quarrel . . . . .	53
16. The anarchy of Stephen . . . . .	54
17. The first Acts of Henry II. . . . .	55
18. Military reforms . . . . .	56
19. Judicial reforms . . . . .	57
20. Political arrangements . . . . .	58
21. The quarrel with Becket . . . . .	59
22. England and the Crusades . . . . .	61
23. Richard I. and Hubert Walter . . . . .	61

## CHAPTER VI.

### *Parliamentary Organisation, 1199-1327.*

1. Contrast between the twelfth and thirteenth centuries . . . . .	62
2. King John . . . . .	62
3. The three quarrels of the reign . . . . .	63
4. The quarrel with the King of France . . . . .	63
5. The quarrel with the Pope . . . . .	64
6. The Papacy of Innocent III . . . . .	65
7. The quarrel with the baronage . . . . .	66
8. Magna Carta . . . . .	66
9. New institutions needed . . . . .	67
10. Tentative efforts . . . . .	68
11. Germ of the representative system . . . . .	69
12. Accession of Henry III. and the modified Charter . . . . .	69
13. Extinction of Papal influence . . . . .	70
14. The Friars . . . . .	71
15. Simon de Montfort . . . . .	73
16. His scheme of a Representative Parliament . . . . .	73
17. The early years of Edward I. . . . .	75
18. The national and the feudal kingship . . . . .	76
19. Edward I. and Wales . . . . .	77
20. Edward I. and Scotland . . . . .	77
21. Edward I. and France . . . . .	78
22. The dispute with the Clergy and the Baronage . . . . .	79
23. Confirmatio Cartarum . . . . .	80
24. Reign of Edward II. . . . .	81

## CHAPTER V.

*Constitutional Kingship, 1327-1485.*

	PAGE
1. The Church and State of the Middle Ages . . . . .	83
2 Decline of the Papacy . . . . .	84
3 National unity . . . . .	85
4 The connexion between England and Flanders . . . . .	86
5 The beginning of the Hundred Years' War . . . . .	87
6 The Constitution of the House of Commons . . . . .	88
7. Unity of the nation . . . . .	89
8. Growing strength of the Commons . . . . .	90
9. Chivalry . . . . .	90
10. The labourers . . . . .	91
11. Piers the Ploughman . . . . .	91
12. The Black Death and the Peasants' Revolt . . . . .	92
13. Wyclif's principles . . . . .	94
14. Wyclif's failure . . . . .	95
15 The Conservative reaction . . . . .	96
16 The Revolution of 1399 . . . . .	97
17 Gradual Emancipation of the Scifs . . . . .	97
18. The decay of the baronage . . . . .	98
19 Causes of the rise of the Tudor Monarchy . . . . .	99

## CHAPTER VI.

*The Tudor Monarchy, 1485-1603.*

1. Reign of Henry VII. . . . .	101
2 The Star Chamber . . . . .	102
3 End of the Middle Ages . . . . .	103
4. The Italian Renaissance . . . . .	104
5 The separation from Rome . . . . .	106
6. Growth of despotism . . . . .	106
7 The Protestants . . . . .	106
8 Character of the age . . . . .	108
9. The king's supremacy . . . . .	110
10. Edward VI. . . . .	111
11. Mary . . . . .	112
12. The religious difficulty at the accession of Elizabeth . . . . .	113
13. The Elizabethan Compromise . . . . .	114
14. The Elizabethan Commonwealth . . . . .	115
15 Elizabeth on her defence against the Catholics . . . . .	116
16 The Jesuit Propaganda . . . . .	118
17. Persecution of the Catholics . . . . .	119

	PAGE
18. Elizabeth and the Puritans . . . . .	121
19. The Elizabethan Church . . . . .	121
20. Elizabeth and the national spirit . . . . .	122
21. Elizabeth and the Renaissance . . . . .	123
22. England's position in Europe . . . . .	124
23. Elizabeth and Parliament . . . . .	125
24. Growing importance of Parliament . . . . .	127

## CHAPTER VII

*The Struggle between King and Parliament, 1603-1653*

1. Necessity of liberty . . . . .	129
2. The first years of James I. . . . .	130
3. The Spanish Alliance . . . . .	132
4. Domestic Government . . . . .	132
5. Buckingham and Prince Charles . . . . .	134
6. War policy of Charles I. . . . .	134
7. The House of Commons and the Church . . . . .	135
8. The King without Parliament . . . . .	136
9. The Puritan Opposition . . . . .	137
10. The Constitutional Opposition . . . . .	138
11. Arbitrary government . . . . .	139
12. The resistance in Scotland . . . . .	141
13. The beginning of the Long Parliament . . . . .	142
14. Breach between King and Parliament . . . . .	143
15. The King's supporters . . . . .	144
16. The supporters of the Parliament . . . . .	146
17. The Civil War . . . . .	147
18. Cromwell and the Sects . . . . .	148
19. Supremacy of the army . . . . .	148

## CHAPTER VIII.

*The Protectorate, the Restoration, and the Revolution,  
1653-1688*

1. Aims of the Protectorate . . . . .	150
2. The Rights of Minorities . . . . .	151
3. Government by the army . . . . .	152
4. Government of the Restoration . . . . .	154
5. The Divine Right of Kings . . . . .	154
6. Character of the Restoration . . . . .	155
7. Prospects of Toleration . . . . .	155
8. Antagonism to France and the Papacy . . . . .	157
9. The Exclusion Bill . . . . .	158



	PAGE
10. Reign of James II. . . . .	100
11. The Revolution of 1688 . . . . .	161

## CHAPTER IX.

*The Revolution Settlement, and the Rule of the Whig  
Aristocracy, 1688-1754*

1. Supremacy of the House of Commons . . . . .	163
2. Liberty of the Pulpit and the Press . . . . .	164
3. The sphere of Government restricted . . . . .	165
4. Immediate results of the predominance of the House of Commons	166
5. Cabinet Government . . . . .	166
6. The House of Commons and the Nation . . . . .	168
7. Effacement of the Tory party . . . . .	169
8. Influence of the large landowners . . . . .	170
9. The Whigs and the Dissenters . . . . .	171
10. Hogarth and Fielding . . . . .	173

## CHAPTER X.

*The Restoration of Authority, 1754-1789.*

1. Premonitions of change . . . . .	176
2. Wesleyanism . . . . .	177
3. William Pitt . . . . .	178
4. The decline of the Whig Aristocracy . . . . .	179
5. The accession of George III. . . . .	179
6. Edmund Burke . . . . .	181
7. The expulsion of Wilkes, and American taxation . . . . .	183
8. Comparison between Burke and Bacon . . . . .	184
9. The new Tories . . . . .	185
10. The American War . . . . .	187
11. The Coalition Ministry . . . . .	188
12. Pitt's Ministry . . . . .	189

## CHAPTER XI.

*The Influence of the French Revolution, 1789-1881.*

1. New ideas in France . . . . .	192
2. The effect in England . . . . .	193
3. The last years of Pitt's Ministry . . . . .	193
4. The war with France . . . . .	194
5. The Foreign Policy of the Ministries after the war . . . . .	196
6. Domestic policy after the war . . . . .	199

## PART II.

## AUTHORITIES.

## INTRODUCTORY.

	PAGE
WORKS ON THE COMPARATIVE STUDY OF LANGUAGE · Pictet, Max Muller, Oliphant, Isaac Taylor. WORKS ON THE COMPARATIVE HISTORY OF INSTITUTIONS. Sir H. Maine, Freeman, Kemble, Stubbs THE ORIGINAL SOURCES — BIOGRAPHIES OF OUR HISTORICAL WRITERS : John Boston, John Leland, John Bale, John Pits, William Cave, Sir James Ware, Thomas Tanner. Later publications : Macray, Prof. Morley, Sir T. D. Hardy. EDITORS : Archbishop Parker, Sir H. Savile, the <i>Decem Scriptores</i> , Henry Wharton, Thomas Hearne, Fulman, Gale, Hall, Sparke, Kennet, the <i>Acta Sanctorum</i> , Migne's <i>Patrologia</i> , <i>Archæologia</i> , Ellis's <i>Letters</i> . The Rolls Series. HISTORICAL SOCIETIES . Roxburgh, Bannatyne, Maitland, and Abbotsford Clubs, Suites Society, English Historical Society, Camden Society, Parker, Percy, and Shakespeare Societies ; Spalding Club ; Ælfric and Chetham Societies, Caxton and Early English Text Societies. STATE PAPERS · Rymer's <i>Fœdera</i> , Rolls of Parliament ; Publications of the Record Commissioners, Correspondence of Henry VIII ; Calendars of State Papers. SPECIAL SUBJECTS . Cobbett's <i>Parliamentary History</i> ; Earlier Collections of Parliamentary Debates ; Hansard, Journals of the Houses of Parliament ; Strickland's <i>Lives of the Queens of England</i> , Green's <i>Lives of the English Princesses</i> ; Foss's <i>Lives of the Judges</i> ; Campbell's <i>Lives of the Lord Chancellors</i> and of <i>The Lord Chief Justices</i> , Le Neve's <i>Fasts</i> , Macpherson's <i>Annals of Commerce</i> , Porter's <i>Progress of the Nation</i> , Leone Levi's <i>History of British Commerce</i> ; James's <i>Naval History</i> ; <i>The Harleian Miscellany</i> . . . . .	207-231

## CHAPTER I.

*Authorities to A D 450.*

CONTEMPORARY WRITERS.—The Classical Writers ; *Itinerarium* of Antoninus, *Notitia Dignitatum*. NON-CONTEMPORARY WRITERS — Gildas, Bede, his *Historia Ecclesiastica*, editions by Smith, Moberly, Mayor and Lumby. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, editions by Thorpe and Earle ; Geoffrey of Monmouth, influence of his

	PAGE
<i>Historia</i> ; the <i>de Situ Britanniae</i> ; spuriousness of the work; the <i>Monumenta Historica Britannica</i> Hubner's <i>Inscriptions</i> . MODERN WRITERS. Works on Roman, British, and Saxon Antiquities by Horsley, Bruce, Algernon Herbert, and Stukeley, Articles by Dr. Guest, other Authorities for points in dispute The Ancient British Church. Camden's <i>Britannia</i> . . . . .	232-244

## CHAPTER II.

## A.D. 450 to the Norman Conquest.

CONTEMPORARY WRITERS.—Growing importance of the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle; Asser, Ethelwerd, the <i>Emmæ Encomium</i> , the <i>Vita Aedwardi</i> ; Lives of Wilfrid and St Cuthbert; Aldhelm, Alcuin, St. Dunstan. NON-CONTEMPORARY WRITERS.—Marianus Scotus, Simeon of Durham, Henry of Huntingdon, Ralph of Diceto, Peter Langtoft, William of Malmesbury, Florence of Worcester; Lives of Edward the Confessor; Penitentials; Lives of St. Dunstan; Early English Legislation, the Pseudo-Ingulphus. MODERN WRITERS.—Palgrave, Kemble, Stubbs, Freeman, Waitz, Worsaeë; Freeman's <i>Norman Conquest</i> ; Bright, Milman, and Church, <i>Dictionary of Christian Biography</i> ; Wright's <i>Biographia</i> ; Stubbs's <i>Select Charters</i> ; Dugdale's <i>Monasticon</i> . . . . .	245-257
---	---------

## CHAPTER III.

*From the Norman Conquest to the Accession of King John.*

AUTHORITIES FOR NORMAN HISTORY.—Dudo of St Quentin, William of Jumièges, the <i>Roman de Rou</i> , William of Poitiers, the Bayeux Tapestry, Guy of Amiens. CONTEMPORARY WRITERS ON ENGLISH HISTORY.—Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, Eadmer, Geoffrey Gaimar, Ordericus Vitalis, William of Malmesbury; the <i>Gesta Stephani</i> ; the Hexham Chroniclers; Aethelred of Rievaulx; Chronicles of Melrose and Lanercost, William of Newbury; the <i>Gesta Regis Henrici</i> ; Roger Hoveden, Ralph of Diceto, Richard of Devizes, Hugo Candidus, Gervase of Canterbury; other sources for reign of Richard I.; Giraldus Cambrensis, Walter Map and John of Salisbury; other works of Giraldus; Poem on the Conquest of Ireland; Works relating to the Early History of Ireland; contemporary Satirists, Domesday Book; contemporary Biographies. <i>Dialogus de Scaccario</i> . NON-CONTEMPORARY WRITER.—John of Brompton. MODERN WRITERS.—Freeman, Stubbs, Guizot, Bryce; Lives of Lanfranc, Anselm, Becket, and Hugh of Lincoln; Sismondi; Cov's <i>Crusades</i> , Stubbs's <i>Plantagenets</i> . . . . .	258-269
---	---------

## CHAPTER IV.

*From the Accession of King John to the Death of Edward II.*

CONTEMPORARY WRITERS.—The ‘Chronicle’ and the ‘History,’<sup>PAGE</sup> advance in historical composition, the School of St. Albans; Matthew Paris; his *Historia Major*, John de Cella and Roger of Wendover, William Rishanger, Nicholas Trivet, Walter de Coventry; the monastic *Annales*, the Annals of Burton, the Annals of Winchester, the Annals of Waverley, the Annals of Dunstable, the Annals of Osney; Thomas Wykes; the Annals of Worcester, John of Trokelowe, the Monk of Malmesbury, Thomas de la Moor, Adam of Murimuth, Walter Hemmingford. History of Gilds; the City Records of London,—*Liber de Antiquis Legibus*, *Liber Albus*, and *Liber Custumarum*; other Records of London,—*Domesday of St Paul’s*, *Chroniques de London*, the *Chronicles of London*; Gregory’s *Chronicle*. NON-CONTEMPORARY WRITERS.—Thomas Walsingham, Samuel Daniel; Royal and Episcopal Letters; Papal letters; Letters of Grosseteste; Roll of Bishop Swinfield; Wright’s *Political Songs*; AUTHORITIES FOR WELSH HISTORY. AUTHORITIES FOR SCOTTISH HISTORY. MODERN WRITERS.—Freeman, Guizot, Pauli, Stubbs, Brewer, Milman, Hallam, Mullinger, Lives of Simon de Montfort; Hook’s *Archbishops* . . . . . 270 283;

## CHAPTER V.

*From the Accession of Edward III. to the Death of Richard III.*

CONTEMPORARY WRITERS.—Adam of Murimuth (*continued*), Robert of Malmesbury, Higden and John of Trevisa, Henry Knighton, Chronicle by a Monk of St. Albans; Walsingham’s *Historia*; French Chronicles on Richard II; Adam of Usk, John Capgrave, Thomas Walsingham; Lives of Henry V.; *Chronique de Normandie*; the *Chronique of Rouen*; John Amundesham, John Whethamstede; other Chronicles for Reign of Henry VI.; Bekynton’s Correspondence; John Harding, Richard Grafton, Jean de Waurin, William of Worcester, Jean de Bel, Froissart, Enguerrand de Monstrelet; Robert Blondel; *Historie of the Arrivall of Edward IV*; the *Paston Letters*; Richard of Bury, Reginald Pecock, Continuation of the Croyland Chronicle; Warkworth’s Chronicle; More’s *Richard III*, Papers of Richard III.; *Docket Book of Edward V.*; Robert Fabyan; contemporary writers on Wyclif and Lollardism, Wright’s *Political Poems*. NON-CONTEMPORARY WRITERS.—Polydore Ver-

gil, Hall, and Redman. MODERN WRITERS.—Lives by Pauli, Gaudner, Longman, Wallon, Freeman, Brougham, Hallam, Walcott's <i>Wykeham</i> , Anstey's <i>Mummenta</i> ; Hook's <i>Archbishops</i> , Shuteley, Gardner, Geffcken, Kulk, Rogers's <i>History of Prices</i> . . .	PAGE 284-301
--	-----------------

## CHAPTER VI.

*From the Accession of Henry VII. to the Death of Elizabeth.*

CONTEMPORARY WRITERS—Polydore Vergil and Hall (*continued*), Bernard Andrie, the Venetian 'Relation'; the *London Chronicle* Harpsfield and Cardinal Pole; Wriothesley's *Chronicle*; More's *Utopia* and Starkey's *England*, influences of the Reformation; Holinshed's *Chronicles*, John Stowe, his *Summary*, *Annals*, and *Survey of London*; John Foxe, his *Acts and Monuments*, minor works relating to the Reformation, *Remains* of Edward VI, Machyn's *Diary*; *Chronicle of Queen Jane*; Lives of More and Wolsey; Hooker's *Life of Carew*; Camden's *Life of Elizabeth*, the State Papers; Calendars of the State Papers, the Zurich Letters; the *Brief Discourse*, Martin Marprelate, the Reformed Church in Scotland,—Peterkin and Calderwood; Archbishop Spottiswoode; Hardwicke Papers; Digges's *Compleat Ambassador*; *Cabala*, the Somers Tracts; Proceedings of the Elizabethan Parliaments, the Burleigh Papers, Gianvelli's Correspondence, Teulet's French Despatches; Noailles Despatches; State Papers preserved at Venice and Simancas, materials for the history of Mary, Queen of Scots; literature relating to the Catholics and Jesuits in England; Winwood's *Memorials*, Sydney Papers; Carew Letters; Harrison's *Description of England*, Stubbes's *Anatomie of Abuses*, Stafford's *Examination*. NON-CONTEMPORARY WRITERS—Fuller's *Church History*, Collier's *Church History*, Burnet's *History of the Reformation*; Le Grand's *Histoire du Divorce*, Strype's *Ecclesiastical Memorials* and *Annals of the Reformation*; Neal's *Puritans*, Dodd's *Church History*; Hurd's *Dialogue*. BIOGRAPHIES.—Lives of Henry VII and Henry VIII by Bacon, Lord Herbert of Cherbury, and Sir John Hayward; Fiddes' *Life of Wolsey*; Lewis's *Life of Fisher*; Fuller's *Worthies*; Strype's *Lives*, Lloyd's *State Worthies*; Wood's *Athenae Oxonienses*, Nichols's *Progresses*. AUTHORITIES FOR SCOTTISH HISTORY. MODERN WRITERS—Floude, Ranke, Lingard, Haussier, Haws, Hunt, Marsden, Motley. Histories of the Jesuit Order. Cobbett's *State Trials*. Bruce's *History of the East India Company*. Biographical works by Wordsworth and Seebolm; Lives of Crammer, Parker, Grindal, Whitgift and Nowell; Lives of Sir Christopher Hatton and Davison by Nicolas; Life of Sir Philip

Sidney; literature relating to Mary, Queen of Scots; Lives of the Devereux, Sir Walter Raleigh, and John Knox; Cooper's *Athenae Cantabrigienses*; note on Sauder, *de Origine Schismatis* etc. . 302-330

PAGE

## CHAPTER VII

*From the Accession of James I. to the Protectorate.*

CONTEMPORARY SOURCES.—State Papers of the period; Camden, Wilson, writings of James I, Melros State Papers, Carew Letters; Wallington's *Diary*, the Thomason Collection of Pamphlets; the 'King's Pamphlets', Clarendon's *History*, Dalrymple's *Memorials*. PARLIAMENTARY RECORDS.—Debates of 1610, debates of 1620 and 1621, Lords' Debates of 1621, 1624, and 1626, Rushworth's *Collections*, Clarendon *State Papers*; Debates of 1625, Protests of the Lords, Verney Papers; Whitelock's *Memorials*, Thurloe Papers; May's *History*; Veiney's *Notes*, Scobell's *Collections*, Parliaments of 1640, Nalson's Collection, Ormonde Papers, Clarendon's *Short View*; *Contemporary History of Ireland*. SPECIAL EVENTS, &c.—Gunpowder Plot (Geiard and Jaidine), Trial of Someiset (Amos), Spanish Marriage (Frax Francisco), Expedition to Rochelle (Lord Herbert of Cherbury); Charles and the Covenanters (Balcanqual and Brough); Balfour's *Annales*, Guthry's *Memours*; History of Torture (Jardine), Milton on Church Reform, the Freedom of the Press, and the Punitan Policy, Strafford's Letters, Ludlow's *Memours*; Holles's *Memours*; Walker's *Discourses*; Spigg's *Anglia Rediviva*, Cromwell and Manchester, Letters of Charles and Henrietta; *Register of the Visitors of Oxford*; Herbert's *Memours of Charles the First's last years*. FOREIGN RELATIONS, &c.—De la Boderie, Dumont, Winwood, Bassompierre, Venetian Reports, Sully's *Oeconomus Royales*, Birch's *Historical View*; Carleton Letters; Rusdorf Despatches. BIOGRAPHIES.—Materials for Lives of Pynne and Laud; Heylin's *Life of Laud*; Lives of Hutchinson, Williams, Buch, Bedell, and the Dukes of Hamilton, Autobiographies of D'Ewes, Sir R. Carey, Lord Herbert, Lady Halket, and Mrs Alice Thornton. Halliwell's Letters; Correspondence of the Hatton Family; Fairfax Correspondence; Hamilton Papers; Baillie's Letters; Welwood's *Memours*. LATER WRITERS.—Dr. Buch, Cate, Biodie, Godwin, Lingard, Isaac Disraeli, Carlyle, Guizot, John Forster, Gardiner, Ranke, Sanford, Mozley, Burton; Bancroft's *History of the United States*; Nichols's *Progresses*; Spedding's Bacon; Masson's Milton; Lives of Montrose, Prince Rupert, and Fairfax, Miss Strickland and Mrs. Everett Green. 331-357

## CHAPTER VIII.

*From the Protectorate to the Revolution*

CONTEMPORARY WRITERS.—Authorities already described Green's *Calendar of State Papers*, Burnet's *Own Times*; Kennet's *Register*; Chambeilayne, Sir William Temple, Sir John Reiesby, Sir Joseph Williamson, Evelyn, Pepys, Narcissus Luttrell, Burton, Rymer, and Dumont, Sir John Dalrymple's *Memoirs*, *Despatches* of Barillon, Bonrepaux, and the Comte d'Avaux, Mignet's Collections relating to the Spanish Succession. BIOGRAPHIES —Baxter's *Autobiography*; Calamy's *Ejected Ministers*, Boyer's *Life of Temple*, *Lives* by Roger North; *Memoirs* of Sir James Turner, *Letters* of Mary II, Dryden's *Poems*. WRITERS OF THE PRESENT CENTURY —Fox's *History of James II*, J S Clarke's *Life of James II.*; Mackintosh, Macaulay, Mr W E. Forster, Mr Paget, Maidsen, Mr Hunt, and Dr. Tulloch, *Histories of the Royal Society*, by Sprat, Birch, Thomson, and Weld; *Biographies* of Sir W Temple, Grahame of Clavelhouse, Lord Shaftesbury, Blake and Penn, *Writers on Dryden*. . . 358-370

PAGE

## CHAPTER IX.

*The Revolution Settlement and the Rule of the Whig Aristocracy.*

CORRESPONDENCE AND PAPERS —*Correspondence* of the Duke of Shrewsbury, Macpherson's *Original Papers*, Carstairs's *State Papers*. CONTEMPORARY WRITERS —Locke *On Toleration*, Swift's *Journal and History*, his Political Pamphlets, Bolingbroke's *Works* and *Correspondence*, Boyer, Oldmixon, and Tindal, Fletcher of Saltoun, Lord Hervey's *Memoirs*, and Horace Walpole's *Letters*, Ker of Kerland; Dr King's *Anecdotes*. FOREIGN AFFAIRS. —*Memoirs* of the Duke of Berwick, *Letters* of William III; Marlborough's *Despatches*; Literature relating to the Duchess of Marlborough. NON-CONTEMPORARY WRITER.—Somerville's *Reign of Queen Anne*. WRITERS OF THE PRESENT CENTURY —Archdeacon Coxe, Alison, Earl Stanhope, and Burton, Mr Lecky's *England in the Eighteenth Century* Works relating to the Spanish Succession. The Earls of Stair; *Lives* of Carstairs, Pitt, Bentley, and Newton, Macaulay's *Essays*, Nichols's *Literary Anecdotes*, Wordsworth's *University Life*, etc, Professor Mayors Baker, Mr. Hunt, Leslie Stephen, Messrs. Abbey and Overton . . . . . 371-383

## CHAPTER X.

	PAGES
CONTEMPORARY WRITERS — <i>Calendar of State Papers</i> by Mr. Redington; the <i>Grenville Papers</i> ; the <i>Bedford Correspondence</i> , the <i>Pitt Correspondence</i> , <i>Memoirs</i> of Lord Rockingham; <i>Correspondence</i> of George III.; the <i>Malmesbury Correspondence</i> ; Burke's <i>Correspondence</i> , <i>Speeches</i> , and Pamphlets, the <i>Cornwallis Correspondence</i> , Romilly's <i>Letters</i> , Duke of Buckingham's <i>Memoirs of George III.</i> ; the <i>Rose Correspondence</i> , the <i>Auckland Correspondence</i> , Horace Walpole's <i>Memoirs</i> of George II and George III., his <i>Notes</i> on the Debates in Parliament; the <i>Gentleman's Magazine</i> and the <i>Annual Register</i> ; Cavendish's <i>Debates</i> , the <i>Letters of Junius</i> , Bubb Dodington's <i>Diary</i> . BIOGRAPHIES — <i>Lives</i> of William Pitt, Burke, C. J. Fox, Clive, Wesley, Lord Mansfield, and Sheridan; Lord Brougham's <i>Statesmen of the Reign of George III.</i> LATER HISTORICAL WRITERS — Adolphus, Craik and Macfarlane, Mr. Massey, Sir Erskine May, Sir G. C. Lewis, Lord Holland's <i>Memoirs</i> ; Wright's <i>Caricature History</i> .	384-395

## CHAPTER XI.

*The French Revolution.*

CONTEMPORARY WRITERS — Writers already described; Buike, Mackintosh, and Erskine on the French Revolution, <i>Diary and Correspondence</i> of Lord Colchester, <i>Life and Correspondence</i> of Lord Sidmouth; Twiss's <i>Life of Lord Eldon</i> , Yonge's <i>Life of Lord Liverpool</i> , Erskine's <i>Speeches</i> , <i>Lives</i> of Erskine by Brougham and Campbell; <i>Memoirs</i> of Francis Horner; Brialmont's <i>Life of Wellington</i> ; the <i>Wellington Despatches</i> ; <i>Lives and Correspondence</i> of Nelson and Collingwood; <i>Life of Lord Dundonald</i> ; Lord Dudley's <i>Letters</i> ; Bamford's <i>Life of a Radical</i> ; <i>Lives</i> of Lord Londonderry and Sir Charles Stewart by Alison. LATEST HISTORICAL WRITERS. — Von Sybel, Alison, Sir William Napier, Mr. Spencer Walpole; Fooke's <i>History of Prices</i> , Miss Martineau's <i>History of the Peace</i> , Dr. Paul's <i>Geschichte Englands</i> , etc.	396-404
---	---------

SUPPLEMENT . . . . .	405
INDEX . . . . .	443
INDEX TO SUPPLEMENT . . . . .	463





PART I.

INTRODUCTION

TO

ENGLISH HISTORY.

BY

SAMUEL RAWSON GARDINER.



# PREFACE

TO

THE FIRST PART.



THE object of the present work is to provide some help for students who, having gone through the ordinary school course, wish to devote themselves to the special study of some part of the history of their country. Such persons chiefly require an indication of the books which it would be well for them to study, and that service is rendered to them by Mr. Mullinger, whose work forms the kernel of the volume, and to whom also I offer my hearty thanks for the care with which he looked over the proofs of my part of the book, and for the valuable assistance which he gave me in so doing. What I have attempted to do is to give help of a different kind. For those who wish to make progress in historical study, careful and minute investigation is indispensable. It is only by degrees that the student learns how much his power of judging fairly the characters of history depends upon complete accuracy in the matter of dates and places. A word spoken or a thing done will convey a very different impression, as its relation to some other word

or action is known or unknown. By knowing this relation the inquirer learns not merely what took place, but how it took place. When he finds how everything follows naturally from that which precedes it, he begins to understand that connection between cause and effect the knowledge of which is the necessary preliminary to all sober criticism of actions and persons

Yet this is not all. The personalities of history are not merely figures flitting across a stage, of whom it is enough to learn the motives and the actions. They are themselves the result of causes which existed generations before they were born, and influence results for generations after they die. No one, therefore, can really study any particular period of history unless he knows a great deal about what preceded it and what came after it. He cannot seriously study a generation of men as if it could be isolated and examined like a piece of inorganic matter. He has to bear in mind that it is a portion of a living whole which is under his observation. The work of the constructive imagination comes in where the work of investigation ends. In the end this is a work which every man must do for himself. He will have to pick out from the manifold facts of history those which seem to him to be more important than the others, and it will never happen that any two men will be precisely agreed as to the relative importance of any set of facts. Yet it may not be altogether useless to those who are girding themselves to the task to have before them an attempt to trace the life of the English nation by one who has at all events given much of his time and thought in an attempt to realise to himself what that life has been.

## CHAPTER I.

### INTRODUCTORY—THE ANCIENT WORLD.

HISTORY is the record of change, of the new circumstances into which communities of men are brought, and of the new ideas called forth by those circumstances and by which circumstances are in turn moulded.

Savage tribes have no history, because they know no change. They hunt and fish, or repel their enemies, on the same soil and under the same climate from generation to generation.

The most momentous change which comes over such tribes is that brought about by the introduction of slavery. When any body of men felt itself strong enough to utilise the labours of its enemies, it had advanced one step in the direction of mercy, and being now able to spare itself the necessity of toiling for the bare necessities of life, was able to devote some time to procuring material comforts which would ultimately become the solace of others as well as of themselves.

Another step in the same direction was taken when a race, no longer content with the capture of individual slaves, subjected a whole race to its domination, contenting itself with the exaction of tribute or of personal service in some way which did not involve the complete loss of personal freedom. In such a way arose the great

#### CHAP I

§ 1. What  
is History?

§ 2  
Savage  
Tribes

§ 3. Intro-  
duction of  
Slavery

§ 4. The  
great  
Asiatic  
Mon-  
archies.

## INTRODUCTION TO ENGLISH HISTORY.

Asiatic monarchies which meet us at the dawn of traditional history, and which are doubtless only advanced types of earlier efforts in the same direction. To some extent both the conquerors and the conquered were the better for what had taken place. The conquered populations composed of many tribes were no longer allowed to wage war with one another. For the first time they enjoyed the blessings of peace, and the material advantages which accompany it. The conquerors had a far greater share in the enjoyments of the world. They learned to practise the virtues of a dominant race, and made some progress in intellectual knowledge. There was organisation of government and of the military force. But it was organisation for the sake of the governors, not for the sake of the governed. There was no amalgamation between the two, no sense of duty urging on the governors to improve the condition of the governed. So long as a subject tribe paid its tribute and did not annoy its neighbours in such a way as to prevent them from paying theirs, they might live as they pleased amongst themselves. What interference there was was simply for the objects of the ruling race. The fairest maidens might be carried off by force or persuasion, to fill the harems of the governing class, as when Esther was brought before Ahasuerus. The goodliest young men might be driven away to fight for that same class, as when Rabshakeh offered two thousand horses to Hezekiah if he would set riders upon them. But each man or woman selected went not to draw the union closer between governors and governed, but to swell the ranks of the governors, just as in later times no benefit has accrued to the subjects of the Ottoman Turks in Europe, by the abduction of women or by the seizure of male children to form the corps of Janissaries.

The head of such a government is necessarily despotic. The members of the governing race are far more interested in preserving the strict discipline which alone enables it to retain its sway, than in guarding each individual of their number against the tyranny or caprices of the monarch. Any special case in which the despot places himself in antagonism with the feeling of the race in general, or of those who immediately surround his person, is easily provided for by his assassination. It is seldom that the dynasty to which such a ruler belongs maintains itself long in power. Doing nothing for the subject races, it has no gratitude to expect from them, and in times of danger they show no eagerness to come to its assistance. When Babylon was taken by Cyrus, the Lady of kingdoms fell in a moment as if it had been swallowed up by an earthquake. Three battles disposed of the Persian empire with almost equal suddenness. It mattered little to the Syrian peasant whether he paid tribute to a Nebuchadnezzar, a Darius, or an Alexander. His own lot was not likely to be improved by any change from one to the other.

Very different was the condition of the petty Greek states which hurled back the whole weight of the Persian monarchy in its day of power. In Greece the tribe came into contact with the outer world not by conquest, but by commerce, exploration, and sometimes by piracy. It drew wealth from others without bringing upon itself the task of keeping them in subjection. Its character changed from that of a rural to that of a city community. The quick-witted thoughtful race occupied every domain of poetry, of oratory, of art, and of philosophy. Athens, the foremost of all the Greek states, was the first to show that the supremacy of the free population over its magistrates could be exercised not by inarticulate shouts or noisy clashing of arms, but by deliberate vote

CHAP  
I

§ 5. Governments established by them not permanent

§ 6. The Greek Republics.



after a serious and sustained argument in which anyone was permitted to take part. It was a great achievement; but it carried with it its own shadow. If in the Persian monarchy there was no people worthy of the name, in Athens there was no government worthy of the name, no organised institutions which could sufficiently do for the people what Pericles did for them in his lifetime, and which could save them from the alternate rashness and inertness which proved their ruin. If, as a state, Athens was subject to dangers the very opposite to those under which Persia succumbed, her faults as a conqueror were precisely the same as those of Persia. When she converted the leadership of allied states into an imperial sway, she offered them, just as Persia had offered, protection against foreign attack and the cessation of neighbourly wars. She demanded from them, as Persia had demanded, tribute and fidelity. She did not admit them into fellowship with herself or merge her separate existence in that of a mightier whole.

The first commonwealth able to solve the problems which Athens and Persia in their several ways had failed to solve was that of Rome. Whilst she was still but a petty community, she had secured the existence of a body of magistrates with large and almost excessive powers. These magistrates, proceeding as they did from annual elections by the whole body of the people, were not likely to entertain projects antagonistic to the desires of those by whom they were chosen, whilst their action was steadied and controlled by the moral and, to some extent, the legal superiority of the senate, a body composed of men who had held office in former years, and whose position was therefore the best guarantee for their practical experience and their wise moderation. The Roman state, unlike as it was to the constitutional states of modern Europe, afforded nevertheless the most

complete instance of constitutional government which the world had yet seen. The object of such a government is to secure as far as possible the carrying out of the general wishes of the governed, after they have passed through the minds of men of superior intelligence and knowledge of affairs. It aims, on the one hand, at placing a check upon the immediate passions and desires of the moment, and on the other hand, at restraining those who are set to guide, from satisfying their own passions and desires in opposition to the distinct wish of the community at large. In some sort indeed this description may suit every government which ever existed. There are natural forces in every society which place power in the hands of those who are qualified to lead within the limits prescribed by the general feeling. All that any constitutional system can profess to do is to give regularity to the working of natural laws, to facilitate their action and to avoid the shocks which inevitably follow upon any attempt to set them at naught. In law as in science, man is but the servant and interpreter of nature.

It was a great achievement to found a constitutional state, and to bring, as it were, the brain and heart of the commonwealth into due relations with each other. But as even the healthy mind in the healthy body avails a man little unless he has sufficient mental power and moral character to bear himself well amidst the trials which new circumstances bring him under, so it is with a commonwealth. The very superiority of Rome's internal constitution gave her external strength, and the conquest of Italy called for new ideas of government under new circumstances. The difficulties of the problem were such as, with our modern ways of thought, it is almost impossible for us even to conceive. To us, familiar as we are with political organisations extending

CHAP.

I

§ 8 Roman Patriotism.

over enormous territories, it is a mere matter of practical convenience, whether a state extend over a few thousand square miles, or over a few hundred thousand. The ancient city communities limited their patriotism to their own fortified home. There were the temples of their Gods, the memories made beautiful by the deeds of their ancestors, and whatever scenes of happiness, or of tender regret their own lives had brought to them. There, too, was the centre of political action, the market place, where the freemen met to acclaim the laws or to choose the magistrates by whom those laws were to be executed, and the senate house where the fathers of the state met to consult how dangers at home and abroad might best be met. The love of country in such a community was as ardent and exclusive as it was narrow, and the dweller in a neighbouring city was regarded not merely as a stranger, but as an implacable foe. The word *hostis*, by which the Romans designated an enemy, originally meant no more than a foreigner.

It was to the credit of Rome that in her earlier days she had shown herself superior to this feeling of antagonism. She had striven, and conquered; she had spread slaughter and desolation around; but in the end she had offered the right hand of fellowship to those whom she had defeated and oppressed. Plebeian and patrician after a time were amalgamated together, and subsequently the dwellers in the Latin towns were admitted to a citizenship as complete as that of the man whose ancestors had been consuls at the first establishment of the republic. But even in Rome there seemed to come a limit to her transcendent assimilative power. She had been able to understand that a man could be a citizen of Rome who lived at Tusculum or Ardea. She could not understand that a man could be a citizen of Rome who lived too far off to join personally in the vote in the

Roman Forum. She had overcome the moral difficulty, she recoiled before the physical difficulty. The notion of representative arrangements, by which the conquered populations from the Rubicon to the Straits of Messina might appear at Rome by deputy, as they do at this day, never occurred to any Roman, and it is probable that if such an idea had been suggested to him, he would have recoiled from it as from an innovation too daring to be worthy of consideration. Nevertheless, though Rome did not do what a modern state, under similar circumstances, would inevitably have done, she did what no state had ever done before her. She took care indeed, by covering Italy with military posts under the form of colonies, and by joining them by a network of military roads, to make insurrection difficult. But she understood that strength cannot be gained by mere repression. She definitely renounced the idea of wringing money from her Italian subjects. No emissaries went forth from her gates, like the tribute-collecting ships from the port of Athens, to impress upon the Etruscans and the Lucanians the feeling of subjection. All that she asked from them was fellowship in arms, in victory, and in spoil. She called them her allies, and she treated them with the dignified consideration which won their respect and attachment. By their help she rose victorious from the great struggle with Carthage.

Then came the evil days of Rome's too easy victory. The whole Eastern world, Greece, Macedonia, Asia Minor, Syria, Egypt fell into her hands. The Mediterranean coast of Africa was subdued. Spain and Gaul were borne down by the overwhelming force of a disciplined attack. At a later time Southern Germany and Southern Britain were added to her territory. Long before the process was accomplished, the old Roman virtues seemed to have passed away for ever. Magi-

§ 10  
Rome the  
Head of the  
Nations

## CHAP

## I

strates went forth to plunder, not to govern. The voters at home chose magistrates who would offer them the highest bribes. The difficulty which had stared the Romans in the face after the conquest of Italy came back upon them in a more bewildering form. The political community consisted of a few hundred thousand demoralised men, living within an easy distance of the Roman Forum. The real community was scattered over every country in Europe, from the Atlantic to the Euphrates, and from the mouths of the Rhine to the wastes of the Sahara. In the face of such a population as this the privileges of the Roman voter were as unimportant as the rights of an elector of Shoreham or Truro are to the cultivators of British India. The conquered nations could not possibly come in person to vote at Rome, and even if the idea of representative government had occurred to any one, the first requisite of that form of government, identity of interest and feeling, was entirely wanting. The polished scheming Greek, the effeminate Asiatic, the rude Spaniard and Gaul could not be brought by any constitutional arrangements to co-operate in the work of government. The utmost for which they could hope was the substitution of the rule of a man for the rule of the populace of a single city, or for that of the wealthy tyrants who were able to secure the goodwill of that populace by the most nefarious means.

§ 11. The  
Empire  
and the  
Roman  
Law.

The establishment of the Empire gave the provinces all that they could hope to have. In the emperors, the old assimilating genius of Rome was quickened into life once more. The very fact that they had risen to power in antagonism with the special society of the city of Rome, led them to consult the interests of the more extensive community. For a time the want of a constitutional limitation upon their powers was not felt in the exist-

ence of the stronger tie of a common interest between themselves and the mass of those whom they governed. The limits of Roman citizenship, valuable at this period only from the personal rights which it conferred, were rapidly extended till they included every free man born on the soil of the empire. The highest position of all was thrown open to every race. Gauls, Spaniards, Africans, and Syrians, wielded as emperors the sway which had been exercised by Julius and Augustus. For the first time the idea of scientific law rose on mankind. Rulers more powerful than the old Persian Kings were not content to leave each petty community subject to them to settle its own affairs in its own way, provided only that it did not fall into arrears in the payment of its tribute. They conceived the idea of duty from the rulers to the ruled, of a necessity under which they were to disseminate the benefits of which they were themselves partakers, and to hold out the hand to raise up the less prosperous or less cultivated of their subjects to the level which they had reached. In the effort, the legislator of the empire cut himself adrift from the old notion of law as the custom of a particular community. Brought face to face with rules of living as various as the soil on which they had sprung up, he learned to estimate them all at their true value. He ceased to ask what was law at Rome, at Athens, or at Lyons. He searched deep into the needs and duties of men as the members of the great human family. His task was rendered possible by the growth of the sentiment of humanity, which had found no root in the early days of the empire, when Rome was still the conquering city, only distinguished from other cities of the past by the mingled firmness and mildness of her sway.

*Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento,  
Parcere subjectis et debellare superbos.*

## CHAP.

## I

§ 12 Abstract Conception of Rome.

Four centuries later, Rome had become an abstract conception personifying the ideas of thoughtful and beneficent government. Imperceptibly, as another poet, himself of Gaulish origin, then sang, the city had melted into the world.

Exaudi, regina tui pulcherrima mundi,  
Inter sidercos Roma recepta polos,  
Exaudi, genetrix hominum genetrixque deorum  
Non procul a caelo per tua templa sumus

Fecisti patriam diversis gentibus unam;  
Profruit invitis, te dominante, capi,  
Dumque offers victis patrii consortia juris,  
Urbem fecisti quod pius orbis erat

§ 13 The Individual sacrificed to the Society.

No great result is achieved without considerable cost. The action of the government of the empire had bound men more closely together than they had ever been bound before. It had taught them to consider themselves as members of a great society, which claimed their loyalty because it studied their real interests. But it had done nothing to employ them as co-operators in the work. The individual energies of each particular citizen had been weakened in the process of amalgamation. They were left to concentrate themselves on selfish and material, or, at the best, on purely local objects. The bloody spectacles of the gladiatorial combats and the encraving representations of a profligate drama were the staple amusements of the multitude. The Gaulish tribesman, the Roman burgher of olden days, had known that his own temperance, and valour, and prudence, would count for something in advancing the fortunes of the community to which he belonged. The Gaulish or Italian subject of the empire was but a drop in the ocean. Government was regarded by him as something external to himself, something which he was powerless to influence, even in the most infinitesimal degree. The em-

pire, therefore, had at its service skilled legislators and rulers, taking in hand the management of an acquiescent population. What it lacked was the spontaneity of individual public spirit diffused over the whole body, and the moral earnestness of individual aspiration after a higher and better life.

CHAP.  
I.

---

Though the empire did not care to encourage by its institutions either individual vitality or the development of popular control, another society arose in its midst which occupied the ground which the empire had left untouched. The gospel of the Christian missionaries went straight to the heart of the individual convert. Christ, it told him, had died for his personal salvation, that he might be snatched from sin and the consequences of sin. It invited him not merely to obey laws imposed by some distant authority, but to be pure and righteous and merciful as the spotless model which was ever set before his eyes. Upon this foundation it built up an edifice of universal benevolence. Do what it would, the empire could not abolish slavery or serfdom, could not set aside the distinction between citizens within its limits and the hostile populations without. In Christ Jesus there was neither Jew nor Greek, bond nor free. The Christian theory started from the very opposite pole of thought from that from which the empire had started, though it is true that its desire to provide for the life to come rather than for the life of this world, prevented the Church from drawing forth all the practical consequences which were involved in its most cherished ideas.

§ 14. The  
Christian  
Church.

The organisation of the Church proceeded in the same direction as its creed. The bishops who with the rest of the clergy were the instruments of collective acts of charity, and who, as a moral and intellectual aristocracy, maintained the standard of doctrine to deviate from

§ 15. Or-  
ganisation  
of the  
Church.



CHAP.  
I.

---

which was heresy, had gained their position by the direct or indirect choice of the churches over which they presided. The constitution of each church in the third century was, in spirit at least, not unlike the constitution of the Roman state six centuries earlier. The magistrates and councillors sprang from the popular choice, and derived all their authority from popular support. But they were bound by their positions to respect the traditions of their order, to instruct, and guide, rather than to listen and to follow. It was no wonder therefore that not the worst but the best emperors struggled hard against an organisation so strong in every point in which their own organisation was weak, and that they only at last gave way when resistance was no longer possible. Constantine, indeed, as is probable, had little idea that in assembling at Nicæa a general council of the bishops, he was increasing the strength of a society which was stronger than that over which he ruled. In fact, he had given his consent to the erection of a real representative assembly. The force which had been scattered over countless congregations was at last brought into a focus.

§ 16 The  
Empire  
and the  
Church.

For a long time the empire and the church pursued their several paths side by side. Different as their organisations were, they were saved from collision by the difference of their aims. After some vain attempts, the emperors, at least in the west, refrained from promulgating creeds. The clergy had no wish to take part in the direction of armies. Nor were the materials of a conflict to be found in the domain of justice, afterwards so fruitful of quarrels between the lay and the ecclesiastical authorities. If the emperors sometimes interfered with the occupant of the important See of Rome, they showed no disposition to hamper the general relations between the clergy and their flocks, and the clergy were

too good Romans themselves to find fault with the working of the Roman law in other matters.

CHAP  
I

It was one thing to offer no positive opposition to the empire; it was another thing to support it actively in its day of trial. The empire at last suffered the fate of all institutions which do not root themselves in the active support of those for whose benefit they arise. As the danger from its Teutonic assailants grew more formidable, the pressure of taxation grew heavier till it was almost unendurable. The material wants of the people were not provided for. Its distresses were not alleviated. A population without enthusiasm could not be called upon to furnish men for the military defence of its rulers. The evil counsel prevailed of entrusting the defence of the frontier to Germans, trained and disciplined to the habits of Roman warfare. At last the time came when those who had been admitted as servants claimed to be masters, and their brethren from the forests of Germany poured in at the gaps left undefended. In Western Europe the empire melted away before so dire a succession of calamities.

§ 17 Fall  
of the Em-  
pire in the  
West.

The church rapidly transferred its allegiance to the numerous Teutonic kings who sprung up on what had once been Roman soil. It was too universal in its sympathies, and too independent in its action to be fettered by devotion to the frame-work of any existing government. The clergy, however, soon found that a new position had been created for them. If they had been less Roman than the emperors, they were more Roman than the new rulers. A political position, and that too an antagonistic position, was forced upon the bishops. They were the depositaries of a tradition of equal law and universal justice in the face of conquerors who understood none of these things. Occupying sees

§ 18 The  
Church  
and the  
Teutonic  
con-  
querors.

CHAP  
I

in the old Roman municipalities, they became the defenders of the conquered populations in general, and of municipal rights in particular. Everywhere on the continent the progress of civilisation was determined by the form of compromise between the Roman civilisation upheld by the clergy, and the ruder but more vigorous civilisation of the Teutonic kings.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE ENGLISH SETTLEMENT AND THE ENGLISH KINGSHIP.

CHAP.  
II.

---

§ 1 The  
Roman  
Province of  
Britain.

THE inhabitants of the southern portion of Britain which alone had been brought under Roman domination were even in worse case than their Gaulish neighbours. Large districts, especially in the western and more hilly part of the island, retained their Celtic speech and their Celtic habits. Even where Roman civilisation had made its way, its influence had been far more superficial than in Gaul. What intellectual vigour there was in the fourth century in any part of the empire, expressed itself chiefly in ecclesiastical legislation and literature, and the British church gave evidence of its weakness by taking little part in either. When in the beginning of the fifth century, the Roman legions were finally withdrawn, the provincials, divided amongst themselves, and enervated and helpless through the long habit of looking elsewhere than to their own courage for defence, fell a prey to the ravages of the Celtic tribes who had retained their independence of Rome. The Picts of those northern regions which now bear the name of Scotland, and the Scots of Ireland, whose colony in the Western Highlands was afterwards to impress that name upon the North of Britain, ravaged the land without mercy. The more distinctly Celtic West resisted not without success. The Romanised Celt of the East invited the

CHAP  
II.§ 2. The  
English  
Settle-  
ments.

alliance of the Teutonic sea-rovers who had long been the piratic assailants of their coast.

When in the middle of the fifth century, our Teutonic ancestors landed on the shores of Britain, they carved out settlements for themselves; they were Jutes, and Saxons and Angles from the coast which stretches from Jutland to the mouths of the Elbe and Weser. Over the horror of the struggle a thick darkness has settled down, and, with the exception of one lightning-flash from a Celtic writer, it was only by its leading features, by a battle or a siege traditionally remembered, that any portion of it could be recovered when civilisation and its power of recording events again spread over the land. At the end of a century and a half, the Teutonic settlers occupied the whole of the eastern half of the land, from the Forth to the Straits of Dover, and from the coast of the German Ocean to the Severn. Over all this tract the Low German speech of the invaders was to be heard. To what extent the British population had disappeared is a matter of controversy. It is a point on which no certain knowledge is attainable. The invaders did not enter the island impressed with the dignity of Roman civilisation. They knew nothing of the Roman speech. They seized upon the land of the Britons. They stormed and sacked their cities. They probably often carried off their daughters to be their wives or concubines. The men who resisted were slain as wild beasts are slain, without thought of mercy. Of the rest some were reduced to slavery, some may have kept up a precarious independence in the woods. Under such circumstances a population suffers fearful diminution from misery and starvation. The weak and the old with the young child, the hope of future generations, perish for lack of food. Yet whatever the numerical amount of the survivors may have been, the general result is certain. The Teu-

tonic speech, save in a few words used principally by women and slaves, prevailed everywhere. The Teutonic law, the Teutonic way of life, was the rule of the land. The Teutonic heathenism was unchanged. The Celtic element, whether it was larger or smaller, was absorbed and left scarcely a trace behind.

CHAP.  
II

If the history of the settlement is to be gathered from scanty tradition, the character and institutions of the settlers have to be inferred from that which is known of them in their own land, and from that which is known of them later in the land of their adoption. Fierce and masterful as they were, they were not barbarians except in antithesis to the civilisation of Rome. The stage which they had reached was very much that of the Homeric Greeks, if we allow for the greater inclemency of a northern sky. Each tribe was complete in itself. It had its own assembly of freemen whose voice was decisive in regulating its actions. At its head was a chief, the ealdorman, as he was named, who guided its deliberations, and who, after its arrival in England at least, headed it in war. The freemen themselves were composed of two ranks, eorls and ceorls. The eorls or nobles by birth, whose origin is lost in the mists of the past, had an honorary pre-eminence. Their voice was of greater weight, their life was of greater value, their share of booty larger. But they did not make the state, though they had doubtless much to do with its direction. In fact there was nothing that we should now call political life in existence. New legislation there was none. The old customs handed down from father to son in Germany were adhered to here, and the only question which could arise for deliberation was whether some new expedition should be undertaken against the enemy. Outside the assembly, as well as within it, all freemen were equal, however much they might differ in

§3 In-  
stitutions  
of the  
Settlers

CHAP  
II

---

influence or wealth. Each man had his own share of the conquered land, and his share of pasturage or wood-cutting in the common land that had been left undivided. The organisation of which he formed a part did not, as in the empire, reach from the state to the individual, but from the individual to the state. Each township which, in an ecclesiastical form, became the parish of modern days, made its appearance once a month, in the hundred mote, to decide quarrels and to witness contracts; whilst the members of the tribe met twice a year to decide matters of more general importance. As every man was a judge,—unless indeed, the practice of attending the hundred mote by a deputation of the reeve, or head man, and four best men of the township had been already adopted,—so every man was a soldier. The assembly was in truth the tribe in arms, and the eorls and the ealdormen could but lead, they could not constrain the will of their fellow tribesmen.

§ 4  
Changes  
produced

Left in the positions which they had originally occupied, the tribes might have retained these institutions unaltered for centuries. The progress of the war necessitated expansion and amalgamation, in order that greater force might be brought to bear on the enemy. As it had been with Rome, so it was now with the English tribe. The system of popular assemblies had reached its limit. The men of Dorset or the men of Norfolk could come up without difficulty to the place of meeting. The men of a state reaching from the Severn to the borders of Sussex, could not come up. The idea of delegation, if it as yet existed at all, had not acquired sufficient strength to suggest the idea of a general collective council. Recourse was had to a different factor in the commonwealth. Of all human occupations, war requires the most complete discipline and the most prompt obedience

to a single chief. Naturally, therefore, it was the chief, the caldorman, who gained most by the changes wrought by war. Everywhere he took the higher title of king, and in taking its title he gained a higher standing-point. He was the bond of union between many tribes. The caldorman who now presided in the tribal assembly, derived his authority from him, even if he owed his position to an older tribal authority. At the end of the sixth century some ten or twelve kingdoms existed, and the authority of the kings would doubtless tend to increase in civil matters as they grew more successful as leaders in war.

CHAP.  
II.

---

Yet growing as it was, the king's authority was by no means absolute. The power which the king wielded could only be exercised in accordance with the wishes of the armed force, and that armed force was still in great measure composed of the contingents of the freemen of the several tribes. It is true that it was not so altogether. By an old German custom, a great man had been accustomed to entertain a body of followers—*gesiths* as they were called in England—who attached themselves not to the tribe, but to the person of him whom they followed and upon whose bounty they lived. For him they fought, and for him they were ready to die. They held it disgraceful to forsake him in battle, or even to leave the field alive if he were lying dead upon it. No doubt, if we possessed a history of those times, we should find that these two component parts of the king's army were also component parts of his council, and the Witan or wise men, without whose advice he did not venture to act in any important manner, were some of them the chief men of his personal following, some of them leading eorls, or landowners from the various populations which were blended together under his rule. But, however this council may have been formed, it had no

5 The  
King and  
the Witan



CHAP  
II

immediate organic connection with the people. Its members were not elected from beneath. They became councillors, either from their own position in life, or as selected by the king. As long as there was a powerful enemy in the field, this breach in the continuity of the constitution might not be felt. But it was none the less a source of danger.

§ 6 Ad-  
ministra-  
tion of  
Justice.

The judicial arrangements of our ancestors were those of a strong-handed but law-loving race, in which each man was ready to do himself right with his own hand, but in which there was a general understanding that feuds should not be perpetual. The notion that it was the duty of the state to punish crime, and the notion that the criminal himself was any the worse for the crime which he had committed, would have been alike unintelligible to them. All that they saw was that it was in their power to enforce upon the kindred of a murdered man, or upon him who had suffered loss of property, the acceptance of a weregild, or money payment, in satisfaction of the injury done to them, which they might otherwise have avenged by the slaughter of the aggressor. As again the power of taking vengeance was different in different ranks, as the relations of a murdered king were more likely to take effectual vengeance than the relations of an earl or a simple ceorl, and as they therefore required more to induce them to draw back, a larger money payment was enforced in proportion to the rank of the person injured. As too the state had no interest in the matter excepting to prevent continual private warfare, it had no trained police to seize the criminal, and no trained advocates and judges to investigate evidence. It looked to the kindred of the accused person to present him before the popular assembly at which he was to be tried, or to pay his weregild in his stead. If he denied his guilt, he had to bring others to swear that he was

innocent, and the declaration of the belief of these compurgators in his favour was accepted as satisfactory. If he failed to find compurgators, he had still the resource of appealing to the ordeal, doubtless performed in heathen times in some specially sacred spot. The assembled people who acted as his judges contented themselves with seeing that the provisions of ancient customs were duly carried out.

In proportion as the kingdoms increased in size, the moral defects of such a system must have been increasingly felt. The special tie which bound the *gesith* to his patron summoned into existence feelings of personal honour and loyalty, which were stronger, but at the same time narrower than the patriotic sentiment which bound the freeman to the community of his fellow tribesmen. The authority of the king was further off from him than the authority of the *caldorman* had been. It is true that he had still a part in the action of the state, was still liable to be called out for service in the field, and that he and his fellows might be present on important occasions at the meetings of the king and his *Witan*, and might be allowed to applaud with their shouts the decisions taken in higher quarters. But even if the effect of the change be left out of account, it is evident that the moral needs of the Englishman of the sixth century, were precisely opposite to those of the Roman provincial of the fourth. In the empire where all individuality was crushed out by an enlightened but overwhelming despotism, the side of Christianity which was most acceptable was its anchorage in individual faith and energy. In the Teuton, within or without the old limits of the empire, individual vigour was the prominent characteristic. Organisation of bodies of men did not go very far. The needs of extensive warfare might do something, but its work was necessarily imperfect. If

§ 7 Moral  
Needs of  
the Popu-  
lation.

CHAP.  
II.

---

the Teutonic settlers came to have an ideal at all, it was certain that it would be to them, as ideals are to all men, the complement of their existing acquirements. They required some view of life, which would at the same time satisfy their inarticulate need for a higher organisation, which would tame the wild strivings of passion in the individual man, and would teach the fierce red-handed slaughterer that self-denial and self-restraint were the highest virtues of human existence. The history of the middle ages in England, as on the Continent, is the history of successive generations accepting in church and state institutions which serve to repress or tame the wild exuberance of individual violence and passion. The middle ages start from diversity and aim at unity. Their art, their literature, their temporal and ecclesiastical legislation bear this impress distinctly.

§ 8 The  
Christian  
Mission-  
aries in  
England.

When Augustine and his fellow missionaries landed in Kent in 597, they began this work of moral order. In one sense their arrival was the first step in the undoing of the isolation from Roman ideas, in which England had been standing for a century and a half. In another sense they brought something quite new. The law and order of the empire had reposed on the swords of its legions. It had asked no assent from those upon whom it had imposed its will. The law and order of the Christian missionary rested on persuasion alone. He asked but for voluntary obedience, for that obedience which strengthens instead of weakening the sense of personality in the individual who accepts it. The old unity had crushed out individuality. The new unity would grow out of it, would found itself upon individual conscience, and harmonise individual energies for higher ends.

In the midst of the troubles which preceded and succeeded the fall of the empire in the West, Christianity

CHAP.  
II.§ 9. The  
Monastic  
System

had advanced in two special directions. It was more monastic, and it was better organised, in the sixth century than it had been in the fourth. Against the faults of monasticism it is especially easy to declaim. A system which takes men out of the world and forbids them to exercise the ordinary duties of men amongst men, which acts in defiance of the strongest tendencies of human nature, instead of reducing them under discipline, and which in consequence erects a whole system of artificial duties and artificial faults, can never be regarded as a satisfactory solution of the problems which that nature presents. Nevertheless, it is impossible that a system so widely adopted, and so constantly recurred to, should have been wanting in elements fitting it at least for a time to render the highest services to mankind. The apologies which some are inclined to make for it may be dismissed as irrelevant. If we can only praise the monks because they improved cultivation, or even because they were benevolent to the poor, it is better not to praise them at all. These things are but the accidents of monasticism. Its essence was a selfish unselfishness. It aimed at sacrificing the excitement and vain-glory of the struggles and triumphs of the present, sometimes it may be, at escaping from the depressing defeats and miseries of life, in order to gain eternal peace in the world to come, with some first-fruits of quiet and rest in the world which was. Yet self-centred as were the thoughts of the monk, his self-seeking was of incomparably a higher order than that of the world around. Other men might provide for themselves by grasping avarice, by hasty passionate violence, by giving free rein to their most debasing passions. The monk would keep the wild animalism of his nature firmly down; and, as always happens, the effort to rise higher in one direction brought with it the power of rising

CHAP  
II

higher in others. The monk could not help being an example of self-denial to others, and self-denial was the special virtue which the men of that fierce age needed most to learn. The monk could not help overflowing in bounty to the poor and suffering, and turning the fountain of blessing which he had opened in his own heart into a stream by the sides of which multitudes might rejoice. He represented not the best ideal of life, but the best ideal of the kind of life most opposed to the faults of contemporary existence.

§ 10. The  
Penitential  
System

The penitential system of the Church was an attempt to implant amongst laymen something of the monastic rule. The authors of the penitential code no more thought of descending into the heart and conscience than the authors of the *weregild* thought of descending into the heart and conscience. They did not bid the guilt-laden penitent simply to go and sin no more, nor did they proclaim the law of the gospel, 'Owe no man anything but to love one another'. His penance was measured out by weeks and years, as the *weregild* was measured out by shillings and pence. So much time was to be passed without tasting anything but bread and water, so much time in lighter mortification. But there was that in the penitential rules which was not in the *weregild* system. If the clergy made any difference between persons, it was, that the higher the clerical rank of the person who committed the offence was, the heavier was to be his penance, whilst the layman was punished more heavily in proportion to the rank of the person injured. The lay system, in short, started from the notion that vengeance was to be bought. The church system started from the idea, that an evil action polluted the actor. Man acquired in this way a moral sense which he had not before. He learned that he was accountable for his actions to a judge higher than the king or the popular

assembly, and he learned too that ill-doing was an injury done to his own soul. The idea of purity and rectitude as an object of desire for the sake of a man's own well-being planted itself firmly amongst men. Hence, too, the strange forms taken in the Christian imagination by the spirits and deities of the old pagan mythology. The spirit of the wood or the stream came to be the ugly horned unsavoury devil of Christian mythology. The change was a sign of the new position assigned by man to the supernatural powers of his imagination. The spirits of whom the heathen told were beings to be propitiated and dreaded. The devil of the Christian's tale was a being with whom he himself had a conflict. There was war now not merely on the battle-field, but in the heart of every man, and the stories which he loved to tell were but the expression of his knowledge of a conflict, which, to however strange results it might lead in the immediate present, contributed incalculably to raise in the scale of moral beings the man who struggled against his lower nature.

As Christianity was more monastic in the end of the sixth century than it had been in the fourth, it was also more monarchical. The authority of the pope indeed in the hands of Gregory the Great, by whom Augustine was sent to England, was not put forth with such high-sounding claims to obedience as were afterwards heard. But it was becoming more and more the central force of Western Christendom. It gained strength from its being exercised from Rome, the seat of the older empire, from the personal qualities of many of the Popes, and from the tendency of the barbarian tribes to welcome a centre of unity in the midst of their weakness and their divisions. The very haughtiness with which the emissaries of Rome maintained the claims of him who sent them was an important element of success. When Augustine

## INTRODUCTION TO ENGLISH HISTORY.

CHAP.  
II.

---

met the priests of the British Church, and alienated still further, by remaining seated in their presence, those who were already alienated from one who had preached the gospel to the hated invaders, we may be sure that he appeared more than ever worthy of respect in the eyes of the Englishmen who accompanied him. When Wilfrid reasoned against the clergy of Northumberland, who had learned from Irish teachers different modes of keeping Easter and of cutting the clerical tonsure than those which were practised in the Roman church, and which they declared themselves to have derived by tradition from St. John, through Columba, he clenched his argument, by claiming for the pope, as St. Peter's representative, the keys of the kingdom of heaven. The king, before whom he spoke, at once acknowledged the force of his reasoning. If St. Peter, he said, was the door-keeper of heaven, he would follow him lest he should be shut out when he came to the gates. As Christianity in the form in which it appeared broke through all division of ranks, and knew nothing of eorls and ceorls, of freeman, of serf, or of slave, so its institutions rose above the civil institutions of the land. When Archbishop Theodore organised the English Church at the end of the seventh century, he created or adapted institutions which were wider and more universal than those of the seven or eight kingdoms into which the original tribes had by that time coalesced. From north to south the priest took no account of divided nationality. The man born on the banks of the Tweed might find his life's work on the shores of the Southampton water, or in the secluded East Anglian peninsula between the fens and the sea. As he passed backwards and forwards on his mission of consolation and warning he was doing unconscious work in levelling national distinctions by his

presence, as he was levelling distinctions of rank by his creed.

In some sort the work of the Christian Church was a repetition of the work done by the legislators of the Empire. They too had set themselves to sweep away differences, and to impose unity upon populations separated by far more deep-seated distinctions than those which kept apart the inhabitants of England. But whilst the Roman imposed his unity from without and from above, the Church sought to found it upon the heart and conscience. Grand and imposing as her institutions were, they blended with the civil institutions at the base. If the archiepiscopal presidency of Canterbury or York and the august supremacy of Rome had no parallel in the civil world, the parishes were simply ecclesiastical townships, and the bishoprics were conterminous with the kingdoms, or with the divisions of the kingdoms, which represented the older tribes.

So it came about that Church and State worked together harmoniously in England, as they did nowhere else in Europe. The bishops and clergy had no memories of an older civilisation to defend, no conquered population to protect. The same English people were governed in one way for certain purposes, as they were governed in another way for other purposes. Very soon the entire clergy of England was English by birth and speech. Church and State acted and reacted on one another. The ideas of a higher and better order promulgated by the church, found their way insensibly into the minds of laymen. The lay state, with all its incongruities, did not appear so utterly incompatible with that better order as it would have seemed to priests who had not grown up in English homes and who did not converse in the English speech. This activity without disruption of harmony soon found its expression in

---

CHAP  
II

§ 12 The  
Church  
compared  
with the  
Empire.

§ 13  
Church and  
State



CHAP  
II

---

literature and in increased exertion. Cædmon sang his song of the Creation. Bede, with English heart if with Roman speech, told the tale of the conquest, and the foundations were laid of the great Chronicle, which was to carry down to posterity the story of a people who were working out a history worthy of the telling. When the eighth century came, England had vigour to spare for other countries as well as for herself. English missionaries poured forth to carry the message of the gospel to the heathen, and, under the name of St. Boniface, the English Winfrid is still revered as the apostle to whom large populations in Germany owed their conversion.

§ 14  
Union of  
the King-  
doms under  
Egbert

If the example of the Church contributed to draw the peoples more closely together, the incidents of warfare tended in the same direction. In the early part of the seventh century four small kingdoms, East Anglia, Essex, Kent, and Sussex, divided the south-east of England. The other three, on whom lay the burden of contending against the yet unconquered Celts of the West, Northumberland, Mercia, and Wessex, had far wider territories. The frontier was gradually pushed westward, and the effect of the Christian teaching was seen in the milder treatment of the conquered. The kings of these larger kingdoms, as the conflict with the Celts drew to a close, turned their arms upon one another. Sometimes Northumberland, sometimes Mercia, showed itself stronger than the rest. Then came the turn of Wessex. In the beginning of the ninth century, Egbert, King of the West Saxons, obtained the acknowledgment of his over-lordship from the whole English-speaking race, from the Channel to the Forth. Egbert's rule was not founded, like the dominion of the conquerors of Rome, upon the warlike predominance of a superior race. Neither was it founded on the voluntary amalgamation of many races.

It was rather an aggregation of many kingships into one. The old kings either retained their positions under Egbert as under-kings, or gave place to ealdormen from Egbert's own family, who fulfilled the kingly functions in more direct subordination to himself.

CHAP  
II.

Such a union was a frail one. It would probably have broken down as the less successful efforts of the Northumbrian kings in the same direction had broken down before, but for the new flood of invasion which poured over England. As fierce as the ancestors of Englishmen themselves had been four centuries before, the Danish pirates had begun, even before Egbert's time, to harry the coasts of England. In the time of one of Egbert's sons they took up permanent quarters in England. The north and centre of the land fell easily into their hands. At the beginning of the reign of Alfred, the youngest and greatest of Egbert's grandsons, it seemed as if the whole would come permanently under their dominion. At last in 878, after an heroic struggle, he succeeded in imposing upon the invaders the Treaty of Wedmore, which saved from their grasp the country south of the Thames together with that part of Mercia which lay to the south-west of the Watling Street. For the rest their kings gave a vague acknowledgment of Alfred's over-lordship, an acknowledgment which he was in no position to interpret strictly. To the north of the line of partition the Danes settled at will. The Danish termination *-by* in such names as Derby and Ashby, Grimsby and Whitby, still marks the place of their settlements on the map of England.

§ 15 The  
Danish  
Wars

To Alfred and his house the half was more than the whole. In the struggle which his descendants, the West Saxon Kings carried on against the Danes they had what Egbert had not had, a national sentiment at their back. Gradually the frontier was pushed farther north,

§ 16 The  
Struggle of  
the West-  
Saxon  
Kings  
with the  
Danes.

CHAP  
II

---

immediate organic connection with the people. Its members were not elected from beneath. They became councillors, either from their own position in life, or as selected by the king. As long as there was a powerful enemy in the field, this breach in the continuity of the constitution might not be felt. But it was none the less a source of danger.

§6 Ad-  
ministra-  
tion of  
Justice.

The judicial arrangements of our ancestors were those of a strong-handed but law-loving race, in which each man was ready to do himself right with his own hand, but in which there was a general understanding that feuds should not be perpetual. The notion that it was the duty of the state to punish crime, and the notion that the criminal himself was any the worse for the crime which he had committed, would have been alike unintelligible to them. All that they saw was that it was in their power to enforce upon the kindred of a murdered man, or upon him who had suffered loss of property, the acceptance of a weregild, or money payment, in satisfaction of the injury done to them, which they might otherwise have avenged by the slaughter of the aggressor. As again the power of taking vengeance was different in different ranks, as the relations of a murdered king were more likely to take effectual vengeance than the relations of an earl or a simple ceorl, and as they therefore required more to induce them to draw back, a larger money payment was enforced in proportion to the rank of the person injured. As too the state had no interest in the matter excepting to prevent continual private warfare, it had no trained police to seize the criminal, and no trained advocates and judges to investigate evidence. It looked to the kindred of the accused person to present him before the popular assembly at which he was to be tried, or to pay his weregild in his stead. If he denied his guilt, he had to bring others to swear that he was

innocent, and the declaration of the belief of these compurgators in his favour was accepted as satisfactory. If he failed to find compurgators, he had still the resource of appealing to the ordeal, doubtless performed in heathen times in some specially sacred spot. The assembled people who acted as his judges contented themselves with seeing that the provisions of ancient customs were duly carried out

CHAP.  
II.

---

In proportion as the kingdoms increased in size, the moral defects of such a system must have been increasingly felt. The special tie which bound the gesith to his patron summoned into existence feelings of personal honour and loyalty, which were stronger, but at the same time narrower than the patriotic sentiment which bound the freeman to the community of his fellow tribesmen. The authority of the king was further off from him than the authority of the ealdorman had been. It is true that he had still a part in the action of the state, was still liable to be called out for service in the field, and that he and his fellows might be present on important occasions at the meetings of the king and his Witan, and might be allowed to applaud with their shouts the decisions taken in higher quarters. But even if the effect of the change be left out of account, it is evident that the moral needs of the Englishman of the sixth century, were precisely opposite to those of the Roman provincial of the fourth. In the empire where all individuality was crushed out by an enlightened but overwhelming despotism, the side of Christianity which was most acceptable was its anchorage in individual faith and energy. In the Teuton, within or without the old limits of the empire, individual vigour was the prominent characteristic. Organisation of bodies of men did not go very far. The needs of extensive warfare might do something, but its work was necessarily imperfect. If

§7 Moral  
Needs of  
the Popu-  
lation.

CHAP.  
II

---

the Teutonic settlers came to have an ideal at all, it was certain that it would be to them, as ideals are to all men, the complement of their existing acquirements. They required some view of life, which would at the same time satisfy their inarticulate need for a higher organisation, which would tame the wild strivings of passion in the individual man, and would teach the fierce red-handed slaughterer that self-denial and self-restraint were the highest virtues of human existence. The history of the middle ages in England, as on the Continent, is the history of successive generations accepting in church and state institutions which serve to repress or tame the wild exuberance of individual violence and passion. The middle ages start from diversity and aim at unity. Their art, their literature, their temporal and ecclesiastical legislation bear this impress distinctly.

§ 8 The  
Christian  
Mission-  
aries in  
England.

When Augustine and his fellow missionaries landed in Kent in 597, they began this work of moral order. In one sense their arrival was the first step in the undoing of the isolation from Roman ideas, in which England had been standing for a century and a half. In another sense they brought something quite new. The law and order of the empire had reposed on the swords of its legions. It had asked no assent from those upon whom it had imposed its will. The law and order of the Christian missionary rested on persuasion alone. He asked but for voluntary obedience, for that obedience which strengthens instead of weakening the sense of personality in the individual who accepts it. The old unity had crushed out individuality. The new unity would grow out of it, would found itself upon individual conscience, and harmonise individual energies for higher ends.

In the midst of the troubles which preceded and succeeded the fall of the empire in the West, Christianity

had advanced in two special directions. It was more monastic, and it was better organised, in the sixth century than it had been in the fourth. Against the faults of monasticism it is especially easy to declaim. A system which takes men out of the world and forbids them to exercise the ordinary duties of men amongst men, which acts in defiance of the strongest tendencies of human nature, instead of reducing them under discipline, and which in consequence erects a whole system of artificial duties and artificial faults, can never be regarded as a satisfactory solution of the problems which that nature presents. Nevertheless, it is impossible that a system so widely adopted, and so constantly recurred to, should have been wanting in elements fitting it at least for a time to render the highest services to mankind. The apologies which some are inclined to make for it may be dismissed as irrelevant. If we can only praise the monks because they improved cultivation, or even because they were benevolent to the poor, it is better not to praise them at all. These things are but the accidents of monasticism. Its essence was a selfish unselfishness. It aimed at sacrificing the excitement and vain-glory of the struggles and triumphs of the present, sometimes it may be, at escaping from the depressing defeats and miseries of life, in order to gain eternal peace in the world to come, with some first-fruits of quiet and rest in the world which was. Yet self-centred as were the thoughts of the monk, his self-seeking was of incomparably a higher order than that of the world around. Other men might provide for themselves by grasping avarice, by hasty passionate violence, by giving free rein to their most debasing passions. The monk would keep the wild animalism of his nature firmly down; and, as always happens, the effort to rise higher in one direction brought with it the power of rising

CHAP.  
II.

§ 9. The  
Monastic  
System

CHAP.  
II.

higher in others. The monk could not help being an example of self-denial to others, and self-denial was the special virtue which the men of that fierce age needed most to learn. The monk could not help overflowing in bounty to the poor and suffering, and turning the fountain of blessing which he had opened in his own heart into a stream by the sides of which multitudes might rejoice. He represented not the best ideal of life, but the best ideal of the kind of life most opposed to the faults of contemporary existence.

§ 10 The  
Penitential  
System

The penitential system of the Church was an attempt to implant amongst laymen something of the monastic rule. The authors of the penitential code no more thought of descending into the heart and conscience than the authors of the wergild thought of descending into the heart and conscience. They did not bid the guilt-laden penitent simply to go and sin no more, nor did they proclaim the law of the gospel, 'Owe no man anything but to love one another'. His penance was measured out by weeks and years, as the wergild was measured out by shillings and pence. So much time was to be passed without tasting anything but bread and water, so much time in lighter mortification. But there was that in the penitential rules which was not in the wergild system. If the clergy made any difference between persons, it was, that the higher the clerical rank of the person who committed the offence was, the heavier was to be his penance, whilst the layman was punished more heavily in proportion to the rank of the person injured. The lay system, in short, started from the notion that vengeance was to be bought. The church system started from the idea, that an evil action polluted the actor. Man acquired in this way a moral sense which he had not before. He learned that he was accountable for his actions to a judge higher than the king or the popular

assembly, and he learned too that ill-doing was an injury done to his own soul. The idea of purity and rectitude as an object of desire for the sake of a man's own well-being planted itself firmly amongst men. Hence, too, the strange forms taken in the Christian imagination by the spirits and deities of the old pagan mythology. The spirit of the wood or the stream came to be the ugly horned unsavoury devil of Christian mythology. The change was a sign of the new position assigned by man to the supernatural powers of his imagination. The spirits of whom the heathen told were beings to be propitiated and dreaded. The devil of the Christian's tale was a being with whom he himself had a conflict. There was war now not merely on the battle-field, but in the heart of every man, and the stories which he loved to tell were but the expression of his knowledge of a conflict, which, to however strange results it might lead in the immediate present, contributed incalculably to raise in the scale of moral beings the man who struggled against his lower nature.

As Christianity was more monastic in the end of the sixth century than it had been in the fourth, it was also more monarchical. The authority of the pope indeed in the hands of Gregory the Great, by whom Augustine was sent to England, was not put forth with such high-sounding claims to obedience as were afterwards heard. But it was becoming more and more the central force of Western Christendom. It gained strength from its being exercised from Rome, the seat of the older empire, from the personal qualities of many of the Popes, and from the tendency of the barbarian tribes to welcome a centre of unity in the midst of their weakness and their divisions. The very haughtiness with which the emissaries of Rome maintained the claims of him who sent them was an important element of success. When Augustine

§ 11  
Church Or-  
ganisation



met the priests of the British Church, and alienated still further, by remaining seated in their presence, those who were already alienated from one who had preached the gospel to the hated invaders, we may be sure that he appeared more than ever worthy of respect in the eyes of the Englishmen who accompanied him. When Wilfrid reasoned against the clergy of Northumberland, who had learned from Irish teachers different modes of keeping Easter and of cutting the clerical tonsure than those which were practised in the Roman church, and which they declared themselves to have derived by tradition from St. John, through Columba, he clenched his argument, by claiming for the pope, as St. Peter's representative, the keys of the kingdom of heaven. The king, before whom he spoke, at once acknowledged the force of his reasoning. If St. Peter, he said, was the door-keeper of heaven, he would follow him lest he should be shut out when he came to the gates. As Christianity in the form in which it appeared broke through all division of ranks, and knew nothing of eorls and ceorls, of freeman, of serf, or of slave, so its institutions rose above the civil institutions of the land. When Archbishop Theodore organised the English Church at the end of the seventh century, he created or adapted institutions which were wider and more universal than those of the seven or eight kingdoms into which the original tribes had by that time coalesced. From north to south the priest took no account of divided nationality. The man born on the banks of the Tweed might find his life's work on the shores of the Southampton water, or in the secluded East Anglian peninsula between the fens and the sea. As he passed backwards and forwards on his mission of consolation and warning he was doing unconscious work in levelling national distinctions by his

presence, as he was levelling distinctions of rank by his creed.

CHAP  
II

In some sort the work of the Christian Church was a repetition of the work done by the legislators of the Empire. They too had set themselves to sweep away differences, and to impose unity upon populations separated by far more deep-seated distinctions than those which kept apart the inhabitants of England. But whilst the Roman imposed his unity from without and from above, the Church sought to found it upon the heart and conscience. Grand and imposing as her institutions were, they blended with the civil institutions at the base. If the archiepiscopal presidency of Canterbury or York and the august supremacy of Rome had no parallel in the civil world, the parishes were simply ecclesiastical townships, and the bishoprics were conterminous with the kingdoms, or with the divisions of the kingdoms, which represented the older tribes.

§ 12 The Church compared with the Empire.

So it came about that Church and State worked together harmoniously in England, as they did nowhere else in Europe. The bishops and clergy had no memories of an older civilisation to defend, no conquered population to protect. The same English people were governed in one way for certain purposes, as they were governed in another way for other purposes. Very soon the entire clergy of England was English by birth and speech. Church and State acted and reacted on one another. The ideas of a higher and better order promulgated by the church, found their way insensibly into the minds of laymen. The lay state, with all its incongruities, did not appear so utterly incompatible with that better order as it would have seemed to priests who had not grown up in English homes and who did not converse in the English speech. This activity without disruption of harmony soon found its expression in

§ 13 Church and State.

CHAP  
II

literature and in increased exertion. Cædmon sang his song of the Creation. Bede, with English heart if with Roman speech, told the tale of the conquest, and the foundations were laid of the great Chronicle, which was to carry down to posterity the story of a people who were working out a history worthy of the telling. When the eighth century came, England had vigour to spare for other countries as well as for herself. English missionaries poured forth to carry the message of the gospel to the heathen, and, under the name of St. Boniface, the English Winfrid is still revered as the apostle to whom large populations in Germany owed their conversion.

§14  
Union of  
the King-  
doms under  
Egbert

If the example of the Church contributed to draw the peoples more closely together, the incidents of warfare tended in the same direction. In the early part of the seventh century four small kingdoms, East Anglia, Essex, Kent, and Sussex, divided the south-east of England. The other three, on whom lay the burden of contending against the yet unconquered Celts of the West, Northumberland, Mercia, and Wessex, had far wider territories. The frontier was gradually pushed westward, and the effect of the Christian teaching was seen in the milder treatment of the conquered. The kings of these larger kingdoms, as the conflict with the Celts drew to a close, turned their arms upon one another. Sometimes Northumberland, sometimes Mercia, showed itself stronger than the rest. Then came the turn of Wessex. In the beginning of the ninth century, Egbert, King of the West Saxons, obtained the acknowledgment of his over-lordship from the whole English-speaking race, from the Channel to the Forth. Egbert's rule was not founded, like the dominion of the conquerors of Rome, upon the warlike predominance of a superior race. Neither was it founded on the voluntary amalgamation of many races.

It was rather an aggregation of many kingships into one. The old kings either retained their positions under Egbert as under-kings, or gave place to ealdormen from Egbert's own family, who fulfilled the kingly functions in more direct subordination to himself.

CHAP  
II.

---

Such a union was a frail one. It would probably have broken down as the less successful efforts of the Northumbrian kings in the same direction had broken down before, but for the new flood of invasion which poured over England. As fierce as the ancestors of Englishmen themselves had been four centuries before, the Danish pirates had begun, even before Egbert's time, to harry the coasts of England. In the time of one of Egbert's sons they took up permanent quarters in England. The north and centre of the land fell easily into their hands. At the beginning of the reign of Alfred, the youngest and greatest of Egbert's grandsons, it seemed as if the whole would come permanently under their dominion. At last in 878, after an heroic struggle, he succeeded in imposing upon the invaders the Treaty of Wedmore, which saved from their grasp the country south of the Thames together with that part of Mercia which lay to the south-west of the Watling Street. For the rest their kings gave a vague acknowledgment of Alfred's over-lordship, an acknowledgment which he was in no position to interpret strictly. To the north of the line of partition the Danes settled at will. The Danish termination *-by* in such names as Derby and Ashby, Grimsby and Whitby, still marks the place of their settlements on the map of England.

§ 15 The  
Danish  
Wars

To Alfred and his house the half was more than the whole. In the struggle which his descendants, the West Saxon Kings carried on against the Danes they had what Egbert had not had, a national sentiment at their back. Gradually the frontier was pushed farther north.

§ 16 The  
Struggle of  
the West-  
Saxon  
Kings  
with the  
Danes.

CHAP.  
II

Before Alfred's son Edward died, the whole of Mercia was incorporated with his immediate dominions. The way in which the thing was done was more remarkable than the thing itself. Like the Romans, he made the fortified towns the means of upholding his power. But unlike the Romans, he did not garrison them with colonists from amongst his own immediate dependents. He filled them, as Henry the Fowler did afterwards in Saxony, with free townsmen, whose hearts were at one with their fellow countrymen around. Before he died in 924, the Danish chiefs in the land beyond the Humber had acknowledged his over-lordship, and even the Celts of Wales and Scotland had given in their submission in some form which they were not likely to interpret too strictly. His son and his two grandsons, Athelstan, Edmund, and Edred completed the work, and when after the short and troubled interval of Edwy's rule in Wessex, Edgar united the undivided realm under his sway in 958, he had no internal enemies to suppress. He allowed the Celtic Scottish King who had succeeded to the inheritance of the Pictish race to possess the old Northumbrian land north of the Tweed, where they and their descendants learned the habits and speech of Englishmen. But he treated him and the other Celtic kings distinctly as his inferiors, though it was perhaps well for him that he did not attempt to impose upon them any very tangible tokens of his supremacy. The story of his being crowned by eight kings on the Dec is doubtless only a legend by which the peaceful king was glorified in the troubled times which followed.

§ 17.  
Growth of  
Kingly Au-  
thority.

Such a struggle, so successfully conducted, could not fail to be accompanied by a vast increase of that kingly authority which had been on the growth from the time of its first establishment. The hereditary caldormen, the representatives of the old kingly houses, had passed

away. The old tribes, or—where their limitations had been obliterated by the tide of Danish conquest, as was the case in central and northern England—the new artificial divisions which had taken their place, were now known as shires, and the very name testified that they were regarded only as parts of a greater whole. The shire mote still continued the tradition of the old popular assemblies. At its head as presidents of its deliberations were the ealdorman and the bishop, each of them owing their appointment to the king, and it was summoned by the shire-reeve or sheiiff, himself even more directly an officer of the king, whose business it was to see that all the royal dues were paid within the shire. In the more general concerns of the kingdom, the king consulted with his Witan, whose meetings were called the Witenagemot, a body which, at least for all ordinary purposes, was composed not of any representatives of the shire-motes, but of his own dependents, the ealdormen, the bishops, and a certain number of thegns whose name, meaning 'servants,' implied at least at first, that they either were or had at one time been in some way in the employment of the king.

Such a change looks, as long as we attend only to words and forms, as if the kingship were acquiring something like absolute power. No conclusion could be more delusive. Absolute power is gained by kings who put themselves at the head of a popular movement against an oppressive aristocracy, at a time when the people are not prepared to combine in order to carry out under their own inspection the reforms which they need. Under such circumstances, a successful king, like the early Emperors, can do very much as he pleases to individuals. Nothing of the kind is to be found in our early English history. What the English freeman wanted was not to be avenged upon his richer

§ 18  
Growth of  
a Military  
Aristo-  
cracy.

CHAP.  
II

neighbour, but to be protected, without the burden of constantly being called out for military service in the most distant quarters. The view of life taken by an ordinary landowner was very limited. His politics were but the politics of his hundred, or at the most they extended only to his shire. The great English kingdom scarcely appealed at all to his imagination, and it was a real hardship if the man of Hampshire was asked to leave his fields to repel a Danish incursion on the coast of Norfolk, or to establish the supremacy of the national king over the Danish chieftains of Northumberland. The necessities of war therefore combined with the sluggishness of the mass of the population to favour the growth of a military force, which would leave the tillers of the soil to their own peaceful occupations. As the conditions which make a standing army possible on a large scale did not yet exist, such a force must be afforded by a special class, and that class must be composed of those who either had too much land to till themselves, or, having no land at all, were released from the bonds which tied the cultivator to the soil, in other words, it must be composed of a landed aristocracy and its dependents. In working out this change, England was only aiming at the results which similar conditions were producing on the Continent. But just as the homogeneousness of the population drew even the foreign element of the Church into harmony with the established institutions, so it was with the military aristocracy. It grouped itself round the king, and it supplemented, instead of overthrowing, the old popular assemblies.

§ 19. The  
Eorls superseded  
by the  
Thegns.

Two classes of men, the eorls and the gcsiths, had been marked out from their fellows at the time of the conquest. The thegn of Edgar's day differed from both, but he had some of the distinguishing marks of

either. He was not like the *gesith*, a mere personal follower of the king. He did not, like the *eorl*, owe his position to his birth. Yet his relation to the king was a close one, and he had a hold upon the land as firm as that of the older *eorl*. He may, perhaps, best be described as a *gesith* who had acquired the position of an *eorl* without entirely throwing off his own characteristics. Of the details of the change which took place we can only speak with hesitation. The period which separated the reign of Edgar from the Teutonic conquest was five hundred years, a period as long as that which separates the reign of Victoria from the reign of Edward III. Of this period our notices are scanty. But there can be little doubt that the change was connected with a change in the manner of holding land. At first land was doubtless held to be the property of the tribe, and when granted to individual landowners by the tribe was held as 'folkland'—that is to say, as land granted by the people, and held subject to the old popular custom by which in the event of a landowner dying without children the land passed to his kinsmen. When the king became powerful, he and his Witan often freed lands thus held from the popular custom by his 'book' or charter. Lands thus held were known as book land. The *gesith* who had become possessed of book land ceased to be a mere member of the king's military household. He became a landowner as well, with special duties to perform to the king, but nevertheless with the feeling of independence which the possession of land is apt to give. His example too told on others. If he strengthened the king's hands, his relation to the king gave him strength. He had special jurisdiction given him over his tenants and serfs, exempting him and them from the authority of the hundred mote, though they still remained, except in very exceptional cases, under the authority of the shire mote. Eorls who



CHAP  
II

had no such privilege, we may well believe, though there is no direct evidence on the point, coveted his advantage and acquired from the king the rights and duties of the thegnhood. Even the simple freeholder discovered the weakness of his isolated condition, and commended himself and his land to a wealthy thegn, engaging to him service and to be judged in his court, in return for support and protection.

§ 20. The  
Change  
gradual

Even up to the Norman conquest this change was still going on. To the end, indeed, the old constitution forms were not broken down. The hundred mote was not abandoned, where freemen enough remained to fill it. Even where all the land of a hundred had passed under the protection of a lord there was little outward change. The tenants were summoned to hear causes under the presidency of the lord's officer, instead of being summoned under presidency of an officer appointed by themselves or by the king. But that was all. The shire mote too was still in existence. Even in war the obligation of freemen to defend the country was still enforced, though pressed with a special force upon the king's thegns. There was thus no actual breach of continuity in the nation. The thegnhood pushed its roots down, as it were, amongst the free classes. Nevertheless there was danger of such a breach of continuity coming about. The freeman entered more and more largely into a condition of dependence, and there was a great risk lest such a condition of dependence should become a condition of servitude. Here and there, by some extraordinary stroke of luck, a freeman might rise to be a thegn. But the condition of the class to which he belonged was deteriorating every day. The downward progress towards serfdom was too easy to take, and by large masses of the population it was already taken. Below the increasing

numbers of the serfs was to be found the lower class of slaves, who were actually the property of their masters

CHAP.  
II.

The Witenagemot was in reality a select body of thegns, if the bishops, who held their lands in much the same way, be regarded as thegns. It was rather an inchoate House of Lords, than an inchoate Parliament, after our modern ideas. It was natural that a body of men which united a great part of the wealth with almost all the influence in the kingdom should be possessed of high constitutional powers. The Witenagemot elected the king, though as yet they always chose him out of the royal family, which was held to have sprung from the god Woden. There were even cases in which they deposed unworthy kings. Their consent was necessary to make peace, to declare war, or to make a grant of folkland. No act of public importance was valid without their consent. No ealdorman was appointed, no bishop placed in his see, without their voice being heard in the matter. It would thus be easy to argue from one set of facts that the king was almost a cypher, just as from another set of facts it would be easy to argue that he was almost absolute. In truth, he was neither absolute nor a cypher. Kings like Alfred and his descendants had done pretty much as they wished, because they wished nothing which would be opposed to the wishes of the thegns. The more wealthy a man was, the more desirous he would be that his land might remain his own, instead of becoming the property of a sea-roving Dane. At home, as long as the king was a man of ability and character, there was no opposition of interests as yet between the king and his thegns. He himself was but as a thegn on his own estates. He too had tenants and serfs whose ancestors had once been freemen on his lands.

§ 21 The  
King and  
the Wite-  
nagemot.

As in the shiremoot the ealdorman and the bishop sat side by side, so sat Archbishop Dunstan by the side

CHAP  
II

§ 22 Dun-  
stan's eccle-  
siastical  
Policy

of Edgar. After the legends which have obscured his fame are swept away, we descry, though dimly, the form of a great statesman. The Danish wars had swept away the culture which had sent forth missionaries to the continent in earlier days, and which Alfred had striven hard to revive. Dunstan's life-long work was the work of an educationalist. He strove to bring back to England the knowledge and culture in which it was now outstript by the continent. He sought the moral training of his countrymen as well as their intellectual advancement. It was inevitable that in so doing he should throw in his lot with the monks. The conditions which enable a married clergy to hold up an example of life to their parishioners did not then exist. There was no open-eyed public opinion around the parish priest, no widely spread publicity calling for watchfulness against the temptation of turning the means which were intended to enable him to instruct others into property for the sustenance of his own family. Family cares devoured him, and it was well if, living as other men did, he did not become partaker in their sins. It would have been no wonder if Dunstan, like Hildebrand and Damiani after him, had sought to confront the evil by the drastic remedy of the proclamation of universal clerical celibacy. It is the mark of his greatness that he did nothing of the kind. He did not indeed resist two bishops who drove out the secular clergy from certain specified ecclesiastical houses in the dioceses of Winchester and Worcester. But he did not imitate them himself, and, as far as we know, he gave no encouragement to those who wished to do so. The monk, he believed, being bound to a celibate life, could give himself to his spiritual and educational mission as the married priest could not. But he steadily refused to use compulsion in favour of that which he regarded as the better life. He preferred working by example.

The secular laws of Edgar bear the stamp of Dunstan's mind. In them, an assumption of such a guardianship over the poor and oppressed as befits a king, is combined with an acquiescence in those existing conditions of the national life which made the exercise of that guardianship so difficult. The great division of the population into Danes and Englishmen stands revealed. Edgar can venture, with the consent of his witan, to amend the laws for the behoof of Englishmen. The Danes must be left to such laws as they please to choose for themselves. The spectacle which the reign presents is that of a king aiming at a higher life for his people but conscious of the want of support. The king is more national than the thegns, and the thegns are more national than the people. The thegns would be ready to gather into groups, East Anglian, Northumbrian, Mercian, or West Saxon. Danes and English were especially ready to fly apart. In the lower classes there was still less cohesion. A strong king might draw the band a little more closely, if he tried to do no more. A weak king with unwise remissness and unwise violence would bring chaos back again.

With Ethelred, chaos came again indeed. A fresh invasion of the Northern Danes found local resistance but no general resistance. The local ealdorman, an Ulfkytel or a Brihtnoth, might lead the men of his shire to battle. But the king who, like Ethelred, was content to bribe off the invader made all national resistance impossible. He alone was the band by which the sticks of the faggot were united for resistance. When he contented himself with inaction, each stick was separately overpowered. The Witenagemot had in theory the power of deposing kings. But it had not the will to exercise it. Each man had his own interests and intrigues to attend to. At last, after Ethelred's death came a bright

CHAP.  
II.

§ 23. The  
secular  
Laws of  
Edgar

§ 24.  
Ethelred  
and Ed-  
mund

CHAP  
II§ 25  
Cnut's  
Reign

moment under the hero Edmund. With his death all hope of resistance died away, and England without further struggle sank under the sway of Cnut.

Cnut's rule was not as terrible as might have been feared. He was perfectly unscrupulous in striking down the treacherous and mischievous chieftains who had made a trade of Ethelred's weakness and the country's divisions. But he was wise and strong enough to rule, not by increasing but by effacing those divisions. Resting his power upon his Scandinavian kingdoms beyond the sea, upon his Danish countrymen in England and his Danish huscarles, or specially trained soldiers in his service, he was able without even the appearance of weakness to do what in him lay to bind Dane and Englishman together as common instruments of his power. Fidelity counted more with him than birth. To bring England itself into unity was beyond his power. The device which he hit upon was operative only in hands as strong as his own. There were to be four great earls, deriving their name from the Danish word *jarl*, centralising the forces of government in Wessex, in Mercia, in East Anglia, and in Northumberland. With Cnut the four were officials of the highest class. They were there because he placed them there. They would cease to be there if he so willed it. But it could hardly be that it would always be so. Some day or another, unless a great catastrophe swept away the creation of Cnut, the earldoms would pass into territorial sovereignties, and the divisions of England would be made evident openly.

§ 26 Ed-  
ward the  
Confessor.

After the brief and inglorious reigns of the sons of Cnut, the English crown was once more won by a king of the old West Saxon line. Edward the Confessor was less English in his character than any of his subjects. His mother Emma was the sister and daughter of

Norman Dukes, and he had himself spent the early years of life in exile in Normandy. He passed amongst his contemporaries as one endowed with prophetic powers, and in truth he saw what none around him saw, the insufficiency of the moral and mental standard of English life. He shrank from the jealousies of the great English families, from the rough animalism of Englishmen, from their want of polish and culture, and from their low ideal of the religious life. But he shrank from this with the petulance of a petty mind. He tried to do weakly what Dunstan had tried to do strongly. Dunstan had introduced foreign ideas and foreign teachers, with the purpose of weaving the golden threads of higher thought into the midst of the strong web of English life. Edward would have substituted that which he liked for that which he disliked, would have surrounded himself with foreign officers in church and state, would have spoken in the tongue of the foreigner and lived a foreigner's life, and he was not content till he had defied the laws and customs of his despised land by offering the succession to the throne to the foreign Duke of the Normans, without a thought of consulting his own Witan, in whom alone its disposal rested.

Insulted in such a way, the English feeling turned, if not upon the king, at least upon his foreign favourites. The revolt was headed by Godwin, and Harold, his nobler son. After Godwin's death, Harold ruled England in Edward's name. Strenuous and warlike, prompt in decision, and generous in thought, Harold was the ablest man of an unprogressive race. What he did he did well. But he brought no new ideas into the work of government, or into the existing system of military tactics. When on Edward's death, he was called to assume the crown, it was the natural choice of the wor-

§ 27 The  
House of  
Godwin

CHAP  
II.

---

thiest man in England. But he could not bind Englishmen together into a national unity. Edwin and Morcar, the chiefs of central and northern England, looked coldly on him with family jealousy. They were glad of his aid against the Norsemen at Stamford Bridge. They would not come to his help at Senlac. His last fight was a combat, in which heroic bravery strove in vain to compensate for want of discipline and lack of intelligence. In fighting qualities both sides were equal. The power of grasping the new idea, and the readiness to subordinate individual thought to the skill of the commander, were on the side of the invader. The Norman troops attacking, or flying in simulated rout, at the word of Duke William, or exchanging the combat of the horseman for the combat of the archer at his command, deserved, at least in a military sense, to win. William put his mind into the battle, Harold could but give his example.

## CHAPTER III.

## NORMAN AND ANGEVIN ORGANISATION.

IN the first half of the eleventh century, the two most purely Teutonic states, Germany and England, were beyond comparison, the strongest and the best governed states of Europe. Before the end of the century, England had been smitten to the ground, and Germany was in deadly combat with the foe before whose persistent attacks she was ultimately to fall. Up to that time it seemed to be the law of progress that in England, as on the Continent, the last comer who placed his Teutonic freshness of vigour under the restraints of Roman civilisation should rise to the mastery. As dominion passed here from the descendants of Alfred and Athelstan to Cnut, so had it passed there from the children of Clovis to the Carolingian border family from the lands east of the Meuse, and then again to the new border family of the Saxon line of Henry and the Ottos. The second half of the eleventh century witnessed a great revulsion. It was the time of the reaction of the south against the north. In the world of ideas a great spiritual power arose at Rome, clothing in ecclesiastical forms the claims of the old imperial city, and baffling and driving back the Teutonic sovereign who had decked himself in the imperial mantle which the great Otto and the greater Charles had donned, as the symbol of the heritage of Constantine and Augustus. In our own

CHAP.  
III

---

§ 1 North  
and South.



CHAP  
III

land the national kingship was struck down by a Norman host, many of whom, indeed, were of kindred blood—if the kinship was but distant—with the Englishmen whom they attacked, but which was nevertheless imbued with southern thought, which spoke a southern tongue, and which waged war with all the art and weapons of the South. The coincidence is too striking to have been altogether accidental. It was not without a reason that Harold fell at Senlac in 1066, and that in 1076, but ten years later, Henry IV was standing a shivering penitent on the snows before the barred gate of Canossa.

§ 2. New  
Ideas in  
Italy and  
France.

Ideas which change the face of the world spring from nations in a state of suffering, not from nations in comfortable circumstances. The political arrangements of Germany were not satisfactory when she gave birth to the Reformation, nor were the social arrangements of France satisfactory when she gave birth to the Revolution. In the eleventh century, the German and the Englishman were too content with their own lot to strive eagerly for something new, whilst the idea of higher order and government easily found room in the brains of Italian priests who had no national government to look up to, and who saw a stranger lording it in the glorious cities whose very stones proclaimed them to be the work of Italian hands in days when Italians were the foremost men of the world. So too, it was in the midst of France, distracted and torn by feuds and rivalries as it was, that Norman William grasped the full power of the arrow and the horseman as agencies of war, and filled his mind with notions of organised government, which he strove to realise in his new country beyond the sea.

§ 3 Nor-  
man  
Adapt-  
ability

The Normans themselves were not originators. But their power of adapting the ideas of others was wonderful. No race wandered into so many parts of Europe.

No race was so willing to welcome merit from whatever quarter it came. Whilst the Englishman stayed at home and hated foreigners, the Norman willingly emigrated in search of adventure or gain, and displayed no grudging at the sight of the Italian Lanfranc and the Italian Anselm seated on the metropolitan throne of Canterbury.

CHAP.  
III.

Such a character, in spite of a predisposition to violence ordinarily hidden under external forms of courtesy, was a promising element in the building up of a state. But it was to the position of the Norman conquerors far more than to their mental habits that the organisation of William's government was due. The body of warriors who carved out estates for themselves under the forms of technical law, could not, in the face of the English people, resolve itself with safety into its separate units. It must be ready at any moment for self-defence, and must therefore see without reluctance the very strictest powers needed for the maintenance of military discipline placed in the hands of its chief. For many a long year the conquerors would still be a garrison in a conquered country, and they could not, therefore, free themselves from the obligations of discipline which such a position entailed. No doubt the new landed arrangements were modelled upon those which were familiar to the conquerors in France. The theory was adopted that all the land in England was the king's land, held by others directly or indirectly from him. If at first nothing more was recognised than the old English obligation of finding soldiers in proportion to the extent of land held, this was at least before the death of Henry I. converted into a distinct feudal tenure. The English system had required that so many men should be furnished by so much land, but it provided no steady means of enforcing the obligation. The Norman system proclaimed that if the men did not come, they

§ 4. Norman Organisation in England.

CHAP.  
III.

had forfeited their land, and the Norman king was strong enough to enforce the penalty. To some extent, doubtless, the Norman king derived this strength from his position at the head of the conquerors. But if it had no other basis, it would hardly have been long maintained. If the native English population had remained as divided, and consequently as weak, as they were during the years of the Conquest, the Norman nobles, relieved from fear of danger from below, would sooner or later have cast off obedience to a king who would be no longer needed to sustain them in their estates. Some difficulty would, indeed, have been thrown in their way by the prudent prevision of the Conqueror and his sons. The first William at once abolished the great earldoms of Cnut, granted the title but rarely, and confined its advantages, as a rule, to the enjoyment of pecuniary revenues in single counties, whilst he transferred the official duties of the earls to the sheriffs who were more completely under his own control. With the same object, he took care, in heaping landed property on his principal followers, to scatter their estates over many counties—as Cleisthenes had once scattered the demes of his new Athenian tribes—in order that they might be unable to combine against the crown the forces which they thus acquired.

§ 5. The  
National  
Kingship.

These expedients however would but have postponed the evil day, if William had not had something more than mere shiftful contrivance in reserve. Such a resource was near at hand. William knew well that the English people had been subdued not from want of strength, but from want of coherence. That coherence he was himself prepared to give. If Englishmen did not love William, they loved the local Norman intruders less. Northumbrian, and Mercian, and West Saxon at last found a common cause in their common hatred of a local aristocracy ignorant of their speech and habits,

greedy of gain, and careless of the restraints of law in the arrogance of their might. An English nation was rapidly forming itself by means of this common hatred, and of this English nation William offered himself, so far as suited his own purposes, to be the leader. He knew how to establish his power by old theories as well as by new ones. If he claimed to be the universal landlord, as Edgar or Cnut had never been, he claimed also to be the national king far more truly than Edgar or Cnut had ever been. He knew how to use technical law to cover the most startling innovations. He gave himself out to be the true and lawful successor of Edward, as a king whose title had been acknowledged by the English Witan. If he was able to reward his Norman followers, it was because the English patriots who struggled against him had been guilty of an act of technical treason against their king. If too he was able to defy the insubordination of those very followers, it was because he really offered himself to the English as their national king. When the great Domesday survey was finished, it looked like a mere recognition of old rights of the old English kingship, according to the old English law. When at the great assembly of Salisbury, William received the oath of allegiance from every landowner in England, whether he were his own immediate vassal or not, and so reminded his subjects that as long as he had the power there would be no excuse for any man who followed his feudal superior in arms against his king, he did but carry out the old English principle of due military obligation on the part of all landowners, irrespective of the special conditions of their tenure of land. Practically, however, the old conditions were reinvigorated with a new force. When the Conqueror summoned his subjects round him against the rebels of 1074, and still more decisively when the English

CHAP.  
III

---

population rallied round the Red King when his succession was questioned by Norman barons on either side of the Channel, a force was behind the king more united and compact than any on which the earlier rulers of native race had been able to fall back.

§ 6. Institutions of the first Norman Kings.

Hence, though the Witenagemot continued to exist in a changed form, its action was far less constant than it had been in the time of Edgar or Edward. The Great Council of the Norman kings was the assembly of men holding land immediately from the crown, which few were likely to attend who were not wealthy or influential enough to make it probable that their voice would count for something in the deliberations of the body. The real change however was not in the alteration from personal dependence to feudal dependence. It lay in quite another direction. The old English Witan had, if they chose to exert it, the chief force of the realm behind them. The new Norman Great Council was by no means weak, but there was a power in the realm stronger still. The first place was held by the king resting on the English people.

§ 7. Their Imperfection.

Such an arrangement could never suffice for a permanent settlement. Some day both king and council would have to come more closely into connection with the people. For the present it was but a choice between the tyranny of one and the tyranny of many. The mass of the nation only supported the king from fear of something worse. They had no means of reaching his ear, of impressing upon him their wants and wishes. Not they, but their enemies were represented by the Great Council. It was well when kings like William I. and Henry I. were wise enough to regularise their administration for their own ends. It was an evil day when a king like William II. threw himself into sheer oppression from the knowledge that he was indispensable.

The more perfect the institutions of a state are, the more possible it is to leave ideas to influence men simply with their own inherent weight. In the time of a king like William Rufus, they needed a special organisation to give them a chance of being listened to. The system of entrusting the direction of Church affairs to the king and his Witan had not worked well. The Church might be regarded as identical with the nation, but it did not rise above the nation, did not, except in rare instances, produce men who could teach the nation to be better than it was. The performance of the duties of the clergy threatened to sink into mere routine, and their morals threatened to become no better than those of the laity around them. There was a danger lest clerical offices should sink into hereditary positions bringing no help to the souls of those for whose sake those offices had been erected. It was precisely against these evils that the great spiritual movement of the age was directed. Springing from the monastery of Cluny, it gained a hearing from emperors and popes. The remedies which it proposed were the abolition of simony, that is to say, of the purchase of Church offices, and the abolition of clerical marriage. With all allowance for the evil caused by the stringent enforcement of the latter demand, so far as it could be enforced at all, it is impossible not to see that in some form or other these ideas were indispensable to the progress of the world. It is hardly possible for us, even in imagination, to conceive a danger to modern civilisation similar in kind to that which threatened the men of the eleventh century from feudal brutality, with its contempt for mental thought and its hatred of the bonds of morality. Yet it is only by steadily keeping before us the existence of this danger, that it is possible to pass a fair judgment on the drastic remedies proposed by the medieval churchmen. Nor must it be forgotten that, in

CHAP.  
III.

§ 8 The  
Cluniac  
Reforms.

CHAP  
III.

the eleventh century marriage was likely to interfere with the work of the clergy in a way in which it would not interfere with it at a later time. It was not merely that the married priest would be entangled in worldly affairs, but that it would be almost impossible to escape from a lowering influence in his own home. Medieval education was a male education. According to the ideal of the reformers of the eleventh century the priest was to be mentally as well as spiritually far above his fellow men. For women, save in exceptional cases, there was no education, no cultivation of the higher powers. The ideal of modern marriage, that mutual helpfulness in the higher aims of life, was impossible when the wife must of necessity be rude, untaught, familiar only with the lower and material side of the world. She would be a drag on the upward course, not a consoler and a helper. The true remedy no doubt lay not in clerical celibacy but in female education. The choice of the former is only one of the many instances which history affords of the application of a partial and unsatisfactory relief as an escape from acknowledged evils, because the complete and satisfactory relief has not entered as yet within the sphere of vision.

§ 9 The  
Hilde-  
brandine  
Papacy  
and the  
Conqueror

The abolition of simony and of clerical marriage did not make up the whole of the papal programme. By degrees a third idea was added to the other two. At first even Hildebrand would have been content to see the remedies which he valued worked out by kings and emperors. It was only when, as Pope Gregory VII, he found that this could not be, that he gradually added the third demand for the erection of a universal clerical state of which the pope should be the absolute head, and of which the clergy in all parts of Christendom should be the willing and subservient instruments, bound by the closest ties to Rome, and by no ties at all to the society in the midst of which they lived.

Such an arrangement would be most objectionable in the nineteenth century, but it does not follow that it was not an object for which good men might reasonably contend in the eleventh century. Both now and then the great object is that a morality higher than the morality of ordinary men, and a knowledge deeper than the knowledge of ordinary men, shall find a standing ground from which to raise the low standard which exists. To achieve such a standing ground without disturbance of existing arrangements is to secure the real spiritual power against the temporal, and to solve the problem of the two authorities which grew up in the days of the Roman Empire, and which distracted the States of the Middle Ages. Gradually the civilised world has come to the perception that the domain of thought, of morality, and of religion is best left to the safeguard of freedom, assured by the settled conviction of peoples and governments that so it is best for all. In the eleventh century no such conviction was possible. Thought still ran in very definite channels, and had no tendency to strike out new and untrodden paths. The society of men in the world hung loosely together, troubling itself about little else than material enjoyments. The state itself was nowhere constituted as a state should be. Government in the hands of the Norman kings gave protection to the masses, but there was no welding together of governors and subjects into a harmonious whole. The arrangement made by the Conqueror was therefore perhaps, as long as his own life was prolonged, better calculated than any other to meet the difficulties of the case. He separated the bishops from all temporal affairs, and gave them courts of their own with jurisdiction over ecclesiastical offences and persons. He thus gave to the Church, the sole depositary of mental and moral authority, a position independent of Norman baron



CHAP.  
III

---

and of English freeholder. Bishops were no longer to be made without real qualifications for their office. Clergy were no longer to be upheld unless they came up to a higher standard than contented the rude peasants amongst whom they ministered. On the other hand, William, whilst outwardly acknowledging the new papal claims, practically set them at defiance. In conjunction with Lanfranc, the scholar and statesman, whom he had placed on the metropolitan throne of Canterbury, he was himself the organiser of the English Church. It was he who encouraged learning and virtue, and who selected for ecclesiastical posts such men as came up to the high continental standard, and who would not allow the pope to give orders in England which were not first submitted to himself.

§ II The  
Church  
under  
William  
Rufus

It was all well enough as long as the Conqueror lived. The Red King seemed to have come into the world to justify the wildest extravagance of the popes. The brute force of the king was sharpened by supereminent powers of intellect without the slightest tinge of morality. His chief minister, Ranulf Flambard, sprung from the ranks of the clergy, turned his knowledge and skill to purposes of sheer oppression. The Norman barons learned that their tenure of land subjected them to penal exactions, the right to which might logically be deduced from the conditions under which their land was held. The clergy learned that when a see was vacant, the king claimed not to provide a better occupant than his English predecessors had been content with, but to keep it vacant, in order that he might gather the revenues for himself, or when at last he gave way, might fill it with some base favourite of his own who would do all his bidding, or with some unworthy purchaser who had money to offer. For five years after Lanfranc's death the see of Canterbury itself was thus kept vacant. At last, on a sick-bed, even the

Red King inclined to concession. He appointed a successor to Lanfranc, and that successor was Anselm.

CHAP.  
III

Anselm was the flower of medieval monasticism,—of those societies in which the obedience flowing from voluntary submission stood in such startling contrast to the obedience from fear or interest, which was the motive power of the state over which William Rufus presided. At Bec, the Norman monastery over which the Italian stranger from the Val d'Aosta ruled as Lanfranc had ruled before him, the community was bound together by ties of mutual respect. The warfare against the world, to which the brethren were called by their profession, was waged not so much by startling acts of asceticism, as by a constant persistence in humility. The precept, Confess your sins one to another, was here as a perpetual reality, as each monk in turn acknowledged his faults in the presence of all the others, humbly listening, without an angry word, to their accusations and reproofs, or submitting without a murmur even to the corporal chastisement which the brotherhood, by the voice of its chosen head, adjudged him to have deserved. The time would come, doubtless, when this order too would deservedly pass away to make room for another, in which there was more spontaneity and less rigid discipline. But as yet, the world needed an example of discipline, not of spontaneity. Nor was the work of the monks ended here. Amongst them were to be found what seeds of intellectual culture were scattered abroad. It was from a monastery that sounded forth the voice which, when all others had been hushed, still continued that tale of our national history in our old national speech, which was to be taken up in the more universal Latin by Orderic from St. Evroul and by William from Malmesbury. It was from Bec itself that Anselm proclaimed that he had fathomed the depths of the

§ 12 An-  
selm  
and Mon-  
asticism

CHAP.  
III

---

§ 13 An-  
selm and  
William  
Rufus.

mysteries of Christianity in the work which formed the basis of Christian theological arguments, even in times when men had broken away from the moorings at which the medieval Church lay anchored.

All the learning, and all the piety and righteousness of monasticism, were concentrated in Anselm. Well might he shrink from accepting the archbishopric from the hands of William. As soon as the king recovered his health, he plunged into his old contemptuous scorn of God and man. A quarrel soon sprang up between the two men on various grounds, chiefly on the question of the recognition of Pope Urban, the pope of the Church, or of Pope Clement, the anti-pope supported by the emperor. William wanted to keep the question open, and alleged truly that his father had prohibited the recognition of any pope without license from himself. The declaration was evidently something very different in the mouths of the two kings. It was Anselm's clear duty to announce that there was a realm of conscience into which mere force, clothing itself in the forms of state expediency, could not be allowed to enter. Urban, he declared, was pope and not Clement. All the threats of the king could not make it otherwise. In vain the time-serving bishops ranged themselves on the king's side. Anselm cared for none of their threats. William was obliged to give way. Then the quarrel blazed up afresh, and Anselm asked and obtained permission to return to the Continent to confer with the pope. The Red King was left to his sins and to his bloody death in the New Forest.

§ 14 An-  
selm and  
Henry I.

In Henry I Anselm had another kind of man to deal with. Cautious and self-controlled, if it were but for the sake of the strength which he gained by it, Henry established in England the rule of stern inflexible justice, except where his special ends were to be served.

Anselm, too, had learned upon the Continent views which he had not entertained when he first took possession of the see of Canterbury. He had then received investiture from William, as his predecessors had received investiture before him, by the reception of the pastoral staff. He found that by the pope and the churchmen by whom the pope was surrounded, this acceptance of an ecclesiastical dignity at the hands of a layman was condemned as scandalous and illegal. It has been said that he adopted this new view from mere subservience to the papal authority. But it should not be forgotten that since he had received investiture from William, a bitter experience had taught him what a miserable bondage it was to be beaten about hither and thither at the caprice of a rude and godless king. The pastoral staff might be nothing in itself, but it was the symbol of a rule and guidance which rested on another basis than that of material force. Yet he could not but acknowledge that Henry too had right on his side. If bishops and archbishops had broad lands at their disposal, and warlike knights at their command, it could not be a matter of indifference to a king who tried—as in some sort Henry was trying—to fulfil the duties of his office, who it was who held positions of such authority, and in what spirit towards the realm they fulfilled the duties incumbent upon them through those positions. The Concordat by which the dispute was settled acknowledged both these rights. Investiture by the delivery of the staff was to come from the pope, but homage was to be done, as by a feudal baron, to the king.

It is easy to speak contemptuously of Anselm for grasping at the shadow and flinging away the substance. No man flings away the substance who cares only to announce the truth. It was an eternal truth for all time that there was a sphere of the mind and heart

§ 15 Principles involved in the Quarrel.

CHAP.  
III

---

which ought, for the good of mankind, to be left untouched by the compulsory action of the state. It was a temporary truth for the eleventh and twelfth centuries, that those who addressed themselves to raise the moral and spiritual condition of their fellows needed the support of a central ecclesiastical organisation to maintain them against the violence or the avarice of those who wielded the power of the state. Of course there were sure to be future troubles, but it would not be through the fault of Anselm. The troubles would come simply because the temporary truth of one century would cease to be the temporary truth of another. It might very well be that the ecclesiastical organisation of Rome would set itself against moral and intellectual progress. It might very well be that the powers of the state would be harshly and unjustly used. Above all, Rome, far away as she was, was not likely to know the facts of each case as it arose so well as persons living upon the spot. There is no absolute permanence in nationality. Frontiers change, and habits change, till that which is a whole to-day may become a part to-morrow. But a people welded together into a coherent body is, on the whole, a better judge of its affairs than any distant power can possibly be. The day would come when those who were most bitterly opposed to the Roman see would be those who most truly maintained the principles of Anselm. His spirit rests with the men who in the seventeenth century passed the Toleration Act, and founded the liberty of the press.

§ 16 The  
Anarchy of  
Stephen.

Henry I. went far to establish monarchical order in England. But it was an order which depended on his own character for its maintenance. When he died, he was succeeded by the weak Stephen. The English people had no general organisation except in the person of the king. If the king was incompetent to furnish this organisation,

the people dropped asunder as a faggot drops when the band is loosed. The Norman baronage could wreak its vengeance or satisfy its greed on each town or hamlet in detail. The horror of those days far surpassed the horror of the tyranny of Rufus. 'Men said that Christ and his saints were asleep.' On every side arose fortified castles, the abodes of robbery and wrong. At last, in the young Henry, a head was found capable of carrying on the work of his grandfather.

CHAP.

III

It was not difficult for the strong man to reduce the exhausted land to order, to dismantle the fortified castles of the barons which had been the strongholds of robbery and wrong, and to dismiss the mercenary bands of foreign soldiers, which had formed the main support of the oppressors in that evil time. Happily for England, Henry was more than a strong man. Without gentleness or sympathy, he had the clear head of an organiser, and a prompt eye to reject forms of organisation which might have been successful in another land or time, but which were not suitable to the England of his own day. There had not been much to lead an English king to strive after the ideal of the old Roman Empire. Its memories were still green on the Continent. Henry's reign was almost exactly contemporaneous with that of Frederick Barbarossa, who wore the crown of the Cæsars haughtily in defiance of all who sought to diminish its lustre. The study of the Roman law had just been quickened afresh in England, as in the rest of Europe, bringing with it its scientific precision, its reverence for despotic authority, and that contempt for traditionary custom and for the mere instinct of the unlearned masses which had gone far to bring about the ruin of the Roman Empire. Henry no doubt could not have succeeded in establishing a pure despotism in England if he had tried. But, it was none the less a merit in him that he did not try, and

§ 17. The  
first Acts of  
Henry II

CHAP.  
III

that he worked steadily to carry out the plans of his grandfather and his great grandfather, by associating the greatness of the English crown with the active co-operation of the English people.

§ 18 Mili-  
tary Re-  
forms

It was in this spirit that he completed the organisation of the national army. The feudal landowners were bound to follow him into the field for forty days in the year. Henry had many reasons for distrusting such a force. Besides being King of England, he was a great continental prince, ruling by various titles over sunny lands which stretched from the English Channel to the Pyrenees. To defend so long a line he wished to have English help, and he soon found that the short service of the English feudal force was of little use to him. As the trouble of crossing the sea was also highly disagreeable to the feudal tenants themselves, a bargain was soon effected by which they were excused from military service on payment of a sum of money, which bore the name of scutage. With this money Henry paid mercenary troops on whom he could depend all the year round, and whom he never, except on one occasion of desperate need, brought over into England. Such a change was of more than military importance. No doubt the feudal lords still continued to bear arms and to be proud of their fighting powers. But they were seldom brought under the stress and training of actual war, and they thus became far less formidable to the king than they had been in earlier days. Nor was Henry content with weakening the military power of the baronage. In the old English system the fyrd, or national militia, was drawn from the free landed population irrespective of tenure. By the assize of arms, Henry provided that every man whose property reached a certain specified amount should, in proportion to his wealth, possess arms, which he was never to be allowed to sell or pledge. By this arrange-

ment the national force grew stronger, just at the time that the feudal force was growing weaker. All initiative in command was reserved for the king, but the strength which would enable him to act would come neither from a standing army specially attached to his own person, nor from a feudal army specially attached to the defence of its own social position. It would come from his headship of the nation, from the willing co-operation of men who were, during most of their lives, farmers or merchants, and who stepped forward when their swords were needed to defend interests which were their own as well as the king's

CHAP.  
III

---

The principle which prevailed in Henry's military reforms prevailed also in his judicial reforms. If there was nothing absolutely new in the system which he introduced, if something, was derived from the old customs of the English, and something, through his Norman ancestors, from the Carolingian Empire, he made it his own by the extension which he gave to it, and by the constant reliance which he placed in it. In civil disputes relating to land, he bade his judges decide in accordance with the sworn testimony of twelve recognitors or knights who, living in the vicinity of the estate in dispute, were able to tell the truth from their own knowledge. In criminal matters the accused was presented by sworn accusers, who also brought their charge from their own knowledge of the facts, or from information on which they believed themselves to be able to depend. A similar system was adopted in the assessment of payments due to the Crown. Such modes of investigation were very far from perfect. They admitted of no sifting of evidence or cross-examination of witnesses. Many changes would have to take place before the trial by judge and jury, with which so many generations of Englishmen have been familiar, could come into

§ 19 Ju-  
dicial Re-  
forms.



CHAP.  
III.

existence. The importance of Henry's work lies not in the positive excellence of his achievement, but upon the firmness with which he planted himself on that union of the two forces by which alone permanent progress is rendered possible. In the ancient world, Athens had failed because she relied upon the energies and patriotism of ordinary citizens, without caring to labour for the development of special talent for judicial, civil, or military leadership; whilst Rome had failed because, as the empire grew older, it rested more entirely every day on the special talent of administrators, judges and generals, and despised the help of ordinary citizens. Henry showed his practical sense in combining the two elements.

## § 20. Political Arrangements.

It was as well that Henry did not conform his political to his military and judicial institutions. No doubt he made such use of the Great Council of his tenants in chief which had taken the place of the Witenagemot, as no king since the Conquest had done. But he used it as a council, and not as a modern parliament. It had no wish to shake off his authority. It could therefore give advice without even wishing to exercise control. Even if it had wished to do so it had not the power. The feudal military support upon which alone it could reckon was, in part at least, the support of the men who were paying scutage to buy for themselves exemption from service. The thousands who were being organised into an army by the assize of arms would, on all ordinary occasions, rally to the king and not to his vassals. It was much indeed to do what Henry had done; to blend together the feudal elements with the wider national element. As always happens when success is achieved, he had assisted nature, and had not attempted to supplant her. Time had worn away the distinction between Norman and Englishman, and if French was usually spoken at one end of the social scale and English

at the other, no man in the higher ranks could speak of himself as exclusively of one race or the other. But the consciousness of national unity was slow in growing, and it would hardly become a motive power in events till it had been awakened by common resistance to aggression. For the present there was local vigour putting itself gladly at the disposal of the central authority of the king. But the men who would gladly assist the royal judges in tracking out criminals, or ascertaining rights of property, put forward no pretensions to share in the political authority of the king. They were content to leave that in Henry's hands. To ask these men to send representatives to a national parliament would merely have been to establish a sham, as the States-General who were summoned in the fourteenth century by Philip IV. of France to dencunce the Pope or to plunder the Templars were a sham. It was better that the full forms of parliamentary institutions should not be there, till there was a nation behind them to inspire them with life. It was enough that the Great Council should hand down from the older Witenagemot the tradition of government by persuasion as something higher than government by compulsion.

In the very midst of the gradual promulgation of these reforms, Henry found himself involved in a quarrel with the Church. The time was not come when the authority of the State, even in Henry's hands, could be safely entrusted with control over the clergy. Yet not only was the State better organised under Henry II. than it had been under Henry I, but the demands of the Church were of a lower order than those which had been put forward by Anselm. Anselm had been distinctly the righteous man defending the poor and innocent against injustice and tyranny. Becket's main contention was that the clergy, whatever crimes they had committed, should not

CHAP.  
III.

---

§ 21 The  
Quarrel  
with  
Becket.

CHAP  
III

---

be judged by the ordinary justice of the realm. No doubt Becket had on his side the general feeling of the clergy, and he may well have thought that to surrender the outworks of their defence would only lead to a baser and more complete surrender hereafter. As for Becket himself, the king in placing him in the archbishopric, in order that he might betray to the Crown the liberties claimed by the Church, had asked him to perform an act of treason as contemptible as that of the man who accepts the command of a fortress in order to betray it to the enemy. Yet the liberties which the new archbishop defended, even if they had still an universal aspect, were far more professional in their nature than those for which Anselm contended, and Becket himself had far more of the champion of a profession about him than was in accordance with the character of the meek and gentle opponent of William II. and of Henry I. His quarrel with Henry II. was one which could best be settled by a compromise, and Becket would hear of no compromise. His strength lay in the weakness of his adversary. The State could claim the submission of the Church when it could do justice to friend and foe alike. The king who fined Becket enormous sums on frivolous pretexts; who punished Becket's kinsmen when he could not reach Becket himself, who rolled on the floor and gnawed straw with his teeth when bad news reached him, and who, by his wrathful words, despatched the murderers on the archbishop's track, was not in a position to claim the obedience which is due to the fountain of justice. The murder of Becket completed the lesson, that the great interests of the Church and society were not as yet safe in being left entirely in the hands of the king. Popular enthusiasm hailed the new martyr; and the miracles reported to be performed at his tomb seemed to ratify the popular belief.

Yet even thus, the edifice erected by Henry was too firmly established to be shaken by the storm. Men who had no wish to see the clergy prostrated at his feet, had no desire to see the foundations of national order broken up.

Of one great movement of this age, the historian of English progress has little to tell. Before the end of the eleventh century, the feudal nobility of the western part of continental Europe were eagerly leaving home and lands to share in the enterprise of wresting the Holy Land from the Infidel. The crusading spirit took possession of the minds of these men just in proportion as they were without a national life to occupy their thoughts. In England, in the worst of times, a national life existed. In the days of the Conqueror and his sons, both Normans and Englishmen found enough to occupy their energies at home without turning their attention elsewhere. When, at the end of the reign of Henry II., the news arrived that Jerusalem had fallen once more into Mahometan hands, there was no widely spread feeling of horror. If Richard I. led not a few followers to the Holy War, they were animated rather by the spirit of adventure than by a deeply seated sense of duty. Richard was himself little more than a great adventurer. For England and its national development he cared nothing.

If Richard cared nothing for England, he cared much for the money of Englishmen. In Archbishop Hubert Walter he found, during the latter years of his reign, a minister who could draw wealth from his subjects without subjecting them to the miseries of an irregular and capricious tyranny. Walter's administration therefore was a time of silent growth in England. Henry's system of assessment by jury received under him a wider extension, and the representative system for judicial and financial purposes struck firm root, to be ready in time for an unexpected application to political objects.

CHAP.  
III

---

§ 22 Eng-  
land and  
the Cru-  
sades

§ 23.  
Richard I.  
and  
Hubert  
Walter.

## CHAPTER IV.

## PARLIAMENTARY ORGANISATION.

CHAP.  
IV.

§ 1 Con-  
trast be-  
tween the  
Twelfth and  
Thirteenth  
Centuries.

THE political work of the twelfth century had been to draw closely the bonds between the king and the strengthened local organisations. The political work of the thirteenth century would lie in surrounding the king with a general representative organisation, which would bring before him the needs and desires of the nation as a whole, in the same way that the county courts and the county juries brought before his judges the needs and desires of the country districts.

§ 2 King  
John

The first impulse to the movement was given by the misconduct of John. The system established by Henry II could only work beneficially in the hands of an able and well-disposed king, who, if he did not care for the people for their own sake, at least understood that a well-governed people is the surest foundation upon which a ruler can build up his authority. John cared nothing for such a source of strength. For him, government meant merely the art of extorting money for his own selfish objects. Every class of his subjects was oppressed by the worst of tyrannies, a tyranny fitful and uncertain, relieved by no glorious achievements abroad, and directed to no large and far-sighted policy at home. As the strength which his father had derived from the national support slipped out of his hands, he rested more and more on the mercenary troops

which he gathered on the Continent, to be paid with English money, and to extort yet more money in England for them and for himself.

CHAP.  
IV

Three quarrels, each of them ending disastrously for John, each of them leaving traces on the development of the English nation, occupied the whole of the reign—the quarrel with the king of France, the quarrel with the Pope, and the quarrel with the English baronage.

§ 3 The  
three Quar-  
rels of the  
Reign

The result of the quarrel with the king of France was merely one more example of the weakness of extended territories without unity of sentiment and organisation. To one who judges from a glance at the map, nothing can appear more unequal than the relative strength of John and of Philip II. But the dominions which stretched from the English Channel to the Pyrenees had nothing in common but their allegiance to the same sovereign. The great division of temperament and language between the lands to the south and the north of the Loire, was far more marked than it is at the present day. The Aquitanian differed to a great extent in race and language, and quite as much in his habits and mode of life from the Norman or the Frenchman of the North; and within these large divisions smaller divisions remained uneffaced. The Angevin was not as the Norman, the Languedocian was not as the Portevin. The cool head of Henry II. and the fierce activity of Richard I. might keep, not without a struggle, these various races together. John could not do it. He was neither feared nor respected. The provinces north of the Loire, Normandy, Maine, Anjou, and Touraine, fell easily into the hands of Philip. If the Aquitanian lands held firm to their allegiance, it was because they had no wish to be French, and because they knew that the distant rule of a king who lived in England would leave them far more to their own devices than the rule near

§ 4 The  
Quarrel  
with the  
King of  
France.

CHAP.  
IV

at hand of a king who lived in Paris. The change, all-important for the growth of the French monarchy, was not unimportant for the growth of the English nation. Practically it cut England loose from the Continent. No doubt the bond thus broken was not quite as strong as it had been a century before. The great Norman houses of the Conquest, with their vast landed estates on both sides of the Channel, were mainly things of the past. They had perished, or had been brought low in one or other of their many struggles to throw off the yoke of the Conqueror and his successors. Still there were some families remaining which held lands both in England and Normandy; and, at all events, as long as a king of England ruled at Rouen, the French tongue could never be entirely a foreign speech, or the native of a French-speaking land entirely a foreigner in London. The loss of Normandy by John was therefore a distinct step in the direction of the formation of an English nationality.

§ 5 The  
Quarrel  
with the  
Pope

Even the result of the quarrel with the Pope worked incidentally in the same direction. In spite of the distractions caused by the strife between Anselm and William, or between Becket and Henry, the rulers of the Church had on the whole been found on the side of the Crown. Nominated directly or indirectly by the kings, they often held official positions in the government of the State. But it was not only in this class that the kings had found support. The clergy were interested at least as much as other men in the maintenance of order, and their wide popular sympathies brought them in close connection with those classes which had most to fear from a repetition of the anarchy of the days of Stephen. Suddenly a storm burst from a clear sky. John nominated John de Gray, a favourite of his own, to the metropolitan see of Canterbury. The Pope, Inno-

cent III., nominated Stephen Langton, under the transparent pretext of the confirmation of an election made in his presence. If John had only proceeded with decent moderation he might have rallied the bishops to his side as Henry had rallied them against Becket. But he acted, according to his nature, with insensate violence, seized the estates of the see for his nominee, and, when the Pope laid the kingdom under an interdict, gave up the clergy to the lawless violence of his subjects, and practised lawless violence on them himself. Innocent at last threatened to bring Philip II of France against him, that he might strip him of England as he had before stripped him of Normandy. Deserted by his subjects, John humbled himself at the feet of the Pope's legate Pandulph, and received his crown back from him to hold from henceforth as the vassal of the Pope.

At first sight it would seem as if no heavier blow could be struck at the rising nationality. Innocent, indeed, believed that he had taken a long step towards the realisation of his great idea of the establishment of a fatherly control over the kings of the earth, in order that they might learn to do righteousness and exercise justice. The idea of Innocent was more straightforward and practical than the idea of Gregory VII. Innocent saw that it was not enough for the accomplishment of the great object of his desire to draw a strict line of separation between the spiritual and the temporal. A theorist might distinguish where the one ended and the other began. To a practical ruler it was impossible. No act could be done which was not in some way either moral or immoral, and if it was the business of the Pope to make men moral or immoral, he might as well come into direct connection with those by whom men were governed. It was simpler to declare that as all men held their lands from kings, kings held their crowns

§ 6 The  
Papacy of  
Innocent  
III



CHAP.  
IV.

---

from the Pope Innocent's theory would soon be tested by experience. But even for the moment, the clergy were rather bound together against John than bound together to the Pope. They had shared in the miseries caused by John's oppression, and they had learned to look for friends amongst those who had been equally maltreated with themselves. The barons of England were near and the Pope was a long way off. If John continued to oppress, clergy and barons might join to resist oppression without waiting till their complaints could travel to Rome to be discussed and debated in the Papal courts, especially as, in spite of the high ideas of the Pope, it was known that he was surrounded by greedy and unscrupulous officials who needed to be bribed at every step.

§ 7 The  
Quarrel  
with the  
Baronage

In this way the interference of the Pope, which seemed to transfer the mainspring of English politics to a distant country, only served to bind all classes of Englishmen more closely together than before. Happily the new archbishop was a thorough Englishman. In him the scattered elements of the opposition to John's tyranny found a common leader. The barons, who rose in arms to wrest from the king some security that they should not be in future pillaged and oppressed at random, gained a definiteness of object by entrusting to Langton the preparation of the document in which their claims were made. The Great Charter, founded on an earlier charter of Henry I., bears the impress of the mind of the man whom Innocent III., not knowing what he did, had obtruded on the English Church and nation.

§ 8.  
Magna  
Carta.

The Great Charter differed from similar concessions made by the sovereigns of the Continent to their nobles. It was demanded and received not merely by the class of Englishmen which was the most powerful,

but by the English people in its entirety. The clergy, the great barons, the lower vassals and freeholders, even the merchants and the peasants, found their interests consulted in it. For the first time the English people appeared as a united whole. The local divisions of the days before the Conquest were gone. The class divisions of the days after the Conquest were also gone. In their stead had arisen a union based on mutual concessions and strong by mutual support. The great importance of the Charter does not lie in the wisest of its provisions, but in the fact that it sprang from a rearrangement of political forces. The Norman and Angevin kings had thought to establish a centralised despotism, and the result had been the bringing of the English nation to the birth.

CHAP.  
IV

Such a change in the forces of politics rendered necessary a change of institutions to give it effect. The old Great Council of the immediate vassals of the crown must in some way or another change its basis, and become the Great Council of the nation, whilst the holder of the kingly office also must be inspired with the new national spirit. Unless that could be done, little would be gained. Unity of direction, the vigilance of personal superintendence, the permanent action of a presiding intelligence, are as necessary for the well-being of a state as the expression of popular will by which the ruler is prevented from providing for his own wants instead of providing for the wants of the nation. Such a change, however, could only be tentatively carried out. Some time passes before a nation finds out exactly what it wants, and a longer time before it finds out what are the most suitable means for supplying its necessities.

§ 9 New  
Institutions  
needed

The efforts of the barons were very tentative indeed. They forced John to promise that he would not, except in certain specified cases, levy any scutage or aid upon

§ 10 Ten-  
tative  
Efforts

CHAP  
IV.

his own vassals without the consent of the Great Council of the realm. As, however, the aids and scutages due to the crown were only levied on its immediate feudal tenants, there was no thought of providing any new assembly to guard the rights of those who were interested. All that was done was to try to make the Great Council to be in reality what it was already in theory, an assembly not merely of the prelates and great barons, but of the whole of the tenants in chief. John, therefore, was constrained to promise that he would summon for purposes of feudal taxation, the archbishops, bishops, abbots, and greater barons by special writ, whilst he would summon all the lesser tenants in chief by a general announcement conveyed by the sheriffs. There was no likelihood that such a plan would meet the necessities of the case. The smaller tenants in chief would not take the trouble to appear any more than they had done before, and the sub-tenants by knight-service, the freeholders who were not knights at all, and the inhabitants of the towns, had no part or lot in the assembly. The Great Council would continue to be a council of prelates and barons; and if prelates and barons were to be left alone to deal with the king, they might be inclined, if they proved successful, to kick over the ladder by which they had risen to power. Nor was the new arrangement for the exercise of the royal authority any more satisfactory. John was still to be king, but a committee of twenty-five barons was to be appointed to watch over him in the exercise of his office. If he broke the Charter, they were to make war on him and to seize his castles and lands. Probably nothing better could have been suggested at the moment, but it is evident that a system under which a king could only exercise his authority under the constant threat of legalised rebellion could not form part of a permanent constitution for the country.

If, however, the Great Charter offered no remedy here, there were in existence forces which would sooner or later come to the front. In the counties the old shire-mote, under the Norman name of the county court, was more than ever flourishing. It was accustomed to elect persons to assess taxation locally in concert with the judges. Sooner or later, the system which prevailed locally was certain to make itself felt in the conduct of the general affairs of the nation. Even John himself had dimly recognised the value of the support which might thus be gained, and had summoned elected knights on one or two occasions to meet him on affairs of public importance. The time had not yet arrived when the representative system could take permanent shape. For the barons the immediate question was not so much how the Great Council was to be constituted in the future, as how the existing king was to be controlled or deposed. John soon showed that no promises could bind him, and the barons, in despair of a successful resistance, invited Lewis—the son of the king of France, and the husband of John's niece—to replace him on the throne, much in the same way that their descendants invited William of Orange to replace James II.

CHAP  
IV

§ 11  
Germ of  
the Repre-  
sentative  
System

Happily John's death rendered the step unnecessary, and his son, then a mere boy, was soon universally accepted as Henry III. Those who acted in his name declared their adhesion to the Great Charter. But the clause binding the king to levy the feudal aids and scutages only on a grant from the Council was omitted. When Henry grew up to manhood, he showed himself less vigorously tyrannical than his father. But he was a weak and heartless spendthrift, throwing money freely away on himself, and still more freely on a swarm of foreigners, the relatives and connexions of his mother

§ 12.  
Accession  
of Henry  
III and  
the mod-  
ified  
Charter.

CHAP.  
IV

and of his wife, for whom he seemed to think that nothing in England was too good. His ever-craving need drove back those whose money he demanded upon the theory of the invalidity of a royal demand for taxation without the consent of the Council, while at the same time it led them to make the foundations of that Council as broad as possible in order that all classes might present a united front to a common danger.

§ 13 Ex-  
tinction of  
Papal In-  
fluence.

In such a conflict, with dangers on every side, the national institutions of Englishmen were hardened as in the fire. Above all there was the danger lest, in a contest in defence of property, however nobly waged, the habit of looking after the right to money should lead to mere selfish faction, and that when once the king had been restrained, the strong would trample on the weak, and the rich would grind the faces of the poor. Never is it more necessary than in times of civil strife to keep warm the heart and to maintain the sense of brotherhood. Nor was the civil strife of the thirteenth century without special dangers of its own. Hitherto the ecclesiastical organisation, with the Pope at its head, had kept alive a sense of unity amidst the distractions of feudal warfare. Everywhere through Western Christendom, the Church had been the protector of the helpless, the advocate of peace, the protector against violence and wrong. Everywhere the Pope could be looked up to as the common father. But there were signs that it would not be so much longer. Innocent III had taken part distinctly with John, wicked and bloodthirsty as he was, as soon as John had acknowledged him as his feudal superior; and though Honorius II, who followed him, had done much to help on the pacification which ensued on the accession of Henry, neither his influence nor that of his successors was likely to be exercised in giving any support to the growth of a constitutional control

by subjects over their sovereign. As an ecclesiastical autocracy, the papacy was certain to oppose the development of free institutions in the state, whilst, as a universal system, the highest merit of which was that it placed itself above distinctions of race, of language, and of government, it was equally certain to look askance upon the tightening bonds of nationality which were causing Englishmen to regard foreigners as unfit to take part in the management of English affairs. And at the same time that the papacy was losing its intelligent perception of the real wants of Englishmen, circumstances led it to make the heaviest demands upon the purses of Englishmen. Two successive popes, Gregory IX. and Innocent IV., engaged in a deadly struggle with the Emperor Frederick II. The object of that struggle, even at its commencement, had very little of a spiritual nature in it. The popes no longer, as in the eleventh century, burned with zeal for the reform of the Church and the world. They wanted chiefly to maintain their independence as temporal sovereigns. For this they fought; for this they sent emissary after emissary to England, subjecting the English clergy and laity to taxation, and infringing on the rights of lay patrons as well as clerical expectants by the appointment of needy Italians to English benefices. It was not long before the pope came to be regarded as merely one foreign bloodsucker the more, as mischievous as the brothers-in-law of the king, who cared for nothing in England except its wealth.

In the sturdy growth of a national feeling lay the strength of England. But it was not without its own risks. There was a danger lest a claim to power, arising from the desire to guard the purse, should end in a struggle for pelf rather than in an increase of righteous rule, and that the pursuit of material objects should lead in the end to disintegration rather than to union. Once

CHAP.  
IV

---

more England had to look abroad for the remedy. The new thought came across the sea with the Friars, and more especially with the Franciscans, the followers of Francis of Assisi, the gentle mystical Italian, rather than with those of Dominic, the combative and persecuting Spaniard. The friars were the last helpful gift of the medieval Church to the world. Like the old monks in their self-abnegation, and in their complete renunciation of the pleasures and interests of the world, the friars introduced an entirely new element into the ecclesiastical system. The monk stood apart from humanity for his own soul's welfare, crucifying the flesh in order that the spirit might live, and teaching indirectly by example, and not, except accidentally, by direct word or guidance. The friar's work was carried on, not in retired cloisters but in the busy haunts of men. He lived not for himself but for others. Wherever men were most wretched, struck down by the most loathsome of diseases, or pinched and hunger-starved with famine, there the little mission chapel of the friars was raised. Francis of Assisi wooed, in his own mystical language, poverty as his bride; but it was poverty revealed in others as well as in himself. The world for him was not a haunt of demons to be avoided at the peril of eternal death, but a home of sin and misery to be healed and alleviated. Whilst pope and emperor, king and baron, were contending for this world's goods, the Franciscan drew close the golden bond of charity, and told not in word, but in very deed, of the love which is stronger to draw together than this world's goods are powerful to separate. They had their reward even in that of which they were most careless. The intellectual sway of the world, the organising of its science, even what knowledge of its physical laws was then possible, fell into their hands. Thomas Aquinas and Roger Bacon were of the friars. Even in political

change their weight was felt. In the English constitutional struggle, the man whose influence was ever used to exalt the standard of right and to bind together the hostile elements of faction, was one who had imbibed their teaching most deeply—Earl Simon de Montfort was a pupil of the friars.

It is possible that Earl Simon's foreign origin may have had something to do with the freshness of insight which enabled him to look to the bottom of our English difficulties. Fully assuming his position as an Englishman, and associating himself completely with the struggles of the English baronage, he saw, ever more clearly as the conflict with the king continued, that the substitution of the government of an irresponsible aristocracy for an irresponsible king would not be a gain to anyone. The Provisions of Oxford in 1258, which were in the main the work of the baronage, contemplated some such a settlement as this. Earl Simon's own arrangements, made after the victory of Lewes in 1264, contemplated a national constitution.

§ 15. Simon de Montfort

For some time knights had been sent with increasing frequency to represent the smaller landowners in Parliament. Almost accidentally the barrier between tenants in chief, and subtenants, and again between subtenants and ordinary freeholders had been broken down. If knights were to be sent to parliament at all, there was no machinery for their election except in the county court, and the county court was still what it had been as the shireMOTE before the Conquest, the place of the meeting of landowners irrespective of the nature of their tenure. The step from a feudal to a national assembly was thus taken without any special contrivance by any special statesman. But it could not have been taken unless the fusion of feudal and nonfeudal elements in parliament had already been completed in the nation

§ 16. His scheme of a representative Parliament.



CHAP  
IV.

itself. It was because the great baron and his vassal knights had learned to act together with the simple freeholder in resisting royal and papal encroachments at home, that they were able to join together in parliament. Earl Simon drew yet another element of life into the political arena. The towns, comparatively small and unimportant as, with the single exception of London, they were, were yet important enough to be consulted, and the admission of their representatives to parliament completed the national assembly. It was to a parliament so constituted in a single house that Earl Simon looked for the mainspring of political action. It is true that the governors who were to act in the name of the king were to be nominated by electors named by the barons alone, but they were to be continually checked by the criticism of a parliament which would represent England as no parliament had represented it before. In so doing the great earl attempted to anticipate the work of centuries. Even if his parliament had been more homogeneous than it was, the control of government by a representative body was no easy task. The constitutional habit of giving way to the majority of votes takes long to form, and the equally necessary habit of paying attention to public affairs when a critical moment of danger is past is not easily acquired. Great as the progress of England in the direction of national unity had been, it was not as yet enough to bear the strain of so great a constitutional change. The barons preferred to be the servants of a king who would spare their interests to being servants of the community at large. Personal jealousy of the great earl did the rest. Feudalism was still too strong for the complete nationalisation of the kingdom. The split between the baronage and the national party grew wider every day, till the hope of England seemed to be struck down with Earl Simon at Evesham, and nothing

left to be done but to raise the fruitless lament for the political martyr who had died for the country as Archbishop Thomas had once died for the church.

CHAP.  
IV

Happily, Earl Simon found a successor, and more than a successor, in the king's son. Do what he would, the earl, from his very position, was a divider. He could do nothing without thrusting the king down into tutelage, and in proportion as he succeeded in doing that, he became the object of jealousy to those who were unwilling to submit to the rule of a subject like themselves. Edward I. stood on the vantage ground of the throne. From thence he was able to look at men and things from a point of view very different from that which any subject could command. He could do that easily and without effort which Simon could only do laboriously, and with the certainty of rousing opposition. Especially was this the case with the encouragement given by the two men to the growing aspirations after parliamentary representation. Earl Simon's assemblies were instruments of warfare. Edward's assemblies were invitations to peace. Yet his position would have availed him little if he had trusted to nothing else. He was able to use it, because he was strong in mind as well as in body, because with the reforming temperament he had an open eye for his subjects' grievances, and was thus able to lead them steadily forward in the path of legislative improvement. Barons and prelates, knights and townsmen, came together only to support a king who took the initiative so wisely, and who, knowing what was best for all, sought the good of his kingdom without thought of his own ease. Yet even so, Edward was too prudent at once to gather together such a body as that which Earl Simon had planned. He summoned, indeed, all the constituent parts of Simon's parliament, but he seldom summoned them to meet in one place or at one time. Sometimes

§ 17 The  
early Years  
of Edward  
I

CHAP.  
IV.  

---

the barons and prelates met apart from the townsmen or the knights, sometimes one or the other class met entirely alone. By this means Edward got what he wanted. He strengthened himself in his power to do good by gathering a fruitful knowledge of the thoughts and aims of his subjects, and by inspiring them with respect for his own thoughts and aims for them ; but he accustomed them at the same time to look upon him far more as the centre of the national life than they would have done if they had been in the habit of meeting him face to face in one great national body. It may fairly be said, too, that they got what they needed. They had the best possible training for higher work to come one day, the work of co-operating with one nobler and wiser than themselves, without any temptation to contend over points of small importance.

§ 18 The  
national  
and the  
feudal  
Kingship.

In this way, during the first twenty years of Edward's reign, the nation rapidly grew in that consciousness of national unity which would one day transfer the function of regulation from the crown to the representatives of the nation. Like all changes, even when they are for the best, this change brought with it its own peculiar risks. The king, in gaining the position of head and leader of the nation, did not entirely throw off the position of feudal head of a certain body of landowners holding by a special military tenure from the crown. Hence there was always a danger that, in looking at things from a double point of view, the king might be inclined to put one relation or the other into the foreground in proportion as one or the other would serve his interests most, and would thus reap the discredit which accrues to the man who uses technical legality for the purpose of securing solid advantages for himself. From this danger Edward, so far as his domestic policy was concerned, only escaped with difficulty, whilst

he did not succeed in escaping from it in his dealings with foreign nations.

CHAP.  
IV.

This difficulty was observable even in Edward's dealings with Wales in the early part of the reign. The real causes of his anxiety to subdue the dwellers on the Welsh mountains, was the harm which was done to peaceable Englishmen by the close proximity of a body of men whose very position made them freebooters. But this motive was not placed in the foreground. Wales was ostensibly subdued not for the fault of Welshmen in general, but for the special breach of the feudal relations between their chief and the English king, relations which only existed at all, because the Welsh had been unwillingly forced into a distasteful connection with the English Crown. If no permanent evil followed, it was because Edward was wise enough to content himself with the establishment of his power, without attempting to mould the national habits of the Welsh after English forms.

§ 19  
Edward I.  
and Wales

The case was otherwise with Scotland. In demanding to be accepted as Lord Paramount of Scotland, Edward had doubtless in his mind the advantages which would arise to the populations on both sides of the Tweed by the union of all the inhabitants of the island under one government. But nothing of this appeared on the surface. The claim was not only distinctly a feudal claim—that is to say, a claim put forward on the ground of a personal tie between the king of England and the king of Scotland, and not on the ground of any tie connecting the Scottish nation to the king of England—but it was a feudal claim put forward on a very questionable basis of fact, and at all events extended to mean a great deal more than the foundation on which Edward's argument was based could possibly bear. At first indeed he proved successful. The class to which

§ 20 Ed-  
ward I  
and Scot-  
land.

CHAP.  
IV.

---

he directly appealed, that of the Scottish nobility, was peculiarly susceptible to feudal considerations, as it was to a great extent of southern origin, whilst such of its members as held land on both sides of the border had a special interest in maintaining themselves in the good graces of the English king. In proportion as the effects of Edward's interference made themselves felt by the great body of the nation, a national resistance was aroused amongst those who cared nothing for feudal theories or for their interpretation by interested English lawyers, but who cared very much about putting a stop to a system under which their actions were controlled by foreign courts, and their lives and goods were at the mercy of foreign officials. The national feeling which had been gradually growing up during a long course of years in England, sprang up suddenly in Scotland, after a brief interval of anarchy. If it failed to obtain the mastery in Edward's lifetime, it was altogether owing to the personal activity and skill of the king himself, and it was unlikely that these qualities would be inherited by his successor.

§ 21. Ed-  
ward I and  
France.

It was not only in Scotland that this mixture of feudal with national ties brought confusion into Edward's plans. In France Edward was on the defensive, not, as in Scotland, on the offensive. But it was a feudal tie which bound Gascony to himself, and though whatever possible national feeling was there was still dormant, and the king of France was regarded as more of a stranger than the king of England, there was certainly no feeling to attach the Gascons to the English nation. Thus it came about that the king who had done more than any of his predecessors to raise his people to the consciousness of national unity, was engaged abroad in enterprises in which the national feeling of other peoples was entirely set at defiance. Unfortunate as

this was, it is not strange that it was so. It is always long before the full consequences of a change are understood even by those who do most to bring it about. Old habits of thought cling long about the mind, however incompatible they may be with the new habits which are beginning to be formed.

Whatever might be the result of Edward's enterprises abroad, it was certain that they could not be carried out without considerable expense. At a loss for money, and doubting the readiness of the nation to grant him all that he needed, the king fell back upon the old methods of arbitrary taxation, as if the newly completed parliamentary institutions had no binding force against himself. Even those who opposed him did not perceive at once the value of those institutions, as offering them a new standing-ground against the king, and they too fell back upon an equally obsolete line of defence. First came the clergy. The ruling pope, Boniface VIII, was to Innocent III what Innocent III had been to Gregory VII. He looked on the papacy, and upon the clerical order of which it was the head, far more as a divinely privileged institution than as a body charged with the duty of rendering services to mankind. The Bull which he issued under the title of *Clericis laicos* directed that on no account should the clergy pay taxes to the lay authorities. Edward's answer to the assumption was complete. If the clergy bore no part in the burdens of the state, they could have no part in its protection. The days were gone by when their mere character sufficed to guard them from violence. The English clergy were soon compelled to acknowledge the vitality of the national principle, and to strive for immunity from unfair burdens as standing inside and not outside the nation to which they belonged. As it was with the clergy, so it was with the baronage. The two great

§ 22 The  
Dispute  
with the  
Clergy and  
the Barons.  
age.

CHAP.  
IV

carls, Bohun and Bigod, began their resistance on a purely technical ground, derived from a narrow interpretation of their feudal relations with the crown. They were bidden to conduct an English force to Gascony, whilst Edward conducted another to Flanders. They refused, on the ground that though they were bound to follow the king they were not bound to go to war without him. The strife soon enlarged itself beyond such narrow limits. Edward had been stripping the merchants as well as the clergy of their property, and if the barons were to have the support of the clergy and the merchants in their resistance, they must place it upon some better chosen ground than a mere refusal of military duty. In this way all special grievances were quickly blended in one. The king was asked to renounce his whole claim to arbitrary taxation.

§ 23 *Con-*  
*firmitio*  
*Cartarum.*

Reluctantly the king yielded, if not all that was asked, at least the greater part of it. In 1295, Parliament had assumed the complete form which it has never since lost, comprising lords spiritual and temporal, knights of the shire, and representatives of the cities and boroughs. By the *Confirmatio Cartarum* of 1297, an end was put to the long question of organisation which had been the subject of dispute ever since the reign of John. It is true that there was no general enunciation of principle. The Great Charter was confirmed as it stood in the reign of Henry III, without the constitutional clauses. There was no general condemnation of arbitrary taxation, but only of such aids, tasks, and prises as had recently been taken, and of the special toll upon wool which had recently been exacted. One grievance too remained entirely unredressed. The Crown had hitherto assumed the right of exacting special payments from the inhabitants of its own demesne lands under the name of tallages, and nothing was said to restrict its exercise of this right.

But such details are comparatively of little importance. The great fact is that the best and wisest of the kings since the Conquest gave way, and consented to limit his own functions in the presence of the national assembly which he had done more than any one else to bring into being. From that moment it was plain that the government of England would rest, not on the king alone, but on the king in co-operation with parliament. Such a co-operation was only possible because parliament had at its back a united nation, which could strengthen the king's hands to keep in check the presumption of any single class, but which would be strong enough to resist the king himself if he attempted to use for the oppression of all the powers entrusted to him for the good of all.

Two factors were needed for the maintenance of the now established constitution, a king strong enough to hold his own at the head of the nation, and a nation possessed of sufficient cohesion to avoid splitting up again into the separate classes of which it was composed. In both these points the constitution was severely tested in the reign of Edward II. The young king, utterly given up to pleasure, and entirely neglectful of the first duties of his office, could in no sense stand at the head of England as his father had stood at its head. It is impossible to remove one part of a complicated piece of machinery without affecting the others, and as Edward was simply inefficient and not tyrannical, he was opposed by the forces of the baronage without the immediate intervention of the other classes. The victory of the baronage was followed by the institution of a provisional government under the name of the Lords Ordainers, consisting solely of barons and prelates, who paid little more than a formal homage to parliament. The government by a class failed to secure respect, and when

§ 24  
Reign of  
Edward II.



CHAP  
IV.  

---

Edward recovered power he was enabled to proclaim the principles of his father's government even more strongly than his father had been inclined to do 'The matters' he declared, 'which are to be established for the estate of our lord the king and of his heirs, and for the estate of the realm and of the people, shall be treated, awarded and established in parliaments by our lord the king, and by the consent of the prelates, eails and barons, and the commonwealth of the realm, according as hath been heretofore accustomed' Edward II could not fulfil his part of the contract even if he had wished to do so, and it was not long before the nation witnessed with satisfaction the domestic broil which swept away the occupant of the throne, and which placed upon it another Edward, who, in spite of many defects, had at least some notion that the kingly office entailed upon its holder duties as well as pleasures In principle, at least, the theory of the constitution propounded by his father when he overcame the barons, was admitted by Edward II. From henceforth England was only concerned with its practical application.

## CHAPTER V.

## CONSTITUTIONAL KINGSHIP

AT the beginning of the fourteenth century the work of the Middle Ages was nearly accomplished. The rude Teutons who poured over the surface of the Roman Empire in its earliest years needed increase of discipline, not increase of liberty, the growth of a sense of the worth of self-renunciation and obedience rather than the growth of a sense of independence and self-reliance. On Roman soil they had met with two institutions, the state and the church, which offered to give them the training which they required. They shattered the state, but they accepted the teaching of the church. When at last the idea of a state discipline revived, it slowly made its way in organising the scattered tribes into a nation, and in compelling individuals to submit to a rule often harsh and tyrannical, but wholesome in the main. It found the church idea already in possession of the field. Not only were the limits of church rule wider than the limits of the rule of any single state, but its ideal was purer, its notions of morality more lofty, whilst its demand of utter self-renunciation in its most devoted followers gave it a hold upon the individual heart and conscience which no external institutions of government could hope to rival. The great men of the Middle Ages were ecclesiastics rather than statesmen. Yet the very causes which led to growth of ecclesiastical authority for a time pre-

CHAP  
V

§ 1 The  
Church and  
State of  
the Middle  
Ages

CHAP.  
V

vented it from establishing itself as the permanent source of law and order. Partly from the character of the papacy as a religious institution, partly from the wide diffusion of the populations entrusted to its care, it was impossible that the popes should possess that constant and complete knowledge of the wants and feelings of the peoples of all Western Christendom which was essential to the establishment of such a government as formed the ideal of Innocent III. That which had happened to the imperial rulers of the earlier Rome happened now to the papal rulers of the later Rome. They themselves did what they could for the people, but they lived too far apart from them to apply the right remedies at the right time. Other causes too made the failure more complete. The ecclesiastical ideal of monastic virtue was too complete an exaggeration, too thoroughly in antagonism with the ordinary conditions of human life, to occupy the minds of men for ever.

§ 2 De-  
cline of the  
Papacy

As late as the thirteenth century indeed, the productive force of the mediæval church was not exhausted, but the mission of the friars was its last effort in the days of its greatness, and that had only been successful because ideas of active beneficence were intermingled with the older ideas of poverty and self-denial. The inward corruption and the worldly entanglements of the papacy were but the outward sign that its true work was done ; and when, in the beginning of the fourteenth century, the popes retired into a splendid and luxurious slavery at Avignon, they renounced the outward form of a spiritual guidance which it was no longer theirs to give. For two centuries the mechanism of church authority would continue in their hands. But the mechanism of church authority would not foster the growth of ideas or of devotion. Men would no longer learn from the popes to project themselves into the

future and to struggle for the realisation of better and happier days for the generations to come than those in which their own lot was cast.

CHAP.  
V.

---

The work of constituting national unity was, to a great extent, accomplished when Edward I died. To a great extent because it had been accomplished, the characters of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries were inferior to those of the thirteenth. The greatness of men and of nations depends not so much on what they do as on what they desire, and when once a task is accomplished there is always a tendency to fold the arms and rest. Yet even this is not a sufficient explanation for the lassitude which followed. Doubtless the mere fact that the bond of church unity had to a great extent given place to the bond of national unity must be answerable for much of the decline which followed. The ideal of the church entered into the very heart and soul of the individual Christian. It bade him, if often in superstitious and ignorant ways, to work out his own salvation with fear and trembling. Self-purification was a work which came home to the hearts and bosoms of all. The state too had its ideal, an ideal of justice, but it was not one which appealed so readily to the individual conscience. The great earl who stood up against Henry III was known as Sir Simon the Righteous. The great king who took up and accomplished his task was known, at all events in later days, as a great legislator. Even in him the idea of a righteous man was hardening into the idea of a giver of laws. It is the tendency of this pursuit of righteousness alone to dwindle into a balance of opposing claims, a maintenance of external rules, a calculating of the place which each man has gained in the world, and a determination that he shall keep it still. The ideal of the mediæval church would never revive again for the English people in the form in which it

§ 3 Na-  
tional  
unity.

CHAP.  
V.

---

§ 4. The  
Connexion  
between  
England  
and  
Flanders

had hitherto attracted them, but it would go ill with them unless it could be revived again in some other shape to win them to tenderness and purity, to the abandonment of selfish efforts and designs.

Whatever might be the bearing of these events upon the future character of the English nation, there was no doubt that it had acquired strength for the immediate present, which would enable it to overpower and hold down, at least for a time, any other nation living under the feudal regime. The course of the struggle with Scotland had run through the stages of immediate success and ultimate failure—of success as long as there was only a Scottish feudal nobility to contend with, of failure as soon as there was a Scottish nation to be kept in subjection. Untaught by the lesson, England threw herself, under the guidance of Edward III, into a war of conquest against France. For a war of more limited extent, indeed, Edward was not without justification. Europe was making progress slowly but surely in the arts of peace. In the cities of Flanders had arisen manufacturing populations which supplied the countries around with the products of the loom. To the Ghent and Bruges of the Middle Ages, England stood in the same relation as that which the Australian colonies hold to the Leeds and Bradford of our own day. The sheep which grazed over the wide uninclosed pasture-lands of our island formed a great part of the wealth of England, and that wealth depended entirely on the flourishing trade with the Flemish towns in which English wool was converted into cloth. When, therefore, the Count of Flanders quarrelled, as feudal magnates were apt to do, with the burghers of the cities over which he ruled, the strife was one to which England could hardly be indifferent. Yet if Edward were to intervene in the Low countries,

he would have to deal with a more powerful enemy than the Count of Flanders only. A new family sat upon the throne of France, and Philip VI, the first of the Valois dynasty, renouncing the traditions of the older branch, bore himself as a gay knight amongst the knights of his kingdom, and knew no wisdom better than to give his support to the splendid and thoughtless feudal aristocracy rather than to the sober and hard-working citizen. Philip now ranged himself on the side of the Count against the burghers of Flanders, and a war against him in the interest of the Flemish towns, would therefore have rendered a real service to Flanders as well as to England itself

It was probably inevitable that a second and less justifiable cause of war should have been thought more of in those days than it is likely to be thought of now. The loss of Gascony, unconnected as it was by any ties of nationality with England, was a mere question of time. But if Edward I. held the preservation of Gascony to be worth struggling for, it is no wonder that his grandson did the same. That which gave the war its indefensible character was not the support of Flanders or the claim to the retention of Gascony, but the monstrous assertion of Edward's rights to the very crown of France, on the most flimsy of pretexts. Crecy and Poitiers demonstrated to the world that a people with united ranks, in which the nobility and gentry regarded the townsmen and the yeomen as their fellow-citizens, was stronger than a people in which distinction of rank was everything, and in which the business of defence was entrusted to the more showy part, instead of being a burden imposed upon the whole. It was a war in which the victors suffered as much as the vanquished. Habits of rapacity and greed were easily contracted, not easily cured. When France at last learned to act

§ 5 Be-  
ginning of  
the Hun-  
dred Years  
War.

CHAP.  
V.

together under a wiser king, the tide of English conquest was thrown back, and the men who had taken pleasure in preying upon a foreign people were driven to prey upon one another at home.

§ 6 The  
Constitu-  
tion of the  
House of  
Commons

No nation can wage a war upon this scale without some effect being produced on its social and political institutions. During the earlier years of failure and expectation, before the victory of Crecy, the existence of war was chiefly felt in England by the increasing demands for money made by the king. The parliament to which these demands were addressed was separated into two Houses, if indeed it had not been already separated in the days of Edward I—an Upper House, composed of peers and prelates; and a Lower House, composed of the knights of the shire, representing the untitled gentry and freeholders of the country, together with the burgesses who represented the towns. The day would come when the fact that there were two houses rather than one would be considered to be a matter of prime importance. In the early days of the House of Commons, the thing of prime importance did not lie in its separation from the House of Lords, but in the union of classes within its own walls. No stronger evidence could be given of the depth to which the idea of national unity had struck its roots in England than lay in this combination. On the continent there was a strong repulsion between these very classes. The dwellers in towns cannot suffice alone to make a nation; their occupations are such as to induce mental exertion, to make men quick and lively, eager for profit, and full of warm devotion towards the spot of earth upon which their fortunes have grown. But the very strength of this devotion tends to exclude a larger patriotism, and it had never proved possible to teach the citizen of Athens that he was above all a Greek, or the citizen of Florence

that he was above all an Italian. In the close relations of the country gentleman to the burgess class, England found a powerful solvent which hindered her towns from crystallising themselves apart, as the towns of Italy had crystallised themselves, or from clinging for support, like the towns of France, to the arbitrary government of the king, in order to free themselves from the brutalities of the feudal landowners around

CHAP.  
V.  
—

It must never be forgotten that the form taken by the House of Commons was the effect, not the cause. Long before there was a House of Commons at all, the ancestors of the knights of the shire of the reign of Edward III. had fought side by side at Lewes with the ancestors of the citizens of London who sent their representatives to Parliament in the same reign. Such a union was of advantage to both classes. The burghers brought an acquaintance with trade which was of the utmost value at a time when the battle of the constitution was fought out on questions mainly relating to commercial imposts, whilst the knights of the shire gave a vigour to resistance which mere citizens could never have offered. It is of the utmost importance that strength in argument should clothe itself in effective strength,—if necessary, in battle. It is ill to reason with the master of thirty legions, and it is the fate of cities which stand alone to discover that neither arts nor commerce nor civic virtue can avail for ever to resist the masters of the wide fields which stretch away beyond the horizon outside their walls. In the House of Commons the masters of the streets and lanes made common cause with the masters of the fields. The knights of the shire furnished the effective strength that was needed, and were consequently the most honoured members of the assembly: on them fell the weight and the glory of speaking, as well as of acting in defence of all, and not merely in defence of their own peculiar privileges.

§ 7 Unity  
of the  
Nation.



CHAP  
V.§ 8 Grow-  
ing  
Strength of  
the Com-  
mons.

The early years of Edward's reign were years of constant progress on the part of the House of Commons, interrupted no doubt by times of retrogression. Edward promised concessions, and then withdrew them. He mingled cajolery and flattery with positive falsehood. Step by step, however, the Commons grew in influence. The great lords of the Upper House found their account in having the knights and burgesses on their side. The protest against injustice and wrong was often no more than a protest. But it was repeated again and again till a sense of right was created which would in the end gain the mastery over the wrong.

§ 9.  
Chivalry.

After all, however, the leading power in England was still the baronage. Edward's French wars indeed were rendered possible by the support which he received from other classes, but they were waged in accordance with the ideas, and with due respect for the interests of the feudal and more especially the military class. So far as that class was animated by any special idea, it was by the idea of chivalry. Chivalry was to the medieval warrior very much what monasticism was to the medieval churchman. It placed before him his own mode of life, in the best and highest light of which it was capable. The rough and often brutal warrior learned that self-restraint and respect for others were higher than prowess in the field. The Black Prince showed himself nobler in humbly waiting upon a captive king than when he won his spurs by his charge at Crecy. In some respects the ideal of honour and courtesy was higher than the ideal of the monk. It was less entirely introspective, less concerned with separating those who entertained it as a class apart from others, more of a bond attaching man closely to his fellow-creatures. But in other respects it was a lower ideal. The code of honour was always more arbitrary, more concerned with outward actions, and less

with inward purity and uprightness than the code of monastic virtues

CHAP.  
V.

In the Middle Ages too the code of honour was subject to special limitations which were most injurious to its development. Courtesy finds all the more scope for its excellence when exercised by the rich towards the poor, or by the strong towards the weak. But in the fourteenth century the community of feeling necessary to the development of courtesy did not reach to all classes of the population. The nation, the growth of which we have been slowly tracing, was by no means co-extensive with the population of the kingdom. Even the House of Commons, which was pushing its way to a share of power, was comparatively an aristocratic body. The labouring population in town and country had no share in its exaltation. Even the citizens, the merchants and tradesmen of the towns, looked down upon those beneath them without trust or affection. To the warrior knight the labouring man was but an instrument of service to whom no courtesy was due, and who, in war, might be pillaged or slaughtered without pity, when the defeated knight or gentleman would be received to mercy. The course of the French wars deepened this feeling of estrangement. The lot of the labourer in France was lower and more pitiable than in England, and the English victors learned to treat the whole class with more complete disdain from their new experience.

§ 10. The  
Labourers.

Then came the days of failure and disaster. Expensive habits, acquired when booty was easily got, were hard to throw off, and the demands made on the labourer, when the baron or the knight returned discomfited from the war in which he had learned the evil lesson of cruelty to the poor, were certain to be higher than they had ever been before. The feeling of the

§ 11. Piers  
the Plough-  
man.

CHAP.  
V

lower classes was roused against their oppressors. Gradually there had been growing up a literature of satirical songs directed against the vices of the rich. The author of 'Piers the Ploughman' now stepped forward to weigh the clergy, the nobles, the traders, and the knights in the balance, and to find them wanting. True industry and true innocence, he declared, were to be found in those alone whose lives were spent in manual labour. This poem was the sharp reply to the romances of chivalry and to chronicles like those of Froissart, in which the rich and the noble were depicted in the brightest colours, and in which life appeared to be one long holiday. Assuredly the picture drawn was highly exaggerated. But it revealed the great fact of the time—the fact that the consolidating work of earlier days needed to be carried on further still, and that the limits of the nation were not yet comprehensive enough for the task that lay before it.

§ 12 The  
Black  
Death and  
the Pea-  
sants' Re-  
volt.

If the demands of the landowners were higher, the position of the peasants for resistance was stronger than it had been before. The condition of the serfs or villeins had been one of improvement for some time past. Some of them had been set free and had given rise to a class of labourers working like the modern labourer for his hire. If the great part of the peasants were still bound to the soil, and if they were unable to leave the landlord's estate without their landlord's leave, most of them had changed the uncertain tenure of their cottages and of the plots of ground around them for one which was more definite. Instead of being called on to plough and sow at their master's direction, they had some fixed work to do, some ascertained labour rent to give, or, in the majority of cases, a fixed money rent to pay in commutation for the labour rent. Suddenly an event occurred which made all past progress seem small. The Black

Death swept over Europe, that devastating scourge to which neither the cholera of our own days, nor the plague of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, can afford a parallel. At least one half of the population, it can hardly be doubted, disappeared before its ravages. The relations between the landowning and the labouring classes were at once altered by the blow. Whatever number may have perished out of the families of the landowners, there were sure to be kinsmen left to gather the inheritance of those who were gone. There would be a new face at the head of the table in the hall of the manor house, a new exacter of service and of rent. In the cottage the change would work in a very different fashion. Where there had been two labourers before there would be but one now, and the same amount of work would have to be done. Men who worked for pay would feel it hard that they did not have more pay when their services were in greater request, and men who paid rent in labour without receiving pay at all would feel it harder than ever that they did not receive money for the work of their hands which had now become twice as valuable as it had been before. Nor is it unlikely, though it is not absolutely certain, that an attempt was made by the lords to enforce the service of labour in the large number of instances in which it had been tacitly permitted to fall into desuetude in consideration of the payment of rent. Other grievances of the labouring classes came to swell the tide of agitation, and before Richard II. had been long upon the throne the peasants were ready to join in an active opposition to the propertied classes, of which the main cry was one for the entire abolition of villenage. In 1381 they burst out into open insurrection. But they were not strong enough to gain their ends. The upper classes were too strong in organisation to be overwhelmed by an un-

CHAP.  
V

organised crowd, and the insurrection was quenched in blood.

§ 13. Wyclif's  
Principles.

Revolutions are only possible when the interests of the masses can be welded into a permanent political force by the leadership of the thoughtful few. In the latter part of the fourteenth century, the masses were ready to act, and the thinker was present to think. That thinker was Wyclif. But between the two there was no common ground, and the failure of his movement for religious reform was inevitable. His ideas developed themselves not out of the new social aspirations of the multitude, but out of the old national aspirations of the upper classes. He began by demanding that England should be more independent of the Papacy than it had hitherto been, less a prey to the needy foreign clergy who came to batten on its ecclesiastical pastures. It was the cause alike of the English clergy who disliked seeing the benefices which they coveted in the hands of Italians, and of the English landowners, who disliked the loss of the patronage which they counted as their own. But Wyclif was not a man to be content with the defence of merely material interests. He asked that English benefices should be placed not merely in the hands of men of English birth, but in the hands of men whose high moral worth fitted them for the fulfilment of spiritual functions. He cast down his doctrine of Dominion founded on Grace as his challenge to a worldly and self-seeking clergy. At once he had on his side the still more worldly and self-seeking aristocracy, with John of Gaunt at its head. They fancied it would be easy, under the cover of reforming the Church, to draw a large portion of its revenues into their own coffers. They did not see that Wyclif's challenge had opened wider issues than they were aware of. Stopped of its scholastic and ecclesiastical form, Dominion founded on

Grace was the doctrine with which we are so familiar at the present day, that no authority or institution can, in the long run, justify its existence except by the services which it is capable of rendering. John of Gaunt and his comrades were happy in finding such a weapon wherewith to cut down their rivals the bishops till, on a sudden, they discovered that their own authority was at stake. The dominion which they claimed over the peasants, the hard compulsion to forced service, the scanty pay doled out, did not seem to the wretched labourers to be in any way founded on grace. The insurrection of 1381 came to remind the barons that they were playing with edged tools, and that the less they had to do with Wyclif the better they would consult their own interests.

If Wyclif thus lost his hold upon one side in the social strife, he gained no hold on the other. A few months before the insurrection, he entered boldly on the path of a religious reformer by his denial of the doctrine of transubstantiation. He was not without numerous followers, and the Lollardism which sprang out of his teaching was a living force in England for some time to come. But it was weak through its connection with subversive social doctrines. He himself stood aloof from such doctrines, but he could not prevent his followers from mingling in the social fray. It was perhaps their merit that they did so. The established constitutional order was but another name for oppression and wrong to the lower classes. But as yet the lower classes were not sufficiently advanced in moral and political training to make it safe to entrust them with the task of righting their own wrongs as they would have attempted to right them if they had gained the mastery. It had nevertheless become impossible to leave the peasants to be once more goaded by suffering into re-

§ 14 Wy-  
clif's  
Failure.

CHAP  
V

---

§ 15. The  
Conserva-  
tive Reac-  
tion.

bellion The attempt, if it had been made, to enforce obsolete labour-rents was tacitly abandoned, and gradually during the next century the mass of the villeins passed into the position of freemen

For the moment, nobles and prelates, landowners and clergy, banded themselves together to form one great party of resistance. The church came to be but an outwork of the baronage. Courtneys and Arundels, Beauforts and Bourchiers, sate on the high seats of prelacy; no longer vigorous scholars like Stephen Langton, or humble saints like Edmund Rich. If there still lingered a feeling of appetite for the goods of the clergy, it was among the burgesses and lesser gentry of the House of Commons, not among the great houses, the chiefs of which were to be found in the House of Lords. Such a union of interests was certain to increase the weight of parliament in the constitutional system. Parliaments are weak when they will nothing strongly; when the aims of the more devoted and intelligent fall flat upon the ears of those who care for nothing but present ease. The defence of interests appeals alike to all who share in those interests. Not, indeed, that the better minds amongst the sharers in this great conservative reaction were without some sense of higher duty. To them it seemed that the battle was not for the preservation of pelf and power, but for the salvation of society from those who were undermining its foundations in Church and State. Such a combination would, in any case, have raised into increased prominence the parliament which represented the upper classes. Its progress to power was accelerated, if only accelerated, by the weakness of the king. Richard II. had this special failing, that he stood on neither side of the great controversy of the age. He had not the large-heartedness and the heroism to place himself at the head of the peasants,

excepting in one brief moment of excitement, and thus to obtain at least some consideration for their just demands. On the other hand he had no real sympathy with the ruling classes. Fitful and uncertain in action, he strove, with long intervals of inertness, to maintain or acquire authority over them without regard for the conditions on which alone authority can be wielded.

CHAP.

V

The revolution of 1399, which hurled Richard from the throne, was, in its external circumstances, the counterpart of the revolution of 1688. Both diminished the powers of the crown; in both the leadership fell into the hands of the aristocracy. But whilst the revolution of 1688 was one step forward in the direction in which the nation was ultimately to move, the revolution of 1399 was a step backward in arrest of motion. Its main advantage was that by postponing the consideration of the relation between the labouring and the propertied classes to a time when the question could be faced without fear of violence and bloodshed, and by improving the working of constitutional government, it provided for the consideration of such matters in the way of reasoning and argument, and thus indirectly benefited even those who were, for the present, entirely excluded from the deliberations of parliament.

§ 16 The  
Revolution  
of 1399

The fifteenth century witnessed, if not the entire extinction of serfage, at least its limitation within very narrow bounds. Economical laws proved too strong for the governing classes, and they found their account rather in dealing with the labourer as a free man to be bargained with, than in treating him as a serf to be compelled to work against his will for nothing. A hundred years after the revolution of 1399 there were still serfs in England. But their existence was the exception and not the rule. Lollardism, too, ran much the same course. As soon as it ceased to be fostered by the indignation of the

§ 17 Gra-  
dual Eman-  
cipation of  
the Serfs



CHAP.  
V

labouring class against its oppressors, it dwindled away. Some traces of it, indeed, are long to be found. Much dissatisfaction with the lives and teaching of the clergy lingered on till the dawn of the Reformation. The sharp statute which authorised the burning of heretics in the reign of Henry IV. found its martyrs for a time, and then fell asleep for lack of material, till a new attack upon the clergy appeared to awaken it afresh

§ 18 The  
Decay of  
the Baron-  
age.

Whilst a new class was thus rising up to share in the privileges of freemen, the victors of 1399 were reaping the natural consequences of their success. The revolution of selfish conservatism was followed by a scramble for power. Only with the greatest difficulty did Henry IV. succeed in holding his own against the great feudal houses. His son, Henry V., turned their energies and their love of plunder upon foreign soil. More unprincipled war there never was. It had not even the excuse which the war of Edward III. had, of the necessity of giving protection to the English trade with Flanders. When, after Henry's death, the English conquerors were driven step by step out of the territory which they had held for a time, they found themselves in much the same position as that in which their ancestors had been a century before. Cooped up within the limits of their island, they sighed for fresh fields to plunder, and those of their own countrymen were alone accessible. To restrain men in such a temper would have been difficult even for a strong king. Unhappily, the king on the throne was always weak in mind, and was often absolutely insane. The name of Henry VI. became a weapon in the armoury of men whose only object was to enrich themselves under legal forms. Men who were great and powerful already saw their opportunity of becoming more great and powerful still. Great landowners, who had crowds of armed retainers in their service, bribed and bullied juries till

the administration of the law became a farce, and on the rare occasions when this course failed, they knew how to vindicate their claims by maiming or assassinating their opponents, or by laying siege to houses, the possession of which they coveted. A desire for a strong government to put an end to the anarchy arose, not merely in the breast of the peasant and the labourer, but amongst stout country-gentlemen who wished to keep the lands which had descended to them from their ancestors, and amongst tradesmen who wished to enjoy in peace the profits of their industry. When, therefore, the baronage, torn by its intestine divisions, broke out into civil war, the wishes of all those who had no interest in the perpetuation of confusion gradually turned to the Yorkist party as affording a hope of better things. Edward IV. had his faults, but at least he was not an idiot or a madman. He was anxious to take advantage of the general desire for order and government to strengthen his own position, and the diminution of the great houses by death upon the field and on the scaffold rendered his task easier than it would have been for anyone a few years before.

Only after the overthrow of Richard III. and the assumption of the crown by Henry VII. did the greatness of the change which had taken place fully appear. The nation needed peace, but that it might have it permanently it needed a firm government. It is delusive to trace the exceeding strength of the Tudor monarchy merely to the disappearance of the great houses. Undoubtedly the Tudor monarchy would never have established itself if the great houses had remained standing. But they fell, not by the accident of civil warfare, but because they deserved to fall; because they had been turbulent, aggressive, and tyrannical; because they had misused the strength of their position to oppress their inferiors in social rank with forms of law and without forms of law. The monarchy in

§ 19  
Causes of  
the Rise of  
the Tudor  
Monarchy.

CHAP.  
V  

---

the hands of Henry VII. stepped into their place because it was able to realise the promise of the older monarchy, to dispense justice without fear or favour, to check the ascendancy of the rich over the poor, of the strong over the weak. History knows no violent breaches of continuity, no new monarchy established on the ruins of the old. The kingship of Henry VII. was but the kingship of Henry II. and Edward I. adapted to the needs of a different generation. But the very fact that it was so adapted modified its character profoundly. The dread of a return of the anarchy which had prevailed under the forms of constitutional order made men think lightly of the worth of constitutional order itself. The king as the active and executive factor of the constitution was magnified beyond measure. Parliament which had made itself to a great extent the instrument of the nobility was for a time discredited. From Edward IV. downwards, kings found that they could venture upon actions which their predecessors had not dared to commit. Illegal levies of money, illegal imprisonments, were winked at from fear lest the rule of the great houses should return. Nor was this change confined to England alone. In all the great states of the continent the path to equality before the law lay through absolutism. England reaped the benefit of her earlier progress in the restrictions upon absolutism which, in form at least, she retained at the time when her monarchy approached the nearest to absolutism. But even she could not escape from the operation of the political law which prevailed elsewhere.

## CHAPTER VI.

## THE TUDOR MONARCHY.

THE reign of Henry VII gave to the English middle classes what they most needed, the protection of a firm government. By strict execution of the statute of liveries of Edward IV., the great noblemen were prohibited from giving to their followers the outward symbol of a military force, and Henry was strong enough in the general support to take care that armies were not levied at all excepting in his own name. As far as legislation was concerned, parliaments became mere instruments in his hands. The House of Lords had been thinned away by the recent massacres and executions, and the House of Commons was filled with men who had neither the power nor the will to be other than his humble servants. Men might grumble at his exorbitant taxation, but the bare idea of seeing feudal anarchy again raising its head was too terrible to be thought of, and much could be endured by those who knew what a dire calamity a successful insurrection would bring forth. Those who were ready to endure much themselves, would not be very careful of the sufferings of others, and the lesson was soon learnt by the king that, in spite of all restraints of the law, the lives and properties of the higher classes were at his mercy. Juries would be ready to convict those whom he saw fit to bring to trial. Parliaments would be prepared to condone arbitrary aggressions upon

CHAP.  
VI§ 1 Reign  
of Henry  
VII.

## *INTRODUCTION TO ENGLISH HISTORY.*

liberty and property. The middle classes were too much under the sway of a violent desire for peace, and were even yet too little trained in experience of constitutional politics, to feel instinctively that wrong done to one is done to all, and that the rich and powerful cannot be deprived of the safeguards of law without risk to the humble and the poor. It could not probably have been otherwise. But it was a happy thing that the forms of better days survived, for the very reason, perhaps, that the spirit which once filled them had so completely fallen asleep that they seemed entirely innocuous to the ruling powers. The day would come when a new life would enter into them, a life which would assuredly have found in any case its own forms, but which flowed on gently and without disturbance because it had not to create new channels for itself.

Henry VII, indeed, did not leave the constitution quite as he found it. Lawyers tell us that the court of the Star Chamber was derived from the ancient jurisdiction of the Privy Council. But it was reinvigorated by Act of Parliament in the early part of the reign of the first Tudor king, and, for all practical purposes, it may be held to date from his time. Consisting, at first, of certain royal officers and one of the chief justices, and ultimately, of all privy councillors together with the two chief justices, it was a tribunal formed to take cognisance of all cases in which justice was not to be had from the ordinary courts. It could not take away life, and, till later times, it did not claim to punish by more than fine and imprisonment. The full exercise of the powers which had been given to it was a healing measure. Wherever a powerful landowner cajoled or bullied juries, wherever faction banded men together to oppress the innocent, the Star Chamber righted the balance. Hurried

off to Westminster, the offender found himself in the presence of judges whom no bribery would influence, no threats divert from their course. The time might come when the king would separate himself from the national feeling, and when such a court might convert itself into an instrument of oppression. For the present the Star Chamber was the weapon with which the oppressed armed the king, that he might strike the oppressors down.

The strength which a government acquires by being armed against anarchy is short-lived. Its very success brings such strength to an end. Not only are the violent measures to which it resorts no longer needed when it has become master of the enemies of peaceful progress, but it becomes itself deteriorated in the process. It comes to look upon coercion not as a necessary means of escape from extreme peril, but as a permanent mode of exercising power. The reign of Henry VII. did not come to an end before he had roused indignation by the extortionate injustice which has ever since been connected with the names of his ministers, Empson and Dudley. Always alive to the importance of a well-filled exchequer to a prince who wishes to be master of his subjects, he had forgotten that the goodwill of his subjects was even better than their money. He could comprehend the strength which his eyes could see and his hands could handle. Into the unseen his vision did not penetrate. In this he was but the representative of his age. The ideals of the past were gone; the science of the medieval ages had become a laughing-stock. The medieval saints were all dead, and had left no successors. The medieval church had become either a sink of corruption, or at the best, a house of idleness. Anyone who would devote himself for its sake was a **rare** exception in the midst of a careless and a mocking

§ 3 End of  
the Middle  
Ages.

CHAP.  
VI

generation. Nor were other ideals readily at hand. Reverence paid to woman had given place to bargaining, in which the future wife was estimated like a beast in the market, at her money's worth. The king was no longer a gracious lord for whom one would be ready to die, but a mere guarantee against loss, like a fire-insurance office in modern times

§ 4 The  
Italian  
Renaissance.

Such a state of things could not last. A society with no ideal but self-preservation is doomed to dissolution. It needs an aim to set before it, an object for which to strive, a common bond calling into sympathetic activity those higher powers which have been developed in the course of its past history. Such an aim and such a bond was offered by the great movement which spread over Western Europe from Italy under the name of the Renaissance. It was the intellectual and artistic reversal of the characteristic doctrine of the Middle Ages. Asceticism carried to exaggerated lengths had become ridiculous or disgusting. The wearisome conventual discipline, the renunciation of the duties of life had become a mere form for most even of the monks themselves. Men turned to human life and beauty, to human art and science. To enjoy the world, to learn all that the wisest of past generations had to teach, and to employ the legacy of the past for the benefit of the future, grew to be the objects which alone were worth striving for. Therefore the powers of men must not be repressed but strengthened and encouraged. The body of man was no longer the husk to be peeled away that the grain within might be prepared for a life beyond the grave, but the very instrument of power through which the living soul might work whilst yet there was time. It is never among the people who give birth to new ideas that those ideas attain to their healthiest development. The new thought takes possession of them too exclu-

sively, and quickens one side of their nature into too one-sided a life. So it had been in the early Middle Ages with the monasticism of the East. So it was when the Middle Ages drew to a close with the humanism of Italy. What Benedict of Nursia was to Simeon Stylites, Colet and More were to Pulci and Machiavelli. The Italians had before them the lees of medieval Christianity in their foulest corruption. Their reverence for humanity grew to be mere pampering of the intellect or of the senses. In England, as the evil was less intense, the reaction was less intense also. The old Church life lives on in the words of Colet, interpenetrated with a new spirit of inquiry and a new longing for a reign of justice rather than for self-mortification. In More we have the old political life living on with fresh and increased reverence for the poor and the oppressed. 'The Prince' of Machiavelli is appalling for its cruelty and its cynicism. The 'Utopia' blends the spirit of reasoned kindness and the spirit of reasoned self-denial, with the reverence for men simply as men apart from their piety or their virtue. Sir Thomas More goes forth to the highways and the hedges in search of the vagrant and the robber, to win them not for the life to come, but for the honest citizenship of the present world. Nor was it only in such men as More that the many-sidedness of English life was manifested. Those aims which with him were blended together in sweet harmony are to be found side by side incoherently in Henry VIII. With all the love of pleasure of an Alexander VI., he never gave himself so entirely over to vice as that most unblushing of the Italian popes. With all the cruel wilfulness of Cæsar Borgia, he never equalled the shameless villanies of that most atrocious of Italian tyrants. He preferred to satisfy his lust under the forms of marriage, and to satisfy his wrath under the forms of



CHAP.  
VI

legal procedure. He may not have been consciously self-seeking. He took a real interest in learning. He may have had a vague desire to live uprightly and honourably, though his effort only led to a disgraceful satisfaction with the appearance of truth and justice, whilst their reality was trodden under foot.

§ 5 The  
Separation  
from  
Rome.

The separation from Rome was effected in a way in which such a man was likely to effect it. It sprang from a purely personal and even a sensual motive. Henry threw off the authority of the Pope simply because he was tired of a staid and elderly wife, and had fallen in love with a flighty young woman. But the moment the thing was done, he justified his acts to himself in reforming the Church according to the ideas of the better men around him. There was to be no change in the doctrine preached, but there was to be a change in the habits of those by whom it was preached. The clergy were to cease to be untruthful and vicious. The monasteries, already partly emptied by the growing unpopularity of the monastic life, were to be destroyed as abodes of sloth and corruption. Images were to be destroyed, not because their use was wrong, but because they had been made the instruments of fraud by their cheating owners. Henry did not purpose to go further than to purify the old Christianity by an admixture of intellectual criticism and moral earnestness.

§ 6. The  
Growth of  
Despotism.

By placing himself at the head of such a work, Henry rendered himself more despotic than he had been before. The destruction of the monasteries, the compulsory obedience of the clergy to the king as Supreme Head of the Church, and their separation from the See of Rome, from which they had once derived their union and their force, combined to leave him unassailable by ecclesiastical resistance. The great temporal lords who still remained were smitten down, and

their places taken by new families from among the lower gentry living upon his favour, looking to him for a share in the plunder of the monks, and dependent upon that plunder for the means of supporting a life of ostentatious profusion. Many of the great houses of modern England, the Russells, the Herberts, the Wriothesleys, owe their origin to that splendid court. Over them all towered the king's stately form, 'the majestic lord that broke the bonds of Rome,' and whose course through life was accompanied by the frequent thud of the executioner's axe. Before the bare enunciation of the royal will all resistance was silenced. The spirit of the Renaissance, of the new learning, as it was called in England, was not a spirit of liberty. Those who like Sir Thomas More and Fisher refused to lay their honour in the dust before the royal despot, had to fall back on the old traditional standing-point of Anselm and Becket, and to defy the commands of Henry in the name of the papal authority. Others amongst the representatives of the new learning floated with the stream, made themselves the instruments of the king's will, like Cromwell or like Cranmer, and, whilst applying their faculties to the criticism of the received theology, took care never, even in thought, to raise a protest against the deeds of the sovereign who had become to them as one in the place of God. The protest of Sir Thomas More was made in the name of a system which it was impossible to revive. But unless the spirit of Anselm could live again, England, in spite of the new learning, was doomed to corruption and to the catastrophe which is the natural result of corruption. If there was to be any heroism amongst men, any self-devotion, any power of resistance to tyranny and wrong, there must be something more awakened in them than a reverence for human nature, and for the pleasures of

CHAP.  
VI

---

the flesh and the intellect. Unless the sense of individual responsibility could be called out, unless the spiritual powers could be quickened into new life, there might be progress in knowledge, but there would be no moral growth. To the ideal of the new learning must be added the ideal of Protestantism.

§ 7 The  
Protest-  
ants.

Protestantism was far more than a change of doctrine. It was a reversal of the poles of religious thought and feeling. In the Medieval Church each man aimed at casting off his individuality, at bringing himself under definite rules, till he reached the absolute self-renunciation of the perfect monk. The Protestant spirit strengthened each man's individuality by the direct contemplation of One who was higher and holier than himself. Man was to be made righteous by faith—by fixing the eye of the spirit on Him who was all righteous,—to be made pure by faith—by fixing the eye of the spirit on Him who was all pure. The guiding clue of life was to be found within and not without. Forms and ceremonies, ecclesiastical institutions and persons, were rather interruptions than assistants to one who was endued with the full spirit of Protestantism. Its English disciples derived their faith from Zwingli rather than from Luther. They not merely threw off respect for the pope and the papal church, but for all the institutions to which men had become habituated. Even the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper retained its place in their respect only by the mental associations quickened by it. If such a religion had much in common with the new learning, it was opposed to it in many points. Like the new learning, its strength lay in the cultivation of the powers of man, not in their destruction. Like the new learning it cherished the development of intelligence and reason. But it did not, like the new learning, regard culture as an end in itself; still less did

it look upon the world around as the instrument of self-indulgence. The Protestant hungered and thirsted after righteousness that he might make others better than they were before. The new learning showed to man the kingdoms of this world and the glory of them. Protestantism bade him fall down and worship the Giver before he entered into the enjoyment of the gift.

The change produced in England by the half-century which succeeded the overthrow of Richard III. was enormous. Instead of a people with scarcely a thought beyond the mere need of bodily safety, we have a people busily occupied with the highest objects of thought and life. We are surprised by the diversity as well as by the intensity of the effort. From the conservative reverence for the ancient church to the pagan eagerness for enjoyment, and again to the sombre denunciation of pleasure by the Protestant zealot, the whole gamut of human passion and feeling was run over. In the midst of this diversity too there was a certain harmony. Take the extremes, and we have men as discordant as fire and water. Between the prior of the Charter-House, who died rather than renounce the papal authority, and Lambert or Anne Ascue, who died rather than acknowledge the truth of the papal doctrines, no reconciliation seemed possible. But between those extremes every shade of opinion was to be found. Men like Cranmer, starting from the ancient forms, worked themselves by an intellectual process into the gradual acceptance of the principal points of the new creed. Men like Latimer, starting from an enthusiastic devotion to righteousness, found room in their conceptions for much that savoured of the ancient faith. There was infinite life, infinite variety of ideal, of aim, and of character, but there was no breach of continuity. X There were parties of every kind, but there was a strong national life

§ 8 Character of the Age.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

animating them all. Men were not merely Protestants, or Anglicans, or Catholics. They all knew themselves to be Englishmen as well, sometimes to be Englishmen before everything else. The great political idea of the age was expressed in its favourite political term—the commonwealth. Even selfish adventurers had to pretend that they held their lands, their honours, their very lives, not for themselves but for the good of all.

§ 9. The  
King's Su-  
premacy.

The idea of the royal authority obtained a new consecration when the king came to be regarded as the impersonation of the commonwealth. There never was a man more representative of a people than was Henry VIII. of the England of his day. In him met the brutal passions of his subjects with their dogged persistency, their love of show and splendour, their intellectual, moral, and religious tendencies. Low and high, coarse and cultured, mocking and serious, he had a side for all. He could speak to each rank, to each character, in the name of England, because all England was in himself. The very title of Supreme Head of the Church of England which scandalises us now, scandalised scarcely any one then. It was felt that he laid his hand upon the clergy not in his own name, but in the name of the nation, and that if he did not choose for them what was absolutely the best, he chose for them what was most compatible with the condition of the national mind. Even his cruelties were based upon this idea of his office. His conception of a national church was large-minded and generous. He was not sharp-scented to track out the windings of heretical tendencies. He issued the English translation of the Bible to the world in order that men might search for themselves. If he cut off the heads of Catholics and burnt extreme Protestants at the stake, it was because Catholics and extreme Protestants were each inclined not merely to hold their own opinions,

but to set them up in defiance of the commonwealth. It was well indeed that there were found some to resist to the death, well that men should be found to whom truth was a pearl of great price, to be followed for its own sake without thought of consequences. But if England found itself in due time strong enough to permit every man to follow his own conscientious persuasion without let or hindrance, it was because she herself had that strength which grows out of the spirit of compromise, which fuses into some tolerable harmony the discordant imaginations of parties and of men.

During the years which are known as those of the reign of the boy-king Edward VI, the government forsook this strong position. The greedy and profligate courtiers entered into an alliance with the Protestants. The reformers who had given their support to Henry split up into two parties, the one gradually drawing back with Gardiner till they ultimately ceased to be distinguishable from the Catholics, the other pushing on with Cranmer till they were able to hold out a hand to the Protestants. The rapidity of the changes effected, the denial of transubstantiation, the alteration of forms and ceremonies, the abandonment of the time-honoured latin in the services of the Church, would have been sufficient, even if these changes had proceeded from men universally respected, to have shocked the feelings of a conservative people, slow to change the habits of generations. Protestants and reformers together formed only a minority amongst the nation, and they had to bear the weight of obloquy earned by the greedy courtiers who supported them, only that they themselves might plunder ecclesiastics and oppress the poor. No single act of the wealthy landowners had caused such dissatisfaction for many years, as the recklessness with which they had driven off the peasants from their agricultural holdings,

§ 10. Edward VI.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

in order to enclose the land for their sheep, the wool of which fetched a high price. In Henry's days there had been an effort to redress the evil, though the effort had been harsh and violent. The crowds of sturdy vagrants and robbers which poured forth over the land were pitilessly flogged and hanged. But at least an attempt was made to prohibit the practice of converting arable land into pasture. In the days of Edward the prohibition was abandoned, and those who sought under Ket, the tanner of Norwich, to redress the mischief with their own hands, were cut down without mercy. At last Edward died, and the shouts which welcomed Mary expressed the resolution of the nation to submit no longer to a handful of religious theorists, supported by an unprincipled band of robbers who chose to style themselves a government.

§ 11.  
Mary.

The reaction of Mary's reign was too severe to last. The fierce persecution to which the Protestants were subjected predisposed the spectators of their sufferings to pity. Yet it was not pity alone which swung the nation round to its final breach with the papacy. If in the days of Edward VI Protestantism had been associated with selfish greed at home, in the days of Mary Catholicism was associated with incompetence in the domestic government and with a subservient cringing to foreigners. The Church was laid at the feet of the pope, a foreign ecclesiastic. The State was laid at the feet of the king of Spain, a foreign potentate. The Queen neither understood the English character, nor cared for the things for which Englishmen cared. Calais, the pride of many generations of Englishmen, was thrown away by her negligence. All she thought of was the success of her beloved Philip, by whom she was regarded with loathing. In England itself, the debased coinage continued to afflict the poor and the man of business alike, whilst the

wealthy were frightened by the evident desire of the queen to place once more the confiscated ecclesiastical lands in the hands of the clergy. Mary's death, like Edward's, came at a moment fortunate for herself, when a revolution was preparing to sweep away all that she held most dear.

CHAP  
VI

---

Elizabeth at once took up the position which had been occupied by Henry VIII. Her reign was indeed the continuation of her father's. The last two reigns had shown the impossibility of governing England by the help of either of the extreme parties, and the queen was therefore well advised in taking up her ground between them. Yet prudent as her course was, it was one surrounded with immediate difficulty and danger. Late events had so embittered the strife between Catholics and Protestants, that the central party on which Henry had relied was scarcely any longer in existence. The theory that it was possible to entrust the guidance of the English Church to a lay sovereign without giving it over to change, had been proved by the stern trial of experiment to be no more than a dream. Almost everyone, therefore, who clung to the old forms and the old doctrines was driven into the arms of the papacy. On the other hand, almost everyone who disliked those forms and doctrines, and who regarded it as the highest of duties to combat them, was driven to the opposite extreme. It seemed but a poor thing to follow in the steps of Cranmer, to separate slowly the wheat from the chaff, by boulding it through some intellectual sieve, the texture of which depended very much upon the mental characteristics of the operator. It was a far more attractive course to accept the Protestant doctrine as a whole from the lips of Calvin, the Genevan reformer, who had drawn up a whole system of dogmatic theology and had supported it by a thoroughly organised eccle-

§ 12. The Religious Difficulty at the Accession of Elizabeth



CHAP  
VI

siastical system ; especially as it happened that a considerable number of the reformed clergy, who had gone into exile during Mary's reign, had fallen at Frankfort under the influences of Calvinism, and were dissatisfied even with the last revision of the Prayer-Book which had been made under Cranmer's guidance at the close of Edward's reign. In the Calvinistic churches the theory that nothing was to be accepted but that which could be proved from scripture to be true was opposed to the theory of the English reformers, that nothing was to be rejected which could not be proved by scripture to be false, and gained a hold upon men by the logical completeness of Calvin's system. They opened the Bible to find there above all things the doctrine of predestination, and the presbyterian institutions. In the Genevan Church the ministers, supporting themselves on the democracy of the congregations, in reality swayed the congregations by the authority of their teaching

§ 13 The  
Eliza-  
bethan  
Com  
promise.

Naturally Elizabeth felt ill at ease between these rival systems. The Catholics would look first to the pope and only secondarily to herself. The Calvinist would pay her respect so far as she favoured the growth of his special form of religion. Nor was this all. The Catholic expected her to suppress and persecute the Calvinist. The Calvinist expected her to suppress and persecute the Catholic. It was here that her private interest coincided with the interest of the nation at large. It would have been a great calamity if England had been divided into hostile parties opposing one another to the death, like the factions by which France was for half-a-century to be miserably distracted. It was this consideration which formed the justification of Elizabeth in taking the Church into her own hand. The episcopal constitution was maintained as a means by which she might keep the clergy in order. But

she was too wise to attempt, and too little of a theologian to wish to reduce the doctrine taught by them to a narrow and consistent orthodoxy. The work done by Cranmer in the days of her father and her brother had laid the foundations of a wider and more comprehensive teaching. The habit of taking all that existed for granted till it was proved to be untrue, on the one hand gave encouragement to intellectual vigour, and on the other hand left free scope to the various mental and spiritual tendencies of the Englishmen of the day. (In the outward forms and ceremonies of the Elizabethan Church, its clinging to the old words and to many of the old thoughts, there was that which would attract those who were half Catholics in heart, whilst by its spirit of personal religion, its careful cherishing of individual responsibility, its honour paid to domestic life by its permission to the marriage of the clergy, as well as by the tone of its doctrinal articles, it would attract those who were inclined to Calvinism without being thorough-going disciples of the Genevan reformer.)

Such a compromise would have had no chance of establishing itself if all men in England had been religious, and if those who were religious had thought of nothing but religion. In point of fact, there were many men who cared for the greatness of the State and for the independence of the nation far more than they cared for the prevalence of one doctrine rather than of another, and a far larger number of men who were willing that a government should allow what doctrines it pleased to be taught, provided that it secured peace and plenty to the community. In this way an ecclesiastical system, weak in ecclesiastical support, was strengthened by all the forces of a government which was popular upon other grounds than its religious views, and held its ground till it had lasted long enough to avail

§ 14. The  
Eliza-  
bethan  
Common-  
wealth.

CHAP  
VI

---

itself of the strength given by the respect which surrounds all institutions to which men have been long accustomed. Nor was it only upon a mere calculation of advantages that the Church maintained its footing. The protection of the Church by the State, which is a weakness in our own days, was a strength in the days of Elizabeth. To those who were neither Catholics nor Calvinists, the predominance of the Commonwealth over every other form of association formed an ideal which was almost a religion, and of this Commonwealth the queen herself became the embodiment. The homage, absurd as it came to be, which was paid to the imaginary beauties of the royal person was in the main only an expression of the consciousness that peace and justice, the punishment of wickedness and vice, and the maintenance of good order and virtue, came primarily from the queen and secondarily from the Church. If Englishmen were not flying in one another's faces, and driving swords through one another's bodies, it was to the queen that this happy result was owing. Her strength lay in her representative character. She claimed the powers which she exercised in her own right, but she was able to employ them because she exercised them in the name not of a party, but of the State.

§15 Elizabeth on  
her Defence  
against the  
Catholics.

It was impossible that a compromise so prepared should be equally satisfactory to all. The great secular conflict of the age was the conflict between the jurisdiction of the temporal princes and the jurisdiction of the pope. To take her part in this, Elizabeth would have been obliged, even if she had not wished to do so, to lean towards the Protestants. The English Protestants had no help to expect from their brethren on the Continent, and were therefore obliged to trust for support entirely to themselves. The English Catholics belonged to a

Church whose head was a foreign ecclesiastic, and which numbered among its supporters two of the great monarchs of Western Europe. It was therefore not unlikely that those monarchs, if they entered into a quarrel with Elizabeth, might rally to their side at least a part of her Catholic subjects. For some time Elizabeth was able to keep the foreign danger at bay by dexterously playing off France and Spain against each other. For she knew well that neither of those rival monarchies would be content to see the forces of England added to those of the other. But before long the danger approached her in another form. Mary Queen of Scots was not merely the queen of a neighbouring kingdom, she was the claimant of the English throne, on the ground that Elizabeth was disqualified by the stain of illegitimate birth. Elizabeth would fain have avoided the inevitable struggle. Then came the catastrophe in Scotland. Mary Stuart was driven from her own kingdom by her subjects. As a refugee, she sought protection and support in England for the reconquest of the throne which she had lost. Elizabeth had a hard problem before her. To set Mary free was to give her the chance of reconquering a strong position in Scotland, and with that she would gain a scarcely less strong position in England. Her right to the English throne, which she had never relinquished, would be made good with all the forces of Scotland, probably backed with a French or Spanish army, and by the willing support of all the malcontents of England, headed by three-fourths of the nobility of the land. In retaining Mary in prison Elizabeth judged that she was doing the best for herself and the great cause which she represented. It may indeed be doubted whether she was wise in this. Mary as a prisoner was more powerful than Mary at large would have been. She became, voluntarily or involuntarily, the centre

CHAP.  
VI.

---

of intrigues against the crown. The defence of the captive princess threw an imaginative halo over the cause of the ancient Church. Young men vowed to live and die in her defence. The tale of her sufferings was spread over all Europe, and woke the spirit of chivalry and devotion in her favour, till Elizabeth's subjects began to doubt whether there was safety for their queen and nation as long as Mary continued to live.

§ 16 The  
Jesuit Pro-  
paganda.

Together with the political propaganda, a new religious propaganda alarmed the queen. The Society of Jesuits had been formed with the express intention of combating Protestantism. Every Jesuit on entering the order relinquished all power over himself. The will of his superior became his only law, in accordance with which he was bound to act, to speak, to think. In opposition to the self-contained religion of the Protestant appeared a form of religion which treated the individual conscience with contempt. The extravagance of discipline appeared as the opponent of the extravagance of individual religion. To the Jesuit, Protestantism appeared to be equivalent to Antinomianism, and he convinced himself and strove to convince others that those who had rejected the obedience of the Church of Rome were fanatics ready to plunge into any vice under the cover of the profession of assent to a correct form of words. As often happens with bitter partisans, he mistook the caricature of the belief which he disliked for its vital strength. At least he had the courage of his opinions. It was impossible that Elizabeth should regard the movement as one of a merely religious character. The whole present and future organisation of England was at stake. (The success of the Catholic reaction implied the substitution of Mary receiving orders from the pope for Elizabeth ruling in

accordance with the good will of her subjects, and fostering all forms of thought which did not threaten the stability of her throne. For the future it implied the substitution of mental slavery for mental freedom, of the spirit which urges men to be content with the acceptance of their beliefs from an external authority for the spirit which urges them to base their principles upon inquiry. For some years indeed the Jesuits who arrived in England to dare and endure were but few in number, and most of those few were seized and executed by the government. But the energy of the few who escaped gave force to many who were not members of the Society. First Parsons, and then Gerard, were men of extraordinary ability in the organisation and management of men.

It was inevitable that two systems so radically opposed to one another as the supremacy of the crown and the supremacy of the pope, should come into violent collision with one another. Each side tried to make the best of its own cause. The government, when it seized the Catholic missionaries, and imprisoned, tortured, or executed them, announced that it treated them in this manner, not because they preached a false religion, but because they made men rebels to the queen. The Catholic missionaries, on the other hand, announced that they were persecuted not for treason, but for religion. Undoubtedly there was truth on both sides. Whether the missionaries wished it or not, the success of their efforts could not but end in the overthrow of the political as well as of the ecclesiastical authority of Elizabeth. Whether Elizabeth wished it or not, she could not enforce this authority without assailing by violence the conscientious convictions of thousands of her subjects. In the eyes of posterity, Elizabeth's justification is to be found in considerations, the import of which she

§ 17 Per-  
secution of  
the  
Catholics.

CHAP.  
VI

---

scarcely understood. Against her was the old doctrine that the acceptance of certain definite opinions promulgated by authority was so all-important to mankind, that for the sake of retaining them, men were bound to put to death their fellow-men, a doctrine which by exalting submissive assent at the expense of moral and intellectual vigour, tended in the long run to surround itself with a poisonous atmosphere of falsehood and corruption. On her side was the doctrine of which only glimpses had yet been gained, that men are better only for the truths which they appropriate to themselves by effort, and for the earnestness of their moral striving. (In proscribing the papal religion, she was not proscribing a form of thought and belief which claimed mere equality with others. She was warring against a tyranny which claimed the right of crushing all independence of judgment under its heel. Undoubtedly there was much which was harsh, much too that was worse than harsh, in the mode in which she prepared her triumph. The treatment of the Catholics, like the treatment of all prisoners, was barbarous, and as special objects of suspicion, the Catholics were subjected to hardships from which others were free.) Nor is it possible to doubt that chicanery and fraud entered largely into the plots by which Elizabeth's ministers contrived to give an air of legality to the proceedings by which they dogged Mary Stuart to death. But we are not bound, because we are dissatisfied with the manner in which she acted, to be dissatisfied with the action itself. Elizabeth, in upholding the authority of the crown, was upholding the authority of the State, and in upholding the authority of the State, she was, unlike William Rufus and Henry I., upholding a truer and nobler authority than that which the Roman missionaries had to offer.

To a limited extent, what was true of Elizabeth's

CHAP.  
VI§ 18.  
Elizabeth and  
the  
Puritans.

opposition to Rome was true of her opposition to Calvinistic Puritanism. The Puritans, indeed, unlike the Catholics, appealed, not to external authority, but to the interpretation of a book by the private judgment of each individual man. But such had been the influence of Calvin's mind, that they agreed in all essential particulars, and they sought to impose their creed by force upon those who rejected it. They declared it to be the duty of the civil power to prohibit ceremonies dear to large masses of men, and they were earnestly desirous to organise the church irrespective of the authority of the crown. It was therefore not without reason that statesmen feared that the tyranny of an ecclesiastical democracy would be as great as the tyranny of an ecclesiastical monarchy. On the other hand, it was impossible for Elizabeth to be blind to the fact that the spirit of Puritanism was essential to the success of her struggle against Rome. The desire to throw off the papal yoke which was in others a matter of reason or feeling, was, in the Puritan, the object of consuming passion. To contend with Rome without his help was to grasp a lance of which the point had been thrown away. As the most zealous Protestants found their way amongst the ranks of the clergy, the greater part of the Protestant clergy were more or less Puritan at heart, and Elizabeth, if she were to have clerical allies at all, was obliged to make concessions to the Puritans. Her object, therefore, was to use them in such a way that they might not be dangerous to her own crown, or so offensive to those of her subjects who did not share their opinions as to throw them into confirmed opposition.

The Church, as it was moulded at the commencement of the reign, was admirably calculated to serve this end. If some part of its formularies betrays an effort to express discordant thoughts, it owes its strength

§ 19. The  
Elizabethan  
Church.



CHAP.  
VI

to the expression which it gave to the higher and better ideas of either side. There the worshipful spirit of older days was blended together harmoniously with the individuality fostered by the new religious teaching. There the reverent spirit of Catholicism learned to test the traditional belief by the touchstone of history and of reason, whilst the fervour of the self-contained Protestant learned to soften down its asperities by the necessity of co-operating with men of other temperaments. The problem before Elizabeth was, whether she would be able to bring her subjects to accept those forms through which a spirit of united worship and united doctrine might develop itself more fully in time. It was indeed impossible that she should in this succeed completely. Some there would surely be to whom the old papal forms would be all in all, and some to whom the new Calvinistic forms would be all in all. The only wonder is that she succeeded as far as she did with unwilling instruments, at a time when the rising of the European conflict favoured the development of extreme doctrines.

§ 20.  
Elizabeth and  
the  
National  
Spirit.

If, indeed, Elizabeth had had nothing but church parties to look to, she would undoubtedly have failed. But even in those days of strong religious partizanship other more mundane interests had weight in the minds of men. Above all, Englishmen cared for the nationality of England. Of all the various church-parties, the Catholics stood alone in looking for direction to a head beyond the seas, and when, in course of time, some of them came to look for temporal aid to the king of Spain, all who did not share their belief turned against them, and many who did share their belief grew lukewarm in its defence. The Puritans who disliked Elizabeth's ecclesiastical proceedings were yet ready to shed their blood in her quarrel against Rome and Spain, like that Stubbs, who, when his hand had been cut off for an attack upon the queen's

government, raised his hat with the other hand, crying, 'God save Queen Elizabeth.' Some men might not like to see the ministers of religion wearing caps and surplices. Other men might not like to see the Communion Service substituted for the Mass. But as soon as the bulk of the nation clearly perceived that each of the various parties insisted on having its own way at the expense of the dissolution of national unity, it rallied round the queen. Gradually, in opposition to the common enemy, the religious forms which, in the beginning of the reign, had hardly any partizans at all, were adopted by the moderate men of all parties, though there were still left many who wished them to be modified.

Nor was it only from the moderate men of the various church-parties that Elizabeth obtained support. The spirit of the Renaissance was actively at work amongst her subjects, blunting the edge of religious controversy, and sending men in search of earthly beauty and enjoyment, instead of spiritual growth. The Elizabethan literature was but the expression of a deep-rooted feeling. Holding out its hand, as in Spenser, to Protestantism, it was in the main, as in Shakspeare and the dramatists, neither Catholic nor Protestant. It kept steadily in view the human side of life as opposed to the religious. It appealed to human motives, to the love of wealth and prosperity, to the human sense of justice, and power, and beauty, and virtue, not to the asceticism of the monk, or the religious self-restraint of the Puritan. It rested on the growth of commercial manufactures and of the general national well-being. The wooden trencher was replaced by the platter of pewter, the smoky hut by the chimneyed house, the rush-covered floor by the soft carpet, and men knew the reason why. They knew that these things had come to England because she had held fast to her national unity, and they decided that whatever

CHAP.  
VI.

§ 21.  
Elizabeth and  
the Renaissance.

CHAP.  
VI§ 22 Eng-  
land's Po-  
sition in  
Europe.

religious doctrine might be true, it was not worth the while of half the nation to be cutting the throats of the other half to enforce its universal acceptance.

In this way England came to be morally and intellectually the centre of European civilisation. Whatever tendencies directed the stream of progress in various parts of the Continent were to be found in England. She had originated nothing of her own. Satirists held that Englishmen fetched their dress and external accomplishments from foreign nations 'I think,' says Portia in the 'Merchant of Venice' of her English lover, 'he bought his doublet in Italy, his round hose in France, his bonnet in Germany, and his behaviour everywhere.' The words were true in a larger sense. The dominant idea of the Reformers was derived from Germany. The dominant idea of the Puritans was derived from Geneva. The dominant idea of the Catholics was derived from Rome and Spain. Literature looked for its models to Italy. But though here and there factions held to extreme views, the bulk of the nation blended together theories and practices till it had assimilated them in spite of their various origin. In the Church, in the State, in literature, in the habits of daily life, there arose something which was indisputably English, and which nevertheless allowed free scope to the vigorous individualism of life. As year by year passed by, the national unity established itself more firmly, because here there was less repression than anywhere else, less inquisition into opinion, freer permission to unrestrained development. Such a people obtained the pre-eminence because it deserved it. England was not torn in pieces by internal dissensions like France, nor split into petty states like Germany or Italy, nor given up to intellectual deadness like Spain. Its mariners ransacked the seas for booty, and overwhelmed with disaster the

proudest navy which had ever sailed on the sea. Its statesmen more than held their own against the craftiest heads of France and Spain. Its poets rose to an unequalled eminence, to culminate in the great dramatist whose knowledge of the human heart knows no equal or rival. Before the death of Elizabeth, England possessed in Hooker the most judicious and large-minded of ecclesiastical writers, and in Bacon, the thinker, who, without being himself capable of anticipating the foundation of modern experimental and political science, was endowed beyond all other men with the spirit of the future change which was to renew the world.

Of all this varied life Elizabeth made herself the organ. She had sympathies with it all, and if the very variety of those sympathies made her conduct shifting and uncertain, it also gave her an abiding place in the hearts of every section of her subjects. She was, in fact, a much better representative of the nation than the House of Commons, especially in the early portion of her reign, could possibly be. We are so accustomed to regard an elective house as constituting the true representation of a people, that it is well to be reminded under what limitations it does so. When a question arises for decision, a representative house decides one way or the other, often by a narrow majority. Very probably, though this is not always the case, the narrow majority in the house corresponds to a more or less narrow majority in the nation itself. Its decision is, therefore, not the decision of the whole nation any more than it is the decision of the whole house. Its weight, therefore, rests on the tacit understanding that it is better and safer to yield to the weight of a few votes than to resist by an appeal to civil war. This constitutional morality will always be widely spread in proportion to the general agreement amongst the population.

CHAP.  
VI

---

§ 23  
Elizabeth  
and Par-  
liament.

CHAP  
VI

---

If the changes proposed are very slight in comparison with the things left unchanged, all of them put together will seem very enduring even to those who object most strongly to every one of them. There will exist, too, a fellow-feeling between parties, an assurance that whilst they differ on much, they agree on more, which renders compromise and concession easy. In the early part of Elizabeth's reign all these conditions were reversed. Religions as opposite as Catholicism and Calvinism stood face to face, and the best chosen House of Commons could have done nothing to mediate between them. A Catholic majority would have proscribed Protestantism in every form. A Calvinist majority would have proscribed not merely the Papal Church, but every vestige of the ancient creed and ceremonial. Men felt too deeply on such questions to submit to such summary dealing, and they would have preferred to fight out the quarrel to the death. Those who wished that things should not come to such a pitch would have been powerless to avert a rupture, because the great middle party which existed in an incoherent state was as yet unformed, and as yet unconscious of the principles on which it could act. It was Elizabeth's work to summon it into life, and to consolidate it,—a work which often involved opposition to the House of Commons, all the more because the house was at that time far from being a fair mirror of the general feeling. The Catholics were excluded by the statute which required all members to take the oath of supremacy, and Elizabeth, therefore, was only exercising a sound discretion in throwing her authority in the balance against the attempts of the Commons to reduce the formularies of the Church to the expression of the opinions of a single party.

It was not in the nature of things that such a relation between the crown and the House of Commons should

be permanent. The very success of Elizabeth's efforts was against it. As a new generation grew up, the numbers of those who in the main accepted the Queen's ecclesiastical arrangements increased. But at first the tendency drew men over in the direction of Puritanism. As long as the struggle with Spain lasted, as long as there was danger of an actual invasion of the country, of an assassination of the queen, of the establishment of Mary Stuart on the throne by foreign aid, so long the bent of all who opposed such things led them to approve of a form of worship and doctrine as different as possible from those of the Papal Church. In the later years of the reign, when Spain and the Pope grew less terrible, a certain reaction took place. The papal claims were as unpopular as ever, but there was less zeal for extreme Puritanism. The doctrine preached was strongly tinged with Calvinism, but there was but little opposition to the episcopal government, and most of those who disliked the existing order of things would have been content with some relaxation of the ceremonial rules of the Church, so that those who wished to vary from them by omitting the use of the surplice, of the cross in baptism, and of the ring in marriage, might be at liberty to do so. Bacon, expressing here the highest intellect of his day, advised the concession of these demands, and there can be little doubt that a compact national sentiment was behind him. The prevalent feeling was in favour of substantial unity in Church and State, with a certain liberty to individuals to follow their own courses. Such a change could not be without effect on the position of the Commons. The cause of their weakness in the divisions of the nation was at an end. They were strong in 1603 as the embodiment of a national desire which was not even in existence in 1558. Other causes too had come to give them increased importance. They were

CHAP.  
VI.

§ 24. Growing Importance of Parliament.

CHAP.  
VI.

no longer what they were at the accession of the Tudor dynasty, comparatively poor, accustomed to be ill-treated by the aristocracy, and unversed in public affairs. The Tudor sovereigns had taken chosen members of the middle class into their immediate confidence, and had administered the local affairs of the country by them and with them. Then had come the influx of wealth by commerce and manufacture, and the spirit of adventure by which that wealth was directed to our shores. The Commons had grown independent in prosperity by the hardihood with which they had struggled for pre-eminence in social life. In 1485 they were but a down-trodden portion of the English people looking out for a strong ruler to defend their cause. In 1603 they were almost identical with the nation itself, with aims and ideas of their own, and with firmness and resolution enough to strengthen them to carry out in practice the thoughts which their hearts conceived.

## CHAPTER VII.

## THE STRUGGLE BETWEEN KING AND PARLIAMENT.

WHEN Elizabeth died it was inevitable that the House of Commons should take a larger part in the direction of affairs than it had done before. In what precise way the change would be effected depended partly on the character of the new king, and partly on the fitness of the Commons to undertake the work which lay before them. That work consisted in the relaxation of those restrictions which had necessarily been imposed by Elizabeth upon the free development of religious practices. As long as such a change presented itself as a mere obstruction to the higher development of the Commonwealth, the force of the State had been brought to bear against the negation of its authority. But if such action on the part of the government was a necessary evil, it was an evil none the less. The moment that men became willing to admit the supremacy of the State, it was beyond all things important both for themselves and for their fellow-citizens that they should be allowed, not merely to think as they pleased, but to write, to speak, and to pray as they pleased. Unless it conceded these rights, the State itself would be the first to suffer. What counsellors are to an arbitrary prince, a free press and a free pulpit are to a self-controlling community. Without them prince and people alike are apt to run in old grooves, and to think it needless to

CHAP.  
VII§ 1 Ne-  
cessity of  
Liberty



CHAP.  
VII

take account of new thoughts which from time to time arise. Where liberty is, not only are the individuals who compose the nation better, stronger, and more self-reliant, but the nation itself acquires strength from the very diversity of opinion which seems to undermine it. Liberty of speech and thought creates an organisation higher and nobler than that which it has destroyed.

§ 2 The  
first Years  
of James I

It was not to be expected that the change either from the supremacy of the king to the supremacy of the Commons, or from the maintenance of church uniformity to the permission of diversified forms of worship, could be effected without a struggle. James I. brought with him from Scotland no practical knowledge of the English character or of the wants of the English people. He drew tighter than ever the limits of conformity, refused, after a short time of toleration, any concessions to the Roman Catholics, browbeat the Puritan ministers at the Hampton Court Conference, and put the finishing stroke to the establishment of the English Church system, as Elizabeth had planned it. Yet so completely had that system rooted itself in the affections of the bulk of the nation, that though there were many who would have wished to see the Puritans conciliated, the king was able to carry out his plans without serious difficulty. More dangerous, it seemed, was the extreme need in which the king stood of money, and the increasing demands which the Commons consequently made for concessions to their wishes before they would grant supplies. For a time indeed he succeeded in parrying their attacks by raising impositions upon exports and imports without their consent, a course which the Court of Exchequer pronounced to be within his rights, though the House of Commons, followed by the lawyers of later generations, took the opposite view. The divergency between the king and the mass of the country

gentlemen who mainly composed the House of Commons led to his surrounding himself with courtiers who had little or no influence with the nation. Though Somerset and Buckingham, whom he selected as his intimate friends, were both of them ignorant and ambitious young men, he made over to them the patronage of the kingdom, and allowed them to rise to princely fortunes without any corresponding service to the people. But the political quarrel was aggravated by religious disagreement. The Commons were indeed not prepared to grant toleration to any Puritan sects. They wished that there should still be one Church, and were content that its organisation should still be episcopal. But they desired that latitude should be given to those amongst the clergy who felt scruples about conformity, and that any minister might wear a surplice or a black gown, might use the sign of the cross in baptism or give the ring in marriage or not, at his discretion. The Church thus constituted would embrace all moderate Protestant views at that time in existence, and would answer very fairly to the actual feelings of the nation. But the more anxious these men were to conciliate the Puritans, the less ready were they to give fair play to the Roman Catholics. The foul treason of the Gunpowder Plot, planned as it had been by a mere handful of men, yet bore so strong a resemblance to the old assassination plots against Elizabeth, that Protestants could hardly fail to draw the inference that the toleration of the Roman Catholic religion was inconsistent with the safety of the State. Yet it was precisely against this feeling, so deeply rooted in his subjects, that James set himself. His position was the worse because he did not stand out on any broad ground of principle. He was not so imbued with the love of tolerance as to strive in season and out of season to advance the good cause. He

CHAP.  
VII.§ 3. The  
Spanish  
Alliance.

imposed and remitted the legal penalties on the Roman Catholics by fits and starts, as his fancies or his interests demanded.

At last, in 1614, when it seemed hopeless, without grave concessions, to expect a grant of adequate supplies from the Commons, James took the most unpopular step of his life. He planned a marriage between his son, the future Charles I., and a Spanish Infanta. A Roman Catholic lady was to be the future Queen of England, to use all her influence for the protection of the members of her church, and for the gathering of fresh converts to its bosom. Other stipulations would probably have to be made before the marriage was concluded, stipulations which would bind James to the modification or suspension of the penal laws against the Roman Catholics, and would thus give a foreign sovereign, the son of that Philip of Spain who had launched the Armada against English independence, a treaty-right to complain if those laws were put in force. For the present, however, James hesitated to go so far as this, and the conclusion of the marriage treaty was in consequence deferred. Then came fresh complications on the Continent. The Thirty Years' War broke out in Germany, in which Catholics and Protestants were opposed to one another. James tried to mediate without sufficient knowledge of the facts, or resolution to support his wishes by action, and his inconsistencies and hesitations were made use of by the Spanish Government to carry out their purposes in Germany. The fact that James was engaged at the time in negotiating a marriage treaty with Spain, made men think that he supported Spanish interests on the Continent even more than he really did.

§ 4. Do-  
mestic  
Govern-  
ment.

Whilst distrust of his foreign policy and of his attachment to Protestantism was thus growing, his domestic government was exposed to the gravest suspicions. The

influence of the favourite had swallowed up the just authority of the crown. Applicants for office found that to obtain their object they must cringe to Buckingham. Those who gained Buckingham's good will were careless about conforming to the law. Monopolies were established, and special powers of interfering with trade were granted to his favourites, not always without some wish to advance the true interests of commerce and manufacture as they were then understood, but with a secondary intention of making the fortunes of those who had the good luck to get the working of these schemes into their hands. When at last a parliament met in 1621, it met with a settled distrust of the whole system which James was pursuing at home and abroad. That parliament accomplished much. It swept away the monopolies. It revived the disused right of impeachment, prosecuting the great Lord Chancellor Bacon for corruption before the House of Lords. It taught courtiers and officials that it behoved them to be able to maintain their purity at the bar of public opinion as well as in the royal ear. It offered to support James if he would take part in the German war in defence of his son-in-law, the elector Palatine. But James's notions of carrying on war were peculiar. He thought that he could do much by mere good advice, and he thought that if good advice were not enough, and he were driven to fight, it would be possible to remain friends with Spain, whilst fighting the Emperor, who was the closest ally of Spain. The Commons thought otherwise. With such differences of opinion, a subject of quarrel was easily found. James dissolved parliament. Without the support of the nation, and without either an army or a well-filled treasury, he strove in vain to dictate peace to Europe. As a last resource, his son Charles, accompanied by Buckingham, undertook a journey to Madrid, in the

CHAP.  
VII.

---

vain hope that this act of courtesy would induce the king of Spain, not merely to make over the Infanta to him without exacting unreasonable conditions, but also to place himself on the side of England, in opposition to the House of Austria on the Continent. As might have been expected, the Prince found that the policy of a great state was not to be changed by acts of personal courtesy, and he returned to England to stir up the national feeling of antagonism against Spain.

§ 5 Buck-  
ingham  
and  
Prince  
Charles.

In such an effort, Buckingham and Charles were easily successful. With the help of the new parliament which met in 1624, they found little difficulty in bearing down the old king with his love of inactivity and peace. They did not see that the monarchy was discredited as well as the monarch, and that it could only regain its ancient splendour by the display of ability and wisdom, in which the heir to the throne was still more deficient than its occupant. Of energy, Buckingham—for he, and not Charles, was the ruling spirit of the government—had enough and to spare. But he had neither great abilities nor sound discretion. He rushed into treaties for military action which made the highest demands upon the purse of the nation, whilst he offended its religious instincts by the concessions which he made to the Roman Catholics as a consequence of the marriage between Charles and the sister of the king of France.

§ 6 War  
policy of  
Charles I.

When James died in 1625, Buckingham became, if possible, more completely master of England than he had been before. He would take no counsel which was not in accordance with his own wishes. In the first two years of the reign of Charles I, a war with France was added to the war with Spain; whilst expedition after expedition was sent forth to the Low Countries, to Cadiz, and to Rhé, each one to a disaster more ignominious than the last. The House of Commons, stirred to action

by the incapacity of the government, demanded under Eliot's leadership that the honour of England should no longer be committed to hands so rash. Charles stood, by his friend, struggled to carry on the war by questionable, if not by illegal means, by forced loans, by imprisonment of those who refused to pay them, and by all the machinery of despotic government. He succeeded in stripping himself of all the authority which Elizabeth had derived from her position as representative of the nation. When Buckingham was murdered in 1628, that authority had passed irrevocably into the hands of the House of Commons, which had just driven the king to renounce, by his assent to the Petition of Right, his claim to levy taxes without its consent, and to imprison without the consent of the judges.

Inspired with the feeling of its greatness, the House of Commons addressed itself to the settlement of those Church questions which Elizabeth had so carefully kept for her own decision. A representative assembly is not indeed well fitted to decide questions of theology or science. Composed of a large number of persons, the natural tendencies of such a body are towards the acceptance of opinions already in vogue, and the proscription of ideas which, whether true or not, are new and unheard of. It was therefore a happy circumstance that the Commons had not been allowed to settle the English Church in the reign of Elizabeth, and it is impossible to deny that in 1629 the danger was not entirely at an end. The Commons declared boldly against toleration. The Calvinistic doctrines which they themselves had learnt in their infancy were to be handed down unquestioned to their descendants. No man who taught the contrary was to be allowed to hold a benefice, or to open his mouth in the pulpit. Yet, mistaken as the Commons were, the evil which they encouraged was not so great as the evil

§ 7. The  
House of  
Commons  
and the  
Church.

which they combated. Those persons who questioned the received doctrinal teaching were also advocates of ceremonial observances which had in most places fallen into disuse. They did not ask simply for liberty for themselves, as the Puritans had asked at Hampton Court. With their leader, William Laud, they declared their doctrines to be the only true doctrines, and their ceremonies to be the only true ceremonies of the Church of England. To this view Charles was ready practically to give his support, and they, in turn, were ready to advocate his assumption of almost uncontrolled authority. In Church and State the wishes of the nation were to be no longer consulted. The authorities in both domains of human action separated themselves entirely from that body of which they were but the active members. Officials were to be everything, the nation was to be nothing. A quarrel with the House of Commons, which spoke in the name of the nation, was the natural consequence, and in 1629 began a period of eleven years in which parliament was not allowed to meet.

The separation between the king and the representative House was fatal to the efficiency of the monarchy. The authority of the Crown withered as a plant withers which has been cut off from the soil from which it derives its nourishment. It ceased to exercise the functions of controlling by superior intelligence and experience, because it believed itself called upon to combat rather than to foster and to train the instincts of the nation. Charles's idea of government was like the idea of an engineer in possession of a steam-engine who should set himself the task of keeping the machinery in motion whilst he scrupulously excludes the admission of steam. His object was to manage Englishmen as he thought best, not to help them to manage themselves better than they knew how to do without assistance. In the State, he provided a fleet

for the defence of the country, not by rousing the patriotic feelings of Englishmen, but by levying shipmoney by his own authority. In the Church, he enforced obnoxious rites and ceremonies, in the hope that England would be brought to entertain religious opinions which he approved, but which the country bitterly detested. In all things, as far as he was concerned, external and visible control took the place of the spontaneous vigour of Elizabethan England. With Laud, the greatest ecclesiastic of his court, correctness of gesture and outward form went far to constitute the test of churchmanship. With Wentworth, the greatest statesman of his court, a due administration of reward and punishment became the highest method of acquiring political influence. The decadence of the courtly literature of the time was the index to the decadence of moral and intellectual strength. The remaining dramatists of the Elizabethan school died, leaving no successors but the sweet and honey-tongued singers of a world of grace and beauty, where earnestness of heart counted for nothing,—the Herricks, the Carews, the Sucklings, who could tell of the loveliness of soft glances and warm kisses, but who knew nothing of the fidelity of Imogen or the bright womanliness of Rosalind. Literature, in the person of Milton, passed to the side of the opposition.

That opposition grew stronger every day, because, like Elizabeth's government, it harmonised the aspirations of men of various minds. To that standard all gathered who revered the unseen objects of thought above the visible objects of sense. First, of course, came the Puritan strictly so called, who either objected to the ceremonies of the Church as a whole, or who objected, like the men of Hampton Court, to some special ceremonies which reminded him of the pretensions of the Church of Rome. Towards these ad-

§ 9. The  
Puritan  
Oppo-  
sition.



CHAP.  
VII.

vanced another and far more numerous band, who would have been content if Charles had left Church arrangements as he found them, but who were irritated by the order to transfer the position of the communion-table from the centre of the church to the east end, and by other accompanying ceremonial changes. They saw in these things an indication that the king and Archbishop Laud were, if not actually preparing the way for the restoration of the Roman Church, at least furthering a state of things in which the cardinal principle of Protestantism—the direct individual dependence of each man upon God without the intervention of priests and external observances—was to be set at nought in favour of a system in which man was to be called on to approach his Maker in ways settled without his approbation, and through official persons with whom he wished to have nothing to do. So thoroughly were these men, loyal as they were to the Church as it stood in the days of their boyhood, alarmed by Laud's proceedings, that the barrier which divided the Elizabethan Puritan from the merely Protestant churchman was broken down, and the name of Puritan became applicable to both classes alike.

§ 10. The  
Constitutional  
Opposition.

The other great wing of the opposition was composed of lawyers. Lawyers indeed were to be found in plenty on the king's side, for there were many who were content to fall back upon his authority for the maintenance of order. But for the higher class of minds this was impossible. For them there was need of a conception of law, which would ultimately rest on something better than mere precedents and decisions leading up in all unsettled cases to the arbitrary will of a single man. They preferred to give the right of settling such cases to Parliament as the embodiment of the wisdom of the nation. No doubt there was a danger here. If Parliament was to rule instead of the king, it might very well

become as arbitrary and despotic as the king himself. It might impose injustice upon unpopular persons and unpopular classes. But as a legislative body it would have this advantage, that it was less liable than was a single person to act on each special occasion upon the impulse of the moment. The king, professing only to execute the law, might, unless he were placed under control, execute it in a different way at different times according to the temper in which he was at the moment. Parliament, by the very fact that it was obliged to legislate for the future, was always tending to lay down general rules, and was likely to be especially careful to bring them into conformity with the rules of justice, because as long as the existing constitution lasted the execution of them would fall into the hands of the king. In this way the lawyers and the Puritans found a point of contact which was wanting at other periods of our history. Both alike looked for their rules of life to laws which were discovered by the exercise of reason rather than to the commands of an authoritative person or an authoritative class.

Almost all that was noble and dignified in man was on the side of the opposition. Fanatics no doubt there were,—legal fanatics who saw nothing in law but a collection of precedents, religious fanatics who saw no salvation out of the observation of a narrow orthodoxy. But the main body of the opposition was not composed of fanatics. Puritan gentlemen like Hutchinson, or Puritan men of business who, like Milton's father, loved song and music and literature, ordered their lives into a kindly if severe decency, self-respecting and respecting others, working manfully at their several callings, and remembering that they lived ever in their great Taskmaster's eye. Yet these were the men, forming as they did the bone and sinew of the nation, who were

§ 11. Arbitrary Government.

CHAP.  
VII.

---

frowned upon by Charles. Their ideas were treated with contempt. Every rule of law was interpreted or wrested against them. They were compelled, whether they liked it or not, to attend their own parish churches, to bow when the name of Jesus was pronounced, to receive the Communion on their knees before a table at the east end, which they were told to call an altar. Their names were left out of the commission of the peace, in favour of their more subservient neighbours. The Court of Star Chamber and the Ecclesiastical Commission were ever active to enforce the will of the king against them. Yet it was not solely because he provoked the enmity of thinking men that Charles ran into danger. Those who were willing to sacrifice themselves for the sake of their ideas were then, as they always are, a minority. But it is not likely that a government which disregards the ideas of its subjects will pay much regard to their interests. Hundreds who would not be touched by large grievances would be affected by small ones. Those who did not care whether the communion-table stood at the east end or in the centre of the church, cared very much when they found that the clergy began to assume lordly airs, that the bishop of the diocese had more influence at Court than the gentlemen who were his neighbours, or that the minister of the parish kept the squire in order. So too in civil matters. The enforcement of ship-money led the way to a breach of the constitutional practice which had been sanctioned by the Petition of Right,—that money should not be taken without a parliamentary grant. But the resistance to the principle was much strengthened by the fact that it involved resistance to the payment of money. The dullest minds could hardly be impervious to the logic which taught them to resist stoutly the demand of a few pence by the sole authority of the crown, because the authority which asked for a few

pence might, by the same reasoning, ask for as much as it pleased. Charles's resolution to act independently of the nation marshalled well nigh the whole nation against him. Like every weak government, the government of Charles was driven from sheer terror to violent measures of repression. Argument against the principles on which it was based had long been prohibited, and those who were restrained from the use of serious argument took refuge in derisive and libellous attacks upon the persons of their oppressors. Laud and Charles had but one answer to give. The Star Chamber had brandings on the cheek, loppings off of ears, life-long imprisonments for men who like Prynne, Burton, and Bastwick assailed the bishops, cruel scourgings for men who like Lilburne called in question its method of procedure. Compassion for the victims added yet another cord to bind together the hearts of Englishmen against those who were treating England without knowledge and without sympathy. Yet even then there was no deliberate purpose of throwing off the king. King, Lords and Commons, it was held, must work together. The attempt of the king to stand alone had wrought nothing but mischief.

Resistance came first from Scotland. The Scottish nation had gained its Protestantism in more direct conflict with a Roman Catholic sovereign than had been needed in England. Its Puritanism was therefore more intense, and its hatred of all ceremonial forms which resembled in any way the ceremonies of the Roman Church was far more decided. \* James, with the view of keeping the clergy in subordination to himself, had established episcopacy in Scotland, and had enjoined, though he was not everywhere able to enforce, the practice of kneeling at the reception of the Communion. Charles went further than his father had ventured to go. By his orders a new prayer-book was drawn up on the model of the

§ 12 The  
Resistance  
in Scot-  
land.

## INTRODUCTION TO ENGLISH HISTORY.

English service, but differing from it in many places by the introduction of words still more offensive to those who were called on to use it. Scottish popular feeling was roused by the insult. \*Those of the clergy who tried to use the new book were mobbed and insulted. The fact that the new book was English roused the anger of Scotchmen as much as the fact that it was, or appeared to be, popish. The Scottish nobility almost to a man threw themselves on the side of the Scottish clergy and people. Their power was greater than that of the English peers. They were sorely afraid lest Charles should diminish their revenues for the benefit of the clergy, and they saw with disgust bishops admitted to temporal offices, and claiming precedence of themselves in the Privy Council itself. Here, too, Charles's disregard for the ideas of his subjects led to a disregard for their interests. A national resistance was formed before which the king was powerless. Twice he attempted to bring the force of England to bear upon the Scots who drove away his bishops and claimed to settle their affairs without his concurrence. Twice he failed entirely. Englishmen would not fight in such a cause. At last the Scottish army gained possession of Northumberland and Durham, and it was found necessary to summon a parliament which would find him money to pay them off.

The Long Parliament, to call it by its historical name, was naturally not disposed to find the king money without demanding anything in return. Wentworth, now Earl of Strafford, who had been the most energetic maintainer of the king's system, was brought to the block. The Star Chamber and the Ecclesiastical Commission were swept away. The right to levy ship-money and customs without a parliamentary grant was abandoned by the king, and, as far as the law could bind him, Charles was reduced to act in accordance with the wishes of his parliament. He even

assented to an Act depriving himself of the power of dissolving the existing parliament without its own consent.

Such an arrangement could not form a permanent settlement. The formula that government is founded on the co-operation of King, Lords and Commons sounds well. But it is no working rule for a constitution. In every nation there must be some authority which is decisive, some man or body of men who have the power of saying the last word. Hitherto this power had been the king's. There would be no rest for England till it passed into the hands of the House of Commons. That which had been done, great as it was, had not been sufficient to deprive the king of the power of setting at nought to some extent the decisions of the Houses. If he had lost the right of dissolving Parliament he retained the right of refusing his assent to the Bills accepted by it, so that he could, without any effort of his own, put a stop to all further legislation. If he had given up the special courts by which his will had been enforced, and had even abandoned his right of levying the income without which he could not subsist with decency, he retained the command of the militia, which furnished the only military force then known, and the appointment of the officers by which it was controlled. Under any circumstances such a position would have been a menacing one. But the immediate danger lay in the fact that there was still a question of the first importance to be settled. Under Pym's guidance, the majority of the House of Commons proposed to modify the Book of Common Prayer in a Puritan sense, as well as to do away with Episcopacy, or at least to place it under the strongest possible restrictions. The bishops had been hard taskmasters to the Puritans, and the Puritans naturally thought that it would not be well to entrust the working of the new Church arrangements which they contemplated to men who

CHAP.  
VII.

§ 14.  
Breach  
between  
King and  
Par-  
liament.

CHAP.  
VII.

---

in their hearts wished to maintain the old order of things. The battle was transferred to the ecclesiastical ground. It was a battle in which the king had many chances, but he threw them all away. If he had stood upon the defensive, opinion might have rallied round him. Instead of that, he engaged in one intrigue after another, and at last his attack on the Five Members shocked those who feared what he might do if he regained his old authority.

§ 15 The  
King's  
Supporters

Yet even then Charles had a strong force on his side. Old attachment to the monarchy and conservative dislike of change drew to him many supporters, especially amongst the country gentry. There was also working for him the dread of which Hyde was the spokesman—lest the law should be swamped by the arbitrary wilfulness of a single House—and the dread of which Falkland was the spokesman at Court, and of which Chillingworth and Hales were the spokesmen amongst thinkers—lest independent thought should be swamped by the dogmatism of the Puritan clergy. Still greater was the terrifying effect of the outburst of sectarian gatherings in London and elsewhere. In the spring of 1642, as Milton tells us, the Royalists had forgotten to complain of the Puritans, in their alarm at the increase of the so-called Brownists. Yet none of Charles's new supporters had any power to construct a system under which Englishmen could live peaceably. Not only was no reliance to be placed on the king to carry out the reformed government in a befitting spirit, but there was weakness in the very proposals which were made by the statesmen whom he favoured. Hyde's constitutional theory was founded on the necessity of the co-operation between the king and the two Houses. He omitted to provide for the case, which sooner or later was certain to occur, when the king's will would be opposed to that of the Houses. He shrank from allowing the king to do as he pleased, and

to treat the Houses with contempt, as Charles in the days of his power had been in the habit of treating them. But he also shrank from allowing the Houses to override the resolute will of the king, to control the executive, or to enact laws to which the royal assent had not been given. His constitutional scheme therefore had the gravest of all defects. There was no force anywhere to give it unity of purpose, no absolute power of decision to direct the march of government. In the region of thought, too, Charles's best supporters were equally astray. Falkland and Hales and Chillingworth agreed that persecution was an evil, that religious ideas should be accepted upon reason and not upon authority, and that religious worship should be simple in order that as many persons as possible might be able to join in it without finding anything to jar with their beliefs. They did not see that such a state of things could never have any real existence, that multitudes of men are so constituted as to have very great respect for authority and very little use of reason, that even with those who seek most keenly to know and understand, the power of habit, and the force of emotion have no small share in the direction of their intellect, and that even the simplest forms of worship would be but a mockery to those who found nothing in them answering to their own inner feeling, whilst it would be impossible to discover any form of worship whatever which would be acceptable to all. And if the best men on Charles's side could offer no true solution of the difficulties of the age, what was to be said of the bold riders who followed Rupert to the charge, and who had no principle beyond the hatred of rebels, and the love of a free life without constraint of morality or religion?

The constitutional ideas of the Parliamentary party were free from the weakness which was inseparable from



CHAP.  
VII

§ 16 The  
Supporters  
of the Par-  
liament.

the system of Hyde. It is true that they were ready to maintain the form of the old constitution. The government was to consist of King, Lords, and Commons as before. But, if it came to a struggle, King and Lords must yield to the Commons in a way that they had never done before. The final decision must rest with the nation itself, and be recorded by its representatives. When once this point was settled, it would be time enough to meet Hyde's difficulties, and to provide how the transmission of the supreme authority from the King to the Commons could be surrounded with safeguards to hinder its degenerating into a tyranny. Yet the House of Commons as a whole, and still more the narrow majority of the House of Commons which remained at Westminster after the outbreak of civil war, was incapable of giving to the ecclesiastical problem a solution even as complete as that which satisfied Falkland. That House had been elected to combat false ideas, not to organise a new system, and its mood was more distinctly Puritan than was in accordance with the ordinary temper of the nation. Its determination to tread in the path of Puritan reform alienated at once a large minority of its own members, and ultimately more than half of the nation. What had begun as resistance to absolute government in Church and State ended in a civil war, in order that it might be settled which of the contending ecclesiastical parties should prevail. Charles found himself supported by thousands who would not have fought for him for his own sake, but who had learned to value his authority as soon as it appeared that only its maintenance would preserve the Book of Common Prayer from rejection or mutilation. Those who took the side of Charles had to learn that with him as a leader success was impossible. Their adversaries rent in pieces the work of Laud, and were driven,

in part by their well-founded distrust of the king, to give their support to the Puritan clergy. To that clergy the orthodoxy of Calvinism was the only orthodoxy. Not only did they aim at the rigid maintenance of their own opinions and the proscription of all others, but they often exaggerated the strict morality which was the glory of their party, till they threw themselves across the very primary tendencies of human nature to enjoyment and pleasure, not by raising men to be nobler and better than they were, but by binding them down with unbending laws and harsh restrictions.

The struggle of the Civil War was in the main a struggle between the enfeebled spirit of the Renaissance and the spirit of Protestantism raised to its highest pitch. As the strife proceeded, the conduct of each party fell into the hands of those who were most completely filled with one or other of these spirits. The better part of Charles's advisers gave way to the worse, to the men of unbridled action and of mere hatred of Puritanism. If there were Pharisees in the opposite ranks, there were, as Chillingworth sadly preached, Sadducees and Publicans in his own. On the parliamentary side, the spirit of dogmatic Presbyterianism gained for a time the upper hand, in spite of the tendency of even the Puritan laity to shrink from putting their necks too far under the clerical yoke. There was to be but one form of church worship in England, but one religious creed for all Englishmen. When the first eighteen months of the war turned out badly for the parliamentary party, and the Scots were enticed to send aid by the adoption in England of their Solemn League and Covenant, it seemed as though the defeat of the king would stiffen the English Church and society into a doctrinal rigidity, as complete as the ceremonial rigidity of Laud.

From this fate England was saved by Cromwell and

§ 17. The  
Civil War

CHAP.  
VII.§ 18  
Cromwell  
and the  
Sects.

the sects. These sects, especially the Independents, had learned by the experience of days when they found themselves practising their religion in hiding-places, or were driven to the New England settlements for a refuge, that it was well that the State should cease to meddle in religious matters at all. In opposition to the scholar-like doctrine of Chillingworth and Hales, they propounded ideas of the widest religious liberty based on the right of sectarian association, without which religious liberty can never be complete. They felt an absolute repulsion from a system under which conflicts were to be avoided by toning down strong religious expressions and strong religious feelings in a vast religious communion, including the most extreme varieties of belief and of moral conduct. What these men believed they believed strongly,—they had embraced with all the rugged strength of their natures the moral idea of purity which they had conceived. But they knew that there were but few ready to share with them in their efforts, and they formed small communities in which the members encouraged one another in running the Christian course, whilst they regarded all national interference with religion as an evil to be avoided. Such men mustered strongly in the regiments which, at Marston Moor and Naseby, decided the civil strife. They were more energetic and at the same time better disciplined than other men. Their greatest difficulty arose when the fight was over. With Cromwell as their military and political leader, and with Milton as their literary spokesman, they claimed to have fought for religious liberty, and they refused to lay down their arms till this was secured.

§ 19. Su-  
premacy of  
the Army.

The soldiers felt that a force in arms is not the proper guardian of religious liberty. They earnestly strove to place it under the care of the king, as the re-

presentative of the old institutions, and of the parliament as the representative of the new institutions. Neither king nor parliament was ready to accept the task. Old and new prejudices combined to reject the notion that entire liberty of speech could be otherwise than a danger to the state. The army offered to the king its support on condition of his acceptance of its views. Charles was ready to negotiate, but he was also ready to intrigue. He watched his opportunity and invited the Scotch to invade England in combination with a royalist rising in the southern kingdom. The army, exasperated by the trickery, demanded the king's head. To obtain it they had to content themselves with the mere shadow of parliamentary authority. The House of Lords absolutely refused to concur. The House of Commons remaining at Westminster was but a minority of the House originally elected, and it was not till a majority of that minority was ejected by violence, that a vote was passed erecting a High Court of Justice for the trial of the king, and throwing off all claim to co-ordinate authority by the Lords. The sentence was a foregone conclusion; but if Charles met his death upon the scaffold, it was by the act of the army and not by the act of the nation. That army was not to be subdued in fight. In two years and a half it beat down resistance in Ireland and in Scotland, and overwhelmed all possible opposition in England. Then came the inevitable conflict with the remnant of the Long Parliament. When Cromwell drove out the handful of members who remained, all English institutions were levelled to the ground. King, Lords, and Commons had vanished from the scene. The army alone remained.

## CHAPTER VIII.

THE PROTECTORATE, THE RESTORATION, AND THE  
REVOLUTION.CHAP.  
VIII.§ I Aims  
of the Pro-  
tectorate.

THE army was the guardian of the new principle of religious liberty. It was the peculiar merit of the great man at its head, that he saw distinctly that other things, than personal liberty were required for good government. He saw that it was necessary that the nation itself should step forward as the guardian of that treasure, and should speak its voice through the only means on which, in the long run, a nation can speak—through an elected assembly. He saw too that, though a king standing outside the national feeling had lost the power and the right to command, complicated affairs required from day to day to be treated by an executive body which could only secure unity and energy of action by being made dependent on the sway of a single mind. Gradually too he perceived the necessity of countervailing the possible waywardness or tyrannical instincts of a single house, by the intervention of a second. In other words, he saw that the old constitution required to be modified and purified, not to be replaced by one entirely different. Every constitutional change made by him drew England back to the old forms, and indicated the way which ultimately led to the Restoration. For his own lifetime he was able to keep power in his hands ; but he could

not hand it down to his successors. There are forlorn hopes in politics as well as in war, and Cromwell's Protectorate was one of them. The task of establishing religious liberty was beyond his strength. The nation would never make up its mind to permit it till it ceased to fear it, and it would not cease to fear it till it could be sure that power would not be used to force or entice the majority to abandon its opinions, or at least to rear up the succeeding generation in different opinions.

CHAP.  
VIII.

The principle of the supremacy of majorities, which is the cardinal point of parliamentary government, must be accepted fully before religious or political liberty can be accorded. That principle had not yet been admitted by any government which had succeeded to power since the beginning of the Reformation. Elizabeth had successfully set it at nought because the majority of her subjects were divided in opinion, and because many of them who were hostile to her on religious grounds, agreed with her on political grounds. Charles and Laud failed in their attempt to set it at nought, because they treated the nation with contempt, and drove all the various sections of their adversaries into a united opposition. In this at least Cromwell was but treading in the steps of Charles. He kept aloft a standard which was the standard of a noble and high-hearted minority, but which was only the standard of minority after all. The real Puritans were but a few amongst the population of England, and those who cared for religious liberty were but a few amongst the Puritans. Such a position was most injurious to those who maintained it. It became impossible for the champions of religious liberty to permit religious liberty to exist in any complete sense. In old stories the fierce energy of the dwarf is often contrasted with the lazy good-nature of the giant. The Puritan army was but a vigorous dwarf after all when

§ 2. The  
Rights of  
Minorities.

CHAP  
VIII.

---

compared with the English nation. It could not venture to overlook many things which a strong national government would have borne without wincing. Its principle was a right one, that the only limit to liberty of speech should be where it endangers the true interests of the state. But Cromwell could not help confounding the interests of the state in its natural organisation with the interests of the highly artificial state which he had called into existence. A theory which would be properly applied to incendiaries who claimed the right of publicly instigating men to a new gunpowder plot, in order to terrorise unarmed populations into submission by massacre, was by no means properly applied to suppress even private meetings for worship according to the forms of the Book of Common Prayer. As in the days of Laud the pressure upon men whose religious opinions were weak was felt more widely than the pressure upon those whose religious opinions were strong. Tolerant on the score of belief, the Puritan government was intolerant on the score of morality. In its attempt to suppress vice, it waged warfare against many acts which were not in themselves vicious, and against many more which, though evil in themselves, were regarded with leniency by the average opinion of the time. No wonder that the Book of Common Prayer gained more adherents than it had in the days when Laud sat in the High Commission Court and the Star Chamber. Cromwell found himself proscribing the religion of a people in the name of religious liberty.

§ 3. Government  
by the  
Army.

Nor was it only the fact that the government was supported by a minority which roused opposition. The fact that this minority was an armed one was still more exasperating. Those who lead opinion will always be the few, and not the many ; but it is necessary that the few should pay the many the compliment of employing

persuasion. Such a compliment an army cannot pay. Its instrument of control lies in the text of pike and gun. From this necessity Cromwell tried hard to escape. He had no pleasure in ruling by force. But he could not help himself. When parliaments were recalcitrant he had no resource but in the red-coated soldiers who were always ready to intervene at his bidding. Government appealing to armed force cannot be permanently strong. It was said to a ruler of our own day that he could do anything with bayonets except sit upon them. And even besides the popular repulsion to military power, there would have always remained a popular repulsion to the men of whom Cromwell's army was composed, even if they could have dropped their muskets and slipped off their uniform to appear in civilian garb. On their side were all the worst and most contemptible hypocrites of the day, who found it easy to imitate their forms of speech, and to chatter of saving grace and the interests of the soul, to cover the vilest iniquity. They themselves were for the most part honourable and high-souled Christian men, with the most exalted ideal of morality, and the most profound conviction that a special work of Almighty grace had been wrought in their own souls, and that they were the chosen saints of the Most High appointed to carry on God's work upon the earth. Their spiritual fervour regarded with disdain the ordinary mass of humanity, and, as always happens, the ordinary mass of humanity was irritated at being so regarded. Never yet was any effort successful to raise a people by compulsion above its average standard. It turns upon those who attempt it, as the Florentine people turned upon Savonarola, as the French people turned upon Saint Just. For a time Cromwell staved off the evil hour. When he died, anarchy was let loose, and after a brief interval the nation threw itself into the arms of Charles II.



CHAP.  
VIII.§ 4. Government  
of the  
Restoration.

The government of the Restoration, as it formed itself under the influence of Hyde, who shortly became Lord Chancellor Clarendon, was an attempt to resuscitate the political theories of the minority of 1641. King and parliament were to work for ever in harmony together. The king, being entirely dependent upon parliament for his revenue, would never be able to strike out a separate line of action, whilst the parliament, solemnly declaring that in no possible case was resistance to the king allowed by the laws of God or man, seemed to have placed it out of its own power to strike out a line of action independent of the king. In point of fact, this excellent system of mechanical balance would remain in working order just as long as king and parliament were united in feeling and policy, and not a moment longer. The men of the Restoration forgot what Elizabeth and Charles I. on the one side, and the Commons of post-Revolutionary times on the other side did not forget—that the power of giving a final and irrevocable decision must be placed somewhere. The great advocate of this system was Clarendon, and Clarendon was never able to understand that when two men are on the same horse, both of them cannot ride in front at the same time.

§ 5. The  
Divine  
Right of  
Kings.

For a time at least king and parliament were agreed. They had one common enemy in Puritanism, and one common resolve, that a Puritan minority should not again impose its will upon the nation by the instrument of an armed force. This was the real meaning of those sweeping enunciations of principles about non-resistance and the divine right of kings which astonish a later age. The latter doctrine, startling as it appears now, was little more than the form special to the age, in which respect for established institutions had clothed itself. In the mediæval empire and in the England of the Tudors, it had meant no more than that the emperor or

king was independent of the Pope. In the days of the first two Stuarts it had been little more than a clerical appendage to the ordinary constitutional arguments against the growing inclination to claim sovereign authority for the House of Commons. After the execution of Charles I. it had associated itself with a new idea, that of indefeasible hereditary right, which seemed to be a barrier against the irruption of tumultuary violence to sweep away the ascertained foundations of government.

CHAP.  
VIII.

---

Such a Restoration as this was sure to go deeper than to a mere replacement of the old external machinery of government. The reaction against the attempt to raise ordinary men to a standard of religion and morality above their reach made vice in its grossest forms welcome in the high places of the world. The court and high society wallowed in filth. Literature decked itself in foulness. It was not only in this direction that the reaction made itself visible. The ideas of Chillingworth and Hales in religion, of Bacon and the founders of the Royal Society in science, acquired an unexpected preponderance with thinking men. The intellectual side of man's nature was cultivated to the neglect of spiritual inspiration and individual enthusiasm. The word zeal, which had once been used as the highest praise, now became a term of reproach. Christian precepts were enforced because they were eminently reasonable and conducive to happiness, not because they exalted the believer to a high-strung enthusiasm for a divine cause.

§ 6. Character of the Restoration.

Such a temper, though unfavourable at the time to morality and religion, would in the long run give to them a higher place than ever before. Charles and Cromwell had alternately extended their patronage to different systems with the result of making the system

§ 7. Prospects of Toleration.

CHAP.  
VIII.

which each patronised contemptible. At first it seemed as if the Parliament of the Restoration were about to persist in the evil courses of its predecessors. It brought back the Church system of Charles I. and it persecuted the Puritans with unrelenting severity. But between the persecutions of this Parliament and preceding persecutions there was a great difference. In all former cases persecution arose more from fear than from intolerance. But the fear of Charles and Cromwell was a permanent fear. It arose from the fact that a minority was attempting to coerce a majority without the slightest prospect that the minority would ever be converted into a majority. Under the Restoration a majority was persecuting a minority. It is true that that minority was especially formidable, partly from its activity and energy, but still more from the fact that it numbered in its ranks the dissolved Puritan army. As long as those soldiers were alive, it would be difficult to persuade ordinary citizens that it was safe to allow to the Dissenters an ecclesiastical organisation which might easily be converted into a military organisation. Such a danger however would of necessity grow less every year. The risk was diminished as each of Cromwell's soldiers passed into the grave. In twenty or thirty years the Dissenters would only be known as a small minority of the population, of whom a few old men had once borne arms in a now unpopular cause. All that would then stand in the way of the grant of the liberty of sectarian association apart from the national church would be the feeling of dislike which their ideas and principles aroused. Now however they would not be without allies within the national church itself. The men who measured Christianity by its reasonableness rather than by its traditionary authority were not without considerable influence there, and though these men would have pre-

ferred that dissent should not exist, they were not likely to oppose much resistance to the recognition of its claims.

CHAP.  
VIII.

Other causes combined to accelerate the inevitable change of feeling. During the years in which the fear of Puritanism was gradually diminishing, an alarm of another kind was gradually increasing. The Restoration was almost contemporaneous with the conclusion of the long struggle between France and Spain to the benefit of the former power, and with the assumption of personal authority by Lewis XIV. In his hands the French monarchy became aggressive and domineering. In organisation, in military strength, and in political ability, it held the first place amongst the nations of Europe. It became as dangerous to the independent development of other European States as the monarchy of Philip II had been in the preceding century. (As Lewis grew older, he showed an increasing disposition to stand before the world as the champion of the Roman Catholic religion, though he was by no means inclined to submit his own authority to the authority of the pope.) In this way it came about that the fear of the predominance of a religion supported by armed force shifted its ground in England. Everyone who kept his head cool was perfectly aware that neither Puritans nor Catholics were sufficiently numerous in England to dictate the religion of the country by mere force of numbers. But just as a Puritan minority had dictated its will by the strength of its military organisation, so it might be with the Catholic minority. What difference there was, was in favour of the Puritans. Cromwell's Ironsides had at least been Englishmen, and even the heart of a Cavalier might swell with triumph as he heard how his countrymen had driven the choicest legions of Spain in rout before them.

§ 8 An-  
tagonism  
to France  
and the  
Papacy.

CHAP.  
VIII

---

(The troops who alone could put the English Catholics in power were the armies of a foreign king.) Once more it was as it had been in the time of Elizabeth. The Catholic was looked upon as an alien from the national brotherhood. He was, unlike the Puritan, a member of a society of which the higher organisation had no root on English soil, and he was now suspected of being in close connection with a foreign military power which was suspected of hostile intentions, if not against England itself, at least against the influence of England upon the Continent. It was evident that if ideas of toleration gained ascendancy, the Roman Catholics would be the last to obtain the benefit. If indeed that close union between the king and the nation which had been proclaimed at the Restoration had been maintained, this feeling against the Catholics might not have gathered head. But whilst Charles was luxurious and extravagant, the members even of the parliament which had been chosen in the first fervour of revived loyalty, soon grew parsimonious and suspicious. They believed that he spent upon his pleasures and his vices money which they had destined for the equipment of the fleet. If it was not known that he had taken pay from the king of France, and had declared his readiness at the proper moment to avow himself a Catholic, there was enough in his conduct to show that he was not heart and soul a sharer in the national aspirations and prejudices. He certainly did not keep a watchful eye upon the progress of French ambition abroad, and he did not show himself to be at all imbued with those Protestant ideas which entered more largely than in the time of Laud into the thoughts of English churchmen.

§ 9 The  
Exclusion  
Bill.

If however the position of the reigning monarch was doubtful, the position of the heir presumptive was perfectly plain. Charles had no legitimate children, and his

brother the Duke of York declared himself a convert to the Roman Catholic religion. Then came an excitement which has no parallel in English history. A charge invented by wicked men, and adopted by weak or wicked politicians, was brought against the English Roman Catholics of being concerned in what was called the Popish Plot for the murder of the king. Large numbers of innocent persons were put to death by the verdicts of ignorant and excited juries under the direction of unscrupulous judges. In parliament the violence and suspicion of the nation took a political form in the demand for an Exclusion Bill, which should deprive the Duke of York of his right of succession to the throne. In the struggle which ensued, the two great parties which have retained their existence to our own days acquired those names of Whig and Tory which they long preserved. There can be little doubt that the Whigs were in the right in wishing to provide against the accession of James. All experience shows that the position of a ruler who takes a different side from his subjects on the great question of the day, becomes rapidly untenable. But it does not follow that they were in the right in seeking to avert by legislation the evil which they were sufficiently quick-sighted to foresee. Masses of men are so constituted as to be slow to take alarm at prospective evils, and to prefer to deal with each grievance when it arises, and not before. The idea of hereditary succession had been adopted by the nation as a guarantee against disorder, and as soon as it became clear that the Whigs were endangering established order as well as hereditary succession, the nation preferred to accept the future risk rather than to launch into immediate agitation. The Whigs suddenly dwindled into a despised minority, and their leaders paid the penalty of real or supposed treason on the scaffold.

CHAP.  
VIII.§ 10  
Reign of  
James II.

Before long those who survived saw their anticipations realised. Charles died, and James ascended the throne. Setting his mind on obtaining liberty of worship and equality of civil rights for his fellow-catholics, he hoped at first to obtain it with the co-operation of the bishops and their supporters. He was too ignorant of the prejudices and feelings of those whom he courted, and too impatient of opposition, to succeed—even if success had been possible. He then tried to obtain his wishes by the exercise of his own prerogative. Every shred of that prerogative which had come down to him from the struggles of the past was magnified till he had created out of it a power which in no respect fell short of absolute sovereignty. He used the right of appointing judges to pack the bench with men who would deliver that to be law which was in accordance with his wishes. He used his supremacy in the Church to strike down those who clearly represented the feelings of the Church. He used his right of granting charters to corporations to modify those charters in such a way as to give him hopes of obtaining a packed House of Commons at the next elections. He issued a Declaration of Indulgence, by which, of his own authority, he set aside the effect of all laws imposing restrictions on religion. In resisting this Declaration the clergy and those who sympathised with them were doubtless not uninfluenced by somewhat questionable motives. But their conduct was such as to commend itself to approbation on higher grounds than they were themselves conscious of. It is doubtless good that no religious belief should stand in the way of admission to political and military offices. A general should be appointed because he understands strategy, and a lord treasurer because he understands finance, not because his opinions coincide with those of the majority on the subject of transubstantiation. But if

all religious tests imposed by law are to be taken away, it is absolutely necessary that they shall not be succeeded by a religious test unavowedly imposed by the person who has it in his power to dispose of offices. What our ancestors had to face was, not the danger that James would appoint a casual Catholic here and there to command a regiment or to sit upon the bench as justice of the peace, but that he would flood the army, the navy, the judicial bench, and the civil administration with Catholics to the exclusion of Protestants; and that too at a time when the Catholic monarchy of Lewis XIV. had shown itself especially intolerant, had recommenced the persecution of French Protestants, and had at its disposal a fleet and army which might easily be placed at the disposal of an unscrupulous English king to suppress opposition at home

For a time, even these considerations failed to goad Englishmen to resistance. Whatever James might be, the heir to the throne, his daughter Mary, was a confirmed Protestant. Her husband, William of Orange, was equally a confirmed Protestant, and was the head of the opposition on the Continent to Lewis XIV. James was advanced in life, and it was certain that, whatever he might do, his successor would undo. Suddenly it was announced that the queen was with child, and then it was told that she had borne an heir to the throne. It is no wonder if men received the news with incredulity, and thought that, as James had called into existence a sham bench of judges, and was preparing to call into existence a sham House of Commons, he had now produced a sham heir to the throne. Whether the child was the queen's or not, its very existence made prompt action necessary, unless James's system were to be perpetuated. Hope could no longer be entertained that all would go well as soon as James's life was at an end.

§ 11 The  
Revolution  
of 1688.



CHAP.  
VIII.

Leading men of both the great parties invited the Prince of Orange to come to defend the liberties of England. When William landed James found himself helpless. He had made many enemies and no friends. Those whom he had favoured deserted him in his hour of need, and he fled from the country leaving everything, as far as he was concerned, in disorder and confusion. The two houses combined to offer the throne to William and Mary

## CHAPTER IX.

THE REVOLUTION SETTLEMENT, AND THE RULE  
OF THE WHIG ARISTOCRACY.

THE Revolution was more than a change of sovereigns. It was the rejection of the ideas of the minority of 1641, which had been adopted as sufficient at the Restoration, in favour of the idea of the supremacy of Parliament. Pym's political ideas were at last to be realised. The name and title of the King were to remain as they had been before. But it was to be clearly understood that if a serious difficulty ensued, the king was to give way to parliament, and more especially to the House of Commons, by which the nation was more directly represented. Up to the Revolution, England was under a monarchy surrounded by certain constitutional checks, intended to prevent the will of the monarch from degenerating into arbitrary wilfulness. After the Revolution, England became practically a republic, in which the Crown possessed various constitutional powers, intended to prevent the will of the representatives of the people from degenerating into arbitrary wilfulness. But it is seldom that contemporaries estimate the full importance of changes so great. In this case, at least, they did not. The theory on which they proceeded to build up their conception of the new government was in itself as irrational as the theory of Divine Right which

CHAP.  
IX.§ 1 Supremacy  
of the  
House of  
Commons.

CHAP.  
IX

preceded it. They held that the relations of ruler and ruled were governed by some undefined social compact entered into before the memory of man, which bound the ruler to some undefined and elastic terms of conformity with the needs of the ruled. Facts were, however, greater than theories, and the main fact was that the king, if he meant to preserve authority, must appeal to some other argument than the claim to hereditary right.

§ 2 Liberty of  
the Pulpit  
and the  
Press.

Another consequence of the Revolution was hardly of less importance. "Government after government had wrecked itself by attempting to grasp the control of the domain of religion and intelligence. The old claim of Anselm and the medieval churchmen had been set at naught. For a century and a half religion and politics had been strangely mixed. The holders of power had been in the position of a garrison defending all that they counted dear from the most violent attack. In such a position they had used the vantage ground of authority to prevent the spread of principles which were certain to be turned against them in actual combat. Gradually since the first days of the Restoration, all this had changed. The garrison had gathered strength, had marched out into the open country, and had been able to keep the field. The Church of England knew itself to be strong in the reverence of the great majority of the nation. Circumstances, never likely to occur again, had made it possible for a combination between Catholics and Dissenters to be formed under the shadow of James's Declaration of Indulgence. Yet so strong had the Church been, that not only had that combination failed to effect anything against her, but even the greater part of the Dissenters themselves had preferred to trust to her leaders for toleration, rather than risk all by assailing her. Therefore, the concession made to the

Dissenters by the Toleration Act was made without difficulty. It was easy to permit the assembly of separate congregations for purposes of worship outside the pale of the National Church as soon as it was ascertained that all those congregations, if they chose to combine together, would be too weak to affect the position of that Church which they had resolved to abandon. A few years later, the Toleration Act was supplemented by the withdrawal of the existing censorship over printed matter. A free press and a free pulpit took their places in the new system established by the Revolution.

CHAP.  
IX.

---

Like all great changes, the concession of liberty of speech and of writing was accompanied by results of which its authors had no foreknowledge. In the first place, it made government easier by withdrawing a whole sphere of human action from its influence. As long as those who were in authority were able to put to silence those whose opinions were adverse to their own, or at least to visit them with grievous penalties, the power which they possessed was so enormous, as to be liable to the grossest abuse, whilst it was certain to rouse the most determined opposition. Struggles for power under such conditions, resembled the struggles between hostile armies which allow no quarter to one another. Each successive government was anxious to secure not merely the present possession of influence, but the power of stereotyping ideas upon future generations by the suppression of the teaching of principles which it disliked. All this was abandoned by the statesmen of the Revolution. Whig and Tory might differ in their views, but the future was to be left to take care of itself. If the future would be moulded to some extent by Parliamentary action, it would be moulded to a far greater extent by words uttered or printed which were now placed beyond the control of any

§ 3. The  
Sphere of  
Govern-  
ment re-  
stricted.

CHAP.  
IX

---

government whatever. In a new shape, the liberty which had been claimed by the heads of the organised medieval church was given over by a triumphant State to the individual conscience.

§ 4. Im-  
mediate  
Results of  
the Pre-  
domin-  
ance of the  
House of  
Commons

The two cardinal principles of the Revolution, therefore, were, that the government should be conducted in accordance with the will of the House of Commons, and that the House of Commons, predominant as it became in the government, should have no authority over the free expression of political and religious opinion outside its walls. For a long time before, both these principles would have been regarded as likely to lead straight to anarchy. As a matter of fact, they combined to lay the foundations of an order more stable than had yet been seen in England. After all, there was something permanently true in the reasoning of the advocates of monarchical authority. Neither five millions of men nor five hundred men can govern a country. To manage public affairs, even in a single department, requires a familiarity with the course of business and special mental aptitude, combined with a sense of responsibility for success or failure which is only possible for a single individual, whilst the task of keeping the heads of different departments in harmony is also only possible for a single individual. Till this was understood, the growth of parliamentary power brought with it the growth of parliamentary faction. The last years of William were embittered by the meddlesome intervention of the House of Commons in matters which it was unable to understand, and which it discussed with the strong passion of ignorance goaded by personal spite.

§ 5.  
Cabinet  
Govern-  
ment.

Gradually, a better system evolved itself out of the necessity of the circumstances. The Commons, separated as they were into two great parties, divided in opinion on the questions of the day, fell naturally

under the control of the ablest members of the party in the majority, who alone were able to obtain the necessary concurrence of the House in the measures proposed by the government. As therefore no government could do without the support of the House of Commons, the sovereign was obliged to choose his ministers from the ranks of the majority. The Commons obtained the power of securing that the general direction of the course of government should be in accordance with the wishes of its majority, whilst from that very assurance it ceased to be tempted to interfere with those details of business which it could safely leave in hands in which it had confidence. The further task of keeping the administrators in harmony was at first entrusted to the king. It was William who judged when any particular minister was to be appointed or dismissed, or when the whole ministry had better be changed. After the accession of George I, who was too indolent and too foreign to English habits to be competent to fulfil this task, it devolved upon one of the ministry, who acquired the name of Prime Minister, and who became responsible for the general work of those who became his subordinates. In this way Cabinet Government gradually came into being. It is in reality a committee formed of members of both Houses of Parliament, and liable to have its existence terminated by the victory of the Opposition in the House of Commons. It has vindicated the work of actual government from a House which, if it attempted to take it upon itself, would be certain to degenerate into a disorderly mob, whilst each successive Cabinet adapts itself to the general feeling which prevails in parliament at any given time. The new organisation had thus all the advantages without the disadvantages of the old. It confided the work of government, as before, to a directing mind, whilst

CHAP.  
IX

it took care that that work should be exercised under responsibility to those who represented the average tone of the community.

§ 6 The  
House of  
of Com-  
mons and  
the Nation.

Such at least was the ideal form of the new constitution, an ideal which, after the lapse of nearly two centuries, it is still tending to realise. Probably the time will never arrive when every member of a large community will vote from entire reliance on political conviction uninfluenced by personal considerations. It certainly had not arrived at the end of the seventeenth century. Even now, when we speak of public opinion, we refer to the opinion of a larger or smaller circle in proportion to the larger or smaller interest excited by the subject under discussion. There are questions brought before Parliament of so intricate and technical a nature, that only two or three hundred persons in the nation are capable of forming an opinion on the subject, or have any wish to do so. There are, on the other hand, subjects of so engrossing interest, that several millions of people, whether they are capable of understanding the matter or not, are at least ready to express an opinion. The greater the political intelligence of a people is, the larger are the number of subjects which appeal to the wider circle, and the fewer the number of subjects which appeal to the narrower circle. On the other hand, every achievement of the object of popular demand is followed by a time of apparent lethargy. The large circle has been satisfied in its demands, and it takes some time before the pressure of new wants is felt, and before the smaller circle of more intelligent men has discussed the remedies, and has convinced the masses that those remedies are worthy to be adopted. Such seasons of alternate activity and lethargy are of as constant recurrence in the political body, as the alternations of action and sleep in the physi-

cal body. At the end of the seventeenth century the activity of the political body had been enormous, and the lethargy which followed was, therefore, peculiarly lasting. All the great questions of the Stuart period had been such as to awaken the minds of even the most sluggish classes. The question of the right of taxation touched every one who had a few shillings in his pocket. The question of control over religion touched every one who had an idea in his head. Both these questions were now set at rest. Any attempt to reawaken them by bringing the power of the State to exact taxation in new forms, as Walpole attempted to do by his Excise Bill, or even to interfere with the most absurd religious opinion, as the Whig Government in Anne's reign attempted to do by the prosecution of Sacheverell, roused a storm of indignation, which spread far beyond those classes which usually took part in political affairs. But as long as governments refrained from pushing their superabundant activity in these directions they found the mass, not merely of the nation, but even of the small minority which was possessed of the electoral franchise, singularly inert.

In this inertness of the nation is to be found the key to the sudden downfall of the Tory party which accompanied the accession of the House of Hanover. That party had no doubt causes of weakness in itself. It had set out in the reign of Charles II. as the guardian of the two principles of hereditary right and of the supremacy of the Established Church. Each successive change had made it more difficult to maintain those principles intact, and at last the time had come when it had become absolutely impossible to maintain them together. The heir to the throne after Anne's death, according to the Tory system, was a Roman Catholic, and the Tories were therefore compelled to choose between loyalty to

§ 7 Ef-  
facement  
of the  
Tory  
Party.



CHAP.  
IX

---

a king who was likely to do all in his power to weaken the Church of their preference, and loyalty to a Church which would be likely to fare ill in the hands of the king of their preference. The course of events had placed them in a situation in which it was impossible for them to step forward with assurance. They were like the traveller who has arrived at a point where two roads diverge, and who cannot make up his mind which he prefers of the two destinations to which those roads respectively lead. In another respect, too, the Tories found their occupation gone. Even more than the Whigs, they had retained the distrust of the institution of a standing army which had resulted from the military despotism of the Cromwellian period. They had, therefore, gathered strength at the end of the two great wars in the reigns of William and Anne, which seemed likely to lead, as far as domestic politics were concerned, to the increase of the military power of the Crown. With the accession of George I. this danger ceased to be appreciable. If there were wars, they were not waged on a large scale. The prospect of danger to the institutions of the country was not merely averted by constitutional safeguards, such as the restriction of the Mutiny Act to a single year, but by the fact that the army was officered by members of the aristocracy and gentry, and had thus become a counterpart of the country itself. A government is in danger of military violence when its military institutions are on a different footing from its political institutions. The safety of England from this particular form of danger since the Revolution has lain in the substantial identity between the two. Though each has varied from time to time, they have always varied together.

§ 8 In-  
fluence of

It is easy to ascribe the enormous influence of the aristocracy in those times to the restriction of the fran-

chise, or to the ignorance in which electors were left of the debates and votes in parliament. In point of fact, the electoral body was weak in the reigns of the first two Georges precisely for the reason that the House of Commons was weak in the reign of Henry VIII. It was content if parliament protected the persons of citizens from imprisonment without a fair trial, their purses from frequent and exorbitant demands, and their religion from meddlesome interference ; whilst it cared little about the course of a legislation, which was founded on arguments, with respect to the very nature of which it was uninformed, and which, if so informed, it would have failed to comprehend. Naturally, therefore, the control over government fell into those hands which were qualified to exercise that control. The average voter cared very much to vote for his landlord, whom he respected or feared, very much to pocket a few extra guineas, or to drink large quantities of beer at the candidate's expense, very little for the measures which that candidate would support. Hence power fell almost exclusively into the hands of the class of large land-owners, who were wise enough to avoid wounding the general feeling on those points on which alone it was susceptible. Hence the anomaly of the theoretic supremacy which the House of Commons exercised by means of its control over the purse, combined with the practical supremacy of the members of the House of Lords by means of the influence which they exercised over the election of members of the House of Commons.

Like every other system which acquires power, this system was in its early days justified by its results. The aristocracy ruled, because it was at that time the fittest to rule. It entered into close connection with the mercantile classes, which had never risen to such importance before. It had the great bulk of the literature of the time on

CHAP.  
IX.

the large  
Land-  
owners.

§ 9 The  
Whigs and  
the Dis-  
senters.

CHAP.  
IX

---

its side The one great name, the name of Swift, which was opposed to it, was opposed, so far as personal considerations were not involved in the matter, rather from opposition to its temporary aims than to its permanent policy. Originally the Whigs had thrown themselves on the side of toleration to the Dissenters, whilst the Tories who accepted the Revolution only assented to it as a political necessity. It was only natural that the Whigs should have been ready to grant more than toleration and to admit the Dissenters to political equality, allowing them to hold offices under the crown, and to occupy positions in the municipalities. The Tories, on the other hand, wished, by passing the Occasional Conformity Bill, to exclude from office even those Dissenters who were ready to take the sacrament in a church, though they afterwards returned to worship in their own chapels. The question was agitated in the reign of Anne. In the reign of George I. it was settled that the Toleration Act should be fully observed. Occasional conformists were to be admitted to office, whilst stubborn nonconformists remained excluded. Such a settlement, which let in the lax and the hypocritical, and shut out the honest and the sincere, would at the present day be rejected with contempt. It exactly satisfied the ideas of the men of the opening years of the eighteenth century. They were equally disinclined to persecute, and to submit themselves to those who were likely to persecute others. The apologue of Swift's 'Tale of a Tub' fairly represents the central thought of the time to which the moderate men of both parties, men like Harley and men like Walpole, inclined. The readiness to relieve Dissenters from persecution was perfectly consistent with an aversion to zeal and enthusiasm as a disturbing factor in human affairs. The seed sown by Chillingworth and Hales had grown up till it had

become a great tree. Christianity was nothing if it was not rational. Its life and vigour, its high enthusiasm, were all laid aside. The Church of the eighteenth century would have been a strange Church to St. Francis or to Oliver Cromwell. Men argued of the suitability of the scriptural promises to the needs of life, sometimes, like Bishop Butler, with a high idea of duty and loving-kindness before them, sometimes with the mere thought of skilfully adjusting formulas into a pleasant scheme. Others carried the argument further, and the Deists conceived the idea of a beneficent Creator who had ordained all things in a world in which no account need be taken of the disturbing elements of sorrow and sin. But whatever might be the special view arrived at, the characteristic of the age was the predominance of reason without active energy for the common good. The old tyrannies were gone, and the new effort after a better order had not yet come.

Life was not beautiful under this regimen. The streets of London were as Hogarth painted them. Riot and anarchy were there, controlled, so far as they were controlled at all, by practical common sense, and by something remaining of the Puritan morality without the Puritan enthusiasm. Hogarth's industrious apprentice going to church instead of gambling on the tombstones outside, taking care to attend to his master's accounts, and finally marrying his master's daughter, is the eighteenth century outcome of the religion of Baxter and Owen. Fielding's novels tell the same tale. There is no sense of natural or artistic beauty in them, no enthusiasm, no feeling for the nobleness of temperance and chastity. But there is a certain level of morality below which they never sink. If they lay stress on the unhealthy animalism of human nature, they do not depict that hot-bed of intrigue and corruption, that sty

§ 10 Ho-  
garth and  
Fielding

---

CHAP.  
IX

---

of falsity and obscenity, in which the dramatists of the Restoration revelled. Such books serve to hold up the mirror to the time. They were days in which individual energies were strong, and the thought of devotion to public ends was weak. The Puritan ideal and the Royalist ideal had been alike trodden in the dust. The Englishman was proud of his constitution because it guarded the individual Englishman from interference; because he could not, like the Frenchman, be hurried off to the Bastille without warning or trial; because it enabled him to eat beef like the representative islander in Hogarth's picture of 'Calais Gate,' instead of eating nothing better than soup and frogs. To those who look back upon the scene, it does not appear so entirely lovely as it did to contemporaries. The rude energy with which the actors shouldered their way through the crowd, making full use of all the advantages that personal strength of body, or the possession of a purse full of guineas, or broad acres of landed estate might give them, must have fallen with terrible weight upon the weaker members of society. In such a world the rich man took his pleasure, swearing and cursing and drinking himself into the gout as he went. The poor man swore and cursed too, with Gin Lane as a solace, and the misery of the gaol or a speedy exit from life at Tyburn before him. Yet unlovely as the spectacle was, it had its promise of better things. Rude and uncultivated as this life was, it was full of activity. The evils which men suffered from they brought on themselves. No tyranny of class over class handed down by the tradition of centuries, as in France,—no servile yoke of injustice,—pressed upon the citizen or the cultivator of the soil. If the people can but make up their minds about their own wrongs, those wrongs will be redressed. To-day it is a prosecution of Dr. Sacheverell or an un-

popular Excise Bill or a rectification of the Almanac, which rouses the opposition. Some wiser cry for right and justice will be heard to-morrow, and men will learn that the struggles of the seventeenth century had not been in vain, and that a nation which has grasped the direction of its own destinies will not always be content to leave the helm in the hands of a place-loving aristocracy.

## CHAPTER X.

## THE RESTORATION OF AUTHORITY

CHAP  
X.§ 1 Pre-  
monitions  
of Change

IT was certain that some day or other, the time would come when such an abnegation of the higher duties of government would be met by a demand for a development of authority which might discipline into obedience to the national will the factions which profited by the existing anarchy. In some sort, the situation was what it had been when a stronger, fiercer aristocracy treated England as its own in the days of Stephen, or in the days of Henry VI. But as the evil was present in a milder form, the remedy was also likely to take a milder form. The king, as the representative of unity in government, would have a good chance of raising his own power, if he knew how to wield it for national purposes, but he would not this time have the mass of the nation looking on with dumb respect. It would claim to act with him or without him according to the way in which he exercised the authority which he wielded. Not, indeed, that the overthrow of the predominance of the aristocracy would come from a mere jealousy of their supremacy. It is not in this way that great constitutional changes are effected. There must be some actual sin of omission or of commission on the part of the rulers to stir up a desire for change, before a strong enough movement manifests itself in the minds of the multitudes by whose union alone the

forms of popular government can be filled with the life-giving spirit of popular action.

CHAP  
X.

It was well that the first motion towards a better order should make itself felt in the domain of religion rather than in that of politics. The thought of the time had little reference to action, and none at all to spiritual ardour and emotion. Around the thinkers who speculated on the comfortable results of the Christian scheme were a large number of clergy who did not speculate at all, but who contented themselves with fulfilling the external functions of their office in a more or less respectable way, without dreaming that it was their duty to utter more than a mild protest against the evils around them. The one word which expressed to them all that was to be avoided was the word 'zeal.' They were in the midst of masses who were mere heathens, living lives utterly brutal and degraded, and they passed on their way as if these things had no existence. John Wesley saw the sight with other eyes. He gave his life to raise these very masses to a higher and a nobler life. There was in his teaching nothing new. It was the old Puritan doctrine of conversion, upon which was grafted the practice of confession from the yet older church, stripped of its sacerdotalism, and assuming a democratic form in the class-meetings by means of which he organised his followers. In his hands the old thing had become new. His work was more than to teach and to organise. It was to quicken into vigour the seeds of spiritual life which had been almost smothered under the oppressive reasoning of the philosopher and the careless self-content of the man of the world. From it sprang the work of the later evangelical leaders within the English Church, and indirectly the whole spiritual teaching of men who would be by no

§ 2 Wesleyanism.



CHAP.  
X§ 3 Wil-  
liam Pitt.

means inclined to trace their mental genealogy to the founder of Wesleyanism

What Wesley was in the region of mind and spirit, the elder William Pitt was in the region of politics. He too brought nothing new in the way of intellectual conception. His ruling idea of antagonism to France was as old as the days of Edward III. and of Henry V. It was enshrined in the historic drama of Shakspeare, and it inspired the foreign policy of the Whigs of the Revolution. When he tried to solve the questions evolved by the resistance of America to English taxation, he fell back on the old doctrine of No taxation without representation, which had been heard in the midst of the Puritan revolution. Pitt's strength lay in his character, not in his ideas. The spectacle of a man who set before him noble ends, and who trusted his countrymen above that which they were able to do, roused them to do more than they had done before. The first step in organisation is to rally round a man, and in Pitt, England had at last found the man to whom it could look up. It was only to be expected that that rally should have been the accompaniment of a great war. It is for the purposes of war that the need of leadership is most promptly felt, and that need which at an earlier stage of civilisation is satisfied by a quick eye and a brave heart in the field, demands, when war is spread over a larger field, a quick eye and a brave heart in the cabinet. The successes of the Seven Years' War, the conquest of Canada, and the establishment of English military power in India were the distinct results of the individual energy and vigour which the race had gained by its development in the seventeenth century. Frenchmen, in spite of such glorious exceptions as Montcalm and Dupleix, were through their long training under an absolute monarchy, unfitted to compete with the great-grandchildren of the

freeholders who supported Hampden, and of the Puritans who charged with Cromwell.

The influence of the character of a single man is evanescent. Nor was it in the nature of things that England should be swayed by Pitt in peace as it had been swayed by him in war. As long as the war lasted, the hearts of all were set upon the one object of beating the enemy. When the war was at an end, the mass of men became very much what they had been before it. Petty objects took the place of great ones, and intrigues resumed their empire over public spirit. The idea of a State watching over its fleets and armies had been easily seized. The idea of a State watching over the welfare of the population at home, and binding them into common action for great social ends was as yet unfamiliar. In such a dormant condition of public feeling men's advantages were the measure of their power. The Whig aristocracy once more threatened to seize authority into its hands. But the Whig aristocracy was not quite what it was before. It had split into various factions combating one another for power, and some of its members had learned something by their temporary combination with the ostentatious purity of Pitt. It was otherwise with the bulk of members of Parliament who still called themselves Whigs. If they no longer took bribes in the more degrading form of money presents, they did not hesitate to take bribes in the shape of pensions and places, and they flung away in gambling and debauchery the money which they thus acquired at the expense of the nation.

When the great landowners were divided amongst themselves, it was possible for the crown to assert a claim to a higher position than had been allowed to it since the days of Anne. At first indeed the royal competition for power only brought one more rival on

CHAP.  
X.

§ 4. The  
Decline of  
the Whig  
Aris-  
tocracy.

§ 5 The  
Accession  
of George  
III.

CHAP.

X.

the scene to appeal to the covetousness of mankind. The young king, George III, who ascended the throne in 1760, was indeed possessed of a strong desire to do his duty as a ruler, and of a firm conviction that he and not the great landowners was the rightful centre of authority. But he won his way, not by the possession of high qualifications for government, but by persistency of effort joined to the advantage of position. If he exercised his legal rights, he had more to give away than Newcastle and his allies. Places and pensions had all along nominally been in the gift of the Crown. When it was once understood that the King meant really to allot them himself, he soon found that he could dispose of votes in parliament, which had hitherto been at the disposal of the prime minister. Yet the Whig domination was not to be overthrown at once. In bringing about peace with France when everything had been achieved to which the nation could fairly lay claim, George III. was in the right. But in the struggle which followed between the king and the Whig landowners little was to be seen except a contest for power. One body of them, indeed, which placed itself under the leadership of Rockingham, set a noble example in renouncing the paths of corruption. But for that very reason it was weak in Parliamentary influence, and it failed to convey the impression that its chief spokesmen were possessed of sufficient firmness or ability to be entrusted with the destinies of the nation. When its leaders held office for a few short months, they had against them both the hostility of the King, who disliked them as a party formed independently of himself, and the hostility of those numerous members of Parliament who had made their way into the House of Commons in order to be heavily bribed. At last, when after various defeats and victories the King selected Pitt—now Earl of Chatham—as his Prime Minister, there seemed a chance

that the weight of hereditary authority was about to add to itself the weight of the instinctive virtues of the great popular statesman. But Chatham's failure of health prevented the fair trial of the experiment, and George went his way combating influence by influence and, so far as he fell back upon popular support at all, falling back upon that ignorance and the selfishness of his countrymen in which he shared

CHAP.  
X

---

The influence of an hereditary king, or of a popular statesman, was a great organising power capable of producing harmonious action for a time. But the great organiser of modern states is scientific political knowledge, and the first man to appreciate its force was Edmund Burke. He was the founder of a new school of politics. Throwing aside the older doctrines, he announced that it was the duty of governments, not to vindicate their own rights, or to aim at an ideal good, but simply to limit their action for the benefit of their subjects by the extent of their power. The ruler was to ask not what was in itself just, but what was expedient. To give full weight to this doctrine of expediency it would have been necessary for him to anticipate the still more modern doctrine that a nation changes its habits only at a very slow rate, which it is out of the power of any government, either to accelerate very much, or to retard very much. Such a doctrine leads inevitably to the extension of popular control, as a regulating influence upon the freaks of individual selfishness or the over-hastiness of individual intelligence. Burke was too much a child of the first half of the eighteenth century to look upon the influence of the masses as anything but an evil. Thinking, far-sighted men, were, as he well knew, but a small minority. The mass of Englishmen was without education of the simplest kind. Very few could even read or write. It was impossible for ignorant persons engaged in a daily struggle for existence to under-

§6 Ed-  
mund  
Burke.

CHAP.  
X.

stand what was politically wise or politically foolish. Chatham's notion of appealing to the popular voice was therefore as much discarded by him as the king's notion of gaining support by a judicious distribution of offices and pensions. Yet there must be somewhere a body of men to whom was to be entrusted the task of determining what was politically expedient, of seeing that certain things must not be done because the mass of men, whom it would be folly to consult, would testify their objections by practical resistance. But for one peculiarity in Burke's mind, it would have been hard for him to discover where his basis of operations was to be found. When once his antipathies were roused, he was never very critical of the instruments to which he had recourse to oppose that which he disliked. With all his activity of thought in devising new measures, perhaps even on account of that very activity, he was eminently conservative as regarded institutions. He therefore looked for aid not to that which might be, but to that which actually existed, to the parliamentary strength of the Whig landowners. Not that Burke wished to see the government of England placed entirely in the hands of a few noble or wealthy families. He took parliament as it was, with its county-members elected by the freeholders, and with most of its borough-members practically chosen by a limited number of landowners, and with a few of them chosen by a very wide suffrage indeed. Above all he advocated giving the fullest publicity to the words and acts of parliament. Indirectly, every man who had an opinion to express might bring his influence to bear on parliament, though he might never vote at an election. Directly, the mass was to stand aside. The men of wealth and position who had an interest in good government, and who had sufficient intelligence to know what it was, ought to band themselves together by party

ties to resist alike the corrupt influence of the Crown and the ignorant violence of the populace. Such in the main became the creed of the Whigs who looked up to Rockingham as their leader, and of the Rockingham Whigs Burke was the guiding spirit.

On two points Burke was able to co-operate with Chatham, though not without certain reservations. When Wilkes, after being expelled from the Lower House, was, upon a mere resolution of the single House of Commons, declared to be incapable of holding his seat by re-election, Burke like Chatham pronounced against the usurpation. If parliament was not to be brought under the control of a wider constituency than it possessed, at least it must not shake off the control of such constituencies as already existed. Burke went a long way in that idolatry of parliament which was the besetting sin of the middle of the eighteenth century, but he was unable to go so far as to hold that the House of Commons was entitled to set at defiance those to whom it owed its existence. In the question of American taxation, Burke was less unreservedly in agreement with Chatham. Chatham held that the British Parliament had no right to tax America, because America was not represented in it. Burke refused to admit that the question was one of right at all. In his eyes it was one of expediency, one, in short, for the exercise of discretion by the central governing power of the empire, and that central governing power was the British Parliament. It would be an element of considerable importance in the formation of the judgment of Parliament that the Americans objected to be taxed; but it was not the sole element to be taken into consideration. He, therefore, wished to retain for parliament the power of taxing the colonies, whilst counselling that, excepting in extreme emergencies, that power should never be put in force.

CHAP.  
X.§ 8 Com-  
parison  
between  
Burke  
and  
Bacon.

Burke's political opinions, in short, were very similar to those of Bacon, if only the authority of parliament were substituted for the authority of the crown. The predominance of the crown with Bacon—the predominance of the parliament with Burke—was the form in which intelligence was to bear sway over ignorance. Neither of these great men dreamed for a moment of shutting his ears to the voices of those who were excluded from any actual part in the government. But they thought that those voices should be raised simply to enlighten those higher powers, which, unless they were given over to folly or madness, would be able, from the vantage ground on which they stood, to take an impartial view of all questions at issue. In both cases the theory broke down in precisely the same way. The Stuart kings proved unable to rise above the limitations of ordinary human self-conceit and ignorance, and the history of the seventeenth century proved that the place for the action of intelligence must be found in the midst of the representatives of the nation, and not in some separate sphere, the motions of which were governed by rules and forces of its own. The lesson of the eighteenth century was precisely the same. The House of Commons, elected as Burke wished it to be always elected, and endowed with all those powers with which Burke wished it to be endowed, turned a deaf ear to the warnings and exhortations of the great philosophical statesman of that day, as James I. had turned a deaf ear to the warnings and exhortations of Bacon. It shared to the full in the ignorance and corruption of its generation, and its members thus sank into subservient instruments of a king who had honours and rewards to bestow. It used the power, which Burke ascribed to it, of taxing the colonies in special emergencies, to tax them when there was no emergency at all, just as Charles I. had used the

special powers entrusted to him for the defence of the nation at a time of grave and unexpected danger, to lay on ship-money when there was no such danger to be feared. It hurried England into an uncalled-for and hopeless war with America, just as Charles I. hurried England into an uncalled-for and hopeless war with Spain and France. It is not likely that the immediate realisation of Chatham's idea of electoral reform would have brought about at once a better state of things, any more than the immediate realisation of Eliot's idea of parliamentary predominance would have brought about at once a better state of things. Much gradual political education was necessary before the House of Commons was fit to take the lead in the seventeenth century, or before any wide popular foundations would be fit to bear up the edifice of government in the eighteenth century. But it was on the side of Chatham's ideas rather than on the side of Burke's that the hopes of the future lay, if it were only for this reason—that Burke's principles excluded the popular leadership of Chatham, whilst Chatham's principles would find ample room for the intellectual guidance of Burke.

The imposition of taxation upon America was undoubtedly popular at first. Englishmen believed that as they had incurred debt in defending their American colonies, the colonists were bound to share the burden with them. Partly from this motive, partly from contemptuous ignorance of the feelings of the colonists, in the first stages of the quarrel the nation took the side of the king. Instead of correcting the errors of king and people, the House of Commons shared them. Nothing in history is more remarkable than the way in which, excepting in the very greatest crisis, any ministry was sure of a majority in the House of Commons. There was a majority for the imposition of the American

§ 9 The  
new Tories.



CHAP  
X

---

Stamp Act in 1765. There was a majority for repealing it in 1766; and there was again a majority for taxing duties upon imports into America in 1767. Even as late as in 1788, when a great minister, strong in the confidence of the crown and the nation, was threatened with removal from office through accidental causes, it never occurred either to his friends or his opponents that, if a new ministry succeeded in establishing itself in office, it would find any difficulty in securing a majority in the House of Commons. In part, the phenomenon was owing to the corrupt influence which the wearer of the crown was able to exercise, but, in the first years of the reign, it was also owing to a general weariness of the domination of the Whigs, and a desire to find in the king a rallying point of national strength. When the American war came, he became the rallying point of national stubbornness as well. Hence the success achieved by George III. in the formation of that new Tory party which came into power with Lord North in 1770. The party thus formed was no longer beset by the difficulties which had weakened those politicians who had gloried in the name of Tory in the reign of Anne. There was no longer any disputed succession. The questions springing out of the Toleration Act had long been laid asleep. It was a party simply gathered in hostility to the great Whig houses, and advocating, as the cardinal point of its political creed, the right of the king to name his own ministers, and thereby to direct the policy of the government, though it did not at all deny the right of parliament to hold those ministers responsible, a right which, subservient as parliament was, it seemed little likely to wish to put in execution.

§ 10 The  
American  
War

George III had everything on his side but political intelligence. Whether Chatham were right in holding

that the attempt to tax America was absolutely unconstitutional, or Burke in holding that it was simply inexpedient, there could be no doubt that it was impracticable. Resistance in America ripened into revolution. The attempt to coerce the colonists ended in failure. The distance across the Atlantic was too great to enable the British government to keep its armies in a complete state of efficiency, and the extent of the colonial territory was too great to make it possible to subdue the new nation which had arisen. France took the opportunity of helping the enemies of Britain, and the independence of the United States was the result. It was a happy result for Britain as well as for America. Compulsory taxation of an unrepresented people was a violation of the principles on which England had thriven, and it would have been impossible to violate them in America without holding them lightly in Europe. At least the unrepresented classes in England would have been treated as if their wishes and needs were beneath consideration. The military force which would have been needed to maintain the authority of the mother country in America would have hindered the free play of constitutional forces at home. When therefore, after the collapse of the war, a new government came into office, it came in with the authority which is derived from having been in the right when it was in opposition, and with no very hard task in governing a country which had not suffered so much as it seemed to have suffered. The real difficulties of the new government arose from its own composition. Chatham was dead ; but his successor Shelburne and his youthful son the second William Pitt inherited the traditions of his policy. They were not inclined to rest the government of the country on a confederacy of great landowners. They perceived that the development of

CHAP.  
X.

---

the new Tory party had its root in the demand of the nation for a larger basis of power. That basis they proposed to supply by an electoral reform which should strengthen the House of Commons by placing increased reliance on the more independent classes of society, whilst they were quite ready to conciliate the king by interesting him in their policy and by showing deference to his wishes. The Whigs, on the other hand, looked with aversion upon any extension of court influence, whilst many of them were averse to any extension of popular power. The personal quarrel which broke out between Fox, who after Rockingham's death became the leader of the Whigs, and Shelburne, who was the leader of the followers of Chatham, was only the symptom of an ineradicable difference of principle.

§ II. The  
Coalition  
Ministry.

That difference of principle led to a grave constitutional crisis. When, upon Rockingham's death, the king appointed Lord Shelburne prime minister, Fox and his whole party refused to serve under him. Forming an unprincipled coalition with the immediate followers of Lord North, to whom they were bound by no tie of common political principle, they installed themselves in office. Then ensued a struggle such as had not been known since the Tory victories of Harley and St. John in the days of Anne. A bill prepared by Burke for the reform of the government of India was passed by large majorities in the House of Commons. When it reached the House of Lords, it was thrown out through the personal intervention of the king. The king then dismissed the ministry and placed the premiership in the hands of young William Pitt. After a struggle of many weeks, parliament was dissolved, and a new parliament was returned, giving a large majority to Pitt and the king. By constitutional purists the mode of Pitt's appointment is regarded with abhorrence. It should how-

ever be remembered that the right of parliament, if supported by the constituencies, to obtain the dismissal of a minister was not in question. No doubt our modern practice, according to which the House of Commons, by merely signifying its disapprobation, can obtain either an immediate change of government or an immediate dissolution, is an improvement on the practice of 1783. But it is also true that the House of Commons of 1881 is an improvement on the House of Commons of 1783. It does not now contain a large number of members without political principle, and eager simply to possess themselves of so much of the loaves and fishes of political adventure as they may be able through dexterous management to secure. In 1783 therefore it was simply a question which side could bribe the highest. The offers of the coalition proved in the end less attractive than the offers of the king, and the sounder part of the country rallied round the opponent of a coalition which appeared to be guided by no principle whatever, and whose only great political performance, the India bill, was exposed to many just criticisms, and which awakened through misinterpretation even more hostility than it deserved.

It was for the king to justify the intrigue by which Pitt's government was formed, by showing that the policy of the new ministry was more than an intrigue. In Pitt he had found a man who could lay the foundations of the organisation of intelligence in the place of the organisation of hereditary rank and hereditary wealth. The new Tory party, to which the son of Chatham gave consistency, was, in truth, identical with the Liberal party of more recent times. The early years in which he exercised authority were marked by great reforms and by attempts at reforms even greater than it was then possible to carry out. He had learned from

§ 12 Pitt's  
Ministry.

CHAP.  
X.  

---

Adam Smith the first principles of political economy, and the commercial treaty with France was the first visible result of the new science. He failed, indeed, in carrying his scheme of parliamentary reform, but the mere fact that he addressed himself to the nation generally was in itself a preparation for parliamentary reform. The evil notion that it was enough if the House of Commons was satisfied, whatever might be the feeling outside its doors, had prevailed too much with all parties. Pitt definitely cast it aside. It was upon an appeal to the constituencies that he had sustained himself in office, and he never forgot the debt which he owed them. The constituencies, too, were themselves very different from those which had existed at the beginning of the reign. Wealth was no longer confined to the great landowners and a few commercial magnates of the city of London. The nabobs, as they were called, the men who had heaped up riches in India, had been the first to dispute the way to parliament with the possessors of large estates. A far better element had been introduced into English society by the growth of manufacturing industry. The introduction of the steam-engine, the construction of navigable canals, and the application of newly invented machines to manufactures, had brought into existence a class of thoughtful and intelligent men, possessed of property of a kind which was entirely free from the influence of the great landed proprietors. The gradual change in the distribution of wealth was accompanied by a gradual elevation of the standard of religion and morals. The seed sown by Wesley had taken root and flourished amongst those who owned no special tie to his person or his teaching. Everywhere appeared a life and vigour which had been entirely wanting fifty years before. There was, in all

classes, more decency in outward life, more public spirit than before. Much remained to be done, but the progress was sufficiently great to make the nation, as a whole, content with itself, and unwilling to seek a remedy for its evils in violent and revolutionary change.

## CHAPTER XI.

## THE INFLUENCE OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

CHAP.  
XI.§ 1 New  
Ideas in  
France.

NEW ideas had for many years been influencing every European state. Men of intelligence rebelled against systems which were powerful only for evil, and sought either to regulate the world in accordance with the results of thought, or to call up a new power in the masses to overthrow the ancient and effete fabric of society. Naturally these ideas were more powerful in France than elsewhere, because it was there that misgovernment had done its worst, from sheer incompetency to fulfil its task. The leaders of the French Revolution had before them an aristocracy which thrust the burdens of the state upon the other classes whilst they preserved its advantages to themselves, and a church which did little or nothing to quicken the spiritual life of its members, whilst its higher officials were sunk in sloth or dissipation. In opposition to these evils a double tendency was soon manifested, the one, of which the typical personage was Rousseau, which looked to pure democracy as the remedy against the evils of an effete aristocratic society, the other, of which the typical personage was Voltaire, which looked to clearer intellectual belief as a remedy for the evils caused by ignorance and folly. By the combination of these two movements, modern society was to be deeply moulded in the future.

It was, however, almost inevitable that the first attempt to carry them out would end in disaster, and that the new democracy, when called upon the stage, being entirely without political experience or constitutional habit, should show itself to be capricious and tyrannical in its instincts, and unwilling to recognise not merely those traditions of the past which no nation can afford to throw off in an instant, but even the warnings of those who would seek to curb its violence by moral restraint. Europe was alarmed and enraged by the sight of a reign of cruelty and violence, at variance with the humanitarian professions of the perpetrators of the crime.

The first effect of the French Revolution upon the Englishmen of the eighteenth century was not unlike the first effect of the Reformation upon the Englishmen of the sixteenth century. Both in the sixteenth and the eighteenth century society was settled on too solid bases to be thrown off its balance by the new ideas by which it was destined to be ultimately moulded. In both cases the work of the preceding generations had been so far well done that only a small minority would be willing to set it aside entirely in favour of something altogether new. In both cases the fact that there was such a minority caused a revulsion of feeling and a desire to cling to the old without change or alteration. In both cases, after a certain time had elapsed, the new ideas made their way quietly and by degrees, gradually modifying the old ideas without shock or violence.

§ 2 The  
Effect in  
England.

In this way, the ideas which produced the French Revolution exercised up to about 1822 a repellent power upon English political life, whilst since that date their influence has been steadily attractive. From 1789 onwards Pitt ceased to be the master of the nation. Driven against his inclination into a war with France,

§ 3 The  
last Years  
of Pitt's  
Ministry.



CHAP.  
 XI.

---

his coalition with the leaders of the Whigs, who seceded from Fox, marked a great surrender. The spirit of his ministry in its early years had been drawn from the union of intelligence and popular support. In its later years it appealed to the rights of property. The lower part of the Whig ideas had swallowed up the higher part of the Tory ideas. Abstract and scientific thought, idolised in France, was treated with contempt in England, and war was looked upon, in spite of Pitt's reluctance to descend so low as a means to combat disagreeable principles which might have been met much better by improvement and reform at home. Once, indeed, the genius of Pitt flashed out into the promise of a great reform. His conception of connecting the union of Great Britain and Ireland with the removal of the Catholic disabilities was worthy of his best days. But the king stood firm against the nobler part of the design, and the ignorance and obstinacy of the king was, in this matter, only the echo of the ignorance and obstinacy of the nation.

§ 4 The  
 War with  
 France.

The relations of France with Europe took much the same course as the relations of the French democracy with those classes which had previously been in the enjoyment of most of the advantages of life. The war began from a collision of ideas like the religious wars of earlier times. Both at home and abroad material interests called for satisfaction before moral and intellectual interests were provided for. Within the limits of France it seemed for a time as if the movement was to be exhausted when it had divided a great part of the property of the rich amongst the poor and had procured entrance to offices in the state for those who had hitherto been excluded from them. Outside the limits of France a war, begun by the French nation in order to resist the forcible introduction by foreign armies of principles of government which it had rejected, or to introduce into

foreign countries principles of which it approved, gradually changed into a war of plunder and annexation, culminating both at home and abroad in the erection of a mean and selfish despotism. With this change in the character of the relations between France and the Continent, came a change in the character of the relations between England and the Continent. It is true that Pitt had from the beginning taken care that, ostensibly at least, the war should not be waged against ideas. It was said that it was waged on account of such grievances as the annexation of the Southern Netherlands and the threatened invasion of the Northern Netherlands, and when attempts were made to make peace in 1796 and in 1797, the dispute turned entirely on questions of territorial delimitation. What was left out of sight was that—at least up to Bonaparte's attack upon Italy in 1796—the question of territorial delimitation was secondary to the question of the prevalence of French ideas. French soldiers could not be driven back within their old frontiers until the ideas for which they combated should cease to prove attractive, and the war was waged in vain because neither Pitt's financial ability nor Burke's reasoning could succeed in making them otherwise than attractive to those who had long suffered from the evils which they professed to cure. In all this, however, time worked a change. As Napoleon rose France degenerated. French power came to be connected in men's minds with bloodshed and ruin, with political despotism, and fiscal oppression. In the final struggle against this evil, England played her part well, she made common cause with the nations of Europe because all were equally concerned in shaking off a yoke which had become intolerable to all. She did not neglect her own special interests, but she merged them in the interests of the European community at large.

CHAP.  
XI§ 5 The  
Foreign  
Policy of  
the  
Ministries  
after the  
War.

The foreign policy of England for some years after the war was under the control of Lord Castlereagh. His main work was to support the European settlement arranged by the Congress of Vienna at the close of the war. The Congress of Vienna, taken in combination with the other leagues and congresses by which it was followed, may be regarded as the first serious attempt to establish a European tribunal for the decision of questions affecting Europe as a whole, and it will therefore probably assume larger proportions in the eyes of the future historian than it does at present, if, as is by no means unlikely, such a tribunal should, at some distant date, be permanently established. Its weakness lay, not merely in the covetousness of individual powers, but still more in the fact that France was regarded as an enemy to be kept in check rather than as a member of the community to be supported in her legitimate rights. Not only were large territorial increases assigned to those powers which were likely to be strong enough to keep France from fresh warlike enterprises, but the very notion that the wishes of the subjects of any state deserved to be taken into consideration was scouted as revolutionary and dangerous. Hence the revulsion of feeling in England, of which Canning constituted himself the mouth-piece. Important as it was that there should be common action in Europe, it became more important still that the states which were to meet together should represent, as far as possible, natural aggregates of men, and not mere artificial combinations of a government and an army. During the seventy-nine years which have elapsed since the battle of Waterloo, the conduct of foreign affairs has passed through various hands, and has undoubtedly been subject to change and vacillation. Here, as in every other instance, ideal progress consists in the combination of two apparently conflicting courses, whilst the nature of

average men is such that they only attach themselves strongly to one of these courses at a time. We have, therefore, had times when the chief object of foreign politics has seemed to be the support of congresses and conferences, the demand for international arbitration in the place of war, and for the dismissal of those overgrown armies which are constantly threatening the peace of Europe. At another time the doctrine of non-intervention has been accepted as the true panacea for the evils by which the Continent is affected. Much sense and much nonsense has been talked on behalf of both these theories, and it would be rash to attempt to forecast the solutions which the future may have in store. But it can hardly be doubted that the rise of a higher and better international law than now exists will only become possible, if on the one hand the general community of nations exercises its authority on behalf of the establishment and maintenance of states formed on the natural basis of the wishes of the populations, so far as they can be ascertained, and if, on the other hand, it defends any state so constituted against the interference of its neighbours. The growth of the authority of European congresses, joined to an increased respect for national independence, will probably be the leading feature of the international relations of the future, and, on the whole, in spite of occasional backslidings, the foreign policy of England has helped on the change.

In domestic politics the effect of antipathy to French principles survived the war. For some years it was thought to be dangerous to think of reforms at all. Everything which existed was evidently for the best, even if it were a job or a sinecure. The idea of bringing popular pressure to bear upon men of property and the idea of asking men of property to listen to more intelligent persons than themselves was equally scouted.

§ 6 Do-  
mestic  
Policy after  
the War.

CHAP.  
XI

---

Then came a great change. On the one hand a demand arose for parliamentary reform, for the widening of the basis of representation. On the other hand a demand arose for a more intelligent and less selfish government. The two demands have been answered. The policy which had died out with Pitt was again in the ascendant. The great Liberal movement made its power felt over both parties and all classes. Thrice has a parliamentary reform bill been carried, to place the control of the government in the hands of men of less material property than those who had formerly been entrusted with it, and the result has been to increase rather than to diminish the weight of intelligence. Happily too the struggle which preceded these changes was not a mere struggle between classes, like the revolutionary struggle in France. A large number of the owners of great estates threw themselves on the side of reform, whilst their opponents, who objected to change, were honourable men, striving, according to their belief, for the best interests of their country, and capable of influencing for good the generation in which they lived. The growth of the scientific spirit and its extension through popular teaching, open at last to both sexes alike, has helped and will help still more to widen the basis of authority. Yet the reform of the criminal law, the changes in the poor law, the introduction of free trade, have all been the work of men of special intellectual qualifications, and the possession of such qualifications carries with it more weight in the affairs of government than it did at any preceding time. Popular power organised by intellect, influenced by morality, and devoted to high and noble aims, is the ideal form of the society which is now developing itself, and which has survived the violent tyranny of the French Revolution and the violent reaction caused by that tyranny. How far the nation falls short of that

ideal can to some extent be seen, and will be more clearly seen in future times. But we may be sure that it is less in danger of shipwreck, because more than other nations it does not disregard its past, and because it does not hastily cast off or even profoundly modify its old institutions till they have become beyond all dispute hurtful rather than beneficent.



PART II.

AUTHORITIES.

BY

J. BASS MULLINGER, M.A.





# PREFACE

TO  
THE SECOND PART.

---

IN the following pages it has been my first aim, carefully to distinguish the contemporary sources of information for each period from those of later times,—a distinction of primary importance in historical study. In the next place, I have endeavoured, wherever practicable, to supply such an amount of comment as will enable the student to form a fairly accurate notion of each author's value as an authority. In so doing, I have sought to be strictly impartial, and simply to place before the reader the main conclusions of the most recent and approved criticism.

In connexion with Welsh, Irish, and Scottish history, the design of the volume seems to call for nothing further than a reference to the chief authorities for those periods or junctures when the history of one or other of these countries has been most prominently associated with that of England.

Contemporary narrative, however defective or partial, rarely fails to retain a certain interest and value in after times. But general histories,—such as those of Old

mixon, Barnard, Henry, Hume, Smollett, and Sharon Turner,—become, for the purposes of research, confessedly obsolete, not simply from their defective method, but as derived from a very imperfect acquaintance with the original manuscript sources. Of these and similar writers I have, accordingly, not considered it necessary to furnish any account.

It will be understood, again, that *manuscript* sources do not come within the scope of my work. Investigations of such a character would be undertaken only by those who were themselves designing to write history, for whom the present volume is not intended. It has, accordingly, been deemed sufficient to give, at the conclusion of each chapter, some account of the best and most recent works on each period,—productions which now invariably represent research of the kind referred to and rarely fail to indicate the original manuscript authorities.

It is perhaps scarcely necessary to add, that, in a manual like the present, the list of authorities is not exhaustive,—still less is it designed to represent the bibliography of our historical literature. But I hope that the amount of guidance offered will be found sufficient to enable the student to pursue his investigations of any period with comparatively little further assistance.

As regards the different editions of each author, as a rule, only the best is named; of this, in the case of all but the most recent writers, the title-page has generally been transcribed in full.

It only remains for me to express my frequent

indebtedness to Professor Gardiner, with whom I have the honour to be associated in the production of this volume, and by whose advice I have so often profited,—especially in connexion with the period of which he possesses an almost unrivalled knowledge. My best thanks are also due to Richard Garnett, Esq, Superintendent of the British Museum Reading Room, for the unvarying courtesy and valuable suggestions with which he has often aided me in the prosecution of researches which could not fail, at times, to be somewhat perplexing and laborious.

*The following abbreviations have been used in referring to the publications of different societies and other works of a serial character*

*A. C.* Abbotsford Club.

*Bann C.* Bannatyne Club.

*C. S.* Camden Society.

*E. E. T. S.* Early English Text Society.

*E. H. S.* English Historical Society.

Hardy, *D. C.* Hardy (Sir T. D.), *Descriptive Catalogue of Materials relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland.*

*M. H. B.* *Monumenta Historica Britannica.*

Migne, *P. L.* The Abbé Migne's *Patrologia Latina.*

*Phil. S.* Philobiblon Society.

*R. C.* Record Commission.

*R. S.* Rolls Series

*S. S.* Surtees Society.

## INTRODUCTORY.

THE study of our national history gains greatly in interest, if pursued in conjunction with that of the growth and development of the English tongue.<sup>1</sup> The student, accordingly, should not fail to acquire some knowledge of the leading facts which the science of language may be regarded as having established with respect to the ethnic affinities of the English race. An elaborate, though far from altogether trustworthy, exposition of these facts will be found in the work of M. PICTET,—*Les Origines Indo-Européennes, ou les Aryas Primitifs* (2nd edit, Paris, 1878)—in which the writer, in a series of minute verbal investigations, traces back the vocabulary of modern Aryan tongues, whether Hellenic, Italic, Celtic, Teutonic, or Slavonic, to the common sources of the so-called Indo-European family of languages. The main results of these researches may be found in professor MAX MULLER'S *Selected Essays*, pp. 299 ff. (1881), and in the 5th and 6th of his *Lectures on the Science of Language* (2 vols, 1866). 'As surely,' says the latter writer, in summing up the historical lesson conveyed in the genealogical classification of languages—'as surely as the six Roman dialects point to an original home of Italian shepherds on the seven hills at Rome, the Aryan languages together point to an earlier

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.Works on  
the Com-  
parative  
Study of  
Language.

Pictet.

Max  
Muller.

<sup>1</sup> 'No man can study political history worthily without learning a good deal about languages, no man can study language worthily without learning a good deal about political history.'—Freeman, Pref. to *Hist. of the Norman Conquest*, vol. v.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

period of language, when the first ancestors of the Indians, the Persians, the Greeks, the Romans, the Slaves, the Celts, and the Germans, were living together within the same enclosures and under the same roof' (i 237)

Oliphant.

Mr T L KINGSTON OLIPHANT'S *Old and Middle English* (Macmillan & Co., 1878) takes up the subject where it is left by the foregoing writers, and traces the history of the English language to the early part of the fourteenth century, by which time the language began to assume its final and classical form. Mr. Oliphant's treatment of his subject is especially valuable on account of the collateral illustration it affords of the political and social events of the time. Mr ISAAC TAYLOR'S *Words and Places* (Macmillan & Co., 4th edit, 1879) abounds with interesting elucidations of the connexion between our local nomenclature and our national history.

Isaac  
Taylor.

Works on  
the Com-  
parative  
History of  
Institu-  
tions.

The comparative history of Institutions affords, like that of language, very valuable guidance in relation to our earlier history, and among these the institution of Property in Land, resting upon a primeval tenure of the soil by groups of men either actually or hypothetically united by blood relationship, is of foremost importance. In contrast to the history of Roman Law, as gradually growing up out of successive interpretations of the Twelve Tables, it offers a remarkable illustration of the political development of the Aryan race in countries unaffected by the influences of the Empire, and especially in those peopled by Slavonic societies. 'It is one of the facts,' says Sir Henry Maine, 'with which the Western world will some day assuredly have to reckon, that the political ideas of so large a portion of the human race, and its ideas of property also, are inextricably bound up with the notions of family interdependency, of collective ownership, and of natural subjection to patriarchal power' <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Early History of Institutions*, p 3.

It is an especially valuable feature in our early English institutions, that they afford the best example of the operation of these ideas with the smallest admixture of foreign elements. Partly as the result of its insular position, partly from other causes, England has developed in greater purity than Germany itself, the original institutions of Teutonism. She has formed and consolidated her common law 'free from the absolutist tendencies of Roman jurisprudence;' she has preserved her language essentially the same; and like to the tree or the plant, which, conveyed to another hemisphere, exhibits there yet greater vigour and luxuriance of growth than on its native soil, so the laws, the customs, and the speech that came from the banks of the Elbe, acquired a sudden and powerful development on the banks of the Thames and the Ouse.

A very clear and interesting comparative view of the fundamental conceptions of legislation and property as exhibited among Teutonic, Celtic, and Hindu communities, is given by SIR HENRY MAINE in his treatise on *The Early History of Institutions* (John Murray, 1875). In a series of chapters entitled 'Kinship as the Basis of Society,' 'The Tribe and the Land,' 'The Chief and his Order,' 'The Chief and the Land,' and 'Ancient Divisions of the Family,' he traces out the process of development from the 'patriarchal family,' to the modern State. A large proportion of his illustrations are however drawn from the Early Irish or Brehon Laws, which possess a special value from the fact that they exhibit to us a society of Aryan race, 'settled indeed on the land, and much influenced by its settlement, but preserving an exceptional number of the ideas and rules belonging to the time when kinship and not the land is the basis of social union.' MR. FREEMAN, in his *Comparative Politics* (Macmillan & Co., 1873), has sought to shew the ana-

Sir H  
Maine.

Freeman.



INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

logies relating to the political State, the institution of Monarchy, and the governing Parliament or Assembly, which may be traced out in Grecian, Roman, and Teutonic history. In these relations, the last, he considers, often affords valuable illustration of the former two. 'It is among the men of our own blood,' he says, 'that we can best trace out how, as in Greece and Italy, the family grew into the clan—how, as in Greece and Italy, the clan grew into the tribe,—and how, at that stage, the development of the two kindred races parted company,—how among Teutons on either side of the sea, the tribe has grown, not into the city but into the nation.'<sup>1</sup>

Kemble,

In connexion with our national history, a chapter on 'The Mark,' in the first volume of Mr. JOHN MITCHELL KEMBLE'S *Saxons in England* (2 vols., Quaritch, 1876),<sup>2</sup> was the earliest embodiment of researches on the relations of early land tenure and settlement to our political institutions. His treatment of the subject has since received a further application in the masterly histories of G. L. von MAURER and WAITZ,<sup>3</sup> while these have, in turn, been largely utilised by professor STUBBS in the first three chapters of his *Constitutional History*. In these pages the last-named writer succinctly traces out the relations of the 'mark system' to our national history, as 'the basis on which a large proportion of the institutions of later constitutional life may theoretically be imposed.

Professor  
Stubbs.

<sup>1</sup> *Comparative Politics*. p III.

<sup>2</sup> *The Saxons in England, a History of the English Commonwealth till the Period of the Norman Conquest* 1st edit. 2 vols. 1849.

<sup>3</sup> Maurer, *Einführung zur Geschichte der Mark- Hof- und Städteverfassung in Deutschland* (München, 1854); *Gesch. d. Markenverfassung in Deutschland* (Erlangen, 1856); *Gesch. d. Dorfverfassung in Deutschland* (Erlangen, 1866) See also a chapter by Waitz on *Das Dorf, die Gemeinde, der Gau*, in the first volume of his *Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte*, and Sir H S Maine's *Village Communities in the East and West* (John Murray, 3d edit., 1876), also *The Aryan Household its Structure and Development*. By William Edward Hearn (Longmans, 1879).

The above chapters should be carefully read and re-read by the student, while of the whole of the sources of information above indicated it may be said that regular reference to them will do much towards enabling him to keep in view the general conditions under which our national history has developed, and to refer it to those all-pervading laws on which all human progress ultimately rests.

INTRO-  
DUCORY.

### THE ORIGINAL SOURCES.

In forming an estimate of the credibility of any writer who represents a principal authority for a certain period, it becomes of primary importance to know the circumstances under which he wrote and the character of his political sympathies. In the study of our medieval historical literature,—written, as it often was, by credulous and strongly prejudiced narrators,—this knowledge is especially necessary. It will accordingly be of service here to point out: (1) where we may gain the necessary information respecting the writers themselves; (2) what has, at various times, been done towards rendering these writers more accessible to the student.

BIOGRA-  
PHIES OF  
OUR HIS-  
TORICAL  
WRITERS.

In the early part of the fifteenth century, JOHN BOSTON, a monk of the famous monastery of St. Edmundsbury, compiled an alphabetical list of authors of English birth, entitled *Catalogus Scriptorum Ecclesiae*. The greater part of this work is printed in Wilkins's preface to Tanner's *Bibliotheca*; and it still possesses some value as an enumeration of the different libraries that existed in England before the discovery of printing, with the authors which they contained.

John  
Boston.

The first, however, to attain to eminence in this department of our national literature was JOHN LELAND, 'the father of English antiquaries,' who was chaplain

John  
Leland.  
b. 1506  
d. 1552.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

and librarian to king Henry VIII. He was educated at St. Paul's School, and subsequently studied at Cambridge, Oxford, and Paris. Henry was wont to call Leland 'his antiquary,' and in the year 1533 he gave him a commission 'to search after England's antiquities and pursue the libraries of all cathedrals, abbeys, priories, colleges, and places where records, writings, and secrets of antiquity were deposited, to the intent that the monuments of ancient writers, as well of other nations as of our provinces, might be brought out of cloudy darkness to lively light' As the result of his researches, Leland presented to king Henry, in the year 1545, his well-known *Collectanea*.<sup>1</sup> The work remained in manuscript until a century and three quarters later, when it was edited and printed by Hearne, the antiquary; it may be looked upon as the basis of all similar productions in this country. Leland's *Commentarii de Scriptioribus Britanniae* is a kind of supplement to the *Collectanea*.

John Bale.  
b. 1495.  
d. 1563.

Next in order comes JOHN BALE, bishop of Ossory, the compiler of *Illustrum Majoris Britanniae Scriptorum, hoc est, Angliae, Cambriae, ac Scotiae, Summarium*. Of this work the first edition, dedicated to king Edward VI., was printed at Ipswich in 1549, and comprised only five centuries of writers; but the third edition, of 1559, contains four additional centuries and a list of 900 writers. It is professedly a biographical dictionary of British authors, though many names are included which have no claim to a place in such a category. A convert from Romanism to Protestantism, and protected and favoured by Thomas Cromwell, Bale was distinguished by the rancour of his attacks upon eminent members of the party which he had deserted. By Fuller, the Church historian, he is designated as 'biliosus Balaeus;' nor can

<sup>1</sup> *De Rebus Britannicis Collectanea*, ed. Hearne, 6 vols. 8vo. Oxon. 1715. Reprinted at London, 1770.

it be denied that he rarely hesitates to impute the worst motives to his antagonists or to give currency to the most extravagant assertions that tended to injure their reputation. But, notwithstanding, his work has been largely used and much praised as an authority by Protestant Church historians, although, in the opinion of the late Sir T. D. Hardy, 'its merits are neither so many nor so eminent as is generally supposed.'

The spirit in which Bale pursued his labours served to call forth a corresponding production from the party whom he attacked, and in the year 1619 appeared the *de Illustribus Angliae Scriptoribus* of JOHN PITS, the fourth volume of a series of which the first contains lives of the English monarchs, the second, of the bishops, the third, of the 'apostolic members' of the English Church.<sup>1</sup> Pits was educated at the English College in Rome, and his volumes were compiled during his residence abroad, while he was confessor to the duchess of Cleves. He was largely indebted to Bale, though he professed to have derived his information from Leland, the manuscript of whose work he had probably never seen. As a partisan, he is even more violent and unscrupulous than his predecessor, and he does not hesitate altogether to suppress the names of many eminent Protestant writers. But, on the other hand, he was induced by the same motives to insert the names of distinguished members of his own communion, and his work affords, in consequence, information which we should otherwise lack concerning many Roman Catholic writers who left

John Pits.  
b 1560  
d 1615.

<sup>1</sup> The fourth volume only has been printed, under the title of *Joannis Pitsei Angh, S. T. D., Liverduni in Lotharinga Decani, Relationum Historicarum de Rebus Anglicis Tomus primus*, Paris, 1619. It is, however, generally cited with the title above given. The other three volumes of Pits' compilations are preserved in the original manuscript at the collegiate church at Verdun.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

---

England during the reign of Elizabeth and settled at the principal centres of learning in Belgium, France, or Italy.

William  
Cave  
b. 1637  
d. 1713.

A far more scrupulous and trustworthy writer than either Bale or Pits was WILLIAM CAVE, an eminent divine of the English Church in the seventeenth century. Educated at Cambridge, and subsequently vicar of Isleworth in Middlesex and a canon of Windsor, he devoted a long life to the study of Church history. It was his design to extend the treatment of his subject, as commenced in his *Scriptorum Ecclesiasticorum Historia Literaria a Christo nato usque ad Saeculum XIV*, to the whole of Europe, but his work comes down only to the commencement of the fourteenth century. It was afterwards continued to 1517 by Henry Wharton and Robert Gery.

Sir James  
Ware  
b. 1594  
d. 1666

A distinguished contemporary of Cave, the Irish antiquarian SIR JAMES WARE, published in 1639 his *de Scriptoribus Hiberniae*. His impartiality as a writer is admitted by all parties, and as the friend of Ussher, Selden, and Sir Robert Cotton, he enjoyed advantages of which he availed himself with considerable industry. His researches in his special field were, however, thrown into the shade by the great work of TANNER, bishop of St. Asaph, whose *Bibliotheca Britannico-Hibernica* appeared in 1748. Tanner himself died before its publication, and it was edited by Dr. Wilkins. It contains an account of English, Scotch, and Irish writers, compiled not only from Leland, Bale, and Pits, but from numberless other authorities in print or in manuscript. 'On all questions,' says Sir T. D. Hardy, 'connected with the early literature of our nation, Tanner's *Bibliotheca*, notwithstanding its many omissions, defects, and redundancies, is still the highest authority to which the inquirer can refer. As a storehouse of historical materials, it is invaluable; although the vast information

Thomas  
Tanner  
b. 1674.  
d. 1735

contained in it is badly arranged and requires a careful and critical revision.'

A small volume entitled *Manual of British Historians*, was published in 1845 by MR MACRAY, then an undergraduate at Oxford, but it contains little more than a chronological enumeration of the original authorities, together with a statement of the period covered by their respective narratives. Professor H. MORLEY'S *English Writers, from Chaucer to Dunbar*, is a compilation embodying much valuable material but defective both in respect of scholarship and criticism. For our medieval history, however, the great work of SIR THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, *A Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland* (3 vols, 1862-71), supplies the most complete guidance, furnishing a detailed critical account of the sources for British history, whether printed or unprinted, from the earliest times to the year 1327. In the present pages, the writer has been frequently indebted to this most valuable and laborious production.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

Later Pub-  
lications.  
Macray

Prof  
Morley.

Sir T. D.  
Hardy.

We now proceed to note what has been done towards rendering the texts of the original writers more accessible to the student, and here a grateful tribute is due to the labours of ARCHBISHOP PARKER. Amid the distractions of a busy life he found time to form a highly valuable collection of manuscripts which he bequeathed to Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; he was also the editor of the first editions of the *Historia Major* of Matthew Paris and the *Historia Anglica* of Walsingham. Unfortunately he was not acquainted with the most trustworthy manuscripts of these works; while, in the case of Matthew Paris, he took unwarrantable liberties with the text in his endeavour to improve the Latinity of his author.

EDITORS.

Archbishop  
Parker  
b 1504  
d. 1575

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

Sir Henry  
Savile.  
b 1549  
d 1622.

The *Scriptores post Bedam*,<sup>1</sup> edited by SIR HENRY SAVILE, contains the most important historical writers of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries; but the collection is seriously wanting in typographical accuracy, while the inclusion of Ingulphus must now be regarded as that of an almost worthless forgery.

*Decem  
Scriptores.*

The Collection known as *Decem Scriptores*<sup>2</sup> had the advantage of being presented to the world under the auspices of SELDEN, USSHER, and TWYSDEN, and is an edition of considerable merit; it is usually referred to under the name of the last-mentioned editor.

Henry  
Wharton.  
b 1664  
d. 1695.

The *Anglia Sacra*<sup>3</sup> of HENRY WHARTON, published in two folio volumes in 1691, contains the lives of the English archbishops and bishops from the introduction of Christianity to the year 1540.

Thomas  
Hearne.  
b 1678.  
d. 1735.

The various authors edited in the first half of the eighteenth century by THOMAS HEARNE<sup>4</sup> obtained for him a larger amount of credit than he appears to have actually deserved. His texts were selected without discrimination as regards their comparative value, and were reprinted with a servile adherence to the manifest blunders of transcribers.

<sup>1</sup> *Rerum Anglicarum Scriptores post Bedam præcipui, ex vetustissimis codicibus manuscriptorum nunc primum in lucem editi*, Frankfurt, 1601. This contains the *de Gestis Regum*, the *Historia Novella*, and the *de Gestis Pontificum* of William of Malmesbury; Henry of Huntingdon, 8 books, Roger Hoveden *Annalium pars prior et posterior*; *Chronica Ethelwerdi*; *Ingulphi Abbatis Croylandensis Historiarum*, lb. 1

<sup>2</sup> *Historiæ Anglicanæ Scriptores Decem*, London, 1652. This contains Simeon Monachus Dunelmensis, Johannes Prior Hagustaldensis, Ricardus Prior Hagustaldensis, Alredus Abbas Rievallensis, Radulphus de Diceto Londniensis, Johannes Brompton Jorallensis, Gervasius Monachus Dorobornensis, Thomas Stubbs Dominicanus, Gulielmus Thorn Cantuariensis, Henricus Knighton Leicestrensis.

<sup>3</sup> *Anglia Sacra sive Collectio Historiarum antiquitus scriptarum de Archiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ a prima Fidei Christianæ susceptione ad annum MDXL*. London, 1691. For List of Contents see Hardy, *D. C.* i. 691-694.

<sup>4</sup> For contents, see Hardy, *ibid.* i. 807-10.

Of the collections of historical writers printed by FULMAN,<sup>1</sup> GALE,<sup>2</sup> and HALL,<sup>3</sup> it may be said that they are characterised by much the same defects. The collection published by SPARKE<sup>4</sup> contains chiefly histories of monasteries; it includes, however, the *Chronicon Angliae* by John, abbat of Peterborough, and Robert of Boston, and also the *Life of Thomas Beket* by William Fitz-Stephen.

In the year 1706, DR. WHITE KENNET, an eminent antiquary, published a *History of England* in the form of a series of lives (by different authors) of the kings and queens from the Conquest to the death of William III. The collection is one of very unequal merit, but deserves the praise of having been made with impartiality and edited with care.<sup>5</sup>

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.Other  
Editors.Kennet's  
*History of  
England.*

<sup>1</sup> This contains Ingulphus (with the continuation by Peter of Blois), *Chronica de Mailros*, *Annales Monasterii Burtonensis*, *Historiae Croylandensis Continuatio*.

<sup>2</sup> *Historiae Britannicae, Saxonicae, Anglo-Danicae, Scriptores XV.* 2 vols Oxon. 1691. (For list of authors, see Hardy, *D. C.* i. 884.)

<sup>3</sup> See *ibid.* i. 805.

<sup>4</sup> *Historiae Anglicanae Scriptores varii.* Ed. Joseph Sparke. 1723

<sup>5</sup> Kennet's *Complete History of England*, &c, 3 vols fol. 1706 The first volume contains: (i) 'The History of Britain to William the Conqueror, by Mr. John Milton'; (ii) 'From the Conquest to the End of Edward III, by Samuel Daniel, Esq'; (iii) 'The Reigns of King Richard II., King Henry IV., V., VI., all new writ in Mr. Daniel's method'; (iv) 'The Reign of King Edward IV., by John Habington, Esq.', (v) 'The Lives of King Edward V. and Richard III, by Sir Thomas Moore, translated from the Latin original'; (vi) 'The Life of King Richard III, by George Buck, Esq.'; (vii) 'The Life of King Henry VII, by Francis, Lord Bacon.' The contents of the second volume are (i) 'The History of King Henry VIII, written by the Right Hon. Lord Herbert of Cherbury'; (ii) 'The Life of King Edward VI, by Sir John Hayward'; (iii) 'The Life of Queen Mary, written in Latin by Francis Godwin, Lord Bishop of Hereford, newly translated into English by Mr. J. H.'; (iv) 'The History of Queen Elizabeth, written by William Cambden, Esq, newly done into English'; (v) 'The Annals of King James I, by William Cambden'; (vi) 'The History of King James I, by Arthur Wilson, Esq.' The third volume contains: (i) 'The History



INTRO-  
DUCTORY.*Acta Sanctorum.*

Other and later undertakings, of a more general character, have rendered considerable collateral aid. The great collections by BOLLANDUS<sup>1</sup> and MABILLON<sup>2</sup> of the *Acta Sanctorum* bring before us a long series of eminent characters, many of whom, apart from the legendary element in their history, may be discerned as exercising a foremost influence on their age,—an influence, it may be observed, which is generally representative of popular tendencies.

Migne's  
*Patrologia.*

The equally famous collection by the Abbé MIGNE of the Latin Fathers and other ecclesiastical authors, from the second to the twelfth century, known as the *Patrologia Latina*, includes excellent editions of the principal writers of the early English Church, such as Bede, Alcuin, Anselm, Lanfranc, &c.

*Archaeologia.*

The series known as *Archaeologia*,<sup>3</sup> published under the auspices of the Society of Antiquaries, includes

and Life of King Charles I', (ii) 'The History and Life of Charles II.'; (iii) 'The History and Life of James II', (iv) 'The History and Life of William and Queen Mary', (v) 'The History and Life of William III. All new writ by a learned and impartial hand.'

<sup>1</sup> *Acta Sanctorum quotquot toto orbe coluntur, vel a catholicis scriptoribus celebrantur, ex Latinis et Graecis aliarumque gentium antiquis monumentis collecta, digesta, notisque illustrata ab Jo. Bolland, G. Henschemo, et D. Papebrochia, et alius presbyteris theologicis e societate Jesu, &c.* 53 vols. Fol. Antwerp, 1643-1794 (A list of the principal British saints in this collection is given in Hardy *D. C.* i. 683-6.) This great work is still incomplete, a 'Continuatio' being now in progress after a cessation of publication for forty years. Of this eleven volumes have appeared, the last reaching to the latter part of October. [Students should note that saints are incorporated in the order of their *feasts*: it would consequently be useless to refer to this collection for the life of any saint whose anniversary is celebrated in November or December.]

<sup>2</sup> *Acta Sanctorum Ordinis Sancti Benedicti in Saeculorum Classis distributa collegit Dominus Lucas d'Achery . . . ac cum eo edidit D. Johannes Mabillon, &c.,* Venice, 1733. (Those Lives of English, Scotch, and Irish Saints which Mabillon has printed from manuscripts, are enumerated by Hardy, *D. C.* i. 832-4; the others being excluded.)

<sup>3</sup> For contents, see *ibid.* i. 698-9.

numerous documents and metrical compositions illustrative of English medieval history.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

The valuable collection of *Historical Letters*, edited by SIR HENRY ELLIS, is in three series, each embracing very distinct periods *First Series*: vol. i. Henry V. to Henry VIII.; vol. ii. Henry VIII. to Elizabeth; vol. iii. time of Lord Burghley to that of archbishop Wake. *Second Series*: vol. i. outbreak of Owen Glyndower's Rebellion to time of Wolsey; vol. ii. time of Wolsey to reign of Elizabeth; vol. iii. time of Elizabeth to the Protectorate; vol. iv. time of Charles II. to reign of George II. *Third Series*: vol. i. time of Lanfranc to that of Wolsey; vol. ii. reign of Henry VIII.; vol. iii. Henry VIII. to Elizabeth; vol. iv. Elizabeth to reign of George III.

*Ellis's  
Letters.*

Much, however, of the labour represented by some of the foregoing collections has been superseded by the highly important publications of the Rolls Commission. Early in the present century, the unsatisfactory state of our historical literature was brought under the consideration of the Government, and at a meeting of noblemen and gentlemen held at Spencer House, it was resolved to recommend the publication of a complete collection of the sources of English history from the earliest times to the Reformation. Mr. Henry Petrie, Keeper of the Records in the Tower, was instructed to draw up a plan for the approval of the Government, and was subsequently appointed editor of the series. The method of treatment which he sought to adopt involved enormous labour; for he proposed to give a genuinely critical edition of each author, in which the spurious should be carefully distinguished from the genuine, and the various accretions which had formed round the original text should be systematically pointed out. Such a task, though of the highest value (especially in the

The Rolls  
Series.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

---

case of medieval writers), was also one of great difficulty, and Mr. Petrie's death, before the publication of the first volume, augured most unfavourably for the success of the whole scheme. The undertaking was not, however, allowed to drop, and in November 1856 Mr Stevenson again brought the subject under the consideration of the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury. His representations were by them referred to the Master of the Rolls, Sir John Romilly, who, on January 26, 1857, submitted to their lordships proposals for the publication of a series entitled *Chronicles and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.* These proposals, after due consideration, were adopted by their lordships, and the publication of the proposed series was officially authorised under the following conditions: (1) that the works thus selected should be published without mutilation or abridgment; (2) that the text should be formed on a collation of the best manuscripts; (3) that the editor should give an account of the manuscripts used by him, a brief notice of the era when the author wrote, and an explanation of any chronological difficulties.

Such were the circumstances under which this great series (now generally known as the ROLLS SERIES) was commenced; and it is scarcely an exaggeration to say that it has done more towards promoting an accurate knowledge of our medieval history than all preceding efforts put together. It has not simply rendered accessible to the majority of students a series of valuable texts in a state of accuracy previously unattainable, but it has also been the means of inducing a number of eminent scholars to concentrate their attention on definite and often comparatively little known periods of history,—the prefaces which each editor has thus been

enabled to supply frequently representing a special knowledge of the subject such as no other living writer could lay claim to.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

To the assistance thus given by Government to historical studies must be added the important aid resulting from prior and subsequent enterprise on the part of different societies <sup>1</sup>

HISTORI-  
CAL SO-  
CITIES.

In 1812 the ROXBURGH CLUB<sup>2</sup> was established, for the purpose of reprinting 'rare old tracts or compositions, chiefly poetical.' This was followed in 1823 by the BANNATYNE CLUB,<sup>3</sup> and in 1828 by the MAITLAND CLUB,<sup>4</sup> for 'the printing of works illustrative of the antiquities, literature, and history of Scotland, for private circulation among its members' In 1834 the ABBOTSFORD CLUB<sup>5</sup> was founded at Edinburgh in honour of Sir Walter Scott, having for its object the 'publication of miscellaneous works, illustrative of history, literature, and antiquities.' In the same year was founded the SURTEES SOCIETY,<sup>6</sup> in honour of the historian of the County Palatine of Durham, for the purpose of publishing 'inedited MSS. illustrative of the intellectual, the moral, the religious, and the social condition of those parts of England and Scotland included on the East between the Humber and the Firth of Forth, and on the West between the Mersey and the Clyde—the ancient kingdom of Northumbria.'

Roxburgh,  
Bannatyne  
and Mait-  
land Clubs

Abbotsford  
Club.

Surtees  
Society.

The success of the Surtees Society appears to have

<sup>1</sup> With the exception of the publications of the Camden Society, a few only of the works published by these societies have been described or referred to in the following pages,—a large proportion of their publications being of purely local or antiquarian interest. For complete lists the reader will therefore consult Hardy's *Descriptive Catalogue*, to which the necessary references are given.

<sup>2</sup> For list of publications, see Hardy, *D C* 1. 875-80.

<sup>3</sup> See *ibid.* 1. 702-10.

<sup>4</sup> See *ibid.* 1. 835-40.

<sup>5</sup> See *ibid.* 1. 681-2.

<sup>6</sup> See *ibid.* 1. 893-5.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.*English  
Historical  
Society and  
Camden  
Society*

led to the formation, in 1837, of the ENGLISH HISTORICAL SOCIETY,<sup>1</sup> and in the following year to that of the CAMDEN SOCIETY<sup>2</sup> (so named from the Elizabethan historian), the object of the latter being 'to perpetuate and render accessible whatever is valuable, but at present little known, amongst the materials for the civil, ecclesiastical or literary history of the United Kingdom' The success of the Camden Society has been considerable, and most of its publications will be found referred to in the following pages As, however, the publications of the Rolls Series have, to a great extent, forestalled further services of the kind in connexion with mediæval literature, the labours of the society have for some time past been mainly devoted to 'unpublished material illustrating our national history in the sixteenth, seventeenth, and eighteenth centuries'

*Parker,  
Percy, and  
Shakespeare  
Societies.*

To the example set by the Camden Society may be referred the foundation in 1840 of the PARKER SOCIETY, the PERCY SOCIETY,<sup>3</sup> and the SHAKESPEARE SOCIETY. Of these, the first had for its main object 'the reprinting, without abridgment, alteration, and omission, of the best works of the Fathers and early Writers of the Reformed English Church, published in the period between the accession of king Edward VI and the death of queen Elizabeth'; the labours of the second were to be bestowed on the collection and printing of our ancient ballads; those of the third, on the publication of literature illustrative of the works of our great dramatist.

*Spalding  
Club.*

In the following year was founded the SPALDING CLUB, 'for the printing of the historical, ecclesiastical,

<sup>1</sup> See *ibid* 1. 780<sup>2</sup> See *A Descriptive Catalogue of the First Series of the Works of the Camden Society*. By John Gough Nichols, 2nd edit. (This supplies a brief account of all the publications of the Society down to the year 1872)<sup>3</sup> See Hardy, *D. C.* 1. 860-3.

genealogical, topographical, and literary remains of the north-eastern counties of Scotland'<sup>1</sup>

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

In 1842 were founded the AELFRIC SOCIETY<sup>2</sup> and the CHETHAM SOCIETY;<sup>3</sup> the former 'for the publication of Anglo-Saxon and other literary monuments, both civil and ecclesiastical, tending to illustrate the early state of England;' the latter, for the printing of 'remains, historical and literary, connected with the Palatine Counties of Lancaster and Chester.'

*Aelfric  
Society and  
Chetham  
Society.*

The CAXTON SOCIETY,<sup>4</sup> founded in 1844, was designed for the wider sphere of labour involved in bringing out works 'illustrative of the history and miscellaneous literature of the Middle Ages.' Its publications, though numerous, have been indifferently edited, and are wanting in typographical correctness. The scheme of the ANGLIA CHRISTIANA SOCIETY,<sup>5</sup> put forth in the following year, has proved almost abortive.

*Caxton  
Society.*

The EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY, founded in 1864, has issued yearly a series of carefully printed texts of early English authors. Of these a large proportion have been printed for the first time, and not a few possess considerable value for the historical student.

*Early En-  
glish Text  
Society.*

It now remains briefly to notice the measures that have been taken to render what may be termed the 'documentary evidence' for our history more accessible to the general public.

STATE  
PAPERS.

Before the Restoration of Charles II, the accepted theory with respect to state negotiations with other countries entirely debarred the ordinary man of letters from access to the original documents. The reserve maintained in this respect by the English Government was, indeed, to some extent exceptional, and we find it

<sup>1</sup> See Hardy, *DC* 1. 887-8

<sup>2</sup> See *ibid.* i. 686.

<sup>3</sup> See *ibid.* 1. 743-5. Humphrey Chetham was a distinguished benefactor of learning at Manchester in the seventeenth century.

<sup>4</sup> See *ibid.* 1. 741-2.

<sup>5</sup> See *ibid.* 1. 691.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

unfavourably contrasted by a political writer in the year 1655, with the conduct of the French and the Italians.<sup>1</sup> The very name of 'Treasury,' as applied to the offices in which the state papers were deposited, is expressive of this exclusiveness. The first treaty committed to the press and published by royal authority was that with Spain, in the reign of James I., dated August 18, 1604. The theory, however, may be said to have received its death-blow in the course of the Civil War, when the interest which both the contending parties claimed to take in the highest matters of state made the former secrecy no longer possible. The four treaties of Breda were printed by the order of Charles II. in 1667, and between the Restoration and the Revolution of 1688 all the public treaties to which Great Britain was a party were published by royal authority. At last, in the year 1693, mainly, it would appear, at the suggestion of the eminent statesmen, Somers and Halifax, THOMAS RYMER, in his capacity of historiographer royal, was appointed to transcribe and publish all the leagues, treaties, alliances, capitulations, and confederacies which had, at any time, been made between the Crown of England and other kingdoms. As the result of these instructions there successively appeared, in the early part of the eighteenth century, the volumes of his well-known *Foedera*, the series being continued by his assistant, Robert Sanderson, in the year 1735. The work, as it issued from the press, attracted considerable attention both at home and on the Continent, and, though severely criticised, has generally been admitted to be a collection of the highest value and authority. It commences with the reign of Henry I. (*ann.* 1134), and extends to 1654. A new edition, published at the Hague, 1737-45, is of greatly superior typo-

Rymer's  
*Foedera*

<sup>1</sup> See preface to Sir Dudley Digges' *Complete Ambassador* (1655).

graphical accuracy ; while the utility of the collection to students has been much enhanced by the *Syllabus* of the work by the late Sir T. D. Hardy.<sup>1</sup>

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

The *Rolls of Parliament*, extending from the reign of Edward I. to the first year of the reign of Henry VII, are comprised in six volumes folio, and were published at the expense of the nation pursuant to the order of the House of Peers, March 9, 1767. A general Index to the six volumes was issued in 1832, after sixty-five years had been employed in its formation. 'There can be no doubt,' says Sir T. D. Hardy, 'that these Rolls are a most valuable and authentic source of parliamentary and constitutional history,—indeed, it is questionable whether any nation in Europe possesses any materials for a history of its legislative assemblies at all comparable with these muniments.'

Rolls of  
Parliament

In consequence of representations made to the Crown of the great value and importance of many of the papers and documents in the office of the Keeper of the Records, a Commission was appointed in 1825, and again in 1830, to consider what portions of this invaluable collection might be fitly printed and published with advantage to the public.<sup>2</sup> As the direct result of their decision, eleven quarto volumes were published (1830—

Publications of  
Record Commission.

<sup>1</sup> Vol. i A.D. 1066-1377 ; vol. ii. 1377-1654. A third edition of the *Foedera*, undertaken by Dr Clarke, and subsequently by Messrs Caley and Holbrooke, for the Record Commission, remains incomplete, having been carried no further than the year 1383. Hardy's *Syllabus* gives the references to three editions—the original edition, the so-called Dutch edition published at the Hague, and the Record edition. Students should note in the *Syllabus* (vol. i. pp. i-xiv, vol. ii pp. lv-lxvii) the useful Chronological Tables, giving the Legal, Civil, and Ecclesiastical Years, along with the regnal year of each English sovereign.

<sup>2</sup> The term *Records*, taken in its most general sense, includes : (1) Inrolments which are intended to be official and authentic records of lawful acts made by the proper officer of any court upon rolls, or, in some cases, in official entry-books of the same court ; (2) Memoranda of acts or



INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

*Correspon-  
dence of  
Reign of  
Henry  
VIII.*

Calendars  
of State  
Papers.

1852) of the *Correspondence* of Henry VIII<sup>1</sup> The plan of arrangement was, however, unfortunate, the chronological order being, in the first instance, discarded with the design of grouping the different materials under the respective subjects,—a method which proved so unsatisfactory that it was materially modified in the latter volumes. Of all these letters an abstract (often sufficient for the student's purpose) will be found in the volumes of the Calendar Series edited by the late Prof. Brewer under the title of *Letters and Papers, Foreign and Domestic, of the Reign of Henry VIII., &c.*—a collection which also includes abstracts of a vast number of letters not included in the volumes published by the Commissioners. Respecting the series of which the volumes edited by Mr. Brewer form a part, a few words may be of service.

In the year 1855 the State Paper Office was incorporated with the Public Record Office, and the Master of the Rolls then suggested to the Lords of the Treasury that, notwithstanding the great value, in an historical and constitutional point of view, of the documents thus brought together, their contents were rendered almost useless to the public from the want of proper calendars and indexes. As the result of this representation,

instruments brought into the proper office of any court by parties interested therein (or by their agents) either in the form of rolls or otherwise, and preserved in bundles or on files; (3) Books of entries, containing memoranda of acts, &c, entered by officers of the court; (4) State papers, which form a distinct branch of the records. These originally spring from the Privy Council and Chancery, and now form various branches—the correspondence and other records of the Privy Council, Secretaries of State, and all other public departments. See *Handbook to the Public Records*, by Mr. F. S. Thomas, 1853.

<sup>1</sup> *State Papers, during the Reign of Henry the Eighth with Indices of Persons and Places.* Other publications of the Record Commissioners, such as Domesday Book, Catalogues of the Rolls, &c, have appeared at different times during the present century; of these a complete list can be obtained on application to Messrs. Longmans & Co., or Macmillan & Co.

orders were given for the preparation and publication of a series of *Calendars* of the different divisions under which the collections have been classified (*Domestic, Foreign, Colonial, Ireland*). This series now reaches to nearly a hundred volumes, and the service it has rendered to historical research, whether by facilitating the consultation of the original documents, or, as is often the case, rendering such consultation unnecessary, can hardly be over-rated.<sup>1</sup>

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

In relation to the political and legislative history of the country, the *Parliamentary History*, originally projected by WILLIAM COBBETT (a prominent democratic leader in the early part of the present century), comes down to the year 1803, incorporating or superseding the earlier collections, to which, for most practical purposes, it is to be preferred. As, however, the student who has occasion to consult historical works written in the last century or in the earlier part of the present, will meet with frequent references to the older collections, it may be of service here to specify the most important. They are (1) *The Parliamentary or Constitutional History of England*, originally published in 1752, in eight volumes, and expanded in subsequent editions to twenty-four, (2) Sir Simonds D'Ewes' *Journals of the Parliaments of Queen Elizabeth*, (3) Chandler and Timberland's *Debates*, in twenty-two volumes; (4) *Debates of the House of Commons from 1667 to 1694*, collected by the Honourable Anchtell Grey, in ten volumes, (5) Almon's *Debates*, in twenty-four volumes, (6) Debrett's *Debates*, in sixty-three volumes

SPECIAL  
SUBJECTS.

Cobbett's  
*Parliamentary  
History*.

Earlier  
Collections  
of Parlia-  
mentary  
Debates.

Cobbett's great work was continued under the title of *Parliamentary Debates*, a series generally known by

<sup>1</sup> The Record Office is on the Rolls estate between Chancery Lane and Fetter Lane. access to the papers can be obtained by any respectable person, on entering his name in a book kept for that purpose. There is also no restriction on copying

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.

the name of the printer, HANSARD, which is now an annual publication.

Hansard.

Journals of  
the House  
of Lords  
and of the  
House of  
Commons.

During the present century, the above sources of information have been supplemented by the publication of (1) the *Journals of the House of Lords*, which commence with the year 1509, and are accompanied by separate indexes; (2) the *Journals of the House of Commons*, commencing with the year 1547,—these volumes have likewise separate indexes, and also a general index for the period 1765–1801.

Strick-  
land's  
*Lives of the  
Queens.*

The *Lives of the Queens of England*, by Miss AGNES STRICKLAND, after a brief notice of our British and Saxon queens, commence with the life of Matilda of Flanders, and continue in unbroken succession to the end of the reign of Queen Anne. The series is not distinguished by any high literary excellence, and its value is further diminished by the strong prejudices of the writer, who throughout upholds very extreme theories of ecclesiastical government and the royal prerogative. The volumes embody, however, many interesting extracts, and afford good illustrations of the court life and domestic life of successive periods.

Green's  
*Lives of the  
Princesses.*

A far more solid and judicious performance is that of Mrs EVERETT GREEN,—*The Lives of the Princesses of England*, commencing with the Norman Conquest, and concluding with sketches of the lives of the four daughters of Charles I.

Foss's  
*Lives of the  
Judges.*

The *Lives of the Judges of England*,<sup>1</sup> by FOSS, commence as far back as the time of Herfastus, Chancellor in the year 1068, and extend to the Vice-Chancellorship of Sir William Page Wood in 1853. The series is the result of considerable research, and is executed with commendable fairness and accuracy.

<sup>1</sup> Nine vols. 1848–64. A useful abridgment of the work in one volume, entitled *Biographia Juridica*, was published in 1870.

The *Lives of the Lord Chancellors*, by LORD CAMPBELL (4th edit. 1856-7), commence with the institution of the office in Saxon times, and extend to the accession of George IV. As an historical production, the whole work is wanting in a due sense of the obligations imposed by such a task, is disfigured by unblushing plagiarisms, and, as the writer approaches his own times, by much unscrupulous misrepresentation. It, however, supplies a want; and the literary execution is often characterised by much felicity and graphic power. The *Lives of the Chief Justices* (3 vols., 1849-57), by the same author, includes only the more notable characters who have succeeded to the post, ending with the death of lord Tenterden in 1832. This work is similarly wanting in regard for historical accuracy, but the concluding volume contains information which probably no other living writer could have supplied.

In connexion with our ecclesiastical and university history, Le Neve's *Fasti*<sup>1</sup> is an indispensable work of reference. It consists of complete lists of ecclesiastical dignitaries in England and Wales, and of the chief academic officers of the two universities from the earliest times to the present century, accompanied by concise biographical data.

In connexion with the industrial and commercial progress of the nation, MACPHERSON'S *Annals of Commerce, &c.*<sup>2</sup> was designed to supply a history of the trade

## INTRODUCTORY.

Campbell's  
*Lives of the  
Lord Chan-  
cellors and  
of The  
Lord Chief  
Justices*

Ecclesiasti-  
cal History.  
Le Neve's  
*Fasti*

Works on  
the Na-  
tional In-  
dustry and  
Commerce.

<sup>1</sup> *Fasti Ecclesiae Anglicanae; or, a Calendar of the Principal Dignitaries in England and Wales, and of the chief Officers in the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge from the earliest times to the year 1715.* Compiled by John Le Neve. Corrected and continued from 1715 to the present time by T. Duffus Hardy. 3 vols. Clarendon Press, 1854.

<sup>2</sup> *Annals of Commerce, Manufactures, Fisheries, and Navigation containing the commercial Transactions of the British Empire and other Countries from the earliest Accounts to Jan. 1801.* By David Macpherson. 4 vols. 4to. 1805.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY.Macpher-  
son.

Porter

Leone  
Levi.James's  
Naval  
History.

of the British Empire and other countries from the earliest accounts to January, 1801. It is, however, rather a chronological record of successive transactions, having in relation to the subject more the character of a dry chronicle than of an intelligent and coherent historical survey. PORTER'S *Progress of the Nation*<sup>1</sup> takes up the narrative at the point where it is left by Macpherson, and is a valuable repository of facts, social as well as economical, connected with the national development during the following half-century. Professor LEONE LEVI'S *History of British Commerce and of the Economic Progress of the Nation* (2nd edit. 1880) commences with the year 1763 and terminates in 1878. His treatment of the subject is at once wider in its scope and more philosophic in its conception, dealing with every event which may be supposed to have contributed to or to have influenced the development of commerce, such as inventions and discoveries, free trade, monetary crises, the gold discoveries, &c. The writer also treats occasionally of the conditions of trade in other countries.

For the history of the English navy, the work by JAMES<sup>2</sup> is on the whole the best authority. The introductory chapter furnishes a brief outline of the chief improvements in vessels of war and marine artillery from 1488 to 1792; with the latter date commences the historical narrative, which, in the last edition, is continued to the battle of Navarino in 1827.

The well-known collection entitled the *Harleian*

<sup>1</sup> *The Progress of the Nation in its various social and economical Relations from the beginning of the Nineteenth Century* By G R Porter, 2nd edit 1851.

<sup>2</sup> *The Naval History of Great Britain, from the Declaration of War by France in 1793 to the Accession of George IV.* By William James. A new edition, with Additions and Notes. 6 vols Bentley, 1878.

*Miscellany*<sup>1</sup> consists of selections from the valuable collection of manuscripts formed by the eminent statesman, the first earl of Oxford, and subsequently sold by the family to the British Museum. The contents are too multifarious to admit of being here described, and they remain, unfortunately, as yet, without an index. To the student of English history, the volumes afford material assistance, and in fact there are few branches of research in connexion with which they will not be found of service.

INTRO-  
DUCTORY

The  
*Harleian*  
*Miscellany.*

<sup>1</sup> *The Harleian Miscellany.* Edited by Oldys and Park. 10 vols. 4to. 1808.

## CHAPTER I.

## AUTHORITIES TO A.D. 450.

CHAP  
IThe Classical  
Writers.

(A.) **Contemporary Writers.**—Among these the first place must be assigned to CAESAR (*de Bell. Gall.*) and TACITUS (*Agricolae Vita* and *Annales*, lib. xiv). Traditions respecting the British Isles, and occasional allusions to their history, are to be found scattered in many of the ancient writers, among whom Diodorus Siculus, Strabo, the younger Pliny, Ptolemy the geographer, Dion Cassius, Antoninus, Ammianus Marcellinus, Claudian, the compiler of the *Notitia Utriusque Imperii*, and certain of the Byzantine writers are the principal. A complete list of these authorities, with references to the different passages in each, will be found in Sir T. D. Hardy's *Descriptive Catalogue* (i. cxvi—cxxx). In the *Monumenta Historica Britannica*, the passages are printed in full. On these sources of information, much auxiliary light has been thrown by the discovery of coins and inscriptions belonging to the period, and of these also the *Monumenta* supply a good account.

*Itinerarium*  
of  
Antoninus.

Next to Caesar and Tacitus, the *Itinerarium* of ANTONINUS<sup>1</sup> must be considered as of the most direct value. This work was originally compiled by the order of Julius Caesar, and completed in the reign of Augustus,

<sup>1</sup> *Itinerarium Antonini Augusti et Hierosolymitanum*. Ed. G. Parthey and M. Pinder. Berlin, 1848.

but in the following century the additions and corrections made under M. Aurelius Antoninus, the philosopher, were so considerable that the compilation has generally passed under his name. It forms a fairly complete Itinerary of the whole Empire, in which the principal towns and cross-roads are described by an enumeration of the towns and stations by which they pass, the intermediate distances being given in Roman miles

CHAP.  
I

---

The *Notitia Dignitatum*, or official list of the Empire under the Romans, is the original source from whence we derive our knowledge of the organisation of Britain during the Roman occupation, and the division of the country into five provinces, each ruled by a consul. It was probably compiled about the time of Honorius.<sup>1</sup>

*Notitia  
Dignita-  
tum.*

(B) **Non-contemporary Writers.**—The first native historian is a British ecclesiastic of the name of GILDAS, who lived in the sixth century and wrote in Armorica (circ 550-560) his treatise, *de Excidio Britanniae*,<sup>2</sup> which Galë, its editor in the seventeenth century, somewhat arbitrarily divided into two works, the History and the Epistle. The treatise, however, may fairly be regarded as composed of two distinct portions: (1), from the invasion of Britain by the Romans to the revolt of Maximin at the close of the fourth century; (2), from the close of the fourth century to the writer's own time. Very different views have been taken of the value of Gildas as an author. Dr. Guest, whose opinion must carry the greatest weight, says, 'I am not aware that its genuineness has been questioned by any one whose scholarship or whose judgment is likely to give weight

Gildas.

Contro-  
versy re-  
specting  
this Writer.

<sup>1</sup> *Notitia Dignitatum et Administrationum omnium tam Civilium quam Militarum in Partibus Orientis et Occidentis.* Ed Edwardus Bocking. 2 vols. Bonn, 1839-53. Ed Otto Seeck, Berlin, 1876.

<sup>2</sup> *De Excidio Britanniae Liber Querulus.* Migne, *P. L.* lxi 330. Printed also in Gale's *Scriptores XV* (see *supra*, p. 217); and edited by Mr. Stevenson in 1838 for *E. H. S.*



CHAP.  
I.

---

to his opinion. The two treatises may be considered the safest guides now left us, and he that would write the history of this early period will do well to abandon any speculation which cannot be reconciled with the facts handed down to us by Gildas.' Mr. Thomas Wright, in the *Biographia Britannica Litteraria*, has expressed a doubt whether the work could have been written by a Briton, inasmuch as Gildas dwells with particular severity on the vices of his countrymen and the degeneracy of the British Church. To this Dr. Guest replies, 'Gildas looked upon himself less as a native Briton than as a Roman provincial; not indeed a subject of the Roman Empire, but a participator in Roman civilisation, an upholder of the 'Romania' and opponent of the 'Barbaria' of his country? He refers very pertinently to the denunciations of Salvian as a parallel instance.<sup>1</sup> Sir T. D. Hardy is of opinion that 'Gildas's veracity must rest entirely on his own authority, as none of the contemporary Greek or Roman writers afford it any support, *but rather the reverse.*' The style of the work is singularly verbose and unintelligible, and much of the earlier part is derived from a Latin version of the *Ecclesiastical History* of Eusebius and from the Epistles of St. Jerome. It is to be noted, however, that, notwithstanding undeniable defects, the latter portion of Gildas was unhesitatingly adopted by Bede, and must be regarded as forming the *basis of early English history.*

Bede  
*b* 672  
*d.* 735.

BEDE, who comes next to Gildas, offers in many respects a strong contrast to his predecessor. Educated in the Benedictine monastery of Jarrow, on the banks of the Tyne, he early acquired that deference for the traditions and authority of the Latin Church which is to be

<sup>1</sup> *On the Early English Settlements in South Britain.* By Edwin Guest, Esq. (Printed in *Proceedings of the Archaeological Institute at Salisbury* in 1849.)

recognised throughout his writings. In the composition of his *History*, we learn, from his own statement, that his chief advisers in the work were Albinus, a disciple of Theodorus, archbishop of Canterbury, and abbat of the monastery in that city, and Northelm, afterwards archbishop. The latter, when on a visit to Rome, collected materials which Bede afterwards incorporated in his narrative. Facts such as these are sufficient to shew that the *History* was conceived and written in harmony with the views of the Latin Church, and that we must not expect to find in its pages an altogether impartial account either of the Saxon Conquest or of the older British Christianity. The *Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum*, extends from the date of Cæsar's invasion of Britain to the year 731. It is divided into five books. Of these the first reaches from the invasion of Julius Caesar to the mission of Augustine in 596. The earlier portion is of little value, being compiled chiefly from Orosius, Eutropius, Gildas, and a life of St. Germanus, by Constantius, a priest of the Gallican Church. Orosius was a disciple of St. Augustine of Hippo, and his *History* (the accepted text-book of the Middle Ages), is constructed on the theory embodied in the great work of his master,—the *de Civitate Dei*. Germanus, bishop of Auxerre, lived in the fifth century, and was especially distinguished as an opponent of Pelagianism, a form of doctrine adopted by the British Church, but opposed to the teaching of St. Augustine. The second book gives a narrative of events from the mission of Augustine to the arrival of Paulinus in 633. The remaining books constitute the most valuable portion of the work, as containing facts which rest either on Bede's personal knowledge, or on the statements of others equally well informed. With respect to the title of his work, it is to be remembered that the term 'ecclesiastical' involved

His *His-*  
*toria Ec-*  
*clesiastica.*

CHAP.  
I

---

no such limitations in Bede's time as it would now imply. It was the customary definition of similar historical compositions by Christian writers, from Eusebius downwards. The Church in those times comprised nearly all the higher intelligence and all the learning of the land, and civil functions were frequently discharged by ecclesiastics ; hence Bede's History, so far from being confined to Church matters, contains a large proportion of those secular events which it is most interesting and important for us to know, while the natural candour and honesty of the writer inspire a confidence in his statements, very much beyond what we find ourselves able to accord to the great majority of medieval writers. Every student should endeavour to make himself acquainted with Bede's History, as such a knowledge will not only be found most useful in itself, but in relation to later writers. The facts related by Bede are frequently copied from him, without acknowledgment by subsequent annalists, and it is consequently of considerable importance to know that their authority was Bede, and, in most instances, *Bede alone*. It was owing to a want of a due perception of this fact, that Hume fell into the capital error of adducing in support of Bede's statements the authority of Matthew of Westminster and Henry of Huntingdon ; a misconception similar to that which should lead a writer of the present day to quote, in confirmation of a statement by Whitelock or Narcissus Luttrell respecting an event in the seventeenth century, the authority of lord Macaulay. It is no exaggeration to say, that with respect to the period of English history treated by Bede in the latter portion of his work, three-fourths of our knowledge are derived from him, and that most of what we find on the same subject in later historians is merely a reflection or amplification of what they themselves found in his pages. An excellent edition of

the *Ecclesiastical History* was published at Cambridge in 1722, by professor John Smith. It is a folio volume, and includes Bede's other historical writings, along with the Anglo-Saxon version of his *History* by king Alfred. A more compendious edition of the Latin text was published at Oxford (Clarendon Press), in 1869, edited by Moberly; this embodies the most valuable of Smith's notes, and includes others more fully up to the present standard of historical and textual criticism. An excellent edition of the third and fourth books has also recently (1878) been published by the Cambridge University Press, with notes by professor J E B. Mayor and professor Lumby.

CHAP.

I

---

 Editions of  
Bede by  
Smith,  
Moberly,  
&c

Of scarcely less importance than Bede's *History*, even for the period of which he treats, and of yet greater value in that it extends to a much later period, is the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*,<sup>1</sup> which brings us down to the year 1154. The commencement of this great national work has been ascribed to king Alfred, but Dr Guest is of opinion that 'though it was probably reduced to its present shape in the ninth century, yet many of its entries must have been written long before the age of Bede.' If we adopt this view, a portion of the work becomes *contemporary* evidence for the period of which we are now treating. It has been conjectured that the *Chronicle* was an annual compilation, made at one or more of the chief monasteries in the kingdom, from materials furnished by other monasteries throughout the realm. 'No other nation,' says Mr. Thorpe in the Pre-

*The Anglo  
Saxon  
Chronicle*

<sup>1</sup> Generally cited by Mr Freeman under the title of the '*English Chronicles*,' owing to his repudiation, on very good grounds, of the term 'Anglo-Saxon' in the place of 'English.' As, however, the edition by Mr Thorpe still retains the traditional designation, while that by Mr. Earle is designated as the '*Saxon Chronicles*,' it has been thought better not to deviate here from established usage.

CHAP.  
I

---

face to his edition, 'can produce any history, written in its own vernacular, at all approaching the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, either in antiquity, truthfulness, or extent, the historical books of the Bible alone excepted.' Mr. Freeman's observations on the work (*Norman Conquest*, i 9) should be carefully noted. In addition to its value as a source of historical information, the *Chronicle* may also be regarded as a unique monument of the Anglo-Saxon language, inasmuch as it exhibits the modifications through which the language passed up to the period when its forms developed into what is known as Early English.

Editions of  
the *Anglo-Saxon  
Chronicle*  
by Thorpe  
and Earle

Of the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* there are two excellent editions,—that by Mr. Thorpe,<sup>1</sup> published in the Rolls Series in 1861, and that by professor Earle,<sup>2</sup> published in 1865. Mr. Thorpe's edition comprises the six different texts of six independent manuscripts, ending at different dates and written in different parts of the country. These are printed in parallel columns so that the student is enabled to see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography, whether arising from locality or lapse of time. This edition is accompanied by a new translation of the work, published in a separate volume. Professor Earle's edition gives only two of the texts complete,—that known as (A) being the Parker MS. preserved in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, and that known as (B) or the Laudian, which is in the Bodleian at Oxford, with occasional extracts from the rest. His edition, however, contains an elaborate preface, a large body of useful notes, and a very

<sup>1</sup> *The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, according to the several Original Authorities.* Edited and translated by Benjamin Thorpe 2 vols R. S. 1861

<sup>2</sup> *Two of the Saxon Chronicles Parallel, with Supplementary Extracts from the others.* Edited with Introduction, Notes, and a Glossarial Index. By John Earle, M. A. Oxford, 1865.

full glossarial index While, therefore, Mr. Thorpe's edition provides the more complete apparatus for a critical study of the whole of the texts, professor Earle's supplies the larger amount of general assistance to the student.

CHAP  
I

---

The writer next in order is NENNIUS, of whose personal history nothing is known, and whose *Historia Britonum*<sup>1</sup> has often been attributed to Gildas. His *History*, though written a century later than that of Bede, having been completed in the year 858, stops short of the period reached by the latter writer, by more than forty years It is almost exclusively occupied with a narrative of events occurring in Wales Nennius is deficient in judgment and extremely credulous, but he has preserved to us fragments from earlier treatises which are of considerable importance and interest.

Nennius.

The *Historia Britonum* of GEOFFREY OF MONMOUTH<sup>2</sup> is of still less value as an historical guide Geoffrey wrote during the reign of Stephen, and taking Nennius as the groundwork of what is little better than a romance, passed off his production as a translation of a Breton original. Regarded, however, simply as a source of a large amount of falsification with respect to our early history, the work requires to be noticed. It is from these pages that a considerable proportion of the legendary traditions respecting Brut and king Arthur has found its way into English poetry. Buckle, in his *History of Civilisation* (i, 321-5), has somewhat unjustly selected the *Historia Britonum* as a fair sample of what passed for English history in the twelfth century; but

Geoffrey of  
Monmouth.  
b 1110  
d 1154.

<sup>1</sup> Edited by Rev. J. Stevenson, *E. H. S.* 1838; included also in *M. H. B.*

<sup>2</sup> Edited by Dr. J. A. Giles, 1844. A translation of the work, along with translations of Ethelwerd's Chronicle, Asser's *Life of Alfred*, Gildas, Nennius, and Richard of Cirencester, forms a volume of Bohn's Antiquarian Library, 1848.

## CHAP

## I

Influence  
of his *His-*  
*toria*.

we have satisfactory proof that it was rejected as an impudent fiction by William of Newbury, and it is probable that his estimate of the work was that of the majority of his contemporaries. It was not until *long after the twelfth century* that Geoffrey of Monmouth began to be regarded as a credible historian. But with the sixteenth century it had become almost a heresy to question his authority, and Polydore Vergil, on venturing so to do found himself looked upon as one bereft of his senses. 'Few historical works,' says Sir T. D. Hardy, 'have had a wider circulation than Geoffrey of Monmouth's *Gesta Regum Britanniae*. The alleged history of the origin of the work is seemingly a fabrication; but without entering into the question whether he did in reality translate into Latin a narrative written in the British tongue, it must be admitted that his writings had a great, perhaps an inspiring influence, not only upon the literature of his age, but upon that of succeeding centuries . . . They became the great fountains of romance, out of which the poets of successive generations have drawn a flood of fiction that has left an indelible impress upon our medieval literature. Indeed it is hardly going beyond bounds to say that there is scarcely an European tale of chivalry, down to the sixteenth century, that is not derived, directly or indirectly, from Geoffrey of Monmouth. If he had never written, our literature would not, in all probability, have been graced by the exquisite dramas of "Lear" and "Cymbeline;" and much of the material which he has woven into his work would no doubt have perished.'<sup>1</sup>

The *de*  
*Situ Bri-*  
*tanniae*.

Some mention is here required of another spurious work. For more than a hundred and twenty years, it was almost universally believed that a valuable addition to our knowledge of early Britain had been made by the

<sup>1</sup> Hardy, *D. C.* i. 348-9

discovery and publication (in 1747) of a treatise bearing the title *de Situ Britanniae*. It was brought out by Dr. Charles Julius Bertram, professor of English at Copenhagen, who died in 1765 in his forty-second year. The work, as he represented, was the production of Richard of Cirencester, a monk of St. Peter's in Westminster, who died in the year 1400. Of this writer one work,—the *Speculum Historiale de Gestis Regum Angliae*,—is extant, and though of little value has always been accepted as genuine; it offers, however, the strongest possible contrast to the *de Situ*, which was really a forgery by Bertram. Professor J. E. B. Mayor, in his edition of the *Speculum* for the Rolls Series, has exposed with a masterly hand the absurdity of supposing that the two works could have been the production of the same writer. 'The fabricator,' he says, 'ascribes a mosaic of classical citations to an author who never cites independently even the most current poets, Virgil, Lucan, Statius, and whose reading appears to have been confined to the Vulgate, to medieval theology, chronicles and hagiology, and to the charters of his monastery.' The evidence is as conclusive against the genuineness of the treatise, as against its authenticity. The *de Situ* is unmentioned until the year 1747; the original manuscript could never be produced; the fac-simile which Bertram pretended to have made bears no resemblance to the writing of the fourteenth century, and even on Bertram's own shewing the grounds for attributing the work to Richard of Cirencester are very insufficient. It accordingly becomes necessary to reject the details which some writers of repute, such as Gibbon (*Decline and Fall*, c. 31), Lingard, and Lappenberg, have derived from the *de Situ*, as altogether untrustworthy.<sup>1</sup>

Spurious-  
ness of the  
Work.

<sup>1</sup> See also Wright's *Celt, Roman and Saxon*, Append. pp. 466-9; and Note E to chap. 1. of *The Student's Hume*, editions prior to 1880.



CHAP.  
I

Camden's  
*Britannia*

In the year 1586, CAMDEN, the antiquarian, published the first edition of his *Britannia*, a work that long continued to be a standard authority on all questions connected with Roman Britain. It originally appeared in Latin, forming a small octavo volume of 556 pages; but in the later editions, which are in English, has been extended to four volumes folio. Camden's *Britannia* was followed in 1603 by his *Anglica*, *Normannica*, *Hibernica*, *Cambrica*, a volume of reprints of some of the chief ancient writers on English, Norman, Irish, and Welsh history. Camden's labours have however been, to a great extent, superseded by the publication of the *Monumenta Historica Britannica*,<sup>1</sup> which includes, together with reprints of the more important earlier writers on English history, a large collection of passages from Greek and Roman authors and from ancient inscriptions relating to early Britain.

The *Monu-  
menta His-  
torica Bri-  
tannica*.

Hubner's  
*Inscrip-  
tions*.

The *Inscriptiones Britanniae Christianae* (Berlin, 1876) of professor Hubner contains all Latin inscriptions found down to the ninth century. It should however be observed that it is doubtful whether any of these can rightly be referred to the present period, *i.e.* to the time of Roman Christianity in Britain.

Works on  
Roman,  
British, and  
Saxon An-  
tiquities by  
Horsley,  
Bruce, Al-  
germon  
Herbert,  
and Stuke-  
ley.

**Modern Writers.**—To Camden's *Britannia* succeeded, in the year 1732 the *Britannia Romana* of JOHN HORSLEY. This work is divided into three parts: (i) a narrative of the Roman transactions in Britain; (ii) a collection of Roman inscriptions and sculptures discovered in Britain; (iii) the Roman geography of Britain, after Ptolemy, the *Itinerarium* of Antoninus, the *Notitia*, the anonymous Ravennas, Peutinger's Table, &c. Horsley is generally admitted to have been a careful and judicious anti-

<sup>1</sup> *Monumenta Historica Britannica or, Materials for the History of Britain*. Edited by Hen Petrie and Joh Sharpe, fol. London, 1848. (For list of contents, see Hardy, *D. C.* i. 850.)

quary, but much of his work, like that of Camden, reappears in an improved form in the *Monumenta*. MR. BRUCE'S volume on *The Roman Wall*, originally designed as a popular introduction to Horsley, has expanded in the third edition (1867) into a standard work, with numerous and carefully executed plans and illustrations. It has the merit of being committed to the support of no particular theory. 'Scarcely a statement,' says the compiler, 'is brought forward which is not directly deduced from inscriptions found upon the wall. The legions and auxiliary cohorts are themselves required to describe their movements, to name the camps which they garrisoned, and to specify the works on which they were employed.' In this respect, Mr. Bruce's work differs considerably from that of ALGERNON HERBERT, entitled *Britannia after the Romans* (2 vols, 1836-41). In this the writer deals at length with the mythological element and the legendary history. He identifies Uthyr Pendragon with Jupiter, Prince Arthur with Hercules, relegating nearly all the earlier traditions to the region of the fabulous. He also advances the theory of what he terms 'a Neo-Druidic heresy,' consequent upon the separation of Britain from the Roman Empire. The Druidical antiquities are elaborately illustrated by STUKELEY in his works on Stonehenge and Avebury.<sup>1</sup>

More recent and accurate criticism, however, is to be found in the contributions of Dr. Guest to the elucidation of disputed points in connection with the following subjects: (i) *Fulius Cæsar's Invasion of Britain* (*Archæological Journal*, vol. xxi. 1864); (ii) *The Campaign of Aulus Plautius* (*Ibid*, vol. xxiii. 1866); (iii) *The Boundaries that separated the Welsh and English Rule during the*

Articles by  
Dr. Guest.

Other Authorities for  
Points in  
Dispute.

<sup>1</sup> *Stonehenge, a Temple restored to the British Druids*. By W. Stukeley, fol. 1740 *Abury, a Temple of the British Druids, with some others, described*. By the same, fol. 1743.

CHAP.  
I

---

*Seventy-Five Years which followed the Capture of Bath*, A.D. 577 (*Ibid.* vol. xvi 1859) In the paper already referred to (*supra*, p 234), *On the Early English Settlements*, the same writer approaches the much disputed question respecting the permanence of Roman institutions and Roman influences subsequent to the departure of the legions and the arrival of the Saxons<sup>1</sup> His high authority may be cited in favour of an affirmative conclusion, though his language is carefully qualified. On the same side are to be found Mr. Brewer (*Quar. Rev.*, vol. cxli. 295-301), and MR C. H. PEARSON (*History of England in the Early and Middle Ages*, 2nd edit. i. 83-103). While the same theory is carried to the most extreme conclusions by MR. COOTE, in his work entitled *The Romans of Britain* (1878), where he professes to trace, in the laws and customs of the England of the fifth and sixth centuries, a condition of society 'steeped in Roman institutions and observances.' In the opposed ranks are Lappenberg, professor Stubbs, Freeman, and Wright. The last-named writer in his volume, *The Celt, the Roman, and the Saxon* (3rd edit. 1875), which forms an interesting manual of the antiquities of the period B.C. 55 to A.D. 597, holds that there existed a large Saxon element in the population prior to the invasion under Hengist and Horsa.

As regards the evidence for the existence and characteristic institutions of the ancient British Church, the student is referred to Spelman and Wilkins' *Councils and Ecclesiastical Documents* (ed. Haddan and Stubbs), i. 1-200, where all the really trustworthy data are incorporated.

<sup>1</sup> It may be observed that the decision of this controversy turns, to a great extent, upon the acceptance or non-acceptance of the testimony of Gildas, and his genuineness as a writer.

## CHAPTER II.

## A.D. 450 TO THE NORMAN CONQUEST.

(A.) **Contemporary Writers.**—The guidance of Gildas is lost to us with the year 560 ; Nennius goes no further than the year 688. A few meagre notes, by another hand, afford a kind of continuation of Bede's History down to the year 766. The records of the different *Chronicles* continue, down to the time of Alfred, to be somewhat meagre, but with the commencement of his reign become much fuller. In the eleventh century, slight differences occur in the different texts, and with the reign of Edward the Confessor these become much more marked, indicating the divergencies of political feeling in the different parts of the country where they were compiled. The Abingdon Chronicle, for example, shews decided hostility to earl Godwin, while the Peterborough Chronicle is equally favourable to his cause (see Freeman, *Norman Conquest*, i 442).

CHAP.  
II.

Authorities  
already  
described.

ASSER, a monk of Celtic extraction, belonging to the Asser. monastery of St. David's, who became bishop of Sherborne and died in the year 910, was the adviser and coadjutor of king Alfred in the latter's efforts to revive learning throughout the country. He is generally believed to have been the author of an extant *Life* of ALFRED,<sup>1</sup> consisting of two parts : (1) a chronicle of events

<sup>1</sup> In Camden, *Anglica*, &c., and *M. H. B.* There is also an edition by Wise. Oxford, 1722. *A Chronicon Fani S. Neoti*, an anonymous

CHAP.  
II

---

extending from 851 to 887; (2) personal events respecting Alfred himself, designed as a kind of Appendix. The fact that the latter part was written while Alfred was still in the prime of life, together with certain inconsistencies and improbabilities in the narrative, has inclined some critics (see article by the late Mr. Thomas Wright, in *Biog. Brit. Litteraria*) to conclude that Asser was not the author. Dr Reinhold Pauli, the author of an admirable Life of Alfred, considers however that the work is substantially that of Asser, with interpolations belonging to a much later date. In referring to places by their Latin or Saxon names, the writer often adds the Celtic name, a feature which would seem plainly to prove that he was a Briton by descent. His narrative was probably compiled for the information of a Celtic community, such as we know to have existed at St. David's. Asser is under frequent obligations to the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, of which the earlier part of his work is often a mere transcript.

Ethelwerd

The Latin version of the *Chronicle* of ETHELWERD,<sup>1</sup> written in the tenth century, and treating of English history from the earliest times to the year 975, is interesting as the only production of a Latin historian in an interval of two centuries. Ethelwerd was probably an ealdorman, and he is styled by William of Malmesbury 'the noble and magnificent.' His work is devoid of originality, being little more than a meagre compilation from Bede and the *Saxon Chronicle*; the Latinity is also extremely bad. 'In an historical point of view,' however, Sir T. D. Hardy considers that 'his authority and value as a writer are not to be despised.'

compilation beginning with Cæsar's invasion of Britain and ending A.D. 914, has also been attributed to Asser, but is probably a compilation of the latter part of the twelfth century. (See Hardy, *D. C.* i 577.)

<sup>1</sup> In Savile's *Scriptores post Bedam* (see *supra*, p. 216).

CHAP  
II.The *Em-  
mae En-  
comium*.

For the years from Swegen's invasion of England (1012) to the accession of Hardicanute (1040), we have the *Emmae Encomium*,<sup>1</sup> a narrative in the tone of a panegyrist addressed by an unknown writer, probably a Norman, to Emma of Normandy, the wife of Ethelred II. The writer shows but an imperfect knowledge of contemporary events, and the account is defective in other respects, but it contains many curious particulars, and the style, though inflated, is good for the period.

*Vita Aed-  
uuardi.*

For the life of Edward the Confessor, there is a compilation entitled *Vita Aeduardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit*<sup>2</sup> It is by an unknown author, but one who was unquestionably a contemporary, and wrote, it is conjectured, between the years 1066 and 1074, when the sufferings inflicted by the Norman conquerors were at their height. The treatise is of considerable value, as it contains facts not found elsewhere; it also frequently differs materially from other accounts.

*Lives of  
Wilfrid and  
St Cuth-  
bert.*

The biographical literature of this period compensates, indeed, to some extent for the scantiness of the historical. Among its most favourable specimens are the *Life* of St. CUTHBERT, by Bede, and another entitled, *Historia de S. Cuthberto*, printed in Twysden (*Decem Scriptt.* pp. 67-76) and also included in the edition of the works of Simeon of Durham, published by the Surtees Society. Bede, however, was indebted for the materials of his *Life*, to earlier writers, and it is to the *Life* of WILFRID, bishop of York, by Eddius, that Sir T. D. Hardy accordingly assigns the distinction of being 'the first independent piece of genuine biography in our literature.' 'The style,' he says, 'is somewhat diffuse, and the facts are com-

<sup>1</sup> *Emmae Anglorum Reginae, Ricardi I. Ducis Normannorum Filiae, Encomium; incerto Auctore, sed coaetaneo.* Migne, P. L. cxli.

<sup>2</sup> See *Lives of Edward the Confessor.* Edited by Henry Richards Luard, M A., R. S. 1853.

CHAP.  
II

paratively few, yet his narrative furnishes a valuable commentary upon the corresponding passages in Bede's history, and throws considerable light upon what would otherwise have remained in obscurity' (*D. C.* i. 396-8).

Aldhelm.  
b 656  
d 709.

The *Life* of ALDHELM of Sherborne, by Faricius,<sup>1</sup> together with the *Letters* and *Poems* of Aldhelm himself, are of considerable value. His position, as the earliest English scholar, and his labours in promoting the work of education in Wessex, impart an exceptional interest to his history. The biography by Faricius was compiled about the beginning of the eleventh century. Faricius was a Tuscan by birth, and a monk of the monastery of Malmesbury, from whence he was promoted to be abbat of Abingdon. The reputation that he there acquired by the austerity of his discipline made him unpopular with the secular clergy, and prevented his election to the archbishopric of Canterbury. His account of Aldhelm is to some extent superseded by that given by William of Malmesbury in the fifth book of his *Gesta Pontificum*. William made the life by Faricius the basis of his own account, but added extracts from Aldhelm's writings, and also availed himself of materials afforded by local tradition.

Alcuin.  
b 725-  
d 804.

The *Life* of ALCUIN, by an anonymous writer,<sup>2</sup> is of much inferior merit when compared with the foregoing biographies, but Alcuin's *Letters*<sup>3</sup> are of great importance from the illustration they afford of the relations between England and Frankland in the eighth and ninth centuries. His poetical history of the bishops and archbishops of York<sup>4</sup> is also of considerable value as a record of events

The  
Church of  
York.

<sup>1</sup> *Vita Aldhelmi, auctore Faricio Monacho Malmesburiensi*. Edited by J. A. Giles *Cant. S.* 1854. Printed also in Migne, *P. L.* lxxxix., along with Aldhelm's works.

<sup>2</sup> Migne, *ibid.* c. 90-106.

<sup>3</sup> *Id.*, *ibid.* c. 135-514.

<sup>4</sup> Migne, *ibid.* ci. 814-46.

in connexion with the chief centre of English learning at this period ; other material relating to the same subject will be found in the collection by canon Raine.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
II.

Two *Lives* of St DUNSTAN,<sup>2</sup> the one by Adelard, the other probably by Ebrachar, are of importance as sources of information respecting English history in the latter half of the tenth century, for which indeed, if we except the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, they constitute almost the only contemporary materials

St Dun-  
stan.  
b 925.  
d 988.

(B.) **Non-contemporary Writers.** The *Chronicle* of MARIANUS SCOTUS,<sup>3</sup> who wrote in the eleventh century, is a work of no authority, being, as regards English history, nothing more than a compilation from Bede and the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, extending to the year 1083. The manuscripts to which he had recourse were however so good, that his text has occasionally served to correct that of the sources from which he borrowed. With thirteenth and fourteenth century writers he appears to have passed for an original authority.

Marianus  
Scotus.  
b 1028.  
d. 1086.

The *History of the Kings of England*, (616-1130) by SIMEON OF DURHAM,<sup>4</sup> written in the twelfth century, is especially valuable in connexion with events in Northumbria, for which, in the tenth century, he is indeed the highest authority. He gives an account of the rise of Christianity in the North which, though largely derived from Bede's *History*, and *Life of St. Cuthbert*, contains evidence, particularly towards the close of the third book, of being derived also from other sources, and furnishes many important illustrations of the secular as

Simeon of  
Durham  
d. 1130.

<sup>1</sup> *The Historians of the Church of York, and its Archbishops.* Vol. i. Edited by James Raine, M A., R. S. 1879

<sup>2</sup> *Memorials of Saint Dunstan, Archbishop of Canterbury.* Edited by William Stubbs, M A., R. S. 1874.

<sup>3</sup> Migne, P. L. cxlvii 1844.

<sup>4</sup> *Symeonis Dunelmensis Opera et Collectanea.* Edited by J. H. Hinde. S. S. 1868.



CHAP.  
IIHenry of  
Hunting-  
don  
d' after  
1154.

well as of the ecclesiastical affairs of northern Eng-  
land.

HENRY, archdeacon of HUNTINGDON, who was connected with the monastic community at Ramsey in that shire, completed in the twelfth century, a history of England up to the end of the reign of Stephen.<sup>1</sup> Here again, Bede and the Chronicle form the staple of the work; but though little more than a compilation, it possesses some value as preserving to us many ballads and early traditions which would otherwise have been lost. It is also noticeable as the production of a secular clergyman at a time when monks were almost the only writers.<sup>2</sup> As an independent authority, Henry of Huntingdon has less claim upon our notice, and Mr. Freeman observes (*Norman Conquest*, iv. 3, note) that he diminishes in importance as he gets nearer to his own time. This may in some measure be accounted for by the inferiority of his means of observation in a provincial diocese when compared with those of a resident at one of the great monasteries.

Ralph of  
Diceto.

The *Abbreviationes Chronicorum*, by RALPH OF DICE TO,<sup>3</sup> a canon of the Church in the twelfth century, and archdeacon of Middlesex, is also noticeable as written by a secular, but is of small value. The Chronicle of PETER LANGTOFT,<sup>4</sup> composed in French verse, and ex-

Peter  
Langtoft.

<sup>1</sup> *Henrici Archidiaconi Huntindunensis Historia Anglorum*: A.C. 55-1154. In eight Books. ed. Thomas Arnold. R. S. 1879.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Earle observes. 'He was an amateur and an antiquarian. To him we owe the earliest mention of Stonehenge. He had a great fondness for the old Saxon Chronicles, which in his day were already something curious and out of date, although his Annals close at the same date as E. viz. 1154.' Pref. to *Parallel Chronicles*, p. lxi.

<sup>3</sup> *Radulphi de Diceto Decani Lundeniensi Opera Historica*. Edited by William Stubbs, M.A. 2 vols. R. S. 1876.

<sup>4</sup> *The Chronicle of Pierre Langtoft, in French Verse, from the earliest Period to the Death of Edward I.* Edited by Thomas Wright, M.A. 2 vols. R. S. 1866-8.

tending from the time of Cadwallader to the reign of Edward II., is of even less merit.

CHAP  
II

In WILLIAM OF MALMESBURY we are presented, for the first time after a lapse of four centuries, with a historian who may compare with Bede, and who aspires to higher functions than those of the mere annalist. The offspring of a Norman father and an English mother, he represents the fusion of the two races, though his sympathies are manifestly on the side of the conquerors. William is an eminently favourable example of the Benedictine scholar, interpenetrated with the learning of his order, but with sympathies and an intelligence that lift him far above the ordinary level of monastic writers. By the general consent of scholars, from Leland to Mr. Freeman, he takes a foremost place among the authorities for the Anglo-Norman period of our history. 'Considering the age in which this author lived,' says Sir T. D. Hardy, 'the sources whence he has drawn his materials are surprisingly numerous. In many instances, it is difficult to name his authorities. Little seems to have escaped him, and his skill and judgment in arranging his materials keep such even pace with his industry, that more information is perhaps to be gathered from him than from all the writers who preceded him.'<sup>1</sup> His most important work is his *Gesta Regum Anglorum*, extending from A.D. 449 to the 28th year of Henry I. The text of this, as given in Savile's *Scriptores*, 'abounds,' according to the same critic, 'with gross errors;' the best edition is that which Sir T. D. Hardy himself edited for the English Historical Society, 1840, along with another work by William, known as the *Historia Novella*.<sup>2</sup> A third work from the same pen is the *de Gestis Pontificum*,<sup>3</sup> a history of English bishops and of the principal

William of  
Malmes-  
bury  
b. 1095.  
d. 1142.

<sup>1</sup> Hardy, *D. C.* ii. xlvii.

<sup>2</sup> See *infra*, p. 260.

<sup>3</sup> *Willelmi Malmesburiensis Monachi de Gestis Pontificum Anglorum Libri Quinque*. Edited from William of Malmesbury's autograph MS., by

CHAP.  
II

English monasteries from the mission of Augustine to the year 1123. This has been edited for the Rolls Series by Mr N. Hamilton, who in his preface describes it as 'the foundation of the early ecclesiastical history of England on which all writers have chiefly relied.'

Florence of  
Worcester.  
d. 1118.

FLORENCE OF WORCESTER, whose *Chronicon*<sup>1</sup> reaches to the year 1116, and is in the earlier part little better than a compilation from the Saxon Chronicle and Marianus Scotus, begins with the year 1030 to be of greater value and to assume the character of an independent authority. His comments are sensible and judicious, and his materials appear to have been selected with considerable care. Mr. Freeman, in the course of his History, bears frequent testimony to this writer's discrimination and good sense.

Lives of  
Edward  
the Con-  
fessor.

Besides the contemporary Life of Edward the Confessor, there is a *Life* by Ailred or ETHELRED OF RIEVAULX,<sup>2</sup> an abbat of the twelfth century, who compiled his work from that of OSBERT DE CLARE, prior of Westminster. When Edward's body was exhumed in 1066 by the Conqueror, Osbert was sent to Rome to obtain permission to establish a festival in commemoration of the deceased monarch, and he then composed the work which forms the basis of the *Life* by Ethelred. These circumstances enable us to understand how it was that so much legendary matter became interwoven with Edward's history, and accounts also for the highly encomiastic character of the work. Osbert's work remains unprinted, but some of his letters, in which N. E. S. A. Hamilton, Esq., *R. S.* 1870; as edited by Savile, Mr. Hamilton says the text 'is full of errors, amounting at times to downright unintelligibility.'

<sup>1</sup> *Florentii Wigornensis Monachi Chronicon ex Chronicis, ab Adventu Hengesti et Horse in Britanniam usque ad ann. 1117.* Edited by Benjamin Thorpe 2 vols. *E. H. S.* 1848.

<sup>2</sup> Printed in the *Decem Scriptores* (see *supra*, p. 216).

he insists strongly on Edward's merits and claims to canonisation, were published in 1846<sup>1</sup> Ethelred's *Life* became in turn the basis of a metrical *Life*, composed in the year 1245, on the occasion of the restoration of the church of Westminster, and written in Norman French. This is printed in the volume, *Lives of Edward the Confessor*, edited for the Rolls Series by Mr. Luard. Although these three Lives (especially the metrical life) are of but little historical value, they afford an excellent illustration of the manner in which the legendary element often finds its way into genuine history and of the motives which lead to its fabrication. Mr. Freeman, in his *Norman Conquest* (Vol ii Append note B), has traced with great clearness this 'gradual development of popular reverence for King Edward, which at last ended in his being acknowledged the patron Saint of England'

The Penitential System, instituted by the Church at this period, may be studied in the *Poenitentiale* attributed to THEODORUS, archbishop of Canterbury (A.D. 668-690) and printed in *Councils and Ecclesiastical Documents* (ed. Haddan and Stubbs) iii. 177-204, in the *Poenitentiale* of Bede (*ib.* 326-334), and in that of Egbert (*ib.* 418-430). All these collections, while illustrating the introduction of a new conception of social relations, point, at the same time, to an extremely low standard of morality as prevailing among all classes.

The *Lives of St. Dunstan*,<sup>2</sup> by Osbern and Eadmer exemplify, like the later Lives of Edward the Confessor, the tendency among biographers of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries to invent statements regarding the career of past prominent actors (especially saints), for a

Peniten-  
tials.

*Lives of St.  
Dunstan.*

<sup>1</sup> *Osberti de Clara Epistolae*. Edited by R. Anstruther. Bruxelles, 1846.

<sup>2</sup> *Memorials of St. Dunstan, Archbishop of Canterbury*. Edited from various MSS, by William Stubbs, M.A. R. S. 1874.

CHAP  
II

---

definite *political purpose*. The criticism on these Lives in professor Stubbs's preface is highly important. He repudiates altogether the stories which we meet with *for the first time* in the above biographers ('the earlier of whom wrote nearly a century and a half after the death of Edwy,') of the cruelties practised on the monarch and his queen, and Dunstan's complicity therein. He also dismisses, as equally baseless, the charge brought against Dunstan of having persecuted the married clergy. He dissents entirely from the parallel instituted by Milman (*Latin Christianity*, bk. vii c. i.) between Dunstan and Hildebrand, and maintains that Osbern and Eadmer, in attributing to the English prelate characteristics like those of the great eleventh-century pope, were guilty of a gross anachronism, conceived for the purpose of bringing their subject up to their own monastic ideal.

Early En-  
glish Legis-  
lation.

Specimens of *laws* enacted from the reign of Ethelbert to that of Edward the Confessor, which serve to illustrate the administration of justice in England before the Conquest, are given in Stubbs's *Documents illustrative of English History*, (pp 59-75). The distinction there pointed out between those laws which 'are mainly of the nature of amendments of custom,' and those which 'aspire to the character of codes' is not unimportant. It is however to the former class that the laws of Edgar belong, although it is in these that, in professor Stubbs's opinion, 'the true mark of Dunstan's mind must be looked for.' For the main features of Dunstan's influence in this respect, see the same writer's Preface to *Memorials of St. Dunstan* (p. cvi) In the *Ancient Laws and Institutes of England*, edited for the Record Commissioners by Mr. Benjamin Thorpe (2 vols.), a complete collection of the laws of this period is given, comprising those of the Anglo-Saxon kings, from Ethelbert to Cnut, with a translation of the Saxon text, the laws called Edward

the Confessor's, those of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry I.; the above volumes also contain *Monumenta Ecclesiastica Angliana* from the seventh to the tenth century, &c.

CHAP.  
II

*Spurious Authority.*—The *Historia Monasterii Croylandensis* attributed to Ingulphus, a writer of the eleventh century, was for a long time accepted as genuine and also regarded as one of the most valuable sources of historical information, inasmuch as it includes in addition to the history of the monastery much that relates to the kingdom at large. In proportion to the estimation in which this work was held, was the amount of error of which it was productive<sup>1</sup> It has, however, been conclusively proved to be a composition of the thirteenth or fourteenth century; the arguments and facts which support such a conclusion are given by Mr. Riley in the *Archaeological Journal* (i. 32-43; ii. 114-133), and by Sir T. D. Hardy in the *Descriptive Catalogue* (ii 62-64).

The  
Pseudo-  
Ingulphus.

(C.) *Modern Writers.*—The *History of the English Commonwealth*, by Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE, and MR. J. M. KEMBLE'S *Saxons in England* afford much valuable illustration of this period, and the chapters treating of special or still controverted questions, such as the Mark, the Bretwaldas, the constitution of the Witenagemot, &c., should be studied by those who are desirous of fully investigating these subjects. Generally speaking, however, all the more important and most fully ascertained conclusions of these two writers will be found reproduced and more accurately stated in the two standard works on the period, the *Constitutional History* (chaps. i.-ix.) of professor STUBBS, and the *Norman Conquest* (chaps. i. ii. iii. v. and vi.-x.) of MR. FREEMAN. The first

Palgrave,  
Kemble,  
Stubbs,  
Freeman,  
Waitz.

<sup>1</sup> The credit given to 'Ingulphus' by Thierry in his *Histoire de la Conquête d'Angleterre*, appears to have been a frequent cause of misconception in his treatment of the subject.

CHAP.  
II.

---

volume of WAITZ'S *Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte*, treating of *Die Verfassung des deutschen Volks vor der Zeit des grossen Wanderung*, offers an excellent introduction to professor Stubbs's volume

Worsaae's  
*Danes and Nor-  
wegians.*

The work of WORSAAE<sup>1</sup> supplies a valuable collection of facts which tend to prove the permanence of the results that followed upon the Danish conquest and occupation. The writer, himself an eminent Danish antiquary, pushes his conclusions, however, beyond reasonable limits, maintaining that the combined effects of the Danish and Norman conquests were such as almost entirely to substitute Scandinavian for Anglo-Saxon influences, while the representatives of the latter race, he holds, sank entirely, 'leaving only a part of their civilisation and their institutions to their successors in dominion.'

Mr Free-  
man's  
*Norman  
Conquest.*

The merits of MR. FREEMAN'S *History of the Norman Conquest* have been so generally recognised that it is unnecessary here any further to insist upon them. It may, however, be observed that the first two volumes are held by competent judges to have been conceived in a spirit of too unreserved admiration of the early English character and institutions. He has failed, it has been said, sufficiently to recognise the very defective sense of nationality which prevailed down to the time of Henry of Anjou. The 'Imperialism' which he claims for the kings of Wessex or of England does not appear to be supported by adequate evidence. His praise of earl Godwine is overwrought, and he fails to allow sufficient weight to the facts which militate against that statesman's character. His view of the Commendation of Scotland to Eadward in 924 should be compared with Mr. Burton's comments in his *History of Scotland*, i. 356-9

<sup>1</sup> *An Account of the Danes and Norwegians in England, Scotland, and Ireland.* By J. J. A. Worsaae. 1852.

Professor BRIGHT'S *Early English Church History* is a careful and valuable study of events from the mission of Augustine to the death of Wilfrid in 709. MILMAN'S *Latin Christianity* (bk. iv. c. 4; bk. v. c. 10) supplies many interesting facts from the latter date to the death of Alfred. Dean CHURCH'S *Beginning of the Middle Ages* furnishes a very useful outline which serves to illustrate the affinities of English history to that of the Continent up to the tenth century.

CHAP  
II

Professor  
Bright,  
Milman,  
and Dean  
Church.

The *Dictionary of Christian Biography*<sup>1</sup> includes many excellent and careful biographies of the chief characters both in the political and ecclesiastical world in England down to the ninth century. To this may be added, for the tenth and eleventh centuries, the *Biographia Britannica Litteraria* (Anglo-Saxon Period, 1846) by THOMAS WRIGHT.

*Dictionary  
of Chris-  
tian Bio-  
graphy*

Wright's  
*Biographia*.

The *Select Charters and other Illustrations of English Constitutional History from the earliest Times to the Reign of Edward I.*, edited by professor Stubbs (Clarendon Press, 1870), form a volume best described in the editor's own words as 'an easily handled repertory of the *Origines* of English Constitutional History,' 'containing every constitutional document of importance during the period it covers.' Portions of the *Introductory Sketch* and interspersed criticism have since been given more fully in the same author's *Constitutional History*, but the volume still retains most of its original value.

Stubbs's  
*Select  
Charters*.

The standard work of reference for the history of English and Welsh monastic foundations, from their first institution to their dissolution in the sixteenth century, is Dugdale's *Monasticon*.<sup>2</sup>

Dugdale's  
*Monas-  
ticon*.

<sup>1</sup> *A Dictionary of Christian Biography, Literature, Sects, and Doctrines*. Edited by William Smith, D.C.L., and Henry Wace, M.A. 4 vols. 1877-87.

<sup>2</sup> *Monasticon Anglicanum*. By Sir William Dugdale. Edited by Caley, Bandinel, and Ellis. 6 vols. in eight parts. 1817-30.



## CHAPTER III.

FROM THE NORMAN CONQUEST TO THE ACCESSION  
OF KING JOHN.CHAP.  
IIIDudo of  
St Quentin.William of  
Jumièges.The *Roman  
de Rou.*

(A) **Authorities for Norman History.**—The study of Norman history, so far as necessary to elucidate our own, should be commenced with the reign of Edward the Confessor. The sources of information are not numerous, almost the only authority for the tenth century being the *de Gestis Ducum Normanniae* by DUDO, dean of St. Quentin in the first quarter of the eleventh century, —‘one of the earliest,’ says Mr. Freeman, ‘of a very bad class of writers, those who were employed, on account of their supposed eloquence, to write histories which were intended only as panegyrics of their patrons.’ Although the work is almost wholly untrustworthy, it was the source from whence WILLIAM OF JUMIEGES, surnamed Calculus, derived much of the material for his *Historiae Normannorum*. William himself, whom Palgrave styles ‘the perplexed and perplexing,’ becomes a contemporary authority with the Conquest. Although obscure and involved as a writer, he is free from prejudice, and Mr. Freeman pronounces his work to be one of great value. It was from the work of William, that Wace, a canon of Bayeux in the twelfth century, compiled his poetical history of the Conquest, known as the *Roman de Rou*.

A yet more important work is the *Gesta Willelmi* of WILLIAM OF POITIERS, it narrates the career of the

Conqueror from the year 1036 to 1067, and is the chief source of information on the subject. William was chaplain to the Conqueror, and his work is conceived in a spirit of determined vindication of his hero and of depreciation of the English. For the events immediately succeeding the Battle of Hastings the narrative is of especial value. Both William of Jumièges and William of Poitiers have been printed by Maseres in his selection from Duchesne's *Historiae Normannorum Scriptores*, published in 1808.

CHAP  
III.

William of  
Poitiers.  
*b* 1020.  
*d* circ.  
1089.

The Bayeux Tapestry<sup>1</sup> and the metrical composition of Guy, bishop of Amiens,<sup>2</sup> are specially to be consulted by those who wish to study all the circumstances of the great battle.

The  
Bayeux  
Tapestry.  
Guy of  
Amiens.

(B) Contemporary Writers on English History.—Of the different versions of the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, the Cottonian (Tib. A. vi) has already ended with the year 975, the Cottonian (Domit A viii. 2) with the year 1056, the Abingdon, with the battle of Stamford Bridge; the Benet (or Corpus Christi) Chronicle terminates with the year 1070; the Cottonian (Tib B iv) with the year 1079; the Bodleian or Peterborough Chronicle carries us to the end of the reign of Stephen. As, however, the literary influences of the court of Henry Beauclerc began to spread through the kingdom, the *Chronicle* disappeared amid the change that came over the monastic foundations; it died out before Norman learning and the modified conditions which now surrounded alike the monk, the ecclesiastic, and the scholar.

Anglo-  
Saxon  
Chronicle.

The *Historia Novorum* by EADMER,<sup>3</sup> a monk of Christchurch, Canterbury, is the best authority in rela-

Eadmer,  
*d.* 1134.

<sup>1</sup> For a full criticism on the authority of the Bayeux Tapestry, see Freeman's *Norman Conquest*, vol. iii Append A.

<sup>2</sup> *Carmen de Bello Hastingsensi* Printed in *M. H. B.*; and also in Giles, *Scriptores Rerum Gestarum Willelmi Conquestoris*.

<sup>3</sup> Printed in Migne, *P. L.* clx.

CHAP  
III.

---

tion to the public careers of Lanfranc and Anselm, and the controversy respecting investitures; it also gives other important facts in the reign of William Rufus.

Geoffrey  
Gaimar.

About the year 1140, GEOFFREY GAIMAR composed in French verse his *Histoire des Angles*. The work commences with the arrival of Cerdic, but prior to the Norman Conquest is little more than a very incomplete and faulty narrative strung together from the Anglo-Saxon Chronicles. After the invasion, Gaimar appears to have drawn from some source common to himself and Florence of Worcester. His account of the death of William Rufus, with which event the *History* ends, is particularly circumstantial.

Ordericus  
Vitalis  
b. 1075,  
d. circ. 1144

ORDERICUS VITALIS, an Englishman by birth, but educated as a monk in Normandy, compiled, between the years 1130 and 1141, an *Ecclesiastical History* extending to the latter year. With the Conquest, the work becomes one of primary importance, especially in connection with events in Normandy. The spirit in which Orderic writes is highly to be commended, although his style and method are vicious and faulty in the extreme. A good criticism of his merits as an historian will be found in the fifth chapter of dean Church's *Life of Anselm* (1870). The best edition is that published by Le Prevost, 1838-40.

William of  
Malmes-  
bury.

The work of WILLIAM OF MALMESBURY already referred to, the *Historia Novella*, or 'New History,' was compiled by him at the request of Robert, Earl of Gloucester, a natural son of Henry I., and Stephen's chief antagonist. It deals with the period 1126-1142, and, as might be anticipated, is altogether favourable to the party of Matilda. The *Gesta Stephani*,<sup>1</sup> on the other hand, written in all probability by one of Stephen's own

<sup>1</sup> Edited for *E. H. S.* by Dr R. C. Sewell, 1845. The *Gesta Stephani* and the *Historia Novella* illustrate each other in a remarkable manner, and

clerks, is a spirited narrative conceived as a vindication of Stephen. It terminates with the arrival of Henry of Anjou in England in 1152, and though the single existing manuscript has reached us in a defective condition, some parts being altogether wanting, while the end is lost, the work is valuable from its graphic description of many of the incidents of the civil war, and the picture it supplies of the prevalent anarchy and suffering. Amid the confusion that prevailed and the vacillation of the contending parties, it is not difficult to discern that principles as well as the interests of rival houses were at stake. The influence of archbishop Theobald, the patron of Thomas Becket, was honourably exerted in the main to enlist the efforts of the Church in the cause of peace.

CHAP  
III

---

RICHARD and JOHN, both priors of the monastery at HEXHAM,<sup>1</sup> are other authorities for the same reign, in connexion with which the work of the former gives us important information. Richard's narrative concludes with the Battle of the Standard, of which he supplies an excellent account. Another account of the battle is that of Aethelred or Ailred,<sup>2</sup> abbat of the Cistercian monastery at Rievaulx, in Yorkshire. Aethelred gives fewer details, but professes to report the actual speeches of the leaders on either side before the engagement.

The  
Hexham  
Chronicles.

Aethelred  
of Rie-  
vaulx.

The *Chronica of Melrose*,<sup>3</sup> is, in the earlier part, a somewhat dry epitome of the foregoing northern writers, but for the period 1140 to 1270 it assumes considerable value as an independent authority. 'The numerous and progressive variations in the handwriting,' says the

Chronicles  
of Melrose  
and Lan-  
cost.

should be read together page by page. A good outline of the contents of the former will be found in Gairdner's *Early Chronicles of England*, pp. 88-98.

<sup>1</sup> Both in the *Decem Scriptores*, see *supra*, p. 216.

<sup>2</sup> *De Bello Standardi*; in Migne, *P. L.* cxcv. 702-12.

<sup>3</sup> *Chronica de Mailros*. Edited by J. Stevenson. *Bann. C.* 1835.

CHAP.  
III

---

editor, 'show that it is very frequently, if not always, contemporaneous.' It became, in turn, the source from whence not a few other monastic chronicles, and especially that known as the *Chronica de Lanercost*,<sup>1</sup> incorporated some of their most interesting facts. The last-named work is a well-known and amusing record, chiefly of events in Border history; its name, however, would seem to be a misnomer, the internal evidence leading us rather to conclude that it was the composition of a member of the Franciscan community in Carlisle.

William of  
Newbury  
b 1136.  
d 1208.

The three chief authorities for the reign of Henry II. are WILLIAM OF NEWBURY,<sup>2</sup> the *Gesta Regis Henrici Secundi*, commonly ascribed to Benedict of Peterborough, and ROGER HOVEDEN. The *Historia Rerum Anglicarum* of the first-named writer is in five books, extending from the year 1066 to 1198. William's style is clear and sober, and his appreciation of the comparative value of facts is sound. His account of the disputes between the king and Becket is singularly free from prejudice. His characters are drawn with much fidelity and discrimination, and he has preserved many interesting anecdotes relating to distinguished persons. The work ascribed to Benedict of Peterborough is of no less merit and is characterised by professor Stubbs as 'indisputably the most important chronicle of the time' He has, however, clearly shewn that Benedict was certainly *not the author*,<sup>3</sup> and he inclines to the belief that it was the production of Richard Fitz-Neal, the treasurer of Henry II., and author of the celebrated treatise known as the

The *Gesta  
Regis  
Henrici*.

<sup>1</sup> *Historia de Gestis Regum Britannorum et Anglorum a Cassibellano ad annum 20 Edw. 3* (1346) *per quendam Canonicum de Lanercost in comitatu Cumbriae*. Edited by J. Stevenson. 2 vols. Bann. C. 1839.

<sup>2</sup> Edited for E. H. S. by Mr. Hans Hamilton. 2 vols. 1856

<sup>3</sup> See his preface to his edition of this author (*R. S.* 1867) pp. lxx. lxxi.; and Hardy, *D. C.* 11. 254.

*Dialogus de Scaccario*. The greater part of the *Gesta* was reproduced by ROGER HOVEDEN in his *Chronica*,<sup>1</sup> a series of annals extending from A.D. 732 to 1201. Of this series, the portion from the commencement to the year 1169 appears to be mainly a compilation, though one of considerable value. The portion which corresponds with the *Gesta* is that included between the years 1170 and 1192, and the internal evidence serves to shew that the two writers had access to the same materials, but treated them in a somewhat different fashion. From 1192 to 1201 the *Chronica* may be regarded as wholly Hoveden's work, and constitute an authority for that period of the highest importance. 'It is in Hoveden,' says professor Stubbs, 'that we have the full harvest of the labours of the Northumbrian historians. . . . Studied as the primary authority on the history of a reign of primary importance, this work affords material for discussion of the most interesting kind on an immense variety of points, constitutional and political'

CHAP  
III  
—  
Roger  
Hoveden  
d. circ.  
1201.

The *Imagines Historiarum* of RALPH OF DICETO<sup>2</sup> are also of considerable value for the reigns of Henry II. and Richard, the position occupied by the writer for more than fifty years as archdeacon of Middlesex and dean of St. Paul's having given him access to the best information. 'Well illustrated,' says the same authority, 'as the reigns of Henry II. and Richard are, without Ralph de Diceto one side of their character would be

Ralph of  
Diceto.  
d. circ  
1203.

<sup>1</sup> *Chronica Magistri Rogeri de Hovedenz.* 4 vols. Edited by William Stubbs. R. S. 1868-71.

<sup>2</sup> *Radulfi de Diceto Decani Londomensis Opera Historica.* Edited by William Stubbs 2 vols R. S. 1876. This includes also the *Abbreviationes Chronicorum* by the same writer, a work of comparatively slight value. As regards the use of the term 'Chronicle' by writers in these times, the observation of Professor Stubbs is to be noted: 'Chronicles were, as Ralph de Diceto had read in Cassiodorus, *Imagines Historiarum*, —the outlines of histories.' Pref to *Gesta Regis Henrici Secundi*, p. xi.

CHAP  
III

---

imperfectly known, and some of the crises of their politics would be almost incomprehensible.' A *Chronicle* of the earlier years of the reign of Richard, viz., A.D. 1189-1192, by RICHARD OF DEVIZES,<sup>1</sup> adds somewhat to the information supplied in the *Gesta* attributed to Benedict of Peterborough.

Hugo  
Candidus

The *History* of the monastery at Peterborough, by HUGO CANDIDUS,<sup>2</sup> carries the narrative down to the year 1175, and includes notices of neighbouring monasteries founded by bishop Ethelwold. Hugh appears to have used and amplified the Peterborough version of the Saxon Chronicle in connexion with which his work possesses its chief interest, being otherwise almost entirely destitute of information of a general character.

Gervase of  
Canter-  
bury

About the year 1189, GERVASE,<sup>3</sup> a monk of Canterbury, began to put together a compilation from the chief historians of the century,—Henry of Huntingdon, the continuator of Florence of Worcester, and the author of the *Gesta Regis Henrici Secundi*,—commencing with the reign of Stephen and continuing the work to the death of Richard I. Gervase appears to have been inspired throughout by a spirit of hostility to the house of Anjou, and his labours, though not without value, do not entitle him to take rank with the best authorities for the period.

Other ma-  
terials for  
reign of  
Richard I

Two other volumes in the Rolls Series will be found useful for the reign of Richard I.<sup>4</sup> Of these, the one

<sup>1</sup> *Chronicon Ricardi Dvisiensis de Rebus gestis Ricardi Primi*. Edited by J. Stevenson. *E. H. S.* 1838.

<sup>2</sup> *Hugonis Candidi Coenobii Burgensis Historia*. Printed in Sparke (see *supra*, p. 217), who also gives an abridged translation of Hugh's work into Anglo-Norman verse.

<sup>3</sup> *The Chronicle of the Reigns of Stephen, Henry II, and Richard I, by Gervase, the Monk of Canterbury*. Edited by William Stubbs. 2 vols. *R. S.* 1879-81.

<sup>4</sup> *Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard the First*. Vol. i.: *Itinerarium Peregrinorum, et Gesta Regis Ricardi*. Vol. ii.: *Epistolae Cantuarienses*. Edited by William Stubbs. *R. S.* 1864-5.

furnishes a minute and authentic narrative of that monarch's career, from his departure from England in December, 1189, as the leading spirit of the third Crusade, to his death; the other, consisting of letters written by the prior and convent of Christchurch, Canterbury, between the years 1187 and 1189, supplies a good illustration of the relations between the monastic orders and the secular clergy,—an important feature in the history of these times.

GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS,<sup>1</sup> a Welsh ecclesiastic, who wrote in the latter part of the twelfth century, was a man of great shrewdness of observation and considerable powers of satirical humour. His *Gemma Ecclesiastica* and *Speculum Ecclesiae*, together with the poem of WALTER MAP, *de Nugis Curialium*, and the *de Nugis Curialium et Vestigis Philosophorum* of JOHN OF SALISBURY,<sup>2</sup> present us with a remarkable, although in some respects exaggerated, picture of ecclesiastical and court life at this period. The *Letters* of the last-named writer are not less valuable and full of interest.

Giraldus  
Cam-  
brensis.  
b 1147.  
d 1222.

Walter  
Map

John of  
Sausbury.

The most important of the works of Giraldus are, however, his *Topographia Hiberniae* and his *Expugnatio Hiberniae*,—the former being the result of his visit to Ireland, as secretary to prince John, in 1185, and containing a description of the natural history, the miracles, and inhabitants of the country; the latter giving an account of the Conquest of Ireland under Henry II. Both these works are of exceptional merit, and the *Expugnatio* is characterised by Brewer as 'a noble specimen of historical narration, of which the author's age furnished very rare examples.'

The *Topo-  
graphia*  
and *Ex-  
pugnatio*  
*Hiberniae*  
of Giraldus.

<sup>1</sup> *The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis.* Vols. i-iv. Edited by J. S. Brewer, M.A. Vols v-vii Edited by James F. Dimock, M.A. R. S. 1861-77.

<sup>2</sup> For the works of John of Salisbury, see Migne, *P. L.* cxcix.



CHAP.  
III

Poem on  
the Con-  
quest of  
Ireland.

Besides Giraldus, we possess, for the Conquest of Ireland, a poem in Norman French verse,<sup>1</sup> which, though faulty in style and very corrupt in its language, contains an interesting account of the whole expedition. It is the composition of an unknown author who derived his information from Morice Regan, interpreter to Dermot MacMurrough, king of Leinster. 'Few events,' observes Mr. Wright in his Preface, 'have had the good fortune to be recorded by two contemporaries so well fitted for the task as Giraldus and Maurice Regan—one closely related to the heroes (for heroes we may truly call them) who performed the enterprise; the other, an immediate agent of the native chieftain in whose aid it was performed.'

Works re-  
lating to  
the Early  
History of  
Ireland.

*Early Irish History.*—In connexion with yet earlier Irish history, a subject which may advantageously be taken up at this period, almost the only printed source of authentic information is the fragmentary records known as the *Annals of Ireland*,<sup>2</sup> which, along with much that is fabulous and legendary, supply a disjointed narrative of the achievements of the princes of Ossory and Leix, together with those of their kinsman, the Uí Neill. Of the manuscript sources a minute criticism will be found in MR EUGENE O'CURRY'S *Lectures*.<sup>3</sup> In speaking of modern writers on the early period, this critic goes so far as to affirm that 'no one event of early Irish history is accurately given in Moore.' The *History of Erin*, by DR. KEATING, a work of the seventeenth century composed among the woods

<sup>1</sup> *Anglo-Norman Poem on the Conquest of Ireland by Henry the Second.* Edited by Francisque Michel. With an Introductory Essay on the History of the Anglo-Norman Conquest of Ireland, by Thomas Wright. 1837.

<sup>2</sup> *Annals of Ireland Three Fragments copied from ancient Sources by Dubhaltach Mac Fribisigh, and edited with a Translation and Notes.* By John O'Donovan. Dublin, 1860.

<sup>3</sup> *Lectures on the MS. Materials of Ancient British History, delivered at the Catholic University of Ireland, during the Session of 1855 and 1856.* By Eugene O'Curry. Dublin, 1861.

and caves of Tipperary, he pronounces to be a work of great value, though not without serious defects. The *History* of the Abbé Mac Geogehan, written in 1758, is to be looked upon as a praiseworthy attempt rather than a successful performance.

CHAP.  
III.

The *Anglo-Latin Satirical Poets and Epigrammatists of the Twelfth Century*, edited by Mr. Thomas Wright,<sup>1</sup> contain much amusing and interesting illustration of the manners, vices, and follies of the period.

Contem-  
porary Sa-  
turists.

Of *Domesday Book*, otherwise known as the *Liber de Wintonia*, the original of which is to be seen at the Record Office, a verbatim edition was printed in the last century, being completed in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a *fac-simile* edition, which was brought out under the superintendence of Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., Director of the Ordnance Survey, Southampton. This was completed in 1863, and is sold in parts varying in price from 4s. 6d. to 1l. 1s. 0d. A full account of the whole literature of this great survey is given by Mr. Freeman in the Appendix (note A.) to the fifth volume of his *Norman Conquest*.

*Domesday  
Book.*

The life of Lanfranc by MILO CRISPIN,<sup>2</sup> that of Anselm by EADMER,<sup>3</sup> those of Becket in the volumes edited by canon Robertson for the Rolls Series,<sup>4</sup> and that of Hugh of Lincoln, known as the *Magna Vita*,<sup>5</sup> are all biographies of high value and interest.

Contem-  
porary Bio-  
graphies

<sup>1</sup> 2 vols. R. S. 1872.

<sup>2</sup> *Vita Beati Lanfranci, Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, Auctore Milone Crispino, monacho et cantore Beccensi, subpari.* Migne, P. L. cl. 22-28.

<sup>3</sup> Printed in Migne, P. L. clx.

<sup>4</sup> *Materials for the History of Thomas Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury* Vols. i. ii. and iii. Edited by J. C. Robertson R. S. 1875-1877.

<sup>5</sup> *Magna Vita S. Hugonis Episcopi Lincolnensis.* Edited by James F. Dimock. R. S. 1864.

CHAP.  
III*Dialogus  
de Scaccario*

The *Dialogus de Scaccario*, or 'Dialogue on the Exchequer,' by Richard, bishop of London, is printed in full in professor Stubbs's *Documents*, &c. (pp. 160-241), 'as contributing an extraordinary mass of information on every important point in the development of constitutional principles before the Great Charter.'

John  
Brompton.

*Non-Contemporary Writer.*—The *Chronicon* of JOHN BROMPTON, who was abbat of Jervaulx in Yorkshire at the close of the thirteenth century, is printed in Twysden's *Scriptores*. It terminates with the year 1199, and is a poor compilation of little authority from William of Newbury, 'Benedict,' Giraldus, and Hoveden.

Freeman,  
Stubbs,  
Guizot,  
Eryce

(C) **Modern Writers.**—The fourth chapter of Mr. Freeman's *Norman Conquest* gives a graphic account of Norman history up to the commencement of the eleventh century. Professor Stubbs's *Constitutional History*, chapters x. xi. xii. (to p. 514), affords the requisite and indispensable collateral guidance. The first chapter of the sixth *Essai* in GUIZOT'S *Essais sur l'Histoire de France*,—'Du Gouvernement Anglo-Normand,'—brings out some of the chief points of contrast between French and English constitutional history at this period. The seventh, eighth, and ninth chapters of PROFESSOR BRYCE'S *Holy Roman Empire* contain a full explanation of the theory of the medieval Empire and its relations to Teutonic history in the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth centuries. The main facts in the life of Lanfranc are to be found in dean Hook's *Lives of the Archbishops of Canterbury*, vol. ii.; but are given more fully as well as more correctly in M. de Crozal's *Lanfranc: sa Vie, son Enseignement, sa Politique* (Paris, 1877). The *Life of Anselm*, by DEAN CHURCH, is a volume of great merit, and may be compared with that contained in dean Hook's *Lives*, &c., from which it diverges on some not unimportant points. The essay on Thomas a Becket in

*Lives of  
Lanfranc,  
Anselm,  
Becket, and  
Hugh of  
Lincoln.*

Mr. Freeman's *Historical Essays* (2nd series), is one of especial value. The *Life of St. Hugh of Lincoln*, by canon G. G. Perry, is a very instructive study, founded upon original materials, of the Church history of these times. The *Biographia Britannica Litteraria* (Anglo-Norman Period, 1842), by Mr. Wright, supplies a series of sketches of the chief literary characters of the period arranged in chronological order. The 21st and 22nd chapters of SISMONDI'S *Histoire des Français*, detailing the history of the third Crusade and the results by which it was attended, will be found to supply a good illustration of Richard the First's real character.

For the Crusades generally the volume by Sir G. W. Cox supplies a graphic though brief account; while professor Stubbs's *Early Plantagenets*, a volume in the same series, supplies an outline of the greater part of the present and of the following periods, which will be found useful both by teacher and student <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *The Crusades*, by G. W. Cox; *The Early Plantagenets*, by William Stubbs; volumes in 'Epochs of Modern History.' Longmans and Co. 1874 and 1876.

CHAP.  
III

Wright's  
Biographia.

Sismondi

Cox's  
*Crusades*.  
Stubbs's  
*Plantagenets*

## CHAPTER IV.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF KING JOHN TO THE DEATH  
OF EDWARD II.CHAP.  
IV

The  
'Chronicle'  
and the  
'History.'

Advance in  
Historical  
Composition.

(A) **Contemporary Writers**—A marked advance in historical composition is one of the distinguishing features of the thirteenth century when compared with the preceding era. We find the mere *Chronicle* now giving place in the treatment of abler writers to the *History*, that is to say a simple arrangement of events in chronological sequence is expanded into a narrative which aims at exhibiting the relations of cause and effect, and events are portrayed as incidents of a coherent drama and in their supposed moral and political significance. This important advance presents itself in connexion with a *new Historic School*. The great Northern school culminated and ended with Hoveden, and was now succeeded by the no less remarkable school of the South associated with the monastery of St. Albans. A very slight acquaintance with the historical literature of this ancient house, which owed its foundation to king Offa and had once been ruled by Anselm, is sufficient to disprove the representations of those who would have us look upon this period as one when history had lapsed into the hands only of ignorant, credulous, and prejudiced writers.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See, for example, the very unjust representations of Buckle in the sixth chapter of his *History of Civilisation*.

The town of St. Albans, the halting-place at the close of the first day's journey northwards from London, was the scene of continuous traffic and excitement, and its monastery afforded shelter and hospitality to travellers of all classes.<sup>1</sup> Nor was it only a great centre of intelligence, it was also a great depository of documents; and hence the works of its members, such as those of Matthew Paris, Rishanger, John de Cella, Roger Wendover, and John de Trokelowe are among the most authoritative contemporary records of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.<sup>2</sup> Pre-eminent among their number is MATTHEW PARIS, the historian, the traveller, the politician, the monk, and the courtier, and a comparison of his *Historia Major* with the *Chronica* of Hoveden affords decisive proof of the advance above described in this species of composition. Instead of an almost colourless narrative, we are presented with a series of brilliant historical criticisms, and although the change may in some measure be due, as professor Stubbs suggests, to the altered policy of the clergy, who found themselves compelled to abandon their former position of political neutrality for one of active partisanship, it is also undoubtedly to be regarded as one of the manifestations of that new spirit infused into the age.

CHAP.  
IV.

The School  
of St  
Alban's.

Matthew  
Paris  
d. 1259.

<sup>1</sup> Matthew Paris states that in the stables of the abbey set apart for the use of guests and strangers, there were stalls for nearly 300 horses *Chron. Maj* ann 1252.

<sup>2</sup> *Chronica Monasterii S. Albani* Edited by H. T. Riley II vols. R. S. 1863-76. It may here be worth while to caution students against the misapprehension that a Chronicle associated with the name of a particular religious house is exclusively concerned with its special history. Sometimes, like the *Annales Monastici*, they incorporate documents of great national importance which had been sent to the monastery to be transcribed. See on this point the Preface to the third volume of Hardy's *Descriptive Catalogue*, &c. p. xx, and also, for some interesting observations and facts relating to the character and 'mechanical structure' of our earlier chronicles, professor Earle's Preface to his *Parallel Chronicles*, pp.

CHAP.  
IV.His *Historia  
Major*.John de  
Cella and  
Roger of  
Wendover

The *Historia Major* of Matthew Paris,—of the latter part of which his *Historia Anglorum* (or *Historia Minor*) is chiefly an abridgment, though containing some additional facts,—extends from the Creation to the year 1259<sup>1</sup> The much controverted question, as to the relative claims of Matthew and Roger of Wendover to be considered the original author, has been finally set at rest by the valuable Prefaces of Mr Luard to his edition of the larger work. He concludes that the *Historia Major* up to the year 1189 was the work of John de Cella, abbat of St Albans during the years 1195 to 1214, that it was then continued by ROGER OF WENDOVER on the same plan and from the same sources to the year 1235, *the whole work* up to this date subsequently passing, for a long time, as the production of the latter writer exclusively, and being known as the *Flores Historiarum*; <sup>2</sup> that it was then transcribed by Matthew Paris, who, however, made numerous corrections and additions, but, in the opinion of professor Stubbs, ‘interpreted’ rather than ‘interpolated;’ that it was then *continued* by the same writer, and is, from 1235 to the year 1259, exclusively his work. In style, in vividness of narration, and in descriptive power, Matthew greatly surpasses his two predecessors. He has also received the praise, very generally, of being a warm advocate of English rights and liberties, and a sturdy opponent alike of regal and

<sup>1</sup> *Matthæi Parisiensis Monachi Sancti Albani, Chronica Majora*. Edited by H. R. Luard. R. S. 1872–80 [Vol. i, the Creation to A.D. 1066; vol. ii. A.D. 1066–1216; vol. iii. 1217–1239; vol. iv. 1240–1247; vol. v. 1248–1259]. *Matthæi Parisiensis Historia Anglorum, sive, ut vulgo dicitur, Historia Minor*. A.D. 1067–1253. Edited by Sir Frederic Madden. 3 vols. R. S. 1866–69. [The *Chronica Majora* are often designated the *Historia Major*.]

<sup>2</sup> This work has also been edited by Mr. H. O. Coxe for the English Historical Society. He considers that for the period A.D. 1200–1235 Wendover may be looked upon as an original writer, and that here his character as an historian is unimpeachable.

papal tyranny: in fact, the national sentiment may be said first to receive adequate expression in his pages. His *History*, moreover, is not only the best source of information with respect to events in England, but is also an authority as regards continental affairs, especially those of France and the Empire.

CHAP.  
IV.

The *Chronica* of WILLIAM RISHANGER,<sup>1</sup> also a monk of St. Alban's, was formerly known as his continuation of Matthew Paris. It embraces the period A.D. 1259-1306, and is in many respects identical with the *Annales* of NICHOLAS TRIVET, a history of the Angevin dynasty in England,<sup>2</sup> both authors having evidently drawn to a great extent from the same sources.<sup>3</sup> Trivet was a Dominican friar who had been educated at Oxford and at Paris, at which latter university he collected many of his materials for his history. He assigns as his motive for undertaking the work, the comparative neglect with which, after the death of John, historical writers had treated English affairs. For the reign of Edward I., Trivet's *Annals* are a contemporary record. The work is one of high merit, whether regarded as a literary production or simply as a clear and accurate narrative of events.

William  
Rishanger.

Nicholas  
Trivet.

For the reign of John, besides the *Historia Major*, we have a very valuable contribution in the *Memoriale* of WALTER DE COVENTRY, a compilation made in one of the ten monasteries, probably Crowland or Peterborough.

Walter de  
Coventry

<sup>1</sup> *Willelmi Rishanger Chronica et Annales*, forming vol. iii. of the *Chronica Monasterii S. Albani* Edited by Mr. Riley. R. S.

<sup>2</sup> *Annales sex Regum Angliae qui a comitibus Andegavensibus originem traxerunt.* Edited by Mr. Hog. E. H. S. 1845 It is to be noted that Trivet makes up the number 'six' by including Geoffrey of Anjou, the husband of Matilda, and the original wearer of the *planta genista*. He speaks of Henry II. as 'primus eorum regum qui a comitibus Andegavensibus duxerunt originem secundum lineam masculinam' (p. 31).

<sup>3</sup> Mr. Gairdner (*Early Chronicles*, p. 265) seems, however, to have clearly established the conclusion that Rishanger's work is borrowed, for the above period, almost entirely from that of Trivet.



CHAP  
IVThe Mon-  
astic *An-  
nales*

For the reign of Henry III., down to the commencement of the Barons' War, Matthew Paris is the main authority; but at this period the *Annales* of the different monasteries come in and often supply trustworthy subsidiary information. The principal of these *Annales* are those—

The  
*Annals of  
Burton*

(i.) of the monastery of Burton-upon-Trent,<sup>1</sup> in Staffordshire, beginning in the year 1004 and ending with the year 1263. From 1189 to 1201, they supply little more than a series of extracts from Hoveden, but after the year 1211 they acquire a special value from the importance of the incorporated documents, especially those relating to the *Provisions of Oxford*.

The  
*Annals of  
Win-  
chester.*

(ii.) of the monastery of Winchester<sup>2</sup> (A.D. 519 to 1277), probably the work of Richard of Devizes. These are important for the last ten years, as they supply us with a very full account of the period immediately following upon the battle of Evesham.

The  
*Annals of  
Waverley*

(iii.) of Waverley,<sup>3</sup> near Farnham in Surrey, the earliest Cistercian house in England. These treat of the whole Christian era up to the year 1291. The history of John's reign is given at considerable length, and from the year 1219 to 1266 the manuscript was written contemporaneously with successive events, and consequently furnishes one of the most authoritative records of the period. From 1266 to 1275 it is identical with the Winchester *Annals*.

The *An-  
nals of  
Dunstable.*

(iv.) of Dunstable,<sup>4</sup> comprising the whole Christian era down to the year 1297. 'Very few contemporary chroniclers,' says Mr. Luard, 'throw so much light on the general history of the country, and, what would scarcely be expected, on foreign affairs as well as those of England. Many historical facts' (enumerated by the editor

<sup>1</sup> In vol. i. of Mr. Luard's *Annales Monastici*. R. S. 1864-9

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* vol. ii

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* vol. ii.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.* vol. iii.

in his Preface, pp. xv-xix.) 'are known solely from this chronicle' The compiler is on the barons' side in his account of the Barons' War.

CHAP.  
IV.

(v.) of Osney near Oxford<sup>1</sup> (A.D. 1016-1347) This is supposed to have been the work of Thomas Wykes, with whose *Chronicon* (A.D. 1066-1289) it has much in common. Both the *Chronicon* and the *Annals* are to a great extent compiled in the earlier parts from Ralph of Diceto and Florence of Worcester, while in the later they borrow largely from Matthew Paris and William of Newbury. The points with respect to which the two works are found to differ are enumerated by Mr Luard in his Preface to the fourth volume of the *Annales Monastici*, pp. xviii-xxiii.

The  
*Annals of*  
*Osney*  
Thomas  
Wykes.

(vi.) of Worcester,<sup>2</sup> comprising the whole Christian era to A.D. 1377. In their general character these *Annals* much resemble those of Dunstable, though hardly of equal excellence.

The  
*Annals of*  
*Worcester.*

For the reign of Edward II. we have—

(i.) the *Annales* of JOHN OF TROKELowe (A.D. 1307-1323),<sup>3</sup> a monk of Tynemouth, who had been transferred from that monastery to St. Alban's, where he composed his work. He had been an eye-witness of many of the events which he describes, and these portions of his narrative are consequently of value

John of  
Trokelowe.

(ii.) A *Life* of Edward by an unknown writer,<sup>4</sup> who, from the fact that the only existing MS. came from Malmesbury, is supposed to have been a member of that monastery. This, as regards both style and authority, ranks higher than the compilation of Trokelowe. Pauli considers that the narrative is certainly contemporary with the year 1327.

Monk of  
Malmes-  
bury.

<sup>1</sup> Luard's *Annales Monastici*, vol. iv.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* vol. iv.

<sup>3</sup> In vol. iv. of the *Chronica Monast. S. Albani*.

<sup>4</sup> In the series edited by Hearne

CHAP.  
IVThomas de  
la Moor.

(iii.) A *Life* by THOMAS DE LA MOOR,<sup>1</sup> who evinces considerable sympathy with Edward. He indulges, however, in frequent exaggeration, and his statements do not appear to rest, in any case, on a personal knowledge of the facts.

Adam of  
Murimuth.

(iv.) The *Chronicon* of ADAM OF MURIMUTH,<sup>2</sup> a diplomatist who had received his education at Oxford. This work is of importance both for the reign of Edward II., and for the earlier period of that of his son, the narrative terminating with an account of the battle of Crecy, and the victory of the earl of Derby.

Walter  
Heming-  
burgh.

Another *Chronicle*, of especial importance for the reigns of the first three Edwards, is that of Walter de Gisseburn, better known as WALTER HEMINGBURGH.<sup>3</sup> This extends in the first instance, from A.D. 1066 to 1297; it was subsequently continued (but whether by Hemingford himself or by another hand is a matter of some doubt<sup>4</sup>) and carried on to the year 1346, terminating somewhat abruptly on the eve of the battle of Crecy. Of this continuation, the part of the narrative relating to the last five years of the reign of Edward II. is altogether wanting. The early part is derived mainly from the Durham compilers, and from William of Newbury, but with the thirteenth century, the narrative assumes an independent value. The editor, Mr. Hans Hamilton, describes it as 'one of the most favourable specimens of our early chronicles, both as regards the selection of events.

<sup>1</sup> In Camden's *Anglica-Norm. Hibern. Cambr.* pub. 1603.

<sup>2</sup> *Adam Murimuthensis Chronica sui Temporis, nunc primum per decem annos aucta* (1303-1346) *cum eorundem Continuatione ad A.D. 1380 a quodam Anonymo.* Edited by Mr. T. Hog. *E. H. S.* 1846.

<sup>3</sup> *Chronicon Walteri de Hemingburgh.* Edited by H. C. Hamilton. 2 vols. *E. H. S.* 1848. It is from this writer that Hume mainly derived his account of Edward I. Both Hume's and Hallam's estimate of this monarch are, however, superseded by that given in Stubbs's *Const. Hist.* c. xiv.

<sup>4</sup> See Hardy, *D. C.* iii. 255.

and the accuracy with which they are recorded.' We note also in Hemingford what is still more rare at this period—an adequate sense of the value and importance of the Great Charters of England; it is to him that we are indebted for the most satisfactory text of the so-called statute *de Tallagio non concedendo*, of the year 1297. He also in the latter portion of his work—that relating to the years 1339-1346—cites at length, in connexion with the reign of Edward III., a large number of Royal Letters and Papal Bulls to which he supplies the necessary connecting narrative.

CHAP.  
IV.

---

Among the local chronicles, that of Peterborough<sup>1</sup> is exceptionally valuable. It was in the thirteenth century that our municipal institutions became consolidated and the trade guilds attained to full possession of the privileges which secured the 'craftsmen' against the tyranny of the burgher class. The gradual development of these guilds, from the 'frith-gild' of Anglo-Saxon times to the confederation of guilds which resulted in an organised municipality, is ably illustrated in Dr. Brentano's essay.<sup>2</sup> In London, in marked contrast to the traditional patriotism of the citizens whenever the cause of popular freedom throughout the country was at stake, the struggle for independence against the oligarchical rule of the merchants, on the part of the ever-augmenting numbers of the 'craftsmen,' was singularly protracted and severe. The incidents of these successive contests and the whole history of the civic community may be traced in the archives preserved in the Record Room of the Guildhall,—a collection unrivalled in its kind by that of any other city in the world. Of these documents three of the most important have been printed and published:

H. story of  
Guilds.

The City  
Records of  
London.

<sup>1</sup> *Chronicon Petroburgense. Nunc primum typis mandatum, curante Thoma Stapleton. C. S. 1849.*

<sup>2</sup> Prefixed to *Ordinances of English Guilds. E. E. T. S.*

CHAP.  
IV.

*Liber de  
Antiquis  
Legibus.  
Liber  
Albus.  
Liber Cus-  
tumarum.*

(1) the *Liber de Antiquis Legibus*,<sup>1</sup> a Latin chronicle of the city transactions from A.D. 1178 to 1274, (2) the *Liber Albus*, compiled in the year 1419, by John Carpenter, Common Clerk to the city of London, (3) the *Liber Custumarum*, a compilation of a similar character, of about 1320, put together under the supervision of one Andrew Horn. Both these latter volumes<sup>2</sup> are of high value from the light they throw upon the political and commercial condition of the country during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, upon the social usages and institutions of the city, and on the foreign wars of Edward III.

Other  
Records of  
London  
*Domesday  
of St  
Paul's.*

Another record of considerable importance for the same subject, is the *Domesday of St. Paul's*,<sup>3</sup> a compilation of the year 1222, which gives a detailed account of the churches and landed property belonging to the cathedral body, and also affords a useful insight into the conditions of land tenure and agricultural industry at the same period,—a state of affairs which resulted in the agrarian insurrections of the following century. There is also a *Chronicle of London* composed in French<sup>4</sup> (at that time the language both of the royal court and of the courts of law), which extends from the forty-fourth year of Henry III. to the seventeenth of Edward III. Another *Chronicle*, published by Sir Harris Nicolas in 1827,<sup>5</sup> appears to have been a compilation of the time of Henry

*Chroniques  
de London.*

*The  
Chronicle  
of London.*

<sup>1</sup> Edited by T. Stapleton (together with *Cronica Maiorum et Vicecomitum.*) C. S. 1846.

<sup>2</sup> *Munimenta Gildhallae Londoniensis.* Vol. i. *Liber Albus*; vol. ii. *Liber Custumarum*; vol. iii. *Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index.* Edited by H. T. Riley, M. A. R. S. 1159-62

<sup>3</sup> *The Domesday of St. Paul's of the Year 1222.* With Introduction, Notes, and Illustrations. By William Hale Hale. C. S. 1858

<sup>4</sup> *Chroniques de London, depuis l'an 44 Hen. III. jusqu'à l'an 17 Edw. III.* Edited by G. I. Aungier C. S. 1844.

<sup>5</sup> *Chronicle of London from 1089 to 1483* With an Appendix containing Poems by Lydgate. Edited by N. H. Nicolas. 1827.

VI. and to have been subsequently continued to the death of Edward IV. To the foregoing, we may add a volume compiled by WILLIAM GREGORY, lord mayor of London, in 1451, the year after Jack Cade's rebellion.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV

Gregory's  
*Chronicle*.

(B.) *Non-contemporary Writers*.—The historical labours of the monks of St. Albans were continued in the fifteenth century by one of the most eminent of the community, THOMAS WALSINGHAM,<sup>2</sup> who was precentor of the abbey in the reign of Richard II.; he appears to have been the inspiring genius of its *scriptorium*, and was also the compiler of a History of the foundation. The part of the *Historia Anglica* attributed to his pen which relates to the present period, is however almost entirely a compilation from preceding writers already named.

Thomas  
Walsing-  
ham.

In the year 1618 there appeared the *History of England from the Conquest to the reign of Edward III.*, by SAMUEL DANIEL,<sup>3</sup> a production deserving of notice rather for its literary than its historical merits, being a mere reproduction of the ordinary authorities.

Samuel  
Daniel.

*Royal and episcopal Letters*.—The chancellorship of Hubert Walter, in the reign of John, marks the commencement of a new source of information of the highest historical value,—namely, the Letters, preserved either as entries upon the Close and Patent Rolls, or separately among the documents, and known as the *Royal Letters*. Those of the reign of Henry III., edited by Mr. Shirley,<sup>4</sup> are especially valuable in connexion with the history of Simon de Montfort and the state of affairs in Gascony.

Royal and  
Episcopal  
Letters

<sup>1</sup> *Collections of a London Citizen*. Edited by James Gairdner. C. S. 1877

<sup>2</sup> *Thomae Walsingham Historia Anglicana*, forming vols. i. and ii. of the *Chronica Monast. S. Albani*. R. S. 1863-4.

<sup>3</sup> In Kennet; see *supra*, p. 217; see also Hallam's *Hist. of Literature*, iii. 373-4 (ed. 1864).

<sup>4</sup> *Royal and other Historical Letters illustrative of the Reign of Henry III.* Vol. i. A.D. 1216-1235; vol. ii. 1236-1272. Selected and edited by the Rev. W. W. Shirley. R. S. 1862-6.

CHAP.  
IV

---

Papal  
Letters.

To Walter de Grey, archbishop of York, and bishop Hugh of Wells, deputy of the chancellor of Lincoln, we owe the earliest existing records relating to the ecclesiastical acts of their respective dioceses. Both the royal and the episcopal letters derived their idea and form from the corresponding documents of the Papal Registry, an all-important collection for the relations of England to the Holy See at this period. These may be consulted in the continuation of the *Annales Ecclesiastici* of Baronius, by Raynaldus; in Jaffé's *Regesta Pontificum Romanorum*, vol. ii.; and in the *Monumenta Britannica ex autographis Romanorum Pontificum* (A.D. 1216-1759) in 50 volumes, edited by Marini.

Letters of  
Grosseteste.

Roll of  
Bishop  
Swinfield.

The *Letters* of ROBERT GROSSETESTE, bishop of Lincoln, dating from about 1210 to 1253, afford much insight into both the political and ecclesiastical history of his age;<sup>1</sup> while the *Roll of the Household Expenses of Bishop Swinfield*<sup>2</sup> illustrates not only the economy of an episcopal palace, but the whole condition of society in the reign of Edward I.

Political  
Songs.

A collection of political and satirical *Songs* of the period, edited by Mr. Wright, affords occasionally interesting evidence with respect to the popular impressions concerning the chief characters and events of the time.<sup>3</sup>

Authorities  
for Early  
Welsh  
History.

*Welsh History.* The history of Wales, the study of which can best be taken up at this period, must be gleaned from the *Itinerarium* of Giraldus (see *supra*, p. 265), and from the *Annales Cambriae*, edited for the Rolls Series by the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel. This latter, which is, for the most part, a meagre register of events resembling the earlier portions of the

<sup>1</sup> *Letters of Bishop Grosseteste, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time.* Edited by Rev. H. R. Luard. R. S. 1861.

<sup>2</sup> *A Roll of the Household Expenses of Richard de Swinfield, Bishop of Hereford, during part of the years 1289 and 1290.* Edited by Rev. John Webb. C. S. 1854.

<sup>3</sup> *The Political Songs of England from the Reign of John to that of Edward II.* Edited and translated by Thomas Wright, Esq. C. S. 1839.

English Chronicle, was probably compiled by Welsh monks and extends from A.D. 444 to 1288. It is interesting as the earliest source of the kind for information respecting Welsh history, and the probable basis of later chronicles relating to the principality. To this may be added the *Brut y Tywysogion*; or, *Chronicle of the Princes of Wales*, in the same series and by the same editor. The Annals of the monasteries of Margan and Tewkesbury, in the first volume of the *Annales Monastici*, edited by Mr. Luard, will also be found of service from the facts they record relating to local history. Other sources, whether for tradition or historical fact, are Gildas, Nennius, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Tysilio, Ponticus Verannius, Wace's *Brut*, Layamon, Caradoc of Llancarvan, John Brechfa, and the *Chronicon Walliae*. Of all of these, a concise account will be found in the first chapter of Lappenberg's *History of England*<sup>1</sup>

*Scottish History.* The chief sources for this subject are the series of *Documents* edited by the late Sir Francis Palgrave<sup>2</sup> and by the Rev. Joseph Stevenson;<sup>3</sup> the *Chronicles* relating to Pictish and Scottish history edited by Mr. W. F. Skene,<sup>4</sup> who has also embodied the results of a succession of valuable researches in his work entitled *Celtic Scotland*;<sup>5</sup> and, for the subsequent period, the able work of Mr. E. William Robertson, entitled *Scotland under her Early Kings*.<sup>6</sup> The theory put

Authorities  
for Early  
Scottish  
History.

<sup>1</sup> *A History of England under the Anglo-Saxon Kings.* By Johann Martin Lappenberg. Translated from the German, with Additions and Corrections by the Author and the Translator. 2 vols. 1845.

<sup>2</sup> *Documents and Records illustrating the History of Scotland and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England, preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer.* Edited by Sir Francis Palgrave. 1 vol. R. C. 1837.

<sup>3</sup> *Documents illustrative of the History of Scotland, from the Death of King Alexander III. to the Accession of Robert Bruce.* A.D. 1286-1306. Selected and arranged by the Rev. Joseph Stevenson. 2 vols. H. M. General Register House. Edinburgh. 1870.

<sup>4</sup> *Chronicles of the Picts, Chronicles of the Scots, and other Early Memorials of Scottish History.* Edited by William F. Skene. 1 vol. H. M. General Register House: Edinburgh. 1867. (These extend from the tenth to the fifteenth century.)

<sup>5</sup> *Celtic Scotland. a History of Ancient Alban.* By William F. Skene. Vol. i.: *History and Ethnology*; vol. ii.: *Church and Culture*, vol. iii.: *Land and People.* 1876-80.

<sup>6</sup> *Scotland under her Early Kings: a History of the Kingdom to the*



CHAP.  
IV.

---

forth by Mr. Robertson (vol. ii. append 1), of the original relations of Scotland to England should be compared with that maintained by Mr. Freeman in his *Norman Conquest* [vol. i. (edit 2), pp. 117-129, and Appendix G, I, and N], and with his elaborate investigation of the whole question in his *Historical Essays* (1st series), in the essay on *The Relations between the Crowns of England and Scotland*. The theory of the English monarchic supremacy may be compared with that involved in the claims of the head of the Holy Roman Empire,—a subject which requires again to be carefully studied in connexion with the history of Richard of Cornwall. The early charters and coinage of the realm are to be found in the collections by Anderson <sup>1</sup>

Freeman,  
Guizot,  
Pauli,  
Stubbs,  
Brewer,  
Milman,  
Hallam,  
&c.

(C.) **Modern Writers.**—The whole period of the Angevin reigns (1154-1272) has been summarised with his wonted vigour and mastery of the subject by Mr. Freeman in the concluding chapter of his *History of the Norman Conquest*. The thirteenth *Leçon* in Guizot's *Histoire de la Civilisation en France* furnishes an outline which brings out some of the main points of difference between the institutions of France and England during this century. The best account of the reigns of John and Henry III. is that given by DR. PAULI in his *Geschichte von England*, iii. 294-855. The work of Mr. William Longman, entitled *Lectures on the History of England from the Earliest Times to the Death of Edward II.*, will be found useful in connexion with the period of the present chapter. The prefaces by professor Stubbs to his edition of Walter of Coventry, and by Mr. Luard to the several volumes of his edition of Matthew Paris, together with those by Brewer to the *Monumenta Franciscana* and his editions of the *Opus Tertium* and *Opus Minus* of ROGER BACON <sup>2</sup>

*Close of the Thirteenth Century*. By E. William Robertson. 2 vols. Edinburgh. Edmonston and Douglas. 1862.

<sup>1</sup> *Selectus Diplomatum et Numismatum Scotiæ Thesaurus*. Edited by James Anderson. Fol. Edinburgh, 1739.

<sup>2</sup> The '*Opus Tertium*,' '*Opus Minus*,' &c. of Roger Bacon. Edited by J. S. Brewer, M. A. R. S. 1859.

are full of illustrative material for thirteenth century history,—a period which professor Stubbs, in the preface above referred to, designates, as ‘one of the most remunerative of all studies to the careful student.’ The ninth and tenth chapters of the ninth book of MILMAN’S *History of Latin Christianity* supply a graphic sketch of the rise of the orders of St. Dominic and St. Francis of Assisi. The second part of the ninth chapter of HALLAM’S *Middle Ages* points out the elements of progress and improvement which England shared in common with the Continent, and the ‘four causes’ which he assigns of the intellectual advance then perceptible should be carefully noted. In the writer’s *History of the University of Cambridge* (vol. i. cc. 2 & 3), will be found a systematic account of the commencement of the university era throughout Europe, and of the rise of Oxford and Cambridge, together with the history of the foundation of their most ancient colleges.<sup>1</sup>

The *Barons’ War* (1871) by Mr. Blaauw, Dr. Pauli’s *Simon von Montfort, der Schöpfer des Hauses der Gemeinen* (1867) and the *Life of Simon de Montfort* (1877), by Mr. G. W. Prothero, afford all the requisite information respecting the great political contest of the thirteenth century. The *Lives* of Stephen Langton (archbishop 1207-1228), Edmund Rich (1234-1240), Boniface of Savoy (1245-1270), and Robert Winchelsey (1294-1313), in dean Hook’s *Archbishops of Canterbury*, offer good illustrations of the relations of Church and State in England at this period; while for the policy of Boniface VIII. and its effects in England and France, Milman’s *Latin Christianity* (bk. xi. cc. 7, 8, and 9) should be consulted.

CHAP.  
IV.

*Lives of  
Simon de  
Montfort.*

Hook’s  
*Arch-  
bishops.*

<sup>1</sup> *The University of Cambridge from the earliest times to the Royal Injunctions of 1535.* By James Bass Mullinger, M. A. Cambridge University Press. 1873.

## CHAPTER V.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE  
DEATH OF RICHARD III.CHAP.  
VAdam of  
Murimuth.

(A.) **Contemporary Writers.**—The materials for English history throughout this period reflect the general decline of the literary spirit, and are at once defective as sources of information, and inferior as specimens of historical literature. We meet with no such writers as William of Malmesbury or Matthew Paris. Adam of Murimuth continues to be a principal witness for events up to the year 1346, after which the narrative is carried on by his unknown Continuator to the year 1380. His statements are for the most part made on good authority, or as the result of personal observation, and the impression we derive is that of one who was an honest and veracious chronicler, although possessed of no descriptive or literary power.

Robert  
Avesbury.  
*d. (circ.)*  
1356.

The achievements of Edward III. are also recorded by ROBERT AVESBURY,<sup>1</sup> who was registry of the archiepiscopal court at Canterbury. He likewise can claim no higher rank than that of a painstaking chronicler, but his work incorporates some valuable original documents and transcripts of letters. In connexion with the invasion of Cambresis in 1339, the expedition into Brittany

<sup>1</sup> Robert of Avesbury, *Hist. de mirabilibus Gestis Edwardi III.* Ed. Heame. 1720.

in 1342, and the events that led to the battle of Crecy his narrative is of the highest authority, and affords material corrections of that of Froissart.

CHAP.  
V  
—

The *Polychronicon* of HIGDEN becomes the account of a contemporary with the first half of the fourteenth century. Higden was a member of the wealthy and powerful abbey of St. Werburg, a Benedictine community at Chester. His work is divided into seven books, of which the sixth concludes with the Norman Conquest, the seventh reaching to the reign of Edward III.<sup>1</sup> The *Polychronicon* is almost entirely a compilation, but in the second chapter of the first book the author enumerates at length the sources from which he has drawn his narrative, and the work is consequently valuable as showing what historical writers were studied in England at this period. Towards the close of the century, the *Polychronicon* was translated by JOHN OF TREVISA, a secular priest of Berkeley in Gloucestershire, and his version is valuable as a specimen of contemporary English prose. The *Polychronicon* is now in course of publication in the Rolls Series, and in the prefaces to the several volumes the sources from which Higden has derived his facts are pointed out.<sup>2</sup>

Higden  
and John  
of Trevisa.

HENRY KNIGHTON, a canon of the abbey at Leicester, was a contemporary of John of Trevisa and compiled a *History of England* from the time of king Edgar to the death of Richard II.<sup>3</sup> According to his own statement, his compilation was mainly founded on Higden's seventh book; but it includes many facts not therein

Henry  
Knighton.

<sup>1</sup> That is, as appears most probable, to the year 1342; but this question cannot be considered as decided until the appearance of professor Lumby's preface to the concluding volume of his edition of Higden.

<sup>2</sup> *Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden*, with Trevisa's Translation. Vols. i. and ii. edited by Churchill Babington, D D. Vols. iii. iv. v. vi. and vii. edited by Professor Lumby R. S. 1865-79

<sup>3</sup> Printed in the *Decem Scriptores*; see *supra*, p. 216.

CHAP.  
V.  
—

contained The text, as it has reached us, is extremely corrupt, and Knighton's style and method are alike faulty. Notwithstanding, however, his history is valuable on account of the facts and original records which it contains. Among other sources of information, he appears to have had access to the private collections and letters of Henry, duke of Lancaster, and those of John of Gaunt.

*Chronicle  
by a Monk  
of St.  
Albans.*

A *Chronicle of England*, during the sixty years A.D. 1328–88, written by another member of the active centre of St. Albans, fills up what had before been regarded as almost a blank in our history,—namely, the concluding years of the reign of Edward III., of which it supplies a circumstantial account.<sup>1</sup>

Walsing-  
ham's *His-  
toria*.

It is in connexion with the first fifteen years of the reign of Richard II that the *Historia Anglicana* of Walsingham (see *supra*) assumes its highest value and becomes a work of primary importance. Prior to this period it is grounded chiefly on the *Annals* of St Albans, while the concluding portion (A.D. 1393–1422) contains not a few inaccuracies of detail.<sup>2</sup> For the years 1377 to 1392, however, it is a strictly contemporary account (compiled probably by Walsingham, soon after he left St. Alban's in 1392 to become prior of the cell of Wy-mundham), which is at once intelligent and authoritative,

<sup>1</sup> *Chronicon Angliæ, ab Anno Domini 1328 usque ad Annum 1388, auctore Monacho quodam Sancti Albani.* Edited by Edward Maunde Thompson, Esq. R. S. 1874

<sup>2</sup> These defects induced Mr. Riley, the latest editor of the work, to conclude that the *Historia*, after the year 1392, is not the production of Walsingham. Mr. Gairdner, however, a highly competent critic of the literature of this period, assigns satisfactory explanations of the inferiority discernible, and gives it as his opinion that there is nothing 'of the nature of internal evidence to create a doubt that the writer of the history during the reigns of Henry IV. and Henry V. is the same as the writer of the history in Richard II's time, 'On the contrary,' he says, 'the style is the same throughout.' *Early Chronicles of England*, p. 269.

notwithstanding that certain contradictions and expressions of conflicting opinion (especially with respect to the characters of Richard and John of Gaunt) shew that it is still a compilation from diverse and sometimes discordant sources.

CHAP.  
V  
—

In relation to the concluding portion of Richard's reign, we have also a *Cronique*<sup>1</sup> and a metrical composition, *Histoire du Roy d'Angleterre*,<sup>2</sup>—both by French writers. Of these, the former is the production of one who was an eye-witness of many of the events which he describes, and who sympathised with the ill-fated monarch. His account is of the more value from the fact that the chroniclers of the fifteenth century invariably espouse the side of the House of Lancaster. The writer of the poem also pleads the cause of Richard, and his production is likewise deserving of attention.

French  
Chroniclers  
on Richard  
II.

The *Chronicle* of ADAM OF USK<sup>3</sup> throws some additional light on the years A.D. 1377–1404. Adam was a Monmouthshire man and a priest, who, after having been educated at Oxford, entered the service of Henry IV. and subsequently ingratiated himself with pope Boniface IX. His chief contribution to the history of the period consists of some interesting facts relating to the deposition and last days of Richard II. and the early part of the reign of Henry IV. His account of the march of Henry's army to Chester and of the events

Adam of  
Usk.

<sup>1</sup> *Cronique de la traison et mort de Richart deux Roy Dengleterre*. Edited by B Williams. *E H. S* 1846.

<sup>2</sup> *Histoire du Roy d'Angleterre, Richard, traictant particulièrement la rebellion de ses subjects et prinse de sa personne, composee par un gentilhomme françois qui fut a la suite d'iceluy Roy, avecq permission du Roy de France, 1399*. Edited and translated by Rev John Webb. *Archæolog. Britann.* xx. 1–423

<sup>3</sup> *Chronicon Adæ de Usk, A D 1377–1404*. Edited with a Translation and Notes by Edward Maunde Thompson. Published under the direction of the Royal Society of Literature. London: John Murray, 1876.

CHAP.  
V.  

---

that followed is also of some value. We learn from these pages that Henry, in his hatred of the Welsh, had designed, if possible, altogether to suppress the Welsh language.

John Capgrave  
b. 1393.  
d. 1464.

JOHN CAPGRAVE, a native of Lynn in Norfolk, was a member of the house of Augustinian friars in that city and afterwards provincial of his order. He was a voluminous writer, and composed among other works (1) *A Chronicle of England*,<sup>1</sup> and (2) *The Book of the Noble Henries*.<sup>2</sup> Of these the former, extending from the Creation to A.D. 1417, is written in English and is valuable as a specimen of the Norfolkshire dialect of the period. It also supplies some facts, not found elsewhere, respecting the history of the writer's own times. His *Noble Henries* (designed in honour of the reigning monarch) includes Henries of the Empire and other illustrious characters of the same name, besides the first six Henries of England. His notices of the latter extend from the accession of Henry I. to the year 1446; his facts, as regards the first four Henries, are derived mainly from Henry of Huntingdon, Higden, and Walsingham. In adverting to the circumstances under which the Lancastrian dynasty succeeded to the crown, he professes to maintain the strictest impartiality, but as a contemporary record the work is disfigured by the tone of degrading sycophancy employed by the writer with respect to the Henry on the throne. His latest editor claims for him, however, the merits of 'honesty and sincerity of purpose.'<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *The Chronicle of England*. By John Capgrave Edited by Rev. F. C. Hingeston. R. S. 1858.

<sup>2</sup> *Johannis Capgrave Liber de Illustribus Henricis*. Edited by Rev. F. C. Hingeston R. S. 1858. Of this work Mr. Hingeston has also published a translation.

<sup>3</sup> Hingeston, *Pref.* p. xvii

THOMAS OTTERBOURNE, a Franciscan friar who lived in the reigns of Henry IV. and V., wrote a contemporary chronicle entitled *Chronica Regum Angliae*.<sup>1</sup> This concludes abruptly with the assassination of the duke of Burgundy in the year 1419. Otterbourne and Walsingham either drew from common sources or copied the one from the other; but there are also facts recorded in the *Chronica* which we do not meet with elsewhere, and which rest on good authority.

CHAP  
V

Thomas  
Otter-  
bourne

For the reign of Henry V. we have, besides Capgrave, three other biographies: (1) The *Life* by THOMAS ELMHAM, prior of Lenton, near Nottingham, which he also rendered, with numerous additional facts, into English verse;<sup>2</sup> (2) that known as the 'Chaplain's account,' written in 1418 by a chaplain in the army under Henry's command;<sup>3</sup> (3) the *Life* by one TITUS LIVIUS, an Italian, who was patronised by Humphrey, duke of Gloucester, and was one of the privy council of Henry VI, to whom the work is dedicated.<sup>4</sup> Of these the first is much the more full and important, but is written in an inflated grandiloquent style which frequently obscures the author's meaning. The *Life* by Livius, on the other hand, is comparatively simple in its language, and, in the opinion of one critic, is mainly a compilation from Elmham. Hearne, however, points out that each writer presents us with many facts which are not to be found

*Lives of  
Henry V.  
by Elm-  
ham, the  
'Chaplain'  
and Titus  
Livius*

<sup>1</sup> *Duo Rerum Anglicarum Scriptores Veteres: viz. Thomas Otterbourne et Johannes Whethamstede, ab Origine Gentis Britannicæ usque ad Edwardum IV.* Edited by Thomas Hearne 1732.

<sup>2</sup> *Thomæ de Elmham Vita et Gesta Henrici Quinti Anglorum Regis.* Edited by Thomas Hearne. 1727. The metrical version has been printed by Mr. Cole in the *Memorials of Henry V.* R. S.

<sup>3</sup> *Henrici Quinti, Angliæ Regis, Gesta, auctore Capellano in Exercitu Regio, cum Chronico Neustriæ, Gallicæ, ab ann. 1414-22* Edited by B. Williams. E. H. S 1846.

<sup>4</sup> *Titu Livii Foro Juliensis Vita Henrici Quinti Regis Angliæ.* Edited by Thomas Hearne. 1716.



CHAP.  
V

---

*Chronique  
de Nor-  
mandie.*

Siege of  
Rouen.

in the other. The 'Chaplain's account,' first printed by Mr. Williams, goes no further than the year 1418, the continuation from that time to the close of Henry's reign, being taken from Sloane MS. 1776, which is little more than an abridgment of Elmham. The author was probably a Frenchman, and his accounts of the siege of Harfleur and the battle of Agincourt are especially full and animated. The volume containing this *Life* gives us also a *Chronique de Normandie* frequently cited by Fabyan. 'The dates of this latter composition,' says the editor, 'are often incorrect, but it supplies us with much valuable information which we do not obtain from our English chroniclers, especially an account of Henry's residence at Paris, and the proceedings between the rival parties in that city' (*Pref.* p. xi).

Further information respecting Henry's campaign in \*Normandy will be found in the work of M. Puiseux, *Le Siège de Rouen* (Caen, 1867), and also in the *Siege of Rouen* by John Page, which narrates in verse the incidents of that tragical experience, as recalled by an eye-witness.<sup>1</sup>

As contrasted with the materials for the history of Henry the Fifth's foreign wars and that waged in the early part of the reign of his successor,<sup>2</sup> our information respecting the domestic life of the nation is sadly inadequate. Walsingham, as already noted, leaves us with the year 1422, and for the first ten years of the reign of Henry VI., Fabyan's *Chronicle*, together with the data supplied by the Rolls of Parliament and Rymer's *Foedera*, constituted, until recently, nearly the only printed sources. Under these circumstances, the *Annales* of

<sup>1</sup> *The Historical Collections of a Citizen of London in the Fifteenth Century* Edited by James Gardner. C. S. 1877.

<sup>2</sup> See *Letters and Papers illustrative of the Wars of the English in France during the Reign of Henry VI.* Edited by J. Stevenson. 2 vols. R. S. 1864.

the monastery of St. Albans, for the years 1421 to 1440, attributed to JOHN AMUNDESHAM,<sup>1</sup> a member of the community and afterwards president of a Benedictine College at Oxford, and another *Chronicle*<sup>2</sup> by an unknown member of the same foundation, acquire an exceptional value. Though alike concerned mainly with events relating to the abbey of St. Albans and its members, both these productions constitute a singular and often amusing illustration of the learning, discipline, and customs of English monasticism at this period. The *Annales*, more especially, deserve to be read for the interesting sketch they contain of the career of WHETHAMSTEDE, who was twice abbat of the society, and whose memory Amundesham avows himself anxious to guard from detraction. Both Amundesham and Whethamstede would seem to have been favourable specimens of their order; the former was an accomplished scholar; the latter, a scholar, and also a traveller, and well versed in the ways of the world. Of the latter period of his abbacy, Whethamstede himself composed a *Register*,<sup>3</sup> which relates to events of the years 1452 to 1461. It is consequently concerned with the time of the great struggle between the Red and the White Rose, and from the towers of the monastery its inmates may have viewed the battle of 1455, which took place in the immediate vicinity. From this date to its close, the *Register*, unlike the two other chronicles above described,

CHAP.  
V

John  
Amundes-  
ham.

John  
Whetham-  
stede

<sup>1</sup> *Johannis Amundesham, Monachi Monasterii S. Albani, ut videtur, Annales.* 2 vols., forming volumes viii. and ix. of the *Chronica Monasterii S. Albani*. Edited by Mr. Riley, see *supra*

<sup>2</sup> This Chronicle,—*Chronicon Rerum gestarum in Monasterio S. Albani* (A. D. 1422–1431) a quodam Auctore ignoto compilatum,—is described and included by Mr. Riley in the above volumes of John Amundesham.

<sup>3</sup> *Registrum Abbatiae Johannis Whethamstede, Abbatis Monasterii Sancti Albani, utrum susceptae* In vol. x. of the same *Chronica*, edited by Mr. Riley. On the use of the term 'Register,' see Bacon, *Advancement of Learning*, bk. II. ii. 2.

CHAP.  
V

---

ceases accordingly to be a mere record of the history of the house, and embodies some important notices of the strife that was going on between the contending parties without.

Other  
Chronicles  
for Reign  
of Henry  
VI.

Bekynton's  
*Correspondence*.

Two other *Chronicles* relating to the reign of Henry VI. have just been edited by Mr. Gairdner.<sup>1</sup>

The *Correspondence* of bishop BEKYNTON, secretary to Henry VI., contains both letters written by himself and several written in the royal name, as well as letters addressed to the king and to himself. Though not of any striking interest, the correspondence serves to illustrate some points in our national history in the first half of the fifteenth century.<sup>2</sup>

John Hardyng  
d. 1378.  
d. 1465.

JOHN HARDYNG, a dependant of the family of the Percies, who was frequently employed in state business in the reigns of Henry V. and Henry VI, composed a *Chronicle* treating of the earliest period of English history, and terminating with the flight of Henry into Scotland.<sup>3</sup> This was continued by RICHARD GRAFTON, a man of good family and liberal education, to the thirty-fourth year of the reign of Henry VIII. The treatment by both writers presents us only with a very meagre collection of facts, while Grafton's work is little more than a transcript of Hall (see *infra*, p. 299.)

Richard  
Grafton.  
d after  
1572

Jean de  
Waurin.

The *Collection of Chronicles* by JEAN DE WAURIN<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Two Chronicles of the Reign of Henry VI.* Edited by James Gairdner. C. S. 1880.

<sup>2</sup> *Memorials of the Reign of Henry VI. Official Correspondence of Thomas Bekynton, Bishop of Bath and Wells* Edited by Rev. George Williams Vols. i. and ii. R. S 1872

<sup>3</sup> *The Chronicle of John Hardyng, containing an Account of Public Transactions from the earliest Period of English History to the Beginning of the Reign of King Edward the Fourth. Together with the Continuation by Richard Grafton, to the Thirty-Fourth Year of King Henry the Eighth.* Edited by H. Ellis 1812.

<sup>4</sup> *Recueil des Croniques et Anchiennes Istories de la Grant Bretagne & present nomme Engleterre.* par Jehan de Waurin. Vol 1., Albina to

embraces the period from the first fabled settlement in Britain to the author's own times,—that is, to the expedition undertaken by king Edward IV. against the Bastard of Falconbridge, after the defeat and death of the prince of Wales and queen Margaret at Tewkesbury in 1471. It consists of six volumes, each volume being divided into six books, volume v. containing the period 1413–43; volume vi. that from 1443–71. For the fourteenth century there can be no doubt that Jean borrows a good deal from Froissart. His merits and claims to rank as an independent authority are discussed by Mr. Hardy in his *Introduction* (vol. i. pp. clv–ccx).

WILLIAM OF WORCESTER (also known as ‘the Bottoner’), was born at Bristol about the year 1415, and received his education at Oxford at the expense of Sir John Fastolf, with whom he afterwards lived at Caistor in Norfolk, and in relation to whom he filled the several functions of esquire, historian, and executor. He died about 1490. Worcester was a man of considerable learning, and was indefatigable in the study of the antiquities of the kingdom; but his *Annales Rerum Anglicarum*,<sup>1</sup> which extend from A.D. 1324–1491, exhibit no merits beyond those of the ordinary chronicler. Besides the *Annales*, Worcester compiled certain ‘Collections concerning the Affairs of Normandy and France,’ in French.<sup>2</sup>

William of  
Worcester's  
*Annals* and  
*Collections*.

The most important source of information with respect to the last-named subject is, however, the *Chronicle* of JEAN LE BEL,<sup>3</sup> a native of Liège and of noble family, Jean le Bel.

A D. 688; vol. ii. A D 1399–1422; vol. iii. 1422–1431. Edited by W. Hardy R. S. 1864–79 A translation of vol. i. by Mr. Hardy has also appeared. R. S. 1864.

<sup>1</sup> In vol. ii. of the *Liber Niger Scaccarii* (ed. Hearne, 1771); also in *Letters and Papers illustrative of the Wars of the English in France* (*supra*, p. 290, note 2) vol. ii. pt. ii.

<sup>2</sup> Also included in Mr Stevenson's collection

<sup>3</sup> *Jehan le Bel. Chroniques*. Edited by M. L. Polain. 1863.

CHAP.  
V.

---

Froissart.  
b 1337.  
d. 1410.

Enguer-  
rand de  
Monstrelet  
b 1390  
d. 1453

Robert  
Blondel.  
b 1390.  
d 1460.

who, together with his brother served under Jean of Hainault in the expedition undertaken by Edward III. against the Scots at the commencement of his reign. The writer was himself participant in many of the events which he describes, and his experiences in England having made him familiar with the habits and characteristics of those to whom he was opposed by nationality, his narrative is comparatively free from unjust prejudices. The period it embraces is that extending from A D 1326 to 1361, and it thus corresponds with the first part of the first book of FROISSART, by whom it was adopted as the basis of his better-known work, in which graphic and lively description but imperfectly compensates for his want of trustworthiness as an authority. Froissart continues the subject to the year 1400, when his place is supplied by the *Chronicles* of Enguerrand de MONSTRELET, who treats at length of the English war and the English expulsion from Normandy, his work terminating with the year 1467. For the events of the years 1449 and 1450, however, the most detailed account is that contained in the narrative of ROBERT BLONDEL, entitled *de Reductione Normanniae*.<sup>1</sup> Blondel was a Norman and attached successively to the courts of the queen of Sicily and Charles VII. He records with considerable minuteness and precision the incidents that occurred in Normandy, Brittany, and France, from the capture of Fougères, when the truce between England and France was broken, to the defeat and final expulsion of the English after the loss of Cherbourg. Allowing for occasional acerbities of expression, his narrative may be accepted as a fair and honest representation of events.

*The Historie of the Arrivall of Edward IV. in Eng-*

<sup>1</sup> *Narratives of the Expulsion of the English from Normandy, 1449-50. Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniae* etc. Ed. J. Stevenson. R.S. 1863.

*land*,<sup>1</sup> contains the best contemporary account of the final overthrow of the Lancastrian party. The editor has also furnished in the Preface an instructive criticism of the writers from whom we chiefly derive our knowledge of this period, and who were especially followed by the chroniclers.

CHAP.  
V.

*Historie of  
the Arrivall of Ed-  
ward IV.*

For the social causes which mainly conduced to the Wars of the Roses, Mr. Gairdner's valuable Prefaces to his edition of the *Paston Letters*<sup>2</sup> should be studied, together with the letters themselves. While destitute, for the most part, of any literary interest or charm, this remarkable collection brings very clearly before us the degraded moral sense, the coarseness of feeling, and the rude manners characteristic of domestic life in England at this period. The letters are also of service as showing the real character of Jack Cade's rebellion, and the ruthless spirit in which party warfare was carried on in the counties. They illustrate, in short, the conditions under which the reactionary rule of the Tudor dynasty became possible.

*Paston  
Letters.*

A *Chronicle of the Rebellion in Lincolnshire* in 1470 is valuable not only as detailing particulars, not elsewhere found, of an obscure episode in the great struggle, but as proceeding from a writer instructed by the king's government, and who appeals to documents throughout.<sup>3</sup>

The Re-  
bellion in  
Lincoln-  
shire

For the literary history of the period, the *Philobiblon*<sup>4</sup> of RICHARD OF BURY is of considerable value; while

Richard of  
Bury and  
Reginald  
Pecock.

<sup>1</sup> *Historie of the Arrivall of Edward IV. in England and the finall Recoverye of his Kingdomes from Henry VI. A.D. 1471.* Edited by John Bruce C. S. 1838.

<sup>2</sup> *The Paston Letters.* Edited by James Gairdner. 3 vols. 1872-1875.

<sup>3</sup> Edited by John Gough Nichols for *Camden Miscellany*, vol. i. C. S. 1847.

<sup>4</sup> An excellent edition, accompanied by a translation, has been published by the late E. C. Thomas London, 1889.

CHAP  
V

the theological and scholastic tendencies of the age are reflected in the pages of the *Repressor* of REGINALD PECOCK.<sup>1</sup>

Continuation of the  
*Croyland Chronicle*

The *Continuation of the Croyland Chronicle*,<sup>2</sup> by more than one hand, is a genuine continuation of the spurious work ascribed to Ingulphus (*supra*, p. 255), and carries on the history to the year 1486; in the great dearth of historical writers on the latter years of the reign of Henry VI and on the reign of Edward IV., this narrative, meagre though it be, becomes of no slight importance. The *Chronicle* of JOHN WARKWORTH also preserves some valuable details with respect to the latter period.<sup>3</sup>

Warkworth's  
*Chronicle*

More's  
*Richard III.*

The account of Edward V. and Richard III by SIR THOMAS MORE,<sup>4</sup> may be accepted as virtually that of a contemporary, the facts having been in all probability communicated by his patron, archbishop Morton, in whose household he was a page in his youth. As a literary composition, the work is also deserving of note from the contrast which it presents in its purity and vigour of diction to most of the historical productions of this century. Some of the diplomatic papers of Richard III. are to be found in the *Letters and Papers* edited by Mr. Gairdner.<sup>5</sup>

Papers of  
Richard  
III.

The brief period of the nominal rule of Edward V. has been illustrated by a series of extracts from the

<sup>1</sup> *The Repressor of over much Blaming of the Clergy* By Reginald Pecock, sometime Bishop of Chichester. 2 vols. Edited by Churchill Babington. B.D. R. S. 1860

<sup>2</sup> Printed in Gale's *Scriptores*, i. 451-593; see *supra*, p. 217.

<sup>3</sup> *A Chronicle of the First Thirteen Years of the Reign of King Edward IV.* By John Warkworth, D.D. Edited by J. O. Halliwell. C. S. 1839. See also articles in *Gentleman's Magazine* and *Archaeologia* enumerated in *Descriptive Catalogue of Works of Camden Society*, p. 9.

<sup>4</sup> Printed at Louvain in 1556; an English translation is given in Kennet, vol. 1. see *supra*, p. 217.

<sup>5</sup> *Letters and Papers illustrative of the Reigns of Richard III and Henry VII.* Edited by James Gairdner. 2 vols. R. S. 1864.

*Docket-Book*, or Register to the Crown, edited by Mr. Nichols. The evidence which these supply is occasionally important; among other points, it effectually disproves the supposition of Sharon Turner, that a parliament was held during this time, and that the duke of Gloucester derived from it his authority as Protector.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP  
V

*Docket-Book of Edward V.*

The *Chronicle* of ROBERT FABYAN, sheriff of London in 1493, extends from the fabulous period of British history, when 'Brute first entered Albion,' to the year 1485. Fabyan was a man of considerable attainments for his time, and in the earlier portion of his work, he makes some endeavour to reconcile the discordant statements of different historians. As a contemporary authority, his narrative is confined, for the most part, to events in London, but he is at the same time strongly Lancastrian in his sympathies<sup>2</sup>

Fabyan's  
*Chronicle*.

The testimony of fourteenth and fifteenth century writers, such as Knighton, Capgrave, Netter, Walsingham, and others, with respect to WYCLIF is uniformly unfavourable. It is from his own works and the more appreciative criticism of modern writers that he is to be judged. His principal English writings have been edited by Mr. Arnold,<sup>3</sup> and are admirable specimens of the 'New English' of the fourteenth century. The *Fasciculi Zizaniorum* ('Little Bundles of Tares') ascribed

Contem-  
porary  
Writers on  
Wyclif and  
Lollard-  
ism.

<sup>1</sup> *Grants, &c., from the Crown during the Reign of Edward the Fifth, from the original Docket-Book MS. Harl 433. And two Speeches for opening Parliament, by John Russell, Bishop of Lincoln, Lord Chancellor. With an Historical Introduction.* By John Gough Nichols. C. S. 1854.

<sup>2</sup> *The New Chronicles of England and France, in two Parts; by Robert Fabyan. Named by himself the Concordance of Histories.* Edited by Henry Ellis. 1811.

<sup>3</sup> *Wyclif's Select English Works.* By T. Arnold. 3 vols. Clarendon Press 1871. [This collection has recently been supplemented by another publication, *The English Works of Wyclif hitherto unprinted.* Edited by F. D. Matthew. E. E. T. Soc. 1880]



CHAP.  
V.

---

to THOMAS NETTER of Walden,<sup>1</sup> provincial of the Carmelite order in England, and confessor to Henry V., is the only contemporary account of the rise of Lollardism. It is, however, the production of a writer hostile to the movement, and chiefly valuable as an illustration of the theological controversies of the age.

*Political  
Poems and  
Songs.*

Contemporary satire and popular sentiment are illustrated by another collection of *Political Poems and Songs*, edited by Mr. T. Wright.<sup>2</sup>

Polydore  
Vergil.  
b. 1470.  
d. 1555.

(B.) **Non-contemporary Writers.**—The *Historia Anglica* of POLYDORE VERGIL is the production of a learned Italian, the friend of Erasmus, and notable as the last collector of 'Peter's Pence' in this country. He resided in England nearly half a century (A.D. 1503–50), and his work, undertaken at the request of king Henry VIII., appeared at Basel in 1534. It is divided into twenty-six books, of which three relate to the reigns of Henry VI., Edward IV., and Richard III. These were translated into English in the sixteenth century, and the English version was published in 1846, by the Camden Society, with a preface by Sir Henry Ellis.<sup>3</sup> In point of literary merit, the *Historia Anglica* exhibits a great advance, both in conception and style, upon preceding histories. 'It was,' says Sir Henry Ellis, 'the first of our histories in which the writer ventured to compare the facts and weigh the statements of his predecessors; and it was the first in which summaries of personal

Merits of  
his  
*Historia  
Anglica.*

<sup>1</sup> *Fasciculi Zizaniorum Magistri Johannis Wyclif cum Tritico*. Edited by Rev. W. W. Shirley. R. S. 1858.

<sup>2</sup> *Political Poems and Songs relating to English History, composed during the Period from the Accession of Edward III. to the Reign of Henry VIII.* 2 vols. R.S. 1859–61. (For contents, down to reign of Richard III., see Hardy, *D. C.* i. 867).

<sup>3</sup> Another volume, also published by the Camden Society (1844), contains an English version of the first eight books of Polydore's History (which relate to the period prior to the Norman Conquest), by the same editor.

character are introduced in the terse and energetic form adopted in the Roman classics.' With respect to the books included in the above translation, the same critic observes, that 'it is important to know that Polydore wrote this portion of his work whilst many of the persons alluded to in the events of the reigns of Edward IV. and Richard III. were alive, and who communicated with him' (*Pref.* pp. xxviii. and xxxii).

CHAP.  
V.

The work of EDWARD HALL, entitled *The Union of the Two Noble Families of Lancaster and Yorke*, first printed in 1542, commences with the deposition of Richard II, and terminates with the reign of Henry VIII. For the present period it is mainly a compilation, made, however, with much care, from every available source, including French and German authorities. The style, though highly Latinised, is vigorous and clear. To the student of Shakespeare, Hall's narrative is of special interest, as the source from whence the great dramatist derived the materials for his historical plays.

Edward  
Hall.  
*ib.* 1499.  
*d* 1547.

A *Life of Henry V*, by one ROBERT REDMAN,<sup>1</sup> written about 1540, is interesting as a source of tradition with respect to Henry's foreign policy, and also for the corroboration it affords of some of Shakespeare's representations of events; it has, however, no claim to rank as an authority. The writer appears to have belonged to the party of the Reformers.

Redman's  
*Life of  
Henry V.*

(C) **Modern Writers.**—In relation to the careers and characters of the Black Prince and Richard III., Dr. PAULI has given a careful and interesting study of each in his *Aufsätze zur Englischen Geschichte* (1869); but of the latter, the most complete and trustworthy account is that supplied in the *Life* by MR. JAMES GAIRDNER,<sup>2</sup>

*Lives by*  
Pauli,  
Gairdner,  
Longman,  
Wallon,  
Freeman,  
Brougham,  
Hallam.

<sup>1</sup> *Memorials of Henry the Fifth.* Edited by C. A. Cole. R. S. 1858

<sup>2</sup> *History of the Life and Reign of Richard the Third. To which is*

CHAP.  
V

---

in which the conclusions of the writer tend mainly to a vindication of the traditional accounts, and especially of the representations contained in Hall. For the history of Edward III., LONGMAN'S *History of the Life and Times* of that monarch may be consulted with advantage.<sup>1</sup> M. WALLON has written the best account of Richard II.<sup>2</sup> MR. FREEMAN'S comparative estimate of the French wars of Edward III. and Henry V., in his *Essays* (First Series), offers the best criticism of our continental policy at this period; while LORD BROUGHAM'S *History of England under the House of Lancaster*<sup>3</sup> is a vigorous sketch of our political history at large. The last two chapters of HALLAM'S *Middle Ages* are eminently suggestive for the whole subject of medieval legislation and institutions, and his treatment of the subject of Chivalry still remains one of the best and most dispassionate estimates of that phase of civilisation. MR. MACKENZIE E. C. WALCOTT'S *William of Wykeham and his Colleges* (1852) is an interesting and careful sketch of the great reformer of education in the fourteenth century. MR. ANSTEY'S Preface to the *Munimenta Academica*<sup>4</sup> illustrates the conditions of academic life and learning throughout the period, while these features may be further studied in DEAN HOOK'S sketch of Thomas Bradwardine in his *Lives of the Archbishops*. The biographies in the same series—John Stratford (archbp. 1333-48), Simon Islip (1349-66), Simon Sudbury (1375-81), William Courtney (1381-96),

Walcott's  
*Wykeham*

Anstey.

Hook's  
*Arch-  
bishops*.

added the story of Perkin Warbeck from original Documents. By James Gairdner 1878.

<sup>1</sup> *The History of the Life and Times of Edward III.* By W Longman. 2 vols.

<sup>2</sup> Richard II. *Épisode de la rivalité de la France et d'Angleterre.* 2 vols. 1864.

<sup>3</sup> New edit. 1861.

<sup>4</sup> *Munimenta Academica*; or, *Documents illustrative of Academical Life and Studies at Oxford.* 2 vols. R. S. 1868.

Thomas Arundel (1396-1414), Henry Chicheley (1414-43), and Thomas Bourchier (1454-86),—are, for the most part, able sketches, which supply useful illustration of the relations of the English Church to the State, a subject that is more systematically treated in the 19th chapter of PROFESSOR STUBBS' *Constitutional History*. MR. SHIRLEY'S Preface to the *Fasciculi Zizaniorum* renders a like service in connexion with Wyclif and Lollardism, and the Papacy,—a piece of valuable criticism which should be studied in conjunction with MR GAIRDNER'S article entitled *Bible Thought in the Fifteenth Century*.<sup>1</sup> Another article by the same writer on *Jack Cade's Rebellion*<sup>2</sup> brings out the real significance of that movement, as 'the first move in the struggle between the Houses of York and Lancaster.' A good general outline of the decline of the Papacy and the causes that led to the Reformation will be found in the tenth chapter of GEFFCKEN'S *Church and State*, translated by Fairfax Taylor. Shirley.  
Gairdner.  
Geffcken.

For the important relations in which the Dukes of Burgundy, as rulers of Flanders, stood with respect to English politics and commerce in the fifteenth century, the student should consult the *Life* of Charles the Bold by MR. KIRK,<sup>3</sup> a work of considerable research, and enlivened by much brilliant and vigorous description.

Kirk's  
*Life of*  
*Charles the*  
*Bold.*

In connexion with the condition of the English peasantry at this period, and more especially with the popular revolt of 1381, the first two volumes of the late THOROLD ROGERS' *History of Agriculture and Prices in England*<sup>4</sup> supply the best statistical information.

Rogers'  
*History of*  
*Prices.*

<sup>1</sup> *Fortnightly Review*, vol. 11.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid* Oct. 1870

<sup>3</sup> *History of Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy*. By John Foster Kirk. 3 vols. 1863.

<sup>4</sup> Of this valuable work six volumes have been published, commencing with the year after the Oxford Parliament (1259) and concluding with the year 1702. It was the author's design to carry it on to the year 1793. The prefaces to these volumes are singularly instructive.

## CHAPTER VI.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII. TO THE DEATH  
OF ELIZABETH.CHAP.  
VI.Polydore  
Vergil  
and Hall.

(A.) **Contemporary Writers.**—It is a significant proof of the dearth of literary talent in England at the close of the fifteenth century, that our best sources of information with respect to the national history, so far, at least, as they assume the form of narrative, are from the pens of foreigners. Polydore Vergil now attains his chief value,<sup>1</sup> and as an authority for the reign of Henry VII greatly surpasses all native writers, Hall being here little more than a translator of his contemporary's work. In connexion with the reign of Henry VIII, however, Polydore is by no means altogether to be trusted, and more than one critic, and especially Mr. Brewer, has convicted him of very unscrupulous misrepresentations with respect to individual characters; of cardinal Wolsey he habitually writes with an animosity which is sufficiently ex-

<sup>1</sup> As regards Polydore, Mr. Gairdner's criticism appears well worthy of being quoted. 'There was certainly,' he says, 'something in the new condition of things that produced a feeling of constraint; and the dull intellects of native writers, accustomed only to record external events, which the contentions of feudal nobles and rival dynasties had produced in unwelcome abundance, could not be expected to penetrate the veil of subtle statesmanship, by which a politic and peaceful, but watchful and suspicious king, was putting an end to the long reign of violence. It required the brain of an Italian to gather the acts of such a reign into a regular narrative, and make their real significance apparent'—*Early Chroniclers*, p. 306.

plained by some of the incidents in his personal career. Hall, on the other hand, exhibits the opposite prejudices. He was a lawyer by profession, and he appears to have hailed with special satisfaction the accession of a sovereign whose undeniable hereditary right gave promise of a more tranquil era. While therefore he continues to borrow largely from Polydore, his strong sympathies with the Crown lead him to justify and extol Henry's policy to an undue extent; some of the passages which he adapts from his contemporary, containing expressions unfavourable to the Reformation, are even altered by him so as to bear a contrary sense. But there are also portions of Hall's narrative in which he becomes a valuable original authority. Among these is his account of the rising of the 'prentice lads against the aliens in London, and of some of the passages in Wolsey's career, where he writes as a personal observer.

To another foreigner, BERNARD ANDRÉ of Toulouse, we are also indebted for an excellent account, perhaps the best from a contemporary pen, of the reign of Henry VII.<sup>1</sup> André was an Italian scholar, who, after having taught at Oxford, became permanently attached to the court of Henry VII. as poet laureat, and was the recipient of an annual pension. His *Life* of his royal patron is written in excellent Latin, and reflects, in its numerous quotations from classical authors and its frequent poetical effusions, the influence of the Renaissance. The example of Livy is especially to be recognised in the speeches attributed to Richard III. and Henry. The sketch of Henry's career prior to his coronation is probably derived from statements made by the monarch himself, but it supplies only an imperfect

Bernard  
André.

<sup>1</sup> *Historia Regis Henrici Septimi, a Bernardo Andrea Tholosate conscripta, necnon alia quaedam ad eundem regem spectantia.* Edited by James Gairdner. R. S. 1858.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

The Venetian 'Relation'

outline, and the value of the whole composition consists rather in the fact that it is the production of a contemporary than in the information which it supplies.

Another sketch of England under Henry VII. is the work of a Venetian, the secretary, it is, supposed, of Francesco Capella, ambassador from the Republic of Venice to Henry's court.<sup>1</sup> It gives a clear and intelligent account of such features in the English political, commercial, and financial institutions as the writer thought likely to interest his countrymen. The time of its composition is supposed to be A.D. 1496-1502.

The London Chronicle.

An account of London during the reigns of Henry VII. and Henry VIII.,<sup>2</sup> published by the Camden Society, supplies a series of short notes on public events, from the progress of the Royal family and the arrival of illustrious visitors in London, down to minor incidents, such as the paving of Chancery, Fetter, and Shoe Lanes, the doings of the London 'prentices,' &c.

Harfsfield and Pole

For the Divorce and the rupture with Rome of which it was mainly the cause, the treatise of NICHOLAS HARPSFIELD<sup>3</sup> and that of REGINALD POLE, *de Unitate Ecclesiae*, are two of the most noteworthy illustrations of the feelings and sentiments of the Catholic party.

Among the numerous City chronicles of this period, which intelligent London citizens were in the habit of

<sup>1</sup> *A Relation, or rather a true Account, of the Isle of England; with sundry particulars of the Customs of these People and of the royal Revenues under King Henry the Seventh, about the year 1500* Translated from the Italian, with Notes, by Charlotte Augusta Sneyd. C. S. 1847.

<sup>2</sup> *A London Chronicle during the Reigns of Henry VII. and Henry VIII.* Edited by Clarence Hopper. Camden Miscellany, vol. iv. C. S. 1859.

<sup>3</sup> Harpsfield's *Treatise of the Pretended Divorce between Henry VIII. and Catharine of Aragon*. Edited by the Rev N. Pocock. C. S. 1879 See also the materials collected by the same editor in connection with the Divorce Question, entitled 'Records of the Reformation' (1527-1533) 2 vols. Clar. Press. 1870.

compiling, although apparently without any notion of bringing them under the public eye, is that of CHARLES WRIOTHESLEY, Windsor Herald<sup>1</sup> This is of some value as shewing us the way in which an Englishman of ordinary intelligence regarded the events of the time. Down to the eleventh year of Henry VIII. the *Chronicle* is a mere piece of plagiarism, but from that date it becomes original and supplies some valuable information.

CHAP.  
VI.

Wriothesley's  
*Chronicle*.

No works of the period describe with greater force the social evils and abuses prevalent in the first half of the sixteenth century than the *Utopia* of SIR THOMAS MORE,<sup>2</sup> and STARKEY'S *England in the Reign of Henry VIII.*<sup>3</sup> In the former production, these features are brought into relief by juxtaposition with the laws and institutions of an imaginary Commonwealth. In the latter, the treatment is cast into the form of a dialogue between Reginald Pole and Lupset. Thomas Lupset, who was afterwards a professor at Oxford, edited, while studying at Paris, a reprint of the first edition of the *Utopia* (printed at Paris, about 1518), and the two works have many sentiments in common. Of the *Dialogue*, its latest editor says, 'its unimpassioned statements respecting men, its judge-like suggestions for improvement, its keen appreciation of what would profit the country, and make men wiser, happier, and better, give it a value which few works of the time possess.'

More's  
*Utopia* and  
Starkey's  
*England*.

With the Reformation, our English historical literature begins to reflect the influences of the controversial spirit

Influences  
of the Re-  
formation.

<sup>1</sup> *A Chronicle of England during the Reigns of the Tudors, from A.D. 1485 to 1559.* By Charles Wriothesley. Edited by W. D. Hamilton 2 vols. C. S. 1875.

<sup>2</sup> *Utopia.* Originally printed in Latin, 1516. Translated into English by Ralph Robinson. Edited by Edward Arber. 1869

<sup>3</sup> *England in the Reign of King Henry the Eighth.* By Thomas Starkey, Chaplain to the King. Edited by J. M. Cowper. E. E. T. Soc. 1871.



CHAP.  
VI.  

---

of the age to an extent which renders it necessary to exercise more than ordinary caution in accepting many statements, however positively and circumstantially affirmed. While we can discern in writers of every school the effect of the new studies on learning, and also the growing richness and power of the native language, the spirit of partisanship becomes at the same time increasingly perceptible. The accounts given by Catholic writers concerning Protestants, or by Protestant writers concerning Catholics, those of either Catholics or Anglicans concerning Puritans, or those of Puritans concerning Catholics or Anglicans, are to be looked upon with almost equal distrust until corroborated by other and less prejudiced testimony. The overthrow of the monasteries, again, involved the discontinuance of much of the former laborious research,—the quiet and the assured maintenance necessary to the prosecution of such labours being no longer at the command of the scholar,—a fact of which we are painfully reminded by the indifferent reward which waited upon the labours of patient investigators, such as Leland and Stowe, who ventured to carry on historical work at their own risk. A third cause, which operated powerfully to the prejudice of all learned enterprise, was the absorption of much of the intellectual vigour of the age in the narrow but exciting arena of theological polemics.

Holin-  
shed's  
*Chronicles.*

The collection known under the name of HOLINSHED'S *Chronicles*,<sup>1</sup> is devoted mainly to purely political or social events, and is comparatively free from exaggerated partisanship. It contains (1) *A Description of*

<sup>1</sup> *Holinshed's Chronicles of England, Scotland, and Ireland. First collected and published by Raphael Holinshed, William Harrison, and others. Now newlie augmented and continued to the year 1586. By John Hooker, alias Vowell, Gent., and others. (Of this, the edition of 1807 in 6 vols. 4to. is an exact reprint.)*

*England* by William Harrison, a work of considerable topographical and antiquarian interest ; (2) *A Chronicle of Ireland*, derived from Giraldus Cambrensis as far as the Norman Conquest, from which time to the year 1509 it is the compilation of Holinshed ; it was then continued by Richard Stanyhurst (a Catholic, and the uncle of archbishop Ussher), who brings the narrative down to 1547 ; from thence to 1586 it is the work of John Hooker, alias Vowell, an uncle of the eminent author of the *Ecclesiastical Polity* ; (3) *A Chronicle of Scotland*, chiefly from the Latin of Hector Boethius, by William Harrison ; (4) *A Chronicle of England*, by Holinshed, who carried his work as far as the year 1577, whence it was continued to 1586 by John Hooker, (5) *A Chronicle of Scotland*, by Holinshed and other hands, compiled from Boethius, John Major, and the continuation of Boethius by John Ferreri. The range of Holinshed's reading was considerable, and in the compilation of his work he had the advantage of being allowed to consult the manuscripts of Leland. In his dedication, he professes to 'have had an especial eye unto the truth of things,' a claim which is fairly borne out by his own share in the performance ; and, on the whole, the collection justifies the description of its compilers given by Holinshed himself in his preface, as the work of 'men of commendable diligence though not of deepest judgement.' The first edition of the *Chronicles* appeared in two volumes folio, in 1557 ; but the edition of 1807, to which reference is given in the footnote, is a reprint of the edition of 1586-7 in 3 vols., in which certain passages of the original edition, displeasing to Elizabeth and her ministers, had been suppressed by order of the Privy Council. The suppressed passages were however printed separately in 1723.

The works of JOHN STOWE, in their conception and

CHAP.  
VI.John  
Stowe.  
b. 1525.  
d. 1605.His *Summary*,  
*Annales*,  
and *Survey*  
of London.

character, somewhat resemble the foregoing Chronicles. He was the son of a merchant tailor of London, and became one of the most distinguished antiquaries of the century. His theological sympathies, which were first those of a moderate Catholic, and subsequently of a loyal adherent of the Established Church, inclined him to look with reverence and interest on the institutions and memorials of the past. He was the author of (1) *A Summary of the Chronicles of England*,<sup>1</sup>—a small popular manual of English history, which, so far as it relates to sixteenth century history, consists mainly of notable political events, extraordinary occurrences, natural phenomena, &c. ; (2) *Annales*,<sup>2</sup> a work of similar character, but more strictly historical in its conception, continued to the year 1614, by Edward Howes, who re-edited it under the title of Stowe's *Chronicle* ; (3) *A Survey of London and Westminster*,<sup>3</sup> treating of the history and antiquities of the two cities for a period of six centuries, together with their municipal institutions and forms of govern-

<sup>1</sup> *A Summarie of the Chronicles of England, from the first arriving of Brute in this Ieland unto this present yeere of Christ, 1590. First collected, since enlarged, and now continued by John Stowe, citizen of London.* London, 1590.

<sup>2</sup> *The Annales, or Generall Chronicle of England, begun first by maister John Stow, and after him continued and augmented with matters forayne and domestic, auncient and moderne, unto the end of this present yeere 1614.* By Edward Howes, gentleman. London, 1615. (Howes dedicates his edition to Prince Charles.)

<sup>3</sup> *A Survey of the Cities of London and Westminster: containing the Original, Antiquity, Increase, Modern Estate and Government of those Cities. Written at first in the year 1598. By John Stow, citizen and native of London. Since reprinted and augmented by the Author and afterwards by A[nthony] M[onday], H[umphrey] D[yson], and others. Now lastly corrected, improved, and very much enlarged, and the Survey and History brought down from the year 1633 to the present time, by John Strype, M.A. To which is prefixed the Life of the Author, writ by the Editor.* London, 1720. Another and much more compendious edition was published by Mr. Thoms in 1842.

ment; the contemporary portion is described by Mr. Thoms as 'a simple unadorned picture of London at the close of the sixteenth century.'

CHAP.  
VI.

For what is usually denominated the Reformation period, the chief contemporary source of information is JOHN FOXE'S *History of the Acts and Monuments of the Church*,<sup>1</sup> more commonly known as the 'Book of Martyrs.' Foxe was a man of high character and undoubted integrity of purpose, but his sympathies were altogether with the extreme Protestant party, and his Puritanical views would never permit him to subscribe to the Articles of the Established Church. There is consequently little reason to doubt that, though there is no reason to suppose that he wilfully mistated facts, his representations are largely coloured by his feelings as a partisan. He was acrimoniously attacked by Harding, Harpsfield (Alan Cope), and others, but their vehemence in a great measure recoiled upon themselves, and comparatively few of his statements have been disproved. The *History* extends to the year 1559.

John Foxe.  
b. 1517  
d. 1587  
His *Acts*  
and *Monu-*  
*ments.*

Monastic history is illustrated by the *Chronicle of the Grey Friars of London*,<sup>2</sup> which extends to the year 1556, —a volume the more deserving of notice in that it was unused by Stowe, and appears to have altogether escaped the notice of Strype. With the commencement of the reign of Henry VIII. the entries give evidence that the chronicler was watchfully observant of the religious tendencies of the age. The collection of *Letters relating to the Dissolution of the Monasteries*<sup>3</sup> (published in the same series) throws considerable light on the actual state of

Minor  
Works re-  
lating to  
the Refor-  
mation.

<sup>1</sup> *The Acts and Monuments of John Foxe.* A new and complete edition. Edited by Rev. S. R. Cattley 8 vols. 1841

<sup>2</sup> *Chronicle of the Grey Friars of London.* Edited by John Gough Nichols. C. S. 1852.

<sup>3</sup> *Three Chapters of Letters relating to the Suppression of the Monasteries.* Edited by Thomas Wright. C. S. 1843.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

these communities at that time. To these may be added the companion volume, entitled *Narratives of the Days of the Reformation*,<sup>1</sup> which includes two contemporary biographies of Cranmer. Another excellent illustration of the period is afforded in the rhymed satire, *Rede me and be nott wrothe* (1528),—an attack upon the clergy and Wolsey in particular for the immorality and worldliness of their lives.<sup>2</sup>

*Remains  
of Edward VI.*

The *Literary Remains of King Edward VI.*<sup>3</sup> published by the Roxburgh Club, contain his letters, 'orations,' and exercises, together with his *Journal*. They are preceded by a preface by Mr. J. G. Nichols, of considerable interest, in which he defends the originality of the *Journal*. The whole work offers some noteworthy illustrations both of the education of the time and of the royal character.

*Machyn's  
Diary.*

The *Diary of Henry Machyn*,<sup>4</sup> a citizen of London, extends from A.D. 1550 to 1563, and preserves many interesting facts which have however been largely incorporated by Strype. Another work of a somewhat similar character, dealing with the first two years of queen Mary's reign, and with Wyatt's rebellion, has been used in like manner by Stowe.<sup>5</sup>

*Chronicle  
of Queen  
Jane, &c.*

*Lives of  
More and  
Wolsey.*

The *Life of Sir Thomas More*, by his son-in-law,

<sup>1</sup> *Narratives of the Days of the Reformation, chiefly from the MSS. of John Foxe the Martyrologist, with two contemporary Biographies of Archbishop Cranmer.* Edited by John Gough Nichols. C. S. 1859.

<sup>2</sup> In Arber's *English Reprints*, 1871.

<sup>3</sup> *Literary Remains of King Edward the Sixth.* Edited from his autograph manuscripts, with Historical Notes and a Biographical Memoir. By J. G. Nichols. R. C. 1857.

<sup>4</sup> *The Diary of Henry Machyn, Citizen and Merchant Taylor of London, from A.D. 1550 to A.D. 1563.* Edited by John Gough Nichols. C. S. 1854.

<sup>5</sup> *The Chronicle of Queen Jane, and of Two Years of Queen Mary, and especially of the Rebellion of Sir Thomas Wyatt; written by a Resident in the Tower of London.* Edited by J. G. Nichols. C. S. 1850.

ROPER,<sup>1</sup> and that of Wolsey, by his usher CAVENDISH,<sup>2</sup> are both biographies of signal merit, containing much that serves to illustrate the social habits and standard of morality prevalent in their day.

CHAP.  
VI.

The expedition of the Earl of Essex to Ireland receives some additional illustration in the *Life of Sir Peter Carew*,<sup>3</sup> written by JOHN HOOKER (*alias* Vowell) of Exeter, an uncle of the eminent Richard Hooker. The work affords also a striking picture of the domestic life of an English country gentleman of the sixteenth century.

Hooker's  
*Life of*  
*Carew.*

The eminent antiquary CAMDEN, of whose *Britannia* some account has already been given, published in 1615 the first part of his *Life of Elizabeth*;<sup>4</sup> it was originally composed in Latin, and is a lucid and able digest chiefly of the political events of her reign. Camden's conception of the historian's function, as indicated in his *Preface*, marks a distinct advance upon preceding writers. He professes to take Polybius for his model, and to refer events to their true causes. In the compilation of his work he was materially aided by papers and correspondence from the royal archives, placed in his hands by lord Burghley.

Camden's  
*Life of*  
*Elizabeth.*

The main value of the foregoing material, however, often consists rather in the evidence which it affords with respect to contemporary impressions and beliefs, than in the light which it throws on the genuine connexion of events and the true springs of state policy.

The *State*  
*Papers*, and  
*Calendars*  
of the same.

<sup>1</sup> *The Life of Sir Thomas More, by his son-in-law, William Roper, Esq.; to which is added an Appendix of Letters.* Chiswick, 1817.

<sup>2</sup> *The Life of Cardinal Wolsey, by George Cavendish, his Gentleman Usher.* Edited by Samuel Weller Singer, F.S.A. 1827.

<sup>3</sup> *The Life and Times of Sir Peter Carew, Kt.* From the original MS. With an historical Introduction and elucidatory Notes by John Maclean. 1857.

<sup>4</sup> In Kennet, vol. ii. see *supra*, p. 217. The second part was not published until 1633, after Camden's death.

CHAP.  
VI.

To these, the real key is to be found in the *State Papers* of the period,—documents which, with the reign of Henry VIII., become vastly more numerous and important than in the preceding century, besides embodying information of far more general and widely extended interest, while the *Calendars*<sup>1</sup> of the same, published by the Record Commissioners, have rendered the work of investigation much less laborious. Of the volumes relating to the reign of Henry VIII., the late learned editor says, ‘Whatever *authentic original material* exists in England relative to the religious, political, parliamentary, or social history of the country during the reign of Henry VIII., whether despatches of ambassadors, or proceedings of the army, navy, treasury, or ordnance, or records of Parliament, appointments of officers, grants from the crown, &c., will be found calendared in these volumes.’<sup>2</sup>

Zurich  
Letters.

The series known as the *Zurich Letters*,<sup>3</sup> from the

<sup>1</sup> *Calendar of Letters and Papers, Foreign and Domestic, of the Reign of Henry VIII.* Edited by J. S. Brewer and James Gairdner. 1862–1892. 13 vols. *Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reigns of Edward VI., Mary, Elizabeth, and James I.* Edited by Robert Lemon and Mrs. Everett Green. 1856–1872. 12 vols. *Calendar of State Papers, Foreign Series, of the Reign of Edward VI.* Edited by W. B. Turnbull. 1861. *Calendar of State Papers, Foreign Series, of the Reign of Mary* Edited by W. B. Turnbull. 1861. *Calendar of State Papers, Foreign Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth.* Edited by Joseph Stevenson and A. J. Crosby. 1863–1880. 11 vols. extending to the year 1577.

<sup>2</sup> From the *State Papers* of the reign of Henry VIII. selections extending to seven volumes quarto were printed by the Record Commissioners in 1830–52. vol. i. *Domestic Correspondence*; vols. ii. and iii. *Correspondence relating to Ireland*; vols. iv. and v. *Correspondence relating to Scotland*; vols. vii. to xi. *Correspondence between England and other courts*

<sup>3</sup> Edited by the Rev. Hastings Robinson, in three volumes; (1) *From the Reformation to 1557*; (2) *from 1558–1579*; (3) *second series, 1558–1602.* P. S. 1847 and 1842. [The first of three volumes (as regards order of contents) was published last, and is generally cited as ‘3 Zur.’ The *Epistolæ Tigurnæ*, frequently referred to by Mr. Froude, are the Latin originals of this volume, published in 1848.]

fact that the original documents are for the most part contained in the public library and archives of that city, will be found of considerable service in connexion with the study of the views and personal history of the sixteenth century Reformers; while the *Brief Discourse*,<sup>1</sup> (attributed to Whittingham, a relation of John Calvin,) respecting the proceedings of a little band of Marian exiles at Frankfort, throws much light on the first beginnings of Puritanism, and the scruples which led to the attempt to establish a church discipline different from that of the Church of England. A *History of the Martin Marprelate Controversy*,<sup>2</sup> by W. MASKELL, supplemented by the account in Hunt's *History of Religious Thought* (vol. i.) supplies all the information necessary in connexion with that episode.

*Troubles at  
Frankfort.*

Martin  
Marpre-  
late.

For the history of the Reformed Church in Scotland, the earliest record is that edited by PETERKIN,<sup>3</sup> which contains the successive enactments concerning doctrine and discipline from the year 1560 to 1616. A more generally interesting account is the *History of the Kirk of Scotland* by DAVID CALDERWOOD,<sup>4</sup> which commences with the year 1514, and concludes in 1625. Calderwood

The Re-  
formed  
Church in  
Scotland.  
Peterkin.  
b 1781.  
d 1846.  
Calder-  
wood  
b 1575  
d. 1651.

<sup>1</sup> *A Brief Discourse of the Troubles begun at Frankfort in Germany A D. 1554 about the Book of Common Prayer, and continued by the Englishmen there to the End of Queen Mary's reign.* Phoenix, vol. II. 1707. (Originally published in 1575.) The representations of the *Discourse* require, however, to be received with special caution. Dean Hook regards it as 'so one-sided a production, that in giving an account of the proceedings at Frankfort, much,' he says, 'must be left by those who have only this work to guide them, to historical conjecture' *Lives of the Archbishops*, x. 31.

<sup>2</sup> *A History of the Martin Marprelate Controversy in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth.* London, 1845. (Printed at Chiswick.)

<sup>3</sup> *The Booke of the Universale Kirk of Scotland: wherein the Headis and Commissionaris of the particular Kirks thereof are specially expressed and contained.* Edited by Alexander Peterkin, Esq. Edinburgh, 1839.

<sup>4</sup> *A History of the Kirk of Scotland.* By Mr. David Calderwood, sometime Minister of Cailing. Edited by the Rev. Thomas Thomson. 8 vols. Wodrow Society. 1842



CHAP.  
VI.Arch-  
bishop  
Spottis-  
woode  
b 1565  
d 1639

was a staunch opponent of the episcopalian movement in Scotland, in the reign of James I., and the chief value of his work belongs to our next period. His work contains much unscrupulous misrepresentation and scandalous calumny as regards James and the English Church party, but is evidently the production of a vigorous and independent mind. Another work on the same subject, but of a very different character, is the *History of the Church of Scotland*, by SPOTTISWOODE,<sup>1</sup> archbishop of St. Andrews, who undertook the labour at the suggestion of king James himself. Spottiswoode was a man of amiable and conciliatory spirit, and his *History* reflects the disposition of its author.

*Hardwicke  
Papers.*

The volumes generally known as the *Hardwicke Papers*<sup>2</sup> include a valuable miscellaneous collection, the contents of which range from the year 1501 to 1726. Of the portion relating to the present period, some of the documents throw considerable light on the characters of Burleigh, Walsingham, and Leicester; another supplies a detailed and amusing account of the journey of Mary's ambassadors to Rome in 1555,—the last state embassy from England for the purpose of paying public homage to the see of Rome; others include correspondence relating to the siege and final loss of Calais, and also numerous letters of Mary, queen of Scots.

*The Compleat Ambassador* of Sir DUDLEY DIGGES,<sup>3</sup> a diplomatist in the early part of the seventeenth cen-

<sup>1</sup> *History of the Church of Scotland, beginning the year of our Lord 203, and continued to the end of the Reign of James VI.* By the Rt. Rev. John Spottiswoode. With biographical Sketch and Notes, by the Rt. Rev. M. Russell. 3 vols. Edinburgh, 1851.

<sup>2</sup> *Miscellaneous State Papers.* From 1501 to 1726. 2 vols. 4to. 1778. (*The name of the editor, the Earl of Hardwicke, does not appear on the title-page.*)

<sup>3</sup> *The Compleat Ambassador or, Two Treaties of the intended Marriage of Queen Elizabeth, &c.* Faithfully collected by the Honourable Sir Dudley Digges, Kt. Fol. 1655.

ture, gives the 'Letters of Negotiation' relating to the proposed marriage of queen Elizabeth with the duke of Anjou. The collector claims to exhibit 'as in a clear mirror, the two faces of the two courts of England and France, as they then stood, with many remarkable passages of State, not at all mentioned in any history.'

CHAP.  
VI.

The volume entitled *Cabala* is a collection of correspondence 'of illustrious persons, and great ministers of state,' in the reigns of Henry VIII., Elizabeth, king James I. and king Charles I.<sup>1</sup>

*Cabala.*

A far more extensive and important, but very miscellaneous, collection is that known as the *Somers Tracts*,<sup>2</sup> which may compare with the *Harleian Miscellany* in its range and importance. The earliest document belongs to the reign of king John, but the materials are scanty until the reign of Elizabeth is reached, while the chief value of the work is in connexion with the seventeenth century.

The  
*Somers*  
*Tracts*

For the proceedings of the Elizabethan parliaments the collections published in the following century by SIR SIMONDS D'EWES,<sup>3</sup> and HEYWOOD TOWNSHEND<sup>4</sup> are

Proceed-  
ings of the  
Eliza-  
bethan

<sup>1</sup> *Cabala, sive Scrinia Sacra, &c.* Third edition (containing a second part, consisting of a choice collection of original Letters and Negotiations, never before published) fol. London, 1691.

<sup>2</sup> *A Collection of scarce and valuable Tracts, on the most interesting and entertaining Subjects: but chiefly such as relate to the History and Constitution of these Kingdoms. Selected from an infinite number in print and manuscript, in the Royal, Cotton, Sion, and other public, as well as private, Libraries, particularly that of the late Lord Somers. The second edition, revised, augmented, and arranged, by Walter Scott, Esq. 13 vols. 4to. 1808*

<sup>3</sup> *The Journals of all the Parliaments during the Reign of Queen Elizabeth, both of the House of Lords and House of Commons.* Collected by Sir Simonds D'Ewes London, 1662

<sup>4</sup> *Historical Collections: or, an exact Account of the Proceedings of the four last Parliaments of Queen Elizabeth. Wherein is contained the Compleat Journals both of Lords and Commons, taken from the original Records of their Houses.* Faithfully and laboriously collected by Heywood Townshend, Esq., Member of those Parliaments. 1680.

CHAP.  
VIParla-  
ments,  
*Burleigh  
Papers*Granville's  
*Correspon-  
dence.*The  
*French  
Despatches**Noailles  
Despatches.*

the best sources of information; the former are incorporated in Cobbett (see *supra*, p. 227).

The two volumes known as the *Burleigh Papers* contain a large number of documents illustrative of public affairs from A.D. 1542 to 1596.<sup>1</sup> The *State Papers* and *Correspondence* of cardinal GRANVELLE<sup>2</sup> include documents dealing with events throughout the greater part of the sixteenth century, and are a primary source of information with respect to the rivalry then existing between the houses of France and Austria, the progress of the Reformation in Germany, France and Switzerland, the divorce of Henry VIII., the marriage of queen Mary with Philip II., &c. The *French Despatches*, edited by M. Teulet,<sup>3</sup> are of not less value in connexion with affairs in Scotland and the political negotiations between that country and France, especially during the reign of Elizabeth. The *Despatches* of the two brothers, Antoine and François de Noailles,<sup>4</sup> ambassadors from Henry II., during the reign of queen Mary,

<sup>1</sup> (1.) *A Collection of State Papers, relating to Affairs in the Reigns of King Henry VIII, King Edward VI., Queen Mary, and Queen Elizabeth, from the year 1542 to 1570. Transcribed from Original Letters and other authentic Memorials, never before published, left by William Cecil, Lord Burghley.* By Samuel Haynes, A.M. 1740. (2.) *A Collection of State Papers relating to Affairs in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth, from the year 1571 to 1596, &c.* By William Murdin.

<sup>2</sup> (1.) *Collection de Documents Inédits sur l'Histoire de France, publiés par Ordre du Roi et par les Soins du Ministre de l'Instruction Publique.* Première Série. Histoire Politique Vols. 1-ix.: *Papiers d'Etat du Cardinal Granvelle.* Ed M. Ch. Weiss Paris, 1841. (2.) *Correspondance du Cardinal Granvelle.* Ed. M. E Pouillet Belg. Doc. Inédit.

<sup>3</sup> Teulet (Jean B A T.); (1.) *Inventaire chronologique des Documents relatifs à l'Histoire d'Ecosse conservés aux Archives du Royaume de Paris.* (Abbotsford Club, 1839); (2.) *Relations Politiques de la France et de l'Espagne avec l'Ecosse au seizième Siècle. Papiers d'Etat, Pièces et Documents inédits ou peu connus* 5 vols. Paris, 1862.

<sup>4</sup> *Ambassades de Messieurs de Noailles en Angleterre.* Rédigées par feu M. l'Abbé de Vertot. 6 vols. Leyden, 1763.

reveal many details respecting the plots against her supremacy (to which they were privy), and shew great powers of observation and discernment.

CHAP.  
VI.

In addition to the foregoing, two highly important collections in foreign countries now begin to be of considerable service in the illustration of English affairs,—those of the Venetian State,<sup>1</sup> and those preserved at Simancas, the depository of the archives of the kingdom of Castile.<sup>2</sup>

State  
Papers  
preserved  
at Venice  
and at Si-  
mancas.

In connexion with the character of Mary, queen of Scots, and the long-agitated controversy respecting the justice of the charges brought against her by contemporary writers, we have the collection of her *Letters* published by prince LOBANOV-ROSTOVSKY, who has also edited the modern treatise on the subject by W. Tytler.<sup>3</sup> Other material (the genuineness of some of which is much disputed) will be found in the earlier *Collections* by ANDERSON,<sup>4</sup> and in the *Letter Books* of Sir AMIAS POULET, edited by John Morris,<sup>5</sup> by whom Froude's accuracy is strongly impugned.

Materials  
for the  
History of  
Mary  
Queen of  
Scots.

<sup>1</sup> *Calendar of State Papers and Manuscripts relating to English Affairs preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c.* (1202-1580). Edited by Rawdon Brown. 7 vols. R. S. 1864-90.

<sup>2</sup> *Calendar of Letters, Despatches, and State Papers, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives of Simancas, and elsewhere* (1485-1525). Edited by G. A. Bergenroth. 2 vols. R. S. 1862-68. *Calendar of Letters, Despatches, and State Papers, dealing with the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives of Simancas and elsewhere* (1525-42). Edited by Don Pascual de Gayangos. 3 vols. R. S. 1873-90.

<sup>3</sup> *Letters of Mary Stuart, Queen of Scotland: selected from the 'Recueil des Lettres de Marie Stuart,' by Prince Lobanov-Rostovsky* 1845 Tytler (W.). *Recherches historiques sur les principales preuves de l'accusation intentée contre Marie Stuart.* Edited by Prince Lobanov-Rostovsky. 1860.

<sup>4</sup> *Collections relating to the History of Mary, Queen of Scotland.* 4 vols. 4to. Edinburgh, 1727-8.

<sup>5</sup> *The Letter Books of Sir Amias Poulet, Keeper of Mary, Queen of Scots.* Edited by John Morris, Priest of the Society of Jesus. 1874.

CHAP.  
VI.Literature  
relating to  
the Catho-  
lics and  
Jesuits  
in England.

The state of religious parties in the latter part of Elizabeth's reign is a subject which has been very inadequately treated by historical writers on the period. For the condition of the Catholic clergy and the Jesuit Mission to England, the student may consult the first part of CHALLONER'S *Missionary Priests*,<sup>1</sup> and the *Lives* of John Gerard by MORRIS,<sup>2</sup> and Dr. JESSOPP.<sup>3</sup> The latter writer has also prefixed to his interesting volume a list of the special literature relating to his subject.

Winwood's  
Memorials.

The collections known as WINWOOD'S *Memorials*<sup>4</sup> date from the year 1596 and extend to 1613. Sir Ralph Winwood was English minister at this period at the French court and at the Hague,—a time when, to quote the expression of Lloyd, 'you might understand more of England at Amsterdam than at London,'—and the papers which he preserved relate to negotiations, not only with France and Holland, but also with Spain, Venice, and other countries.

Sydney  
Papers.

The collection known as the *Sydney Papers*,<sup>5</sup> a series of letters and State documents, written and collected by

<sup>1</sup> *Memoirs of Missionary Priests, as well secular as regular, and of other Catholics, of both Sexes, that have suffered Death in England on Religious Accounts, from the year of Our Lord 1577 to 1684.* Pt. i. 1577-1603; pt. ii. 1603-1684

<sup>2</sup> *The Life of Father John Gerard, of the Society of Jesus* By John Morris. 3rd edit, 1881. Of this, the 1st and 2nd editions appeared together with *Father Gerard's Narrative of the Gunpowder Plot* (by the same editor), 2nd edit Longmans, 1872

<sup>3</sup> *One Generation of a Norfolk House a Contribution to Elizabethan History.* By Augustus Jessopp, D.D. 1879

<sup>4</sup> *Memorials of Affairs of State in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth and King James I. Collected (chiefly) from the original Papers of the Right Hon. Sir Ralph Winwood, Kt.* In 3 vols By Edmund Sawyer. 1725

<sup>5</sup> *Letters and Memorials of State, in the Reign of Queen Mary, Queen Elizabeth, King James, King Charles I., part of the Reign of King Charles II., and Oliver's Usurpation.* Translated from the Originals at Penshurst in Kent, the seat of the Earls of Leicester. By Arthur Collins. 2 vols. fol. 1746.

successive members of the Sidney family, commences with the reign of queen Mary. These were edited in the last century by Arthur Collins, with a large amount of additional historical matter, and well deserve to be consulted, not only for the history of an illustrious house, but for the various information they convey.

CHAP.  
VI

The *Letters of Sir Robert Cecil to Sir George Carew*,<sup>1</sup> written during the administration of the province of Munster by the latter, in the years 1600 to 1602, throw considerable light on the policy pursued towards Ireland during the latter years of Elizabeth's reign.

Carew  
Letters.

For the same reign, HARRISON'S *Description of England*, of which Mr. Furnivall has published an excellent reprint among the publications of the *New Shakspeare Society*, affords a graphic and outspoken record of the general condition of the people in the latter half of the sixteenth century. In the same series we have also STUBBES'S amusing *Anatomie of Abuses*, which depicts the prevailing vices and corruptions of the period 1583-95; and STAFFORD'S *Examination of Complaints*, etc. (1580), in which the writer's chief aim is to explain the actual condition of trade and agriculture, his views presenting a singular combination of natural shrewdness with the defective economical theories of his age.

Harrison's  
*Description*  
of England.

Stubbes's  
*Anatomie*  
of Abuses

Stafford's  
*Examina-*  
tion.

**Non-contemporary Writers.**—As nearly all political feeling in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries was dominated by religious sympathies, a close attention to the views of religious parties is indispensable on the part of the historical student. It is not, however, until the latter century that we find the policy of each party, whether Anglican, Puritan, or Catholic, receiving a fairly temperate exposition at the hands of its defenders, in the form of connected narrative. Among these pro-

<sup>1</sup> *Letters from Sir Robert Cecil to Sir George Carew* Edited by John Maclean. C. S. 1864.

CHAP.  
VI.

Thomas  
Fuller  
b 1608.  
d 1661.

*Church  
History.*

Jeremy  
Collier.  
b 165  
d 1726.

His  
*Ecclesiasti-  
cal History*

Bishop  
Burnet.  
b 1643.  
d. 1715.

His  
*History of  
the Refor-  
mation.*

ductions, FULLER'S *Church History*<sup>1</sup> reflects the candid and liberal spirit of its author, who, while a firm supporter of the Church and the monarchy, was constant in his endeavours to reconcile contending factions, and to mitigate the asperities of controversy. Fuller's *History* terminates with the year 1648.

The writings of bishop BURNET and JEREMY COLLIER are the productions of personal antagonists and warm partisans. The *Ecclesiastical History* of the latter,<sup>2</sup> which extends to the year 1685, is conceived in the spirit of one who had embraced very extreme views respecting Church government and the relations of the Church to the State, but who, from his attainments and extensive learning, was able to grasp and defend the Anglican theory far better than most of his contemporaries.

GILBERT BURNET, bishop of Salisbury,<sup>3</sup> was a writer of not inferior ability, but less attainments, and his works abound with hasty and ill-considered assertions, which, even among the critics of his own time, served to impair his reputation, and must be regarded as seriously affecting his authority as an historian. His *History of the Reformation of the Church of England* is, however, perhaps his least faulty production, and was undertaken with the advice and assistance of some of the most eminent members of the Whig party of his day; designed to subserve political purposes, it contributed in no slight degree to

<sup>1</sup> *The Church History of Britain from the Birth of Jesus Christ until the year 1628.* Endeavoured by Thomas Fuller, D.D. Edited by J. S. Brewer. 6 vols. 1845.

<sup>2</sup> *An Ecclesiastical History of Great Britain, chiefly of England, with a brief Account of the Affairs of Religion in Ireland* By Jeremy Collier. Edited by Thomas Lathbury 9 vols 1852

<sup>3</sup> *History of the Reformation of the Church of England.* By Gilbert Burnet, D.D. Carefully revised, and the Records collated with the originals, by N. Pocock, M.A. 7 vols. Clarendon Press. 1865.

the spread of anti-papal feeling in England. The utility of the work to the student is greatly enhanced by the important and numerous documents printed in the several *Appendices*.

CHAP  
VI.

Burnet's *History* extends from the divorce of Katharine of Arragon to the year 1567. It was attacked by a French writer, JOACHIM LEGRAND, who published in 1688 his *Histoire du Divorce*, impugning many of Burnet's representations of the facts, as given in the first two books. To this Burnet drew up a short reply.

Legrand  
*Histoire du  
Divorce*

JOHN STRYPE, born in the same year as Burnet, was a man of greatly inferior natural gifts and capacity, but his extensive historical compilations are of the highest value to the student, and were the result of many years' painstaking research guided by unquestionable honesty of purpose. His criticisms shew no depth of discernment, and are occasionally characterised by extreme simplicity; his narrative is often tediously prolix and full of irrelevant details; the arrangement, again, is often faulty, and repetitions are frequent. Yet notwithstanding these defects, his *Ecclesiastical Memorials*<sup>1</sup> and *Annals of the Reformation*,<sup>2</sup> together with the valuable materials in the *Appendices*, are unrivalled stores of information with respect to the period 1521-1588.

John  
Strype  
b 1643  
d 1737

DANIEL NEAL, a dissenting divine of the last century, compiled a *History of the Puritans*, which, so far as regards the Elizabethan period, is mainly derived from

Neal's  
*Puritans*.

<sup>1</sup> *Ecclesiastical Memorials, relating chiefly to Religion and the Reformation of it, and the Emergencies of the Church of England under King Henry VIII, King Edward VI., and Queen Mary I.* By John Strype, M.A. 6 vols. Clarendon Press. 1822

<sup>2</sup> *Annals of the Reformation and Establishment of Religion, and other various Occurrences in the Church of England, during Queen Elizabeth's happy Reign together with an Appendix of original Papers of State, Records, and Letters.* By John Strype, M.A. 7 vols. Clarendon Press. 1824



CHAP.  
VI

---

Strype. The work betrays considerable partiality, but although severely animadverted upon by different critics, has not been shewn to contain any grave misstatement of facts. It was criticised by Madox, bishop of Worcester, in 1733, in an anonymous production entitled *A Vindication of the Church of England*.

Dodd's  
*Church  
History.*

A *Church History of England from the Commencement of the Sixteenth Century to the Revolution in 1688*, by CHARLES DODD,<sup>1</sup> is a work of some importance from the amount of information it contains concerning the movements and organisation of the Catholic community. It has also been praised for its freedom from prejudice and from any endeavour to distort or suppress facts. It is, however, wanting in accuracy of detail,—dates, and even names, being often incorrectly given

Hurd's  
*Dialogue.*

One of BISHOP HURD'S *Dialogues*, 'On the Golden Age of Queen Elizabeth,' still deserves to be read, both on account of its discriminating criticism and as one of the earliest indications of a reaction from the excessive eulogy which it had been usual, before that time, to bestow on the policy and character of Elizabeth.

*Lives of  
Henry VII.  
Henry  
VIII and  
Edward  
VI, by  
Lord  
Bacon,  
Lord Her-  
bert of  
Cherbury,  
and Sir  
John Hay-  
ward.*

In biography, LORD BACON'S *Life of Henry VII.*, though conceived in too eulogistic a spirit, is praised by Hallam as 'the first instance in our language of the application of philosophy to reasoning on public events in the manner of the ancients and the Italians.' The *Life of Henry VIII.*, by LORD HERBERT OF CHERBURY,<sup>2</sup> considered with regard to the time of its production, is also a work of high excellence. SIR JOHN HAYWARD'S *Life of Edward VI.*<sup>3</sup> and *Annals of the First Four Years*

<sup>1</sup> Edited with Notes, Additions, and a Continuation, by the Rev. M. A. Tierney, F S A 5 vols 1839

<sup>2</sup> Printed in Kennett, see *supra*, p 217

<sup>3</sup> In the same. For a criticism of this *Life* see Strype, *Memorials*, vol II pt. II. c. 28.

of the *Reign of Elizabeth*<sup>1</sup> are performances of some literary merit, although the former is mainly a compilation from the young king's *Journal*. FIDDES'S *Life of Wolsey* (1724) is conceived in a spirit far too favourable to that prelate and his pretensions, but contains some valuable documents.

CHAP.  
VI

Fiddes's  
*Life of  
Wolsey.*

A *Life of Bishop Fisher*, by LEWIS,<sup>2</sup> is a work of merit, and affords a good illustration of the views and principles of the moderate Catholic party prior to the rupture of the Crown with Rome, it also contains numerous original documents.

Lewis's  
*Life of  
Fisher.*

FULLER'S *History of the Worthies of England*—in the opinion of many, the most valuable of all his works—is a sensible but appreciative *Acta Sanctorum*, interspersed with much interesting information on the antiquities and characteristic features of the different counties of England. STRYPE'S *Lives* of Cranmer, archbishop Parker, Sir John Cheke, Sir Thomas Smith, bishop Aylmer, Grindal, and Whitgift, are a series of important works, reproducing much that is to be found in the *Memorials* and *Annals*, and marked by the same defects, but also containing much that is calculated further to illustrate the history of the age. LLOYD'S *State Worthies*, published in 1670, is a series of epigrammatic, caustic, and often happily expressed sketches of many of the most notable characters in English history, from the accession of Henry VIII. to the reign of Charles I. The work preserves many details that we should otherwise lack, but its statements are not altogether to be relied upon. The *Athenae Oxonienses* of ANTHONY WOOD, first pub-

Fuller's  
*Worthies.*

Strype's  
*Lives.*

Lloyd's  
*State  
Worthies.*

Wood's  
*Athenae  
Oxonnienses.*

<sup>1</sup> Edited from a MS. in the Harleian Collection, by John Bruce C. S. 1840.

<sup>2</sup> *The Life of Dr John Fisher* By John Lewis. With Introduction by T. Hudson Turner. 2 vols. 1855 (Lewis, the author, died in 1746.)

CHAP.  
VI.

---

lished in 1691,<sup>1</sup> contains a valuable collection of biographical materials with respect to eminent churchmen or authors educated at Oxford; the arrangement, however, is often slovenly, and the compiler is by no means free from prejudice.

Nichols's  
*Royal Pro-  
gresses,*

Few works are more deserving of careful perusal on the part of those who are desirous of acquiring a genuine knowledge of the Elizabethan age than NICHOLS'S *Progresses of Queen Elizabeth*,<sup>2</sup> a collection in which the customs, manners, learning, and etiquette of the times each in turn receive a large amount of curious and often entertaining illustration.

*Irish History.*—For Irish history at this period, the third and fourth volumes of BREWER'S *Calendar of Letters and Papers of the Reign of Henry VIII.* (*supra*, p. 312) afford guidance to much original material in the earlier part of the century. For the condition of the country at the latter part, prior to the subjugation of the Earl of Tyrone, the tractate of Edmund Spenser, the poet, is perhaps the least partial piece of contemporary evidence. Among modern writers, Hallam gives a clear and succinct sketch of the constitution of Ireland in the eighteenth chapter of his *Constitutional History*; Mr A. G. Richey's two series of *Lectures on Early Irish History* (1869 and 1870) are of much value; and Mr Lecky, in his *History of England in the Eighteenth Century* (vol. II. c. 6), gives an able sketch of 'Ireland before the Eighteenth Century,' together with references to the best authorities.

*Scottish History.*—For Scottish history, as viewed by native contemporary writers, the Latin work of George Buchanan, which commences with the earliest times and concludes with the accession of James VI. (1567), is by far the most important. Of this, a translation was published at Edinburgh in 1821, in

<sup>1</sup> An improved edition appeared at Oxford in 1815-18, edited by Dr. Bliss. 3 vols.

<sup>2</sup> *The Progresses and Public Processions of Queen Elizabeth. Among which are interspersed other Solemnities, Public Expensitures, and Remarkable Events, &c.* By John Nichols. 3 vols. 1823.

three volumes. The *Annals of Scotland*, by George Majoribanks (Edin. 1814) is a meagre record, by a burghess of Edinburgh, extending from 1514 to 1591, but filling only sixty-two pages. Two volumes of *Calendars of State Papers*, edited by Mr M. J. Thorpe (R. S. 1858), comprise the period 1509-1603, the second volume contains the State Papers relating to Mary, queen of Scots, during her detention in England.

**Modern Writers**—The well-known work of MR. FROUDE<sup>1</sup> abounds with graphic descriptions, accompanied by much admirable and just criticism. In its composition he was largely aided by his researches among the archives at Simancas, collections which at that time had been very imperfectly investigated. Unfortunately, the conception he has formed of the character and conduct of Henry VIII. is of so strained and unreal a kind as to deprive this portion of his *History* of much of its value. The reign of Edward VI. is described with more impartiality, but the policy of Somerset is somewhat harshly judged, and the student will do well to compare this portion of the work with the more sober narrative of Lingard or Tytler. The volumes that relate to the reign of Elizabeth are the most valuable part of the work, and the treatment of successive questions is often vigorous and original; accuracy of detail, however, cannot be said to be a distinguishing characteristic of this writer, and his omissions are often serious. The student also fails to find that criticism, for which he would naturally look, of contemporary writers.

Froude's  
*History of  
England.*

The portion of RANKE'S *History of the Popes* which belongs to the present division, should be studied in conjunction with Macaulay's brilliant *Essay* on the whole work, and the not less useful analysis by MILMAN.<sup>2</sup>

Ranke's  
*History of  
the Popes  
and His-  
tory of  
England.*

<sup>1</sup> *History of England, from the Fall of Wolsey to the Defeat of the Spanish Armada*. By James Anthony Froude. 12 vols. 1870.

<sup>2</sup> See *Savonarola, Erasmus, and other Essays*. By Dean Milman. 1870.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

The three masterly and luminous chapters in which Ranke, in his *History of England*,<sup>1</sup> sums up the main features of our national development down to the reign of James I., contain an unrivalled outline of the subject. Hallam's temperate and judicious criticisms of the period in the first five chapters of his *Constitutional History*, though somewhat modified by later research, still retain much of their original value for the student

Lingard,  
Hausser,  
J H Blunt,  
Dixon,  
Haweis,  
Hunt,  
Marsden,  
and Dr  
Matland.

LINGARD'S *History*, in a great measure superseded, as regards the earlier volumes, by more recent investigations, is of high value for the sixteenth century, as giving the views of a candid and judicious Catholic historian with respect to a period in which the fortunes and principles of the Roman Church were subjected to no ordinary tests. HAÜSSER'S *History of the Period of the Reformation*<sup>2</sup> supplies an outline, of no great merit, of the movement both in England and on the Continent, extending to nearly the middle of the seventeenth century. Two works of recent date, MR. J. H. BLUNT'S *Reformation in England* (1869), which embraces the period A.D. 1514-1547, and MR. R. W. DIXON'S *History of the Church of England*,<sup>3</sup>—are valuable as presenting us with the evidence and the arguments which serve to qualify the too complacent estimate of this great revolution common with English writers. MR. HAWEIS' *Sketches of the Reformation* (1844), is a small volume containing within a moderate compass more valuable illustration of the habits of thought of the early Reformers than many works of much greater bulk. MR.

<sup>1</sup> *A History of England Principally in the Seventeenth Century.* By Leopold von Ranke. 6 vols. Clarendon Press 1875.

<sup>2</sup> Hausser (Ludwig), *The Period of the Reformation* (1517-1648). Edited by W. Oncken. Translated by Mrs Sturge. 2 vols 1873

<sup>3</sup> *History of the Church of England from the Abolition of the Roman Jurisdiction* By the Rev. R. W. Dixon. Vol. 1. (1529-1537); Vol. II. 1538-1548) 1877-80.

HUNT'S *Religious Thought in England* gives in its earlier pages an impartial and well-executed summary of the more important controversial literature of the time. The *History of the Early Puritans* (1853), by the late REV. J. B. MARSDEN, is a work of merit; while in DR. MAITLAND'S *Essays on the Reformation* (1849), we have a series of masterly criticisms, by a writer of a different school, in which the unscrupulous tactics of many of the early Reformers are skilfully exposed.

CHAP.  
VI

---

In MR. MOTLEY'S *Rise of the Dutch Republic*, and *History of the United Netherlands*, productions of very high historical excellence, will be found, and, especially in the latter work, much useful incidental illustration of the influences by which the English foreign policy was, at this period, to a great extent determined.

Motley.

The best recent outline of the history of the *Jesuits* is that by professor HUBER;<sup>1</sup> but for more original information the works of JUVENCIUS, BARTOLI, and TANNER should be consulted.

Histories of  
the Jesuit  
Order

The great collection of *State Trials*, by COBBETT and HOWELL, now begins to be indispensable to the student. The first volume comprises the period A.D. 1163 to 1600.<sup>2</sup>

Cobbett's  
*State  
Trials*.

For the history of the *East India Company*, founded by royal charter in the year 1600, the work of BRUCE affords, for the first century, almost all the necessary information.<sup>3</sup>

The East  
India Com-  
pany.

<sup>1</sup> *Der Jesuitenorden nach seiner Verfassung und Doctrin, Wirksamkeit und Geschichte characterisirt.* Von Joh. Huber. Berlin, 1873.

<sup>2</sup> A Selection from these, comprising Trials for Treason (1327-1660), has been edited by Mr. J. W. Willis-Bund. Cambridge University Press. 1880.

<sup>3</sup> *Annals of the East India Company, from their establishment by the Charter of Queen Elizabeth, A.D. 1600, to the Union of the London and English East India Companies in 1707-8.* By John Bruce. 3 vols. quarto. 1810

CHAP.  
VI

Biographical  
Works  
by Words-  
worth, and  
Seebohm

*Lives of*  
Cranmer,  
Parker,  
Grindal,  
Whitgift,  
Nowell.

*Lives of*  
Hatton and  
Davison by  
Sir H  
Nicolas.

*Lives of*  
Sir Philip  
Sidney.

The *Ecclesiastical Biography* of DR WORDSWORTH is chiefly devoted to *Lives* of sixteenth century divines, many of which are taken from Foxe. They are accompanied by useful notes. Among the most important are those of Colet, Wolsey, Cromwell, Tyndal, Latimer, Cranmer, Jewel, Hooker, Whitgift, and Donne. Of Colet and his times we have an excellent study in MR. SEEBOHM'S *Oxford Reformers of 1498*. The lives of the most distinguished churchmen of the period—Cranmer, Parker, Grindal, and Whitgift—as given in Hook's *Lives of the Archbishops*, well deserve to be consulted, though inferior to the same writer's preceding studies in carefulness of execution and accuracy of detail. The *Life of Alexander Nowell*<sup>1</sup> (alias Hooker), dean of St. Paul's, by CHURTON, is a valuable sketch of one whom his biographer not inaptly styles 'the last surviving Father of the English Reformation.' The view here taken of the history and policy of the Marian Exiles would appear to be more just and dispassionate than that of many subsequent writers. For the statesmen of the age, besides the *Lives* in Campbell and Foss, those of William Davison and Sir Christopher Hatton, by SIR HARRIS NICOLAS, may be named. In the Appendix to the former will be found the four 'Apologies' left by Davison, relative to his remarkable trial. The *Life* of Sir Philip Sidney by his personal friend and admirer, LORD BROOKE (1652), will always continue to be read as a graceful and touching tribute to the worth of a heroic character; but as a source of information, this work, as well as the *Life* by ZOUCH (1808), has been superseded by the *Memoir* by MR. FOX BOURNE (1862), a work of much literary merit founded on a careful consultation of

<sup>1</sup> *The Life of Alexander Nowell. chiefly compiled from Registers, Letters, and other authentic Evidences.* By Ralph Churton. M.A. Oxford, Clarendon Press. 1809.

original documents. The biographical literature relating to MARY, queen of Scots, is voluminous and exceptionally controversial. The controversy appears to have been excited, in the first instance, by the histories of Hume and Robertson, both of whom inclined to an unfavourable estimate of Mary's character. Their conclusions were challenged by WILLIAM TYTLER, who published in 1759 his *Inquiry, historical and critical, into the Evidence against Mary, Queen of Scots* (2 vols. 8vo. 1790). A far more thorough investigation of the evidence is to be found in the comparatively recent work of MIGNET,<sup>1</sup> who reverted to the view of Hume. MR. HOSACK,<sup>2</sup> in a yet later contribution to the subject, sides again with Tytler, looking upon Mary as the 'victim of sectarian violence and barbarous state-craft.' The *Life* of the first Earl of Essex, in MR. DEVEREUX'S *Lives and Letters of the Devereux*, is of special interest from the new and somewhat startling light in which it places the character of Elizabeth. For the career of Sir Walter Raleigh, the *Life* by OLDYS, published in 1733, is the original storehouse of facts. This has, however, been to some extent superseded by the work of MR. EDWARDS incorporating the results of Oldys's research, and also additional material unaccessible, for the most part, at the time when the earlier work was compiled.<sup>3</sup> M'CRIE'S *Life of Knox* (1812), is still the standard source of reference for all that relates to the great Scotch reformer.

The whole of our sixteenth history is further illus-

CHAP.  
VI

Literature  
relating to  
Mary,  
Queen of  
Scots.

*Lives of*  
the De-  
vereux, Sir  
Walter  
Raleigh,  
and Knox.

<sup>1</sup> *Histoire de Marie Stuart.* 3rd edit. 2 vols. Paris, 1854.

<sup>2</sup> *Mary, Queen of Scots, and her Accusers. embracing a Narrative of Events from the Death of James V. in 1542 until the Death of Queen Mary in 1587.* By John Hosack. 2 vols. 2nd edit. 1870.

<sup>3</sup> *The Life of Sir Walter Raleigh Based on Contemporary Documents preserved in the Rolls House, the Privy Council Office, Hatfield House, the British Museum, &c.* By Edward Edwards. Vol. i. *The Life*; vol. ii. *Letters.* 1868.



CHAP  
VI

---

Cooper's  
*Athenae  
Cantabrigienses.*

trated by a biographical collection of exceptional merit and importance—the *Athenae Cantabrigienses*, by the brothers CHARLES HENRY, and THOMPSON COOPER, which extends from the year 1500 to 1609. A more admirable series of concise biographies is nowhere to be found, while the aid afforded to the student by the lists of authorities and works of reference appended to each life is of the highest value. In the impartiality of its criticisms, and the thoroughness of its execution, this work greatly surpasses the *Athenae Oxonienses* of Anthony Wood, above mentioned (p. 323).

[ADDENDUM. Students of this period will also find it useful to consult the treatise of Nicolas Sander, entitled *Historia Schismatis Anglicani*, which extends from the twenty-first year of the reign of Henry VIII. to the twenty-seventh of Elizabeth. This was first published in 1585, subsequent editions, with additions by other hands, appearing in 1610 and 1628. Sander was an Oxford professor with strong Catholic sympathies, who finally quitted England for the continent in 1561. His treatise is frequently appealed to by writers of his party as authoritative, and embodies, they maintain, a more truthful representation of events than that given by Protestant writers. It may here be further observed that it is of high importance clearly to distinguish the successive influences of Lutheran, Zwinglian, and Calvinistic doctrine in this country, and for this purpose Sander's treatise will be found of considerable assistance. The work has been translated, with introduction and notes, by Mr. David Lewis (1877).]

## CHAPTER VII.

## FROM THE ACCESSION OF JAMES I. TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE PROTECTORATE.

*State Papers*.—Party spirit, already excessive under the influence of theological differences, becomes, in the seventeenth century, still further intensified by political animosities. Rushworth, in dedicating his *Collections* to Richard Cromwell, says, ‘most writers now-a-days appear in public crooked, warped, and bowed to the right or to the left’ The few, indeed, who supply a dispassionate and candid record of events are of minor importance as writers, and generally not distinguished by ability. In this dearth of competent and unprejudiced contemporary historians, the *State Papers* of the period necessarily assume the highest degree of importance, and the *Calendars* of these, by Mr. Lemon,<sup>1</sup> Mr. Bruce, Mr. Hamilton,<sup>2</sup> and Mrs. Everett Green,<sup>3</sup> afford invaluable aid. The *Hardwicke Papers*, already described (*supra*, p. 314), contain papers relating to the Spanish Match and to the French Match; correspondence of Charles I.

CHAP.  
VIIState  
Papers of  
the period.

<sup>1</sup> See *supra*, p. 312, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> *Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Charles the First*. 16 vols. Edited (i-xii.) by John Bruce, Esq.; vol. xiii. by Bruce and Hamilton; and vols. xiv. xv. and xvi. by W. D. Hamilton, Esq. R. S. 1858-80.

<sup>3</sup> *Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, during the Commonwealth*. Edited by Mary Ann Everett Green 5 vols. 1875-8 For *State Papers of Reign of James I.* by same editor, see *supra*, p. 312.

CHAP  
VII.

with the duke of Buckingham; materials connected with the expedition to the Isle of Rhé, and with the Scotch troubles in the years 1637-41; while materials too various here to be particularised, will be found in the *Cabala*, the *Somers Tracts*, the *Sydney Papers*, the *Winwood Memoirs*, in Fuller, Collier, Neal, Dodd, and other authorities described in the preceding chapter. As regards Scotland, the works of Calderwood and Spottiswoode now become strictly contemporary narratives. The student of Irish history will find considerable aid in the newly published *Calendar of State Papers*<sup>1</sup> that has just appeared, which includes the papers relating to Ireland to the end of the reign of James I.

Camden.

(A.) **Contemporary Writers.**—CAMDEN'S *Annals of King James I.*<sup>2</sup> (A D 1603-23) is a meagre summary of events in strict chronological sequence, containing, as compared with his *History of Elizabeth*, little of value. The *History of King James I*, by ARTHUR WILSON,<sup>3</sup> is a work of some merit. Wilson was a gentleman of a good Suffolk family, who compiled his *History* at the suggestion of the third earl of Essex, afterwards the parliamentary general, through whose assistance and that of the earl of Southampton he gained access to a large number of private documents. His friendship for Essex is supposed to have inclined him to severity in his estimate of James.

Wilson's  
*History of  
King  
James.*

Dr God-  
frey Good-  
man

Another contemporary account is the work of the well-known DR. GODFREY GOODMAN, bishop of Gloucester. Goodman's sympathies, which were those of

<sup>1</sup> *Calendar of the State Papers relating to Ireland of the Reign of James I.* 1615-25 Edited by Rev. Charles W Russell, D.D. and John Pendergast, Esq R S. 1881

<sup>2</sup> Printed in Kennet, see *supra*, p 217.

<sup>3</sup> Printed in Kennet, see *ibid*

<sup>4</sup> *The Court of King James the First by Dr Godfrey Goodman, Bishop of Gloucester: to which are added Letters illustrative of the personal History*

the extreme Anglican party, led him to undertake a too unqualified defence of both king James and the court, but his work is deserving of note as a notable contrast to the virulence and malignity of the Puritan writers of the time. The personal views and literary abilities of James himself are illustrated by his own numerous writings.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP  
VII

Writings of  
James I.

The *State Papers* and *Correspondence* of the EARL OF MELROS cover the period 1599 to 1625,<sup>2</sup> and the *Carew Letters*<sup>3</sup> belong to the years 1615 to 1617. The latter are described by Carte as 'a journal of occurrences, as well in England as in other parts of Europe, containing short memorials of fact, like Camden's summary of king James's reign' They are, really, *news-letters*, and may rank among the earlier specimens of that class of composition,—a labour which even men of high rank did not disdain at a time when newspapers were still unknown.

Melros  
State  
Papers  
*Carew  
Letters.*

WALLINGTON'S *Diary*,<sup>4</sup> which relates principally to the reign of Charles I, contains the jottings of a city Puritan of just so much of public events as had an interest for himself.

Wallington's  
*Diary.*

For the history of the long Parliament and the events of the Civil War, we have the great collection of pamphlets made by THOMASON, preserved in the British Mu-

Thomason  
Collection  
of Pamph-  
lets.

*of the most distinguished Characters in the Court of that Monarch and of his Predecessors.* Edited by J. S. Brewer. 2 vols 1839.

<sup>1</sup> Of these a good account is given in Irving's *Lives of the Scottish Poets* (ed 1810), II 207-91 James's *Apophthegms* are printed in Dingley's *History from Marble*. 2 vols C. S. 1867.

<sup>2</sup> *A C* 2 vols 1837.

<sup>3</sup> *Letters of George Lord Carew to Sir Thomas Roe, Ambassador to the Court of the Great Mogul, 1615-17.* Edited by John Maclean, F S A. C. S. 1860.

<sup>4</sup> *Historical Notices of Events occurring chiefly in the Reign of Charles I.* Edited from the original MSS with Notes and Illustrations [by R. Webb]. 2 vols. London, 1869.

CHAP.  
VII

The  
'King's  
Pamph-  
lets'  
Lord  
Clarendon  
*b* 1608  
*d* 1674  
His  
*History of  
the Re-  
bellion*

seum. A not less valuable collection is that, in the same depository, known as *The King's Pamphlets*, which illustrate the same period.

The great work of CLARENDON<sup>1</sup> commences with the reign of Charles I., supplying a comparatively slight account of events until the year 1641 is reached, and concluding with the return of Charles II in 1660. His admirable delineations of character and general ability as a writer, have obtained for his *History* a reputation much beyond that deserved by its historic merits, the work having been really designed as an elaborate justification of the royalist party. For a masterly estimate of its value, and a clear discrimination of the biographical element from the historical, the student should consult the criticism in the sixth volume of Ranke's *History*.

Sir David  
Dalrymple.  
*b* 1726  
*d* 1792  
His *Me-  
morials  
and  
Letters*

The *Memorials and Letters* collected by SIR DAVID DALRYMPLE (better known as lord Hailes), relating to the reigns of James I.<sup>2</sup> and Charles I.,<sup>3</sup> rendered a considerable service in the last century in enabling students to judge more accurately the policy and motives of those monarchs. Dalrymple was charged, indeed, with exhibiting the court and character of James in a too unfavourable light, but he always maintained that he had suppressed nothing that was favourable.

Parliamen-  
tary Re-  
cords.

As the whole history of England at these times represents results consequent upon the action of its

<sup>1</sup> *The History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England, together with an Historical View of the Affairs of Ireland, by Edward, Earl of Clarendon, now for the first time carefully printed from the original MS preserved in the Bodleian Library. To which are subjoined the Notes of Bishop Warburton.* 7 vols. Oxford, 1849.

<sup>2</sup> *Memorials and Letters relating to the History of Britain in the Reign of James I.* 1762

<sup>3</sup> *Memorials and Letters relating to the History of Britain in the Reign of Charles I.* 1766.

parliaments, the *Debates* of the period necessarily become of primary importance. In connexion with those of the year 1610, marking the commencement of the great struggle between the Crown and the Commons, a series of notes, by a member of the House, has been published by the Camden Society.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
VII

Debates of  
1610.

For the debates of 1620 and 1621,<sup>2</sup> an account, also by a member of the House (now known to have been E Nicholas), and much fuller than any before published, was first printed at the Clarendon Press in 1766. For 1621, 1624, and 1626, we have also contemporary notes on the debates in the House of Lords,<sup>3</sup> a record all the more deserving of attention in that the speeches of *a peer*, made in his individual capacity, were never given in the Journals.

Debates of  
1620 and  
1621

Lords' De-  
bates of  
1621, 1624,  
and 1626

The *Collections* by RUSHWORTH,<sup>4</sup> assistant clerk of the House of Commons, and afterwards secretary to lord Fairfax, commence with the year 1618 and conclude in 1649. He assigns as a leading motive which induced him to undertake the labour, his conviction of 'the impossibility for any man in after-ages to ground a true History, by relying on the printed pamphlets of

Rush-  
worth's  
*Collec-  
tions*.

<sup>1</sup> *Parliamentary Debates in 1610. Edited from the Notes of a Member of the House of Commons.* By Samuel Rawson Gardiner. C. S. 1861.

<sup>2</sup> *Proceedings and Debates of the House of Commons, in 1620 and 1621. Collected by a Member of that House, and now published from his original MS. in the Library of Queen's College, Oxford* 2 vols. Clarendon Press. 1766. Since incorporated in *Parliamentary History*, vol. i 1179-1366

<sup>3</sup> (1) *Notes of the Debates in the House of Lords, officially taken by Henry Elsing, Clerk of the Parliaments, A.D. 1621.* Edited by S. R. Gardiner, Esq. C S 1870 (II.) *Notes, etc., officially taken by Henry Elsing, A.D. 1624 and 1626.* Edited by S. R. Gardiner. C S. 1879

<sup>4</sup> *Historical Collections of private passages of State, weighty matters of Law, remarkable proceedings in Five Parliaments. Digested in order of Time and now published by John Rushworth, of Lincoln's Inn, Esq.* 1659.

CHAP.  
VII.

our days, which passed the press while it was without control.' Rushworth dedicated his work to Richard Cromwell. He was afterwards vehemently denounced by royalist partisans for wilful suppression and garbling of documents. In the *Somers Tracts* (see *supra*, p. 315) some of the documents which he failed to incorporate are supplied.

Clarendon  
*State  
Papers.*

With the year 1623 commence the *State Papers* collected by CLARENDON as materials for his *History*.<sup>1</sup> These were subsequently given by his descendants, along with translations of the Spanish and Italian despatches, to the university of Oxford, and have since been printed in part at the University Press; while the task of consulting the whole collection has been rendered easy by the recent publication of a *Calendar*.<sup>2</sup>

Debates of  
1625

For the debates of the House of Commons of the year 1625, we have a volume of contemporary notes lately published by the Camden Society.<sup>3</sup>

Protests of  
the Lords.

The *Protests of the Lords*, from the year 1624, have been recently edited, with historical introductions, by professor J. E. Thorold Rogers.<sup>4</sup>

*Verney  
Papers.*

With the accession of Charles, down to 1640, the *Letters and Papers of the Verney Family*<sup>5</sup> acquire con-

<sup>1</sup> *State Papers collected by Edward, Earl of Clarendon, commencing from the year 1621. Containing the Materials from which his History of the Great Rebellion was composed and the Authorities on which the truth of his Relation is founded.* 3 vols fol Clarendon Press 1767

<sup>2</sup> *Calendar of the Clarendon State Papers preserved in the Bodleian Library* Vol I (1623-49), vol II. (1649-54), vol III. (1655-57) Clarendon Press 1872

<sup>3</sup> *Notes of Debates in the House of Commons in 1625* Edited from a MS in the Library of Sir Rainald Knightley, Bart. By S. R. Gardiner. C. S. 1874.

<sup>4</sup> *Protests of the Lords, including those which have been expunged, from 1624 to 1874; with Historical Introductions.* Edited by James E Thorold Rogers, M A. 3 vols Clarendon Press 1875.

<sup>5</sup> *Letters and Papers of the Verney Family down to the End of the Year*

siderable importance. Sir Edmund Verney attended the king on his expedition against the Scottish Covenanters in 1639, and has left one of the most circumstantial accounts of that ignoble campaign. The *Memoirs* of the Verney family which Mr. Bruce has interwoven with their correspondence are also of interest and value.

CHAP.  
VII.

From the commencement of the reign of Charles to the year 1660, WHITELOCK'S *Memorials*<sup>1</sup> furnish one of the best accounts of the general home administration. Whitelock was a man of acknowledged veracity and moderation of character, and his opportunities for observation in the important offices which he successively filled, and the fulness of his disclosures, render the work one of the highest authority for the period to which it relates.

White-  
lock's *Me-  
morials*.

With the year 1638 commences the important collection known as the *Thurloe Papers*.<sup>2</sup> THURLOE was secretary to the Council of State, and to Oliver and Richard Cromwell successively, and the papers which he collected and transcribed during his tenure of office were preserved in the library of Lord Somers. They consist (1) of letters written by the Council of State, 1639. Printed from the original MSS. in the possession of Sir Harry Verney, Bart. Edited by John Bruce. C.S. 1852

*Thurloe  
Papers.*

<sup>1</sup> *Memorials of the English Affairs or, an Historical Account of what passed from the beginning of the Reign of King Charles I. to King Charles II. his happy Restauration. Containing the Public Transactions, Civil and Military together with the private Consultations and Secrets of the Cabinet.* By Mr. Whitelock. London, 1732. [Comparison with a more succinct edition in MS, now in the possession of Lord Bute, points to the conclusion that, while it is undoubtedly Whitelock's work, much (at least of the earlier part) was written from memory, and consequently partakes of the defects inseparable from such a process. S. R. G.]

<sup>2</sup> *A Collection of the State Papers of John Thurloe, Esq. In 7 vols. containing authentic Memorials of the English Affairs from the year 1638 to the Restoration of King Charles II.* By Thomas Burch, M.A. 1742.



CHAP  
VII.

---

and by the two Cromwells during the Protectorate ; (2) letters from English ambassadors or envoys, and naval and military commanders during the same period ; (3) letters from other functionaries in high office ; (4) accounts of the revenues of England, Ireland, and Scotland.

May's  
*History of  
the Long  
Parliament.*

For the history of the Long Parliament, the work of MAY<sup>1</sup> is generally accepted as a standard authority ; it is preceded by a notice of some of the earlier parliaments. His narrative, considering the period, is remarkably free from invective and rancour, and tends to induce the belief that the statements it contains are on the whole faithful and impartial. For more precise reports of some of the speeches we are indebted to the *Notes* of SIR RALPH VERNEY ;<sup>2</sup> while the *Collection* by SCOBELL<sup>3</sup> supplies the texts of such Acts and Ordinances as were of general scope and permanent force, down to the year 1656. A volume published by the Camden Society,<sup>4</sup> containing documents relating to the parliaments of 1640 and certain proceedings (connected with their enactments) in Kent, illustrates the condition of the

Verney's  
*Notes*  
Scobell's  
*Collection*.  
Parliaments of  
1640

<sup>1</sup> *The History of the Parliament of England, which began Nov 3, 1640. with a short and necessary View of some precedent Years.* Written by Thomas May, Esq. Clarendon Press 1854.

<sup>2</sup> *Notes of Proceedings in the Long Parliament, temp. Charles I., printed from original pencil memoranda taken in the House by Sir Ralph Verney, Kt.* Edited by John Bruce, Esq. C. S. 1845.

<sup>3</sup> *A Collection of Acts and Ordinances of General Use made in the Parliament begun and held at Westminster the third day of November, anno 1640, and since unto the adjournment of the Parliament begun and holden the 17th of September, anno 1656, &c.* By Henry Scobell, Esq., Clerk of the Parliament ; examined by the original Records and now printed by special Order of Parliament. London, 1658.

<sup>4</sup> *Proceedings principally in the county of Kent, in connection with the Parliaments called in 1640, and especially with the Committee of Religion appointed in that year.* Edited by the Rev. Lambert B. Larking. C. S. 1861.

Church at this period, and the administration of archbishop Laud.

CHAP.  
VII

In the reign of James II., NALSON, a zealous royalist, published a series of documents relating to the ten years from the outbreak of the Scottish rebellion to the execution of King Charles (A.D. 1639-49).<sup>1</sup> The work is dedicated to James; and in his introduction Nalson endeavours to convict Rushworth of tampering with documents, and prints parallel passages to prove his assertions. His Introduction is also noticeable as containing an exposition of the doctrine of non-resistance in its most servile form.

Nalson's  
Collection.

For the rebellion in Ireland in 1641, and the subsequent history of Irish affairs, the *Ormonde Papers*<sup>2</sup> are (in the present absence of a *Calendar* of the State Papers) the main source of information, the post of Lord Lieutenant and Governor of the country having been filled by Ormonde for periods amounting in the aggregate to nearly thirty years. These collections contain also much that relates to events occurring in England. With these the student should compare Clarendon's 'Short View,' in the seventh volume of his *History*, written in defence of the royal Irish policy throughout, and especially to vindicate Ormonde. *A Contemporary History of Affairs in Ireland from 1641 to 1652*, edited by Mr. J. T. Gilbert,<sup>3</sup> offers a valuable contribution to the

Affairs in  
Ireland.  
Ormonde  
Papers

Clarendon's  
Short View

Contemporary  
History of  
Ireland.

<sup>1</sup> *An Impartial Collection of the Great Affairs of State, from the beginning of the Scotch Rebellion in the year 1639, to the Murder of King Charles I., wherein the first Occasions and the whole Series of the late Troubles in England, Scotland, and Ireland are faithfully represented* By John Nalson, LL.D. 2 vols 1682.

<sup>2</sup> *A Collection of Original Letters and Papers concerning the Affairs of England, from the year 1641 to 1660, found among the Duke of Ormonde's Papers.* By Thomas Carte. 2 vols London, 1739.

<sup>3</sup> In 6 parts. Irish Archaeological and Celtic Society. 1879 and 1880.

CHAP.  
VII

---

literature of the subject, and includes numerous original documents. The general tenour of the evidence supplied is unfavourable to the English conduct of affairs, and, in contradiction to Clarendon, serves to convict both Ormonde and Charles of complicity with the Irish Catholics in 1641, in order to secure their assistance against the English Parliament.

Special  
events, &c  
Gun-  
powder  
Plot.

Turning now to special events and particular characters, we have, for the Gunpowder Plot, FATHER GERARD'S *Narrative*, contained in the volume by Morris, already named (*supra*, p. 318), and the documents contained in MR JARDINE'S work.<sup>1</sup> For the trial of the earl of Somerset and his countess, MR. AMOS'S volume<sup>2</sup> furnishes original material, although his treatment of the evidence is altogether wanting in critical value.

Trial of  
Somerset.

The  
Spanish  
Marriage.

Of the Spanish Marriage, viewed in the light in which the facts would present themselves to a Spanish Catholic, the treatise of FRAY FRANCISCO<sup>3</sup> is a trustworthy representation, and supplies a full statement of the case, on behalf of Spain, against king James and prince Charles.

Expedition  
to Ro-  
chelle.

An account written by Lord HERBERT OF CHERBURY of the Expedition to the Island of Rhé,<sup>4</sup> is designed to vindicate the whole conception and conduct of the undertaking; its value, however, is somewhat diminished by the consideration of the fact that the writer was the confidant and personal friend of Buckingham. In his 'Preface to the Reader,' he refers to four other accounts of the expedition.

<sup>1</sup> *The Narrative of the Gunpowder Plot* By D. Jardine. 1856.

<sup>2</sup> *The Great Oyer of Poisoning the Trial of the Earl of Somerset for the Poisoning of Sir Thomas Overbury in the Tower of London.* By Andrew Amos. 1846.

<sup>3</sup> *Narrative of the Spanish Marriage Treaty.* Edited and translated by S. R. Gardiner C S 1869.

<sup>4</sup> *The Expedition to the Isle of Rhé.* By Edward, Lord Herbert of Cherbury, Phil. S. 1860.

The *Large Declaration*,<sup>1</sup> published in 1639 by royal authority, was the work of DR. BALCANQUAL, although it does not bear his name. It is valuable on account of the documents printed in it, and also as giving the royalist version of king Charles's case against the Covenanters. The negotiations between the king and the Covenanters in 1640 have received additional illustration in a volume edited by the late Mr. Bruce<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
VII.

The *Large Declaration*.

Borough's  
*Notes*.

The *Annales of Scotland*, by SIR JAMES BALFOUR of Kinnaid,<sup>3</sup> lord Lyon King at Arms to Charles I. and Charles II., extend from AD 1507 to 1603. The last two volumes giving, under the title of 'Some Brief Memorials and Passages of Church and State,' a chronicle of events from 1641 to 1652, are a valuable contemporary record.

Balfour's  
*Annales*.

The *Memoirs of Henry Guthry*,<sup>4</sup> bishop of Dunkeld, embrace the period 1637 to 1649. GUTHRY was originally a Covenanter, but subsequently espoused the cause of Charles I., and, on the re-establishment of episcopacy, was made a bishop. His narrative fairly deserves the praise of being one of the most temperate and candid specimens of the minor historical literature of the time.

Guthry's  
*Memoirs*.

It was in the year 1640 that torture was resorted to, for the last time in England, as a legal means for ex-

<sup>1</sup> *A large Declaration concerning the late tumults in Scotland*. Fol. 1639.

<sup>2</sup> *Notes of the Treaty carried on at Ripon between King Charles I and the Covenanters of Scotland*, A.D. 1640, taken by Sir John Borough, Garter King of Arms. Edited from the Original MS. in the possession of Lieutenant-Colonel Carew, by John Bruce. C.S. 1869

<sup>3</sup> *Historical Works of Sir James Balfour*. Edited by James Haig, with a prefatory Memoir. 4 vols. 1825.

<sup>4</sup> *The Memoirs of Henry Guthry, late Bishop of Dunkeld containing an Impartial Relation of the Affairs of Scotland, civil and ecclesiastical, from the year 1637 to the Death of Charles I.* 2nd edit. Glasgow, 1747.

CHAP.  
VII

Milton on  
Church  
Reform,  
the Free-  
dom of the  
Press, and  
the Puritan  
Policy.

torting evidence; a subject which has been historically investigated by MR. JARDINE.<sup>1</sup>

The controversial works of MILTON, written when (to quote his own expression) he quitted calmer studies 'to embark in the sea of noises and hoarse disputes,' are highly important illustrations of the age. Those which appeared about 1641: *Of Reformation touching Church Discipline, Of Prelatical Episcopacy*, and *The Reason of Church Government*, embody the Puritan arguments against the Church of England as then established. The replies of BISHOP HALL to 'Smectymnuus' and to Milton, represent the moderate Episcopalian view in opposition to Presbyterianism. Milton's *Areopagitica* gives the earliest exposition of the arguments for the freedom of the press, a subject which, as a distinct enquiry, may here be advantageously followed up in the fifteenth and sixteenth chapters of Macaulay's *History*. His *Defence of the People of England* and his *Eikonoclastes* are powerful expressions of the political feeling of the Puritan party.

Burton's  
*Protesta-  
tion, &c.*  
Lord  
Brooke's  
*Discourse*.

BURTON'S *Protestation Protested*<sup>2</sup> (1841) and LORD BROOKE'S *Discourse*<sup>3</sup> (1841)—the former advocating the abolition of the characteristic institutions of the Church of England, the latter denouncing the episcopal office as unscriptural—are notable specimens of the iconoclastic spirit of the times.

Strafford's  
*Letters*.

For STRAFFORD'S character and policy, his *Letters and Despatches*<sup>4</sup> must be studied, a series of papers

<sup>1</sup> *Reading on the Use of Torture in the Criminal Law of England*. By D. Jardine. 1837. See also Hallam's observations: *Const. Hist.* (11th ed.) II 8.

<sup>2</sup> *The Protestation Protested; or, a short Remonstrance shewing what is principally required of all those who take the last Parliamentary Protestation*. [By H. Burton] 1641.

<sup>3</sup> *A Discourse opening the Nature of that Episcopacy which is exercised in England*. By the Rt Honourable Robert, Lord Brooke. 1641.

<sup>4</sup> *The Earl of Strafford's Letters and Despatches, with an Essay towards*

in which his conceptions of the relations of the monarchy to the commonwealth are clearly revealed.

To LUDLOW'S *Memoirs*<sup>1</sup> we are indebted for a good illustration of the Cromwellian policy throughout Ireland. Those of DENZIL, LORD HOLLES,<sup>2</sup> belong to the period A.D. 1641-48, and may be looked upon as a kind of rejoinder to Ludlow. They are the production of a zealous royalist, during the time of his exile, and are ironically dedicated to St. John and Cromwell, as those to whom he is especially indebted for 'the leisure of making' his book.

The events of the years 1644-45, those in Scotland in 1650, and the documentary evidence for the negotiations in the Isle of Wight between Charles and the Parliament in 1648, are given in the *Historical Discourses* of SIR EDWARD WALKER,<sup>3</sup> secretary of war to Charles I., and afterwards clerk of the Council to Charles II.

The military movements of the years 1645 and 1646 are detailed at length in SPRIGG'S *Anglia Rediviva*,<sup>4</sup> a work by Fairfax's chaplain. Other details respecting the war in the West of England, and more especially in Herefordshire, are to be found in WEBB'S *Memorials*,<sup>5</sup> a

CHAP.  
VII.

Ludlow's  
*Memoirs*.

Holles's  
*Memoirs*.

Walker's  
*Historical  
Discourses*.

Sprigg's  
*Anglia  
Rediviva*.

*his Life by Sir George Radcliffe. From the Originals in the possession of his Great Grandson, the Right Hon Thomas, Earl of Minton, &c. By William Knowler, LL D. 2 vols. fol. London, 1739.*

<sup>1</sup> *Memoirs of Edmund Ludlow, Esq, Lieutenant-General of the Horse, Commander-in-Chief of the Forces in Ireland, &c., &c. With a Collection of Original Papers 1771.*

<sup>2</sup> Printed in *Select Tracts relating to the Civil Wars in England, in the Reign of Charles the First. In 2 parts London, 1815.*

<sup>3</sup> *Historical Discourses upon several Occasions, &c., &c. By Sir Edward Walker, K.G. London, 1705.*

<sup>4</sup> *Anglia Rediviva, England's Recovery: being the History of the Motions, Actions, and Successes of the Army under the immediate Conduct of his Excellency, Sir Thomas Fairfax, Kt. Compiled for the public good by Joshua Sprigg, M.A. (Original edit, 1647) Clarendon Press, 1854.*

<sup>5</sup> *Memorials of the Civil War between King Charles I and the Parliament of England, as it affected Herefordshire and the adjacent Counties By*

CHAP.  
VIICromwell  
and the  
Earl of  
Man-  
chester.Correspon-  
dence of  
Charles and  
Henrietta  
MariaMemoirs of  
Charles's  
last years.

record which brings home to us, perhaps more than any other of the period, the social suffering and demoralisation consequent upon the great struggle.

The quarrel between Cromwell and Manchester at Newbury, a leading event in the Civil War, but one with respect to which our information has hitherto been singularly incomplete, has been rendered more intelligible by a recent publication of the Camden Society.<sup>1</sup> In the same series, a volume of *Letters* from CHARLES to HENRIETTA MARIA, written in the year 1646, when he was in the hands of the Scotch army,<sup>2</sup> exhibit in a striking light the duplicity of his conduct at this crisis. Those of the queen to her husband have been translated and edited by Mrs. Everett Green (Bentley, 1856).

*The Puritan Visitation of the University of Oxford*, edited by professor Montagu Burrows (C. S. 1881), has just issued from the press.

A small volume published at Geneva,<sup>3</sup> chiefly from the pen of SIR THOMAS HERBERT, supplies a narrative of Charles's personal history during the last two years of his life, and a detailed account of the circumstances more immediately preceding his execution.

*England and the Continent.* Our foreign relations for the period 1606-11 are illustrated by the journal of

the late Rev. John Webb. M A Edited and completed by the Rev. T. W. Webb With an Appendix of Documents. 2 vols. 1879.

<sup>1</sup> *Documents relating to the Quarrel between the Earl of Manchester and Oliver Cromwell; with Fragments of a Historical Preface, by the late J. Bruce, Esq* Annotated and completed by Prof Masson. C. S 1877.

<sup>2</sup> *Letters of King Charles the First to Queen Henrietta Maria* Edited by John Bruce, Esq. C. S 1856.

<sup>3</sup> *Memoirs of the Two Last Years of the Reign of that unparalleled Prince, of ever blessed Memory, King Charles I By Sir Tho Herbert, Major Huntingdon, Col. Edw. Coke, and Mr. Hen. Firebrace.* Geneva, 1646 (1666) [The London edition of 1702 gives also 'The Death-Bed Repentance of Mr. Lenthal, Speaker of the Long Parliament, extracted out of a Letter written from Oxford, Sept. 1662.']

*Le Fèvre de la Boderie*,<sup>1</sup> the French ambassador, an experienced and distinguished diplomatist of the period. The great collections by DUMONT<sup>2</sup> are now indispensable to the student who seeks to become acquainted with the treaties between England and other countries. The work also supplies, in the first part of the sixth volume, material which is not to be found in the concluding volume of Rymer's *Foedera*. Winwood's *Memorials* (*supra*, p. 318), which extend to 1613, continue to be of much service, especially for the negotiations with France and Spain. To these may be added the account of the embassy of Bassompierre,<sup>3</sup> the French ambassador to the court of England in 1626.

CHAP.  
VII.

De la  
Boderie.  
Dumont.

Winwood.

Bassom-  
pierre.

The aspect under which the England of this period presented itself to foreign eyes is to be gathered from the *Reports* of the Venetian ambassadors,<sup>4</sup> which they were accustomed to prepare on their return from their respective missions. These are comparatively meagre for the reign of Elizabeth, but with the seventeenth century become of great value, and contain very graphic descriptions both of the English court and of public affairs.

Venetian  
Reports.

The *Œconomies Royales* of SULLY<sup>5</sup> are of a graver

<sup>1</sup> *Ambassades de M. de la Boderie en Angleterre sous le règne d'Henri IV. et la minorité de Louis XIII.* 1750.

<sup>2</sup> *Corps Universel Diplomatique du Droit des Gens. contenant un Recueil des Traitez d'Alliance, de Paix, de Trêve, de Neutralité, de Commerce, d'Echange, &c., &c., depuis le Règne de l'Empereur Charlemagne jusques à présent. par M. J. Dumont.* 8 vols. 1726.

<sup>3</sup> *Memoir of the Embassy of the Marshal de Bassompierre to the Court of England, in 1626.* Translated with notes and a Life of Bassompierre. By the Right Hon J. W. Croker. 1819

<sup>4</sup> *Relazioni degli Stati Europei, Lettere al Senato dagli Ambasciatori Veneziani nel secolo Decimo settimo Raccolte ed annotate da Nicolo Barozzi e Guglielmo Berchet.* Serie III Italia e Inghilterra. Venezia. 1861.

<sup>5</sup> *Mémoires des sages et royales économies d'estat, domestiques, politiques et militaires de Henry le Grand, l'exemplaire des Roys, le prince des vertues,*



CHAP.  
VII.Sully's  
*Economies  
Royales.*

character and somewhat repellent both from their style and unmethodical arrangement, but will be found to contain material of considerable value for the negotiations between England and France up to the date of his retirement from office in 1611.

Birch's  
*Historical  
View.*

DR. BIRCH'S *Historical View*<sup>1</sup> of the diplomatic relations of the courts of England, France, and Brussels, from 1592 to 1617, is founded on the State Papers of the period, and includes also SIR GEORGE CAREW'S account of Henry IV. and the French Court, drawn up on his return from his mission thither in 1609.

Carleton  
*Letters.*

The correspondence of SIR DUDLEY CARLETON,<sup>2</sup> ambassador to the Hague, extends over the years 1616-20, a very critical juncture in our relations with the States-General.

Rusdorf  
Des-  
patches.

The *Mémoires* of RUSDORF,<sup>3</sup> councillor to Frederick V. of Bohemia, are valuable as the record of a diplomatist's experiences at the English Court during the latter part of the reign of James I. and the early part of that of Charles. They are really *despatches*, not memoirs, in the English sense of the term. The *Consilia et Negotia Politica* (Frankfort, 1725), by the same writer, also contain documents relating to English affairs.

*Biographical Literature.*—The many remarkable

*des armes, et des loix . . . et des servitudes utiles, obeissances convenables et administrations loyales de M de Béthune* Dediez à la France. 4 tom. Chateau de Sully, 1638. Paris, 1662. [The edition of 1745 (London) by the Abbé de l'Ecluse should be avoided, as in this the original arrangement and the text itself were unwarrantably tampered with.]

<sup>1</sup> *An Historical View of the Negotiations between the Courts of England, France, and Brussels, from the year 1592 to 1617, &c, &c.* By Thomas Birch, M.A. 1749.

<sup>2</sup> *The Letters from and to Sir Dudley Carleton, Kt., during his Embassy in Holland.* 3rd edit, with Historical Preface. 1780.

<sup>3</sup> *Mémoires et négociations secrètes de M. de Rusdorf, conseiller d'Etat de Frederic V., Roi de Bohême, pour servir à l'histoire de la guerre de trente ans.* Edited by E. G. Cuhn. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1879.

characters whose capacities and energies were developed by the experiences of the Civil War and the preceding political contests, were the occasion of a corresponding number of biographies or autobiographies, many of which are interesting and valuable. Of the *Life* of Father Gerard mention has already been made. For the eventful career of WILLIAM PRYNNE some new material will be found in a recent publication of the Camden Society.<sup>1</sup> For that of his antagonist, LAUD, the true key is contained in the *Letters* to Strafford,<sup>2</sup> and the *History of his Troubles and Trials* (written by himself), both of which are much more important than the *Diary*,<sup>3</sup> a record on which somewhat undue stress has been laid by hostile criticism. The light in which this prelate's policy and motives were viewed by his enemies is to be seen in the two treatises of Prynne;<sup>4</sup> the estimate formed by his admirers is expressed in the *Life* by HEYLIN:<sup>5</sup> an excellent illustration of the period, though presenting us with a somewhat superficial view of Laud's character.

Works by  
Prynne and  
Laud.

Heylin's  
*Life of  
Laud.*

<sup>1</sup> *Papers relating to the Life of William Prynne, with the Fragment of a Biographical Preface by the late J. Bruce, Esq.* Edited by S. R. Gardiner C. S. 1878.

<sup>2</sup> *The Earl of Strafford's Letters and Despatches, with an Essay towards his Life by Sir George Radcliffe From the originals in the possession of his Great Grandson, the Right Hon. Thomas, Earl of Malton &c.* By William Knowler. 2 vols fol. 1739.

<sup>3</sup> See his *Works*. Edited by Rev. W. Scott. 9 vols. Anglo-Catholic Lib. 1847-70.

<sup>4</sup> (i.) *Hidden Works of Darkness brought to Publike Light or, a necessary Introduction to the History of the Archbishop of Canterbury's Triall, &c.* London, 1845, fol. (ii.) *Canterburie's Doome. or, the first part of a Compleat History of the Commitment, Charge, Tryall, Condemnation, Execution, of W. Laud, late Archbishop of Canterbury* fol 1846.

<sup>5</sup> *Cyprrianus Anglicanus or the History of the Life and Death of the most reverend and renowned Prelate, Wilham, by Divine Providence Lord Archbishop of Canterbury. In 2 parts. Containing also the Ecclesiastical History of the Three Kingdoms of England, Scotland, and Ireland, from*

CHAP.  
VII.

*Lives of*  
Hutchin-  
son,  
Williams,  
Birch,  
Bedell,  
and the  
Dukes of  
Hamilton.

The *Life of Colonel Hutchinson*,<sup>1</sup> by his widow, is among the most widely known. Hutchinson represented Nottinghamshire in the Long Parliament, taking the parliamentary side; and the narrative throws much light on the conduct of the committees through which Parliament worked, and the machinery whereby it maintained its authority over the whole kingdom. HACKET'S *Life of the Lord Keeper Williams*<sup>2</sup>—undoubtedly the most important piece of biography in this period—depicts a character of great force and originality, and one who was especially conspicuous as the rival of Laud. The *Memoir of Colonel Birch*,<sup>3</sup> governor of Hereford during the Civil War, is an account of an officer who attained to considerable distinction in his day; this will gain in interest if read in conjunction with Webb's *Memorials*, above referred to (p. 342). The *Lives* of BISHOP BEDELL<sup>4</sup> supply a graphic description of the difficulties and perils that surrounded the English settlers in Ulster. BISHOP BURNET'S *Lives of the two Dukes of Hamilton*,<sup>5</sup> dedicated to Charles II., are a highly eulogistic account of the careers of two distinguished royalist leaders from the year 1625 to 1652.

*his first Rising till his Death.* By P. Heylin, D.D., Chaplain to Charles I. and Charles II. Dublin, 1719.

<sup>1</sup> *Memoirs of the Life of Colonel Hutchinson, Governor of Nottingham Castle and Town, with original Anecdotes of many of the most distinguished of his Contemporaries and a Summary View of Public Affairs.* By his Widow, Lucy. To which is prefixed the life of Mrs. Hutchinson, written by herself. 1848.

<sup>2</sup> *Scrinia Reserata. Memoirs of the Life of Archbishop Williams.* By John Hacket, D.D. Fol., 1693.

<sup>3</sup> *A Military Memoir of Colonel Birch, Governor of Hereford during the Civil War.* Edited by the late Rev. John Webb and Rev. T. W. Webb. C. S. 1874.

<sup>4</sup> (I.) *Life of Bishop Bedell, by his Son.* Edited by John E. B. Mayor. 1871. (II.) *A true Relation of the Life and Death of William Bedell, Lord Bishop of Kilmore.* Edited by Thomas Wharton Jones. C. S. 1873.

<sup>5</sup> *The Memoires of the Lives and Actions of James and William, Dukes*

Among the numerous autobiographies of this period, each possessing a certain character and value of its own, that of SIR SIMONDS D'EWES,<sup>1</sup> terminating with the year 1636 (although he lived to the year 1650), includes interesting sketches of many of his contemporaries, and represents generally the views of a moderate Puritan, but one of very dogmatic spirit, and no little eccentricity. That of SIR ROBERT CAREY, earl of Monmouth,<sup>2</sup> ends with the year 1639. That of LORD HERBERT OF CHERBURY<sup>3</sup> is the frank and ingenuous record of the career of a high-spirited and chivalrous nobleman, who mixed much with society both at home and abroad; it illustrates, however, to a painful extent, the singularly vindictive and lawless spirit that prevailed among even the highest classes at this period. Two similar productions from the pens of ladies,—the one that of LADY HALKET,<sup>4</sup> a royalist lady who saw much of public events and political society under the reigns of both the Charleses, the other that of MRS. ALICE THORNTON,<sup>5</sup> which extends to the year 1669, and is the record of the quiet domestic life of a true and pious wife and mother,

CHAP.  
VII

*Autobiographies of*  
Sir Simonds  
D'Ewes,  
Sir R.  
Carey,  
Lord Herbert of  
Cherbury,  
Lady Halket, and  
Mrs  
Thornton

*of Hamilton and Castleherald, &c. In which an account is given of the Rise and Progress of the Civil Wars of Scotland, with other great Transactions both in England and Germany, from the year 1625 to the year 1652. Together with Letters and Papers written by King Charles I, never before published* By Gilbert Burnet. 1677.

<sup>1</sup> *The Autobiography and Correspondence of Sir Simonds D'Ewes, Bart, during the Reigns of James I. and Charles I.* Edited by J. O. Halliwell. 4 vols 1845.

<sup>2</sup> *Memoirs of the Life of Robert Carey, written by himself, and now first published from an original manuscript, in the custody of John, earl of Cork and Orrery.* London, 1759.

<sup>3</sup> *The Life of Lord Herbert of Cherbury. Written by himself.* London, 1827.

<sup>4</sup> *Autobiography of Lady Halket, in the Reign of Charles I. and Charles II.* Edited by the late John Gough Nichols. C. S. 1875.

<sup>5</sup> *The Autobiography of Mrs. Alice Thornton, of East Newton, co. York.* S. S. 1875.

CHAP.  
VII.

whose days were passed in Richmondshire,—are valuable as examples of two very different phases of social life and feeling

Halliwell's  
*Letters, etc.*

*Correspondence of  
the Hatton  
Family.*

*Fairfax  
Correspondence.*

*Hamilton  
Papers.*

The *Correspondence* of this period is also valuable and often of great interest. The second volume of HALLIWELL'S *Letters of the Kings of England* comprises numerous letters by king James VI. of Scotland, James I., the duke and duchess of Buckingham and Charles I. The *Correspondence of the Hatton Family*<sup>1</sup> extends from A.D. 1601 to 1704. These letters contain but little that is of direct historical value, much resembling in their character and contents the better known *Paston Letters*. They are, however, a fair sample of the correspondence of a family of the higher classes in the sixteenth century.

The *Fairfax Correspondence*,<sup>2</sup> so far as published, is mainly a selection from a series of letters which extend over two centuries. Those selected by JOHNSON belong to the years A.D. 1625–40, and their contents have been supplemented by the editor by a continuous narrative of the period. Many of these letters are of considerable value as coming from some of the most prominent actors in the struggle, and bearing directly on the great events then in progress; the editor has also prefixed to the work a 'Historical and Biographical Memoir' of the Fairfax family. The volumes edited by BELL comprise the period 1642–70; in these the editor's function has been restricted chiefly to careful arrangement of the materials.

The *Hamilton Papers*,<sup>3</sup> belonging to the period A.D.

<sup>1</sup> *Correspondence of the Family of Hatton, 1601–1704* Edited by E. M. Thompson, Esq. 2 vols. C. S. 1879

<sup>2</sup> *The Fairfax Correspondence.* (i.) *Memoirs of the Reign of Charles I.* Edited by G. W. Johnson. 2 vols 1848. (ii.) *Memorials of the Civil War.* Edited by Robert Bell 2 vols. 1849.

<sup>3</sup> *The Hamilton Papers being Selections from Original Letters in the possession of his Grace the Duke of Hamilton and Brandon.* Edited by S. R. Gardiner. C. S. 1880.

1638-50, contain letters by the MARQUIS of HAMILTON, those written from Newcastle by SIR ROBERT MURRAY during the king's imprisonment in that city, and numerous letters which throw light on the second civil war.

CHAP.  
VII.

The *Letters and Journals* of ROBERT BAILLIE,<sup>1</sup> principal of the University of Glasgow, contain accounts of public transactions, civil, ecclesiastical, and military, in England and Scotland, and date from the year 1637 to 1662.

Baillie's  
*Letters*, etc.

A small volume, known as WELWOOD'S *Memoirs*,<sup>2</sup> published towards the close of the seventeenth century, purports to be a concise account of the principal events of the century preceding the year 1688. It is, however, rather a series of criticisms than a connected narrative. Maseres had so high an opinion of its merits as to deem it deserving of republication in 1820.

Welwood's  
*Memoirs*.

(B.) **Later Writers.**—No period of our history has attracted to it so much of the best literary talent of our own age as the one now under consideration. To such an extent, indeed, has this been the case, that writers of the intermediate period, who have put forth works on the subject, have become almost superseded. The labours of DR. BIRCH, the editor of the *Thurloe Papers*, deserve however to be briefly noticed. He was one of the first of our historical scholars to perceive the advantages to be derived by the use not only of State Papers and similar formal documents, but also of the 'Intelligencers' or news-letters of the time; and his *Court and Times of James I.*,<sup>3</sup> along with a similar work on

Thomas  
Birch.  
b. 1705.  
d. 1760.

His  
*Courts of  
James I.  
and  
Charles I.*  
etc.

<sup>1</sup> *The Letters and Journals of Robert Baillie, A M. With a Memoir of the Author*, by D. Laing. 2 vols. B. C. 1841.

<sup>2</sup> *Memoirs of the most material Transactions in England for the last hundred years, preceding the Revolution in 1688.* By James Welwood, M D. 1820.

<sup>3</sup> *The Court and Times of James the First illustrated by authentic and*

CHAP.  
VII

the reign of Charles I.,<sup>1</sup> though little more than collections of materials (which, in the earlier work, are disfigured by numerous misprints), still possess considerable value. Dr. Birch also compiled, chiefly from the Harleian manuscripts, a *Life* of prince Henry, eldest son of James I.<sup>2</sup> The *Life of Ormonde*,<sup>3</sup> by Dr. Birch's contemporary, THOMAS CARTE, deserves no higher praise than that due to laborious research. The author, who was secretary to Atterbury, was an undistinguished partisan of the Stuart dynasty, and on more than one occasion was arrested on the suspicion of plotting in its interest.

Carte's  
*Life of*  
*Ormonde.*

Brodie.

(C.) **Writers of the Present Century.**—BRODIE'S *Constitutional History*,<sup>4</sup> treating of the period from the accession of Charles I to the Restoration, will always possess a certain interest as one of the first and most successful protests against the specious representations of Hume, whose views of the policy of Charles and Strafford are subjected to a detailed and searching criticism. The work of GODWIN,<sup>5</sup> the novelist and

Godwin.

*confidential Letters, from various public and private collections.* By Thomas Birch. 2 vols. 1848

<sup>1</sup> *The Court and Times of Charles the First, illustrated by authentic and confidential Letters, from various public and private Collections, including Memoirs of the Mission in England of the Capuchin Friars in the service of Queen Henrietta Maria, by Father Cyprien de Gamache.* By Thomas Birch. 2 vols. 1848.

<sup>2</sup> *The Life of Henry, Prince of Wales, eldest son of King James I.* By Thomas Birch. 1760

<sup>3</sup> *An History of the Life of James, Duke of Ormonde, from his Birth in 1610, to his Death in 1688* By Thomas Carte 3 vols. fol 1736

<sup>4</sup> *A Constitutional History of the British Empire from the Accession of Charles I. to the Restoration: with an Introduction tracing the Progress of Society and of the Constitution from the Feudal Times to the opening of the History, &c.* By George Brodie. 3 vols (New ed.) 1866.

<sup>5</sup> *History of the Commonwealth of England, from its commencement to the Restoration of Charles the Second.* By William Godwin. 4 vols. 1826.

political writer, maintains less temperately the same general view of the merits of contending parties.

CHAP  
VII

The seventh and eighth volumes of Lingard's *History* carry us on from the accession of James I. to the Restoration, and continue to supply a candid and temperate narrative of events, though one which can no longer be considered adequately to represent the new data at command. The *Commentaries on the Reign of Charles I.* by ISAAC DISRAELI,<sup>1</sup> constituted another advance upon preceding works, both by virtue of the larger range of the material embodied and the greater vigour of thought that characterised its treatment. The writer drew from a large number of diaries and letters at that time unpublished. He was the first to consult the *Mercure François*, a kind of official annual register of the times, to which he refers as containing 'a good deal of our own secret history.' Mr Disraeli also enjoyed the advantage of having access to the manuscripts of Sir John Eliot, to the *Conway Papers* (at that time in the possession of the Marquis of Hertford, but now incorporated with the Domestic State Papers in the Record Office), and to the official papers of Melchior de Sabran, the French representative in England during the years 1644-45.

Lingard

Disraeli's  
*Charles I*

The first work that offered a complete and fairly successful vindication of Cromwell from the heavier charges of his detractors, was the collection of his *Letters and Speeches*, edited by THOMAS CARLYLE, and published in 1845. Though representing rather a compilation than a finished biography, the volumes are illustrated by a continuous thread of narrative and criticism, containing masterly touches which often impart to the materials the highest value and interest.

Carlyle's  
*Letters and  
Speeches of  
Cromwell.*

<sup>1</sup> *Commentaries on the Life and Reign of Charles the First, King of England* By Isaac Disraeli (New edition, revised by the Author and edited by his Son) 2 vols. 1851.



CHAP  
VII

---

Guizot's  
*Revolu-  
tion*, &c.

The eminent French politician, GUIZOT, whose sympathies were strongly with the cause of constitutional government in his own country, was led to include the 'English Revolution'<sup>1</sup> among the many subjects to which he devoted his great powers of historical research. His studies of Charles I., Oliver Cromwell, Richard Cromwell, and Monk, which appeared between the years 1827 and 1858, successively furnish a connected narrative of events from the accession of Charles I. to the Restoration.

Works of  
Mr John  
Forster.

A series of studies by JOHN FORSTER, that appeared in Lardner's *Cyclopaedia* between the years 1830 and 1844, entitled *Lives of the Statesmen of the Commonwealth*, commanded attention by the evidence they gave of original research and general ability, and were much used and commended by Guizot. These have been followed by productions of a more mature character, the *History of the Grand Remonstrance* (1860), the *Arrest of the Five Members* (1860), and the *Life of Sir John Eliot* (1864). Mr. Forster, however, was not only an historical writer, but his time and energies were also largely absorbed in the journalism of the Whig party of his day, and his treatment of important questions too often betrays the influence of a strong feeling of partisanship.

Works of  
Professor  
Gardiner.

None indeed of the foregoing works represent so full and careful an investigation of the whole range of materials, whether domestic or foreign, as that supplied by the works of MR. S. R. GARDINER, which extend from nearly the commencement of the century to the year 1637. These are: *A History of England from the Accession of James I. to the Disgrace of Chief Justice Coke* (2 vols., 1863); *Prince Charles and the Spanish*

<sup>1</sup> *Histoire de la révolution d'Angleterre* (1625 à 1660). Par F. Guizot. 6 vols. *Etudes sur l'histoire de la révolution d'Angleterre*. 2 vols.

*Marriage* (2 vols., 1869); *A History of England under the Duke of Buckingham and Charles I.* (2 vols., 1875); and *The Personal Government of Charles I.* (2 vols., 1877).<sup>1</sup> The design of the author having been to ascertain, as far as possible, the actual truth, this series includes little of the anecdotage and scandal with which the pamphlet literature of the period abounds; but as the volumes have successively appeared, they have been recognised by nearly every section of the critical press, as characterised not only by a thorough mastery of the facts and great clearness of treatment, but as furnishing also that 'impartial narrative' of the times, of which Isaac Disraeli almost despaired.

For the general history of this and of our next period, and more especially for the relations of English to continental politics, the work of Dr. Ranke, already named (*supra*, p. 325), must be looked upon as superseding all others. Ranke.

Mr. SANFORD'S volume, *Studies and Illustrations of the Great Rebellion* (1858), gives us a series of sketches from the commencement of the Stuart dynasty to the year 1645. It is a work condensing the results of much laborious and original research, ably thought out; the conclusions being, on the whole, favourable to the Puritan party, and especially to Cromwell and his policy. Sanford.

The studies of Strafford, Laud, and Cromwell, in the collected *Essays* of the late J. B. MOZLEY (2 vols., 1878), are singularly powerful contributions to the historical literature of this period, from the pen of a staunch adherent of the Anglican party. Mozley.

The sixth and seventh volumes of BURTON'S *History* Burton.

<sup>1</sup> Of a fifth work by the same writer—*The Fall of the Monarchy of Charles I.*—the first two volumes, bringing the narrative down to 1642, are in the press.

CHAP.  
VII.  

---

of *Scotland* carry us down to the period of the Revolution. In these, the writer portrays very clearly the aspect of affairs as it presented itself to the Scotch mind of the period, and his representation of the effects of the suicidal policy of Charles and Laud is especially worthy of note.

Bancroft.

The first volume of BANCROFT'S *History of the United States*,<sup>1</sup> supplies the necessary outline of our earlier American colonisation and of the several Puritan settlements in Virginia, Maryland, and New England. PALFREY'S *History of New England* is also a work of acknowledged merit.<sup>2</sup>

Nichols's  
*Progresses*.

For the reign of James I., NICHOLS'S *Progresses*,<sup>3</sup> continue to offer a series of quaint and diverting illustrations in their special field.

*Lives of*  
Bacon,  
Milton,  
Montrose,  
Prince  
Rupert and  
Fairfax

The *Life of Bacon* by MR SPEDDING is an important contribution not only to the political history of the time, but also to that of the progress of philosophical thought ; while professor MASSON'S *Life of Milton* is an elaborate and often highly interesting study of all the contemporary movements—religious, political, and social—which may be supposed to have influenced the poet's genius or to have moulded the national history. The *Lives* of Montrose by MARK NAPIER, of prince Rupert by ELIOT WARBURTON, and of Fairfax by Mr CLEMENTS MARK-

<sup>1</sup> *A History of the United States, from the Discovery of the American Continent to the present Time* By George Bancroft. 10 vols 1834-74.

<sup>2</sup> *A History of New England*. By John Gorham Palfrey. New York, 1858.

<sup>3</sup> *The Progresses, Processions, and Magnificent Festivities of King James I., his royal Consort, Family, and Court, &c. With numerous original Letters, and annotated Lists of the Peers, Baronets, and Knights, who received those honours during the Reign of James I.* By John Nichols. 4 vols. 1828.

IIAM, though representing very different conceptions of the period are each well deserving of perusal.

Miss STRICKLAND'S *Lives of the last Four Princesses of the Royal House of Stuart* (1872) form an interesting supplement to her studies of the Stuart dynasty, and may be compared for their treatment of the subject with the concluding volume of the series by Mrs. EVERETT GREEN (see *supra*, p. 228).

## CHAPTER VIII.

## FROM THE PROTECTORATE TO THE REVOLUTION.

CHAP.  
VIII.

Authorities  
already  
described.

A LARGE proportion of the works named in the two preceding chapters, *eg*, those of Fuller, Collier, Thurloe, Winwood, Whitelock, Challoner, Harrington, Neal, Lloyd, Welwood, the Lords' and Commons' *Journals*, the Ormonde *Papers*, the Sydney, Hatton, and Fairfax *Correspondence*, are equally useful either for the whole or for a part of the present period. Hardwicke's *State Papers* contain documents relating to the duke of Monmouth's rebellion.

Calendar of  
State  
Papers.

The *Calendar of State Papers* of the reign of Charles II, by Mrs. Everett Green, is published as far as the year 1667.

Burnet's  
*Own  
Times*.

(A.) **Contemporary Writers.**—BURNET'S *History of his Own Times*,<sup>1</sup> after a recapitulation of events from the 'beginning of the troubles' to the Restoration, proceeds with a more detailed narrative extending to the year 1713. As a truthful and impartial record, it is of less authority than even his *History of the Reformation*. For a criticism on its merits, the student should consult that of Ranke in the sixth volume of his *History* (pp. 45–87), where Burnet's statements are compared with the Dutch Reports, and a collation is also given of the printed text with the original manuscript. Ranke's conclusions, it may be noted, are far less favourable than those of Macaulay to Burnet's claims to be regarded as an accurate historian.

<sup>1</sup> The best edition is that in 6 vols. Clarendon Press. 1823.

For the two years 1660-62, KENNET'S *Register and Chronicle*,<sup>1</sup> though scarcely the work of a contemporary, is a valuable collection of materials. It was not until after the Revolution, when he had embraced the views of the Low Church party, that the same writer published his *Lives* of Charles II. and James II.,<sup>2</sup> in which the character and policy of both monarchs are candidly, but somewhat severely, dealt with. Kennet's representations of the facts were acrimoniously attacked, a few years after his death, by the well-known Tory writer, ROGER NORTH, in his *Examen*.

CHAP.  
VIII

Kennet's  
*Register*  
and  
*Chronicle*  
and *Lives*  
of Charles  
II and  
James II.

In the year 1669, appeared the first edition of EDWARD CHAMBERLAYNE'S *Angliae Notitia*, or *Present State of England*,<sup>3</sup> a kind of gazetteer, condensing a large amount of information (now of considerable historical and antiquarian interest) on the physical geography, institutions, customs, and social life of the England of those days. The work subsequently passed through thirty-seven editions, and from the edition for 1684 lord Macaulay derived many of the facts which furnished material for his graphic picture of England in 1685.

Chamber-  
layne's  
*Present*  
*State*, &c.

The *Memoirs* by SIR WILLIAM TEMPLE were originally in three parts. Of these, the first was destroyed by the author, although its place is in some

<sup>1</sup> *A Register and Chronicle ecclesiastical and civil: containing Matters of Fact, delivered in the Words of the most authentic Books, Papers, and Records, digested in exact order of Time: with proper Notes and References towards discovering and connecting the true History of England . . . from the MS. Collections of the Lord Bishop of Peterborough, 1728. Vol. 1. [The work was left incomplete, owing to Kennet's death, and no second volume appeared.]*

<sup>2</sup> Published in his *Complete History* - see *supra*, pp. 217-8.

<sup>3</sup> In later editions (by John Chamberlayne) the treatment of the subject is extended to the whole of Great Britain, and the work is entitled *Magnae Britanniae Notitia*.

CHAP.  
VIII.

*Letters and  
Memoirs by  
Sir W  
Temple.*

measure supplied by his *Letters*,<sup>1</sup> which contain an account of the principal political events, both in England and on the Continent, during the years 1665 to 1672. The second part<sup>2</sup> contains a more systematic narrative 'from the war begun in 1673, to the peace concluded 1679,' although, to quote the criticism of Swift, this portion would have been more correctly designated, 'Memoirs of what passed at the Treaty of Nimeguen,' in which event the chief interest of the recorded facts centres. The third part<sup>3</sup> extends from 1679 to Temple's final retirement from political life in February, 1680-1. Of the whole it may be said that its interest is derived rather from the writer's powers of subtle observation and felicitous style, than from any material contribution which it makes to our knowledge of the facts. It should, however, be observed that neither the *Letters* nor the *Memoirs* were designed by Temple himself for publication.

*Reresby's  
Memoirs.*

The *Memoirs* of SIR JOHN RERESBY<sup>4</sup> contain (pp 21-38) notes of his travels which supply us with a concise survey of the principal courts and governments of Europe during the period of Cromwell's rule. He describes Cromwell as one who, 'had his cause been good,' deserved to rank as 'one of the greatest and bravest men the world ever produced' (p 39). Reresby was elected member for York 16 March, 1685; and being the intimate friend of Halifax and on terms of familiar intercourse with the chief politicians and actors of the time, was able accurately to gauge the true state of political feeling. His journal, which extends from 1658 to 1689, reflects the views of the aristocratic party in his day.

<sup>1</sup> *Works* (4 vols. 1770), vols. i. and ii.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* vol. ii pp. 240-479.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* vol. ii. pp 481-552.

<sup>4</sup> *The Memoirs of Sir John Reresby, Bart.* Edited by J. J. Cartwright. 1875.

\* It was always the custom to reckon that an *historical year* commenced January 1.

A series of *Letters* to SIR JOSEPH WILLIAMSON,<sup>1</sup> while he was engaged as plenipotentiary at the Congress of Cologne from May, 1673 to March, 1674, are the vehicle of news of various kinds transmitted by his dependents and friends in the Secretary of State's office, and by other correspondents in the House of Commons and in the City. In an Appendix the student will find some interesting particulars concerning the management of the State Paper Office (of which Sir Joseph was keeper) and also details shewing the mode of preparing and circulating the news-letters of the time.

CHAP.  
VIII

The  
*Williamson Correspondence.*

The *Diary* of JOHN EVELYN<sup>2</sup> is one of the most important and attractive records of the kind in the language. Evelyn was personally well known both to Charles II. and James II., and throughout his life consistently maintained the character of a staunch episcopalian and royalist. He was distinguished for his enlightened interest in the progress of learning and science, and few foreigners of eminence in the scientific world visited England without seeking to make his acquaintance. During a short period of his life, Evelyn was engaged in the public service, and his *Diary* is a storehouse of illustration as regards the political, literary, and scientific movements of his age. It contains a record of events from the year of his birth (1620) to that of his death (1706).

Evelyn's  
*Diary.*

By the student of the manners and social life of the times, the *Diary* of Evelyn's friend, SAMUEL PEPYS,<sup>3</sup>

Pepys's  
*Diary.*

<sup>1</sup> *Letters addressed from London to Sir Joseph Williamson while Plenipotentiary at the Congress of Cologne in the year 1673.* Edited by W. D. Christie, C.B. 2 vols. C. S. 1874.

<sup>2</sup> *Diary and Correspondence of John Evelyn. To which is subjoined the private Correspondence between King Charles I. and Sir Edward Nicholas, and between Sir Edward Hyde, afterwards Earl of Clarendon, and Sir Richard Browne.* Edited by W. Bray. New edit. 4 vols. 1850.

<sup>3</sup> *Diary and Correspondence of Samuel Pepys. From his MS. cypher*



CHAP.  
VIII

will be found of even greater interest. It relates only to the years 1659 to 1669, when Pepys was a young and prosperous man, who mingled with zest in the London society of the day, and was a shrewd observer both of men and events. As secretary to the navy in the reign of Charles II., he had also excellent opportunities for becoming acquainted with state affairs. Of much the same character, as regards their point of view and tone of feeling, are the celebrated *Memoirs of the Count de Gramont*,<sup>1</sup> by his brother-in-law, Anthony Hamilton. These were composed in French, but have been translated into English.

*Memoirs of*  
*Count de*  
*Gramont.*

Luttrell's  
*Diary*

A far more useful source of information for historical purposes than either of the foregoing is the *Diary* of NARCISSUS LUTTRELL,<sup>2</sup> which extends from A.D. 1678 to 1714. Luttrell, like Evelyn, was an independent gentleman of antiquarian and literary tastes, and his careful and methodical record of events is a trustworthy authority to which later writers have been under no small obligation.

Burton's  
*Diary.*

*Parliamentary History.*—In addition to the sources already named under preceding periods, BURTON'S *Diary*<sup>3</sup> is an indispensable source of information for the two parliaments of Oliver Cromwell (1654 and 1656) and that of Richard Cromwell (1659).

*Foreign Affairs.*—The meagreness of the materials in the *Pepysian Library, with a Life and Notes*, by Richard, Lord Braybrooke. *Deuxphered with additional Notes by the Rev. Mynors Bright.* 6 vols. 1875-9.

<sup>1</sup> *Memoires de la Vie de Comte de Gramont, contenant particulièrement l'Histoire Amoureuse de la Cour d'Angleterre sous le Règne de Charles II.* A Cologne. 1715.

*A Brief Historical Relation of State Affairs from September, 1678, to April, 1714.* By Narcissus Luttrell. 6 vols. Clarendon Press. 1857.

<sup>3</sup> *Diary of T. Burton, Esq., Member in the Parliaments of Oliver and Richard Cromwell.* . . . Edited and illustrated with Notes by S. T. Rutt. 4 vols. 1828.

Rymer's *Foedera*, during the Commonwealth, is in some measure made good by Dumont's *Corps Universel* (see *supra*, p. 334), which supplies the treaties then enacted with foreign powers. With the year 1654, Rymer's great work comes altogether to an end, and Dumont consequently becomes of increased importance.

CHAP.  
VIII.

Rymer  
and Du-  
mont

In 1773, SIR JOHN DALRYMPLE, of Cranstoun,<sup>1</sup> published his *Memoirs of Great Britain and Ireland*,<sup>2</sup> which relate to the period from the dissolution of the last parliament of Charles II. to the Battle of La Hogue. In his preface, he affirms that 'he has procured materials in England, Scotland, and France, far superior to what any single person has hitherto been able to obtain.' Among other sources, he had access to the collection by Carte, and his work was undertaken at the suggestion of lord chancellor Yorke. He gives copious extracts from the *Despatches* of BARILLON, the French ambassador to the court of St James's, which are preserved in the 'Depôt des Affaires Etrangères' at Versailles, and in which, he held, the true key to the diplomatic secrets of the reign of Charles II. was to be found.<sup>3</sup> These despatches were largely used by Macaulay, together with those of BONREPAUX, Barillon's successor, and those of the COMTE D'AVAUX,<sup>4</sup> the able representative of France,

Sir John  
Dalrymple.  
b 1726  
d 1810.

Barillon,  
Bonre-  
pauz, and  
the Comte  
d'Avaux.

<sup>1</sup> To be carefully distinguished alike from Sir John Dalrymple, the Master of Stair, and from Sir David Dalrymple, the editor of the *Memorials and Letters* (see *supra*, p. 333). This becomes all the more necessary to be noted, from the coincidence in the editor of the *Memorials* and the author of the *Memoirs* having been born in the same year.

<sup>2</sup> *Memoirs of Great Britain and Ireland*. Dublin, vol. 1, 1771; vol. 11, 1773.

<sup>3</sup> The portions of the correspondence between Louis XIV. and Barillon for the period Dec. 1684 to Dec. 1685, not contained in Dalrymple, are printed in the Appendix to Fox's *History of the Reign of James II*.

<sup>4</sup> (1) *The Negotiations of Count d'Avaux, Ambassador from his most Christian Majesty to the States-General of the United Provinces. Containing*

CHAP  
VIII

Mignet's  
Collections  
relating to  
the Spanish  
Succession

first in the States-General, and subsequently in Ireland, whose correspondence is of especial value from the light which it throws on the secret policy of James

For the great European question of this and the ensuing period, that of the Spanish Succession, the materials collected by M. Mignet<sup>1</sup> are an indispensable source of information. These commence from the marriage treaty of Louis XIV. with Maria Theresa in 1659, and although the question does not become prominently associated with English history until after the Peace of Ryswick, the various complications which arose can only be understood by reference to the main details considerably anterior to that event. Mignet, not without justice, claims for his subject a paramount importance in the age, 'puisque ses préparatifs ont commencé en 1659, et que ses résultats se sont étendus jusqu'en 1738.'

Baxter's  
*Autobiography*.

*Biographical Literature*.—In the biographical literature of the period, BAXTER'S *Autobiography*,<sup>2</sup> a record from his birth, in 1615, to the year 1685, is of value from the numerous particulars it preserves respecting the Independents and ejected ministers, and also from the light it throws on the moral and social condition of the masses. The work was subsequently abridged by EDMUND  
*the steps taken by the Prince of Orange to ascend the Throne of Great Britain; and the Intrigues of the Court of France to counteract his Measures during that interesting Period. Translated from the French. 4 vols. London, 1754. (11) Negociations de M. le Comte d'Avaux en Islande depuis 1689 jusqu'en 1690. [Privately printed at the expense of the Foreign Office, 1830.]*

<sup>1</sup> *Negociations relatives à la succession d'Espagne sous Louis XIV, ou Correspondances, Mémoires, et Actes Diplomatiques concernant les prétentions et l'événement de la Maison de Bourbon au Trône d'Espagne Accompagnés d'un texte historique et précédés d'une Introduction par M. Mignet. 4 vols. 1835-42.*

<sup>2</sup> *Reliquiae Baxterianae or, Mr. Richard Baxter's Narrative of the most memorable Passages of his Life and Times Faithfully published from his own Original MS. By Matthew Sylvester. Fol. London, 1696.*

CALAMY,<sup>1</sup> who also compiled an elaborate series of biographies of those nonconforming divines who were either 'ejected or silenced' after the Restoration. A short *Life of Sir William Temple*,<sup>2</sup> by BOYER, a French Protestant refugee, was published in 1715. It is devoted almost exclusively to his political career, and has since been, for the most part, incorporated in later biographies. The *Lives* of his three brothers, by ROGER NORTH,<sup>3</sup> exhibit in a remarkable manner the average morality and habits of thought of the upper class of this period. That of the Lord Keeper, more especially, is notable as attributing to the subject of the memoir a paltriness of conduct and meanness of motive, which constitute the description an unconscious satire. The *Memoirs* of SIR JAMES TURNER<sup>4</sup> are useful in connexion with the Scottish insurrection of the year 1666. The edition published by the Bannatyne Club contains also a collection of letters, many of which are by the duke and duchess of Hamilton. A recently published volume relating to MARY, the consort of William III,<sup>5</sup> supplies

CHAP.  
VIII

Edmund  
Calamy  
Boyer's  
*Life of  
Temple.*

*Lives* by  
Roger  
North.

*Memoirs* of  
Sir James  
Turner.

<sup>1</sup> *An Account of the Ministers, Lecturers, Masters and Fellows of Colleges, and Schoolmasters, who were ejected or silenced after the Restoration in 1660, by, or before, the Act of Uniformity 1713.* [Forming vol. 11. of Calamy's Abridgment of Baxter's Autobiography.]

<sup>2</sup> *Memoirs of the Life and Negotiations of Sir W. Temple, Bart. containing the most important Occurrences and the most secret springs of Affairs in Christendom, from the year 1665 to 1681.* By A. Boyer. 1715.

<sup>3</sup> *The Lives of the Right Hon. Francis North, Baron Guilford, Lord Keeper of the Great Seal under King Charles II and King James II., the Hon. Sir Dudley North, Commissioner of the Customs, and afterwards of the Treasury, to King Charles II., and the Hon. and Rev. Dr. John North, Master of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Clerk of the Closet to King Charles II.* 2 vols 1740-2

<sup>4</sup> *Memoirs of his Own Life and Times.* By Sir James Turner. A.D. 1632-70 Bann. C. 1829.

<sup>5</sup> *Lettres et Mémoires de Marie, Reine d'Angleterre, Epouse de Guillaume III* Collection de documents authentiques inédits La Haye, Nijhoff : London, Nutt. 1880.

CHAP  
VIIIDryden's  
*Poems*.

some interesting details illustrative of her character, a series of letters from her pen, and also some facts of general historical importance

The important illustration afforded by Dryden's political and controversial poems,—especially 'The Medal,' the 'Absalom and Achitophel,' and the 'Hind and the Panther,'—of the party questions of the day, render their study essential even to the strictly historical investigator.

Fox,  
Clarke,  
and Lin-  
gard

(B) **Writers of the present Century.**—A design of the celebrated CHARLES JAMES FOX to write the *History* of the reign of James II., resulted only in a fragment of no high order of merit, which reaches no further than to the end of the year 1685.<sup>1</sup> A *Life of James II.* by the REV. J. S. CLARKE,<sup>2</sup> published in 1816, is valuable on account of its containing portions of the king's Autobiography (a work now lost). As an historical composition, however, it is almost worthless, being throughout a servile and illogical attempt to vindicate the conduct of James on every occasion, and even to pourtray his character in heroic proportions. Lingard's treatment of his subject is of a very different order, and in the concise but able account of the present period, with which his *History* terminates, he does not fail to expose the extreme impolicy of most of the measures which it was James's endeavour to enforce.

Mackin-  
tosh's  
*History*.

A *History of the Revolution in England in 1688*, by SIR JAMES MACKINTOSH, was published after his death. It is, however, only a fragment, consisting rather of a series of criticisms than forming a connected narrative,

<sup>1</sup> *History of the Early Part of the Reign of James II.* 1808

<sup>2</sup> *The Life of James the Second, King of England, &c.*, collected out of *Memoirs writ out of his own hand. Together with the King's Advice to his Son and his Majesty's Will.* Published from the original Stuart MSS in Carlton House, by the Rev. J. S. Clarke, LL.B., F.R.S., Historiographer to the King, &c. 2 vols. 1816.

and in the collected edition of his *Works* has more correctly been styled *A Review of the Causes of the Revolution of 1688*. The merits of the work are probably somewhat over-estimated by Macaulay in his well-known critique, written not long after the author's death.

CHAP.  
VIII.

All preceding works, however, have since been thrown into the shade by the brilliant *History* of LORD MACAULAY, which commences with the accession of James II., and was left by him in an unfinished state, the narrative terminating with the death of William III. On the conspicuous merits of this most popular of all histories,—the great extent of its research, its admirable portraiture of individual character, and the intellectual power and literary skill conspicuous on every page,—it is unnecessary here to insist. The careful student can, however, scarcely fail to become aware, in the perusal, of the partisan spirit in which the whole treatment is conceived, or of the grave inaccuracies which, in connexion with more than one topic, detract from the value of the work. A more general defect, but one less readily discerned, is the undue importance attached by Macaulay to the pamphlet literature of the period,—productions which, as we have already seen in the case of Rushworth (*supra*, p. 334), were regarded with great distrust by the less prejudiced contemporary historical writers. Of one serious blunder—Macaulay's description of William Penn, the Quaker—the result of a confusion of two distinct individuals, a sufficient refutation will be found in the short treatise by MR. W. E. FORSTER.<sup>1</sup> MR. PAGET'S *New Examen* (1861) is a

*History of*  
Lord Mac-  
aulay.

Mr W. E.  
Forster's  
Pamphlet.

<sup>1</sup> *W. Penn and Thomas B Macaulay being brief Observations on the Charges made in Mr. Macaulay's History of England against the Character of William Penn.* By W. E. Forster. 1849.

CHAP.  
VIII.Paget's  
*New  
Examen.*Works on  
Religious  
History of  
the Time,  
by Mars-  
den, Hunt,  
and  
Tulloch.

more extended criticism, including, along with the subject of Penn, an inquiry into the evidence for the historian's treatment of Marlborough and Dundee, his account of the Massacre of Glencoe, and his representations respecting the condition of the Highlands of Scotland.

For the religious and metaphysical tendencies of the time, MARSDEN'S *Later Puritans* deserves to be consulted on account of the clearness with which it brings out the distinguishing characteristics of the later as compared with the earlier sects. MR. HUNT'S *History of Religious Thought* (vols. i. and ii.) cover the whole ground of the English controversial theology of the period. In DR. TULLOCH'S *Rational Theology of England* (2 vols. 1872), the same subject is very ably treated in a series of biographies of some of the most eminent divines and philosophers. These are divided into two groups: the former, designated as 'Liberal Churchmen,' including Lord Falkland, John Hales, Chillingworth, Jeremy Taylor, and Stillingfleet; while the latter comprises a succession of Cambridge divines—Whichcote, John Smith, Cudworth, Henry More, &c.—who, inspired to a great extent by the influence of Descartes, were aiming at the foundation of a new eclectic philosophy.

Of the scientific tendencies which now, no longer limited to the isolated efforts and speculations of individual minds, began to assume the character of a *movement*, the progress of the ROYAL SOCIETY furnishes the best illustration. Of its first beginnings, the *History* by BISHOP SPRAT, published originally in 1667, offers an interesting outline, characterised by the author's usual literary power. In marked contradistinction to the Platonic school, the influence of the Society is described by him as especially deserving of note as a means whereby

*Histories  
of the  
Royal  
Society* by  
Sprat,  
Birch,  
Thomson,  
and Weld

the young men of the age 'were invincibly armed against all the enchantments of *enthusiasm*.' Another *History* of the Society, by DR. BIRCH, in four volumes quarto, published in 1756, is occupied mainly with the scientific proceedings of the Society; and the same applies to a smaller *History*, published by THOMSON in 1812. That by MR. WELD,<sup>1</sup> published in 1848, is both the most recent and the most satisfactory.

The *Life of Sir William Temple*, by the Right Hon T. P. COURTENAY (1836), embodies the facts contained in Boyer as well as most of those in the later *Life* by LADY GIFFARD, together with new materials, from the 'Bacon Papers' and the 'Longe Papers' at the British Museum. Mr. Courtenay's laborious production, though of real value, has, however, been in a great measure thrown into the shade by the brilliant essay of Macaulay, of which it was the occasion. The work of MR. MARK NAPIER furnishes all the requisite information concerning the short but romantic career of GRAHAME OF CLAVERHOUSE,<sup>2</sup> highly coloured, however, by the prepossessions of the writer, whose sympathies are strongly with the cavaliers. A *Life of Ashley Cooper*, first earl of Shaftesbury, by MR. W. D. CHRISTIE, supplies some useful corrections of Hallam, and is of considerable literary merit. Shaftesbury's whole action as a politician, it need scarcely be said, is of primary importance in relation to our period. The *Lives of Blake and Penn* (1851), by HEPWORTH DIXON, are useful and interesting. DRYDEN's influence, in relation to his age and to the national literature, is illustrated in

CHAP  
VIII

---

Biographies of  
Temple,  
Graham of  
Claver-  
house,  
Shaftes-  
bury,  
Blake, and  
Penn

Writers on  
Dryden

<sup>1</sup> *A History of the Royal Society, with Memoirs of the Presidents Compiled from authentic Documents by Charles R. Weld.* 2 vols. 1848.

<sup>2</sup> *Memorials and Letters of Grahame of Claverhouse.* By Mark Napier. 3 vols. 1859-62.



CHAP.  
VIII  

---

Macaulay's *Essay on the Comic Dramatists of the Restoration*, in the excellent *Memoir* by Mr. W. D. CHRISTIE, prefixed to the Globe edition of the Poems, and in the admirable study of the poet's genius by professor LOWELL.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See *Among my Books*. By James Russell Lowell. First Series. 1870.

## CHAPTER IX.

THE REVOLUTION SETTLEMENT AND THE RULE OF  
THE WHIG ARISTOCRACY.

AMONG the writers enumerated in the preceding chapter, Burnet, Luttrell, Evelyn, Dalrymple, Mignet, and Macaulay, continue to be of service for the earlier part of the present period. The Hardwicke *State Papers* include materials relating to the Partition Treaty, the Treaty of Utrecht, and the embassy of lord Stair in France.

CHAP.  
IX.

Works  
already  
described

(A.) **Correspondence and Papers.**—Of the domestic State Papers no calendars have as yet appeared, but the collections made in the last and present century by Carstairs, Macpherson, and Coxe, the biographer of Marlborough, in some measure supply the want.

Of these, the *Correspondence of the Duke of Shrewsbury*,<sup>1</sup> edited by COXE, is of considerable value, and the documents at the time of publication were entirely new to the public. They are distributed into three parts. (1) Shrewsbury's correspondence with king William from the commencement of his official career, when appointed secretary at the Revolution, to the year 1700;

Corre-  
spondence  
of Shrews-  
bury.

<sup>1</sup> *Private and Original Correspondence of Charles Talbot, Duke of Shrewsbury, with King William, the Leaders of the Whig Party, and other distinguished statesmen. Illustrated with Narratives, Historical and Biographical, from the Family Papers in the possession of her Grace the Duchess of Buccleuch.* By William Coxe 1821

CHAP.  
IX.

---

(2) his correspondence with admiral Russell, during the command of the latter in the Mediterranean in 1695, and also at the time of his successful expedition to the coast of France in 1696, his correspondence with viscount Galway (1695-96), illustrating the policy of the duke of Savoy in relation to the Grand Alliance,—that on the negotiations connected with the Peace of Ryswick (1696-97), (3) his confidential correspondence, extending over the period 1695-1704, with Sunderland, Somers, Wharton, Russell, the earl of Orford, and Halifax.

Macpherson's  
*Original Papers*

The collection of *Original Papers* by MACPHERSON,<sup>1</sup> the author of the poems attributed to Ossian, is also of importance, but lies under the suspicion which attaches to all the literary performances of this unprincipled writer, and the papers, according to Coxe, are 'garbled'. They comprise those left by Nairne, who was under-secretary to the ministers of James II. and his son from the Revolution to the year 1713, and also a considerable portion of the correspondence of the house of Hanover with their agents and partisans in Britain during the reign of queen Anne.

Carstairs's  
*State Papers*.

The *State Papers and Letters* collected by CARSTAIRS,<sup>2</sup> the private secretary of William III, remained unpublished a long while after his death, and were at length given to the world, in 1774, by the industry of Joseph M'Cormick, a Presbyterian minister. They relate mainly to affairs in Scotland during the period 1691-1718, especially the massacre of Glencoe. They

<sup>1</sup> *Original Papers containing the Secret History of Great Britain, from the Restoration to the Accession of the House of Hanover.* 2 vols 1775

<sup>2</sup> *State Papers and Letters, addressed to William Carstairs, confidential Secretary to King William during the whole of his Reign afterwards Principal of the University of Edinburgh To which is prefixed the Life of Mr. Carstairs.* Edited by Joseph M'Cormick. Edinburgh, 1774

also comprise short memoirs of the statesmen,—secretary Johnston, earl of Argyle, secretary Ogilvy, lord Tarbat, earl of Melville, marquis of Annandale, and others,—whose correspondence is included in the collection.

CHAP  
IX

(B) **Contemporary Writers.**—The numerous political pamphlets called forth by the incidents of the Revolution of 1688 and the contests during the reign of William, were collected and published early in the eighteenth century<sup>1</sup>

State  
Tracts.

Locke's *Letters on Toleration*,<sup>2</sup> perhaps the most original of all his writings, were designed to vindicate the Toleration Act of 1689, which, however, he regarded as an imperfect measure. In connexion with the *Letters* the criticism in the eleventh chapter of Macaulay, and that in the tenth chapter of Hunt's *Religious Thought*, will be found eminently suggestive. Locke's position may be regarded as that of the national Church.

Locke's  
*Letters on  
Toleration*

The eventful reign of William and Mary, and the equally stirring times of queen Anne, with their domestic struggles and brilliant continental victories under Marlborough, almost entirely failed to call forth any historic talent worthy of the age. Only two writers of real genius even attempted to record the history of their country. SWIFT, in his *Journal to Stella*<sup>3</sup> and *History of the Four Last Years of Queen Anne's Reign*,<sup>4</sup> describes the course of events immediately prior and subsequent to the Peace of Utrecht. The latter work, which he considered 'the best he had ever written,' was

Swift's  
*Journal  
and  
History.*

<sup>1</sup> *A Collection of State Tracts published on occasion of the late Revolution in 1688, and during the Reign of King William.* 3 vols., fol. 1705.

<sup>2</sup> *Four Letters on Toleration.* By John Locke. Reprint of seventh edit. 1758 Reprinted by A Murray. 1870

<sup>3</sup> *Works of Jonathan Swift, D.D., with Notes and Life of Author* By Sir Walter Scott, Bart. 19 vols 1824 Vols. II. and III.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid* vol. v.

CHAP.  
IX

---

His minor  
Political  
Pamphlets.

not published till thirteen years after his death. It reflects, in a very marked manner, the spirit of animosity by which he was actuated after his defection from the Whig party, and the imputations he casts upon prince Eugene, Marlborough, Burnet, and other distinguished characters are of the darkest kind. His portraits of his friends, Ormond, Bolingbroke, and Harley, on the other hand, are equally exaggerated in their praise. But notwithstanding these demerits, the fragment is well deserving of perusal. The same may be said of his pamphlet *On the Conduct of the Allies*,<sup>1</sup> which materially modified the national policy in relation to the war,—of his *Tale of a Tub*,<sup>2</sup> which, as a satire on religious parties, may be compared with Dryden's *Hind and the Panther*,—of the *Drapier's Letters*,<sup>3</sup> which rescued Ireland from the infliction of a national slight,—and of his *Inquiry into the Behaviour of the Queen's last Ministry*,<sup>4</sup> written June, 1715. Swift's criticisms of lord Clarendon's *History* and Burnet's *Own Times* should also be noted.<sup>5</sup>

Boling-  
broke's  
Works and  
Correspon-  
dence.

BOLINGBROKE, in his *Letter to Sir W. Wyndham*, gives his version of the circumstances under which he had assisted to negotiate the Peace of Utrecht, and brings a heavy indictment against the political conduct of his rival, Oxford. His *Idea of a Patriot King* (1738) and *Letter on the State of Parties at the Accession of George I.* embody his views in relation to a subsequent period.<sup>6</sup> The principal source of information as regards

<sup>1</sup> *Works of Swift*. By Sir W. Scott, vol. ii

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* vol. x On this see the criticisms in Abbey and Overton's *English Church in the Eighteenth Century*, i. 450-2.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* vol. vi.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.* vol. v

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.* vol. xii.

<sup>6</sup> *The Works of the Right Honourable Henry St John, Lord Viscount Bolingbroke*. 5 vols. Edited by David Mallet. 4to, 1754.

his public career is, however, his *Letters and Correspondence*.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IX

When compared with Swift and Bolingbroke, the other contemporary annalists appear in point of ability almost contemptible. BOYER, the author of the *Life of Temple*, published in 1753 his *History of the Reign of Queen Anne*; <sup>2</sup> and OLDMIXON, a violent and unscrupulous Whig partisan, satirised by Pope in the *Dunciad*, published in 1730-35 his *History of England during the Reigns of William and Mary, Anne and George I*. Neither of these works, however, though the result of some research and labour, is entitled to more than an occasional reference on the part of the student. A *Continuation* of Rapin's *History of England*,<sup>3</sup> attributed to TINDAL, and containing the period from the death of Charles I. to that of George II., was published in 1757; the work is partly original and partly a compilation, but it deserves the praise of having been written without party spirit, and of being a temperate and candid narrative of carefully ascertained facts, although destitute of those higher merits which attest original historic power.<sup>4</sup>

Boyer.

Oldmixon.

Tindal's  
*Continuation*  
of  
Rapin

The two *Discourses* of FLETCHER OF SALTOUN,<sup>5</sup> on the state of affairs in Scotland, composed in 1698, together with his *Speech upon the State of the Nation* (1701) and speeches delivered in the parliament at Edin-

Fletcher of  
Saltoun.

<sup>1</sup> *Letters and Correspondence, public and private, of Lord Bolingbroke* With State Papers, Explanatory Notes, and a Translation of the Foreign Letters. By G. Parke. 2 vols. 1798

<sup>2</sup> A work founded on the *Annals* (by the same writer), and published in parts during queen Anne's reign.

<sup>3</sup> The first edition of the *Continuation*, which terminated with the reign of George I., was published in 1747.

<sup>4</sup> According to Burton (*Reign of Queen Anne*. ii. 324) Tindal's *Continuation* 'has perhaps been more amply founded on by later historians as an authority, than any other book referring to the period it covers'

<sup>5</sup> *The Political Works of Andrew Fletcher, Esq* 1737

CHAP  
IX.

---

burgh in 1707, are well deserving of perusal as shewing the aspect under which the union of the two countries presented itself to those who opposed the measure. Fletcher was a man of great oratorical power and singularly independent habits of thought, who denounced with almost equal vigour the policy of both Whigs and Tories, at the same time, he was wanting in discernment in questions of national economy, and while a democrat in principle was a staunch protectionist in his views of international commerce.

The reigns of the first two Georges, which have been compared to those of the Antonines, were singularly wanting in events calculated to call forth historic genius. Berkeley, writing in 1728, denounced the age as 'barren of every glorious theme;' <sup>1</sup> and LORD HERVEY'S *Memoirs* <sup>2</sup> and HORACE WALPOLE'S *Letters to Sir Horace Mann* <sup>3</sup> must rank as two of the best authorities. Of these the first supplies a remarkably close and minute picture of court life and intrigue during the reign of George II., drawn by one, of whose opportunities for observation and accuracy of description there can be no doubt; the latter, familiar to every reader through Macaulay's well-known critique, furnishes an almost continuous chronicle of the last twenty years of the same reign, and in the earlier letters the details of Sir Robert's fall from power are described with much animation. The coincidences of statement between the two works are

Hervey's  
*Memoirs*  
and  
Walpole's  
*Letters*

<sup>1</sup> Hearne, writing six years later (1734), laments that 'nothing is now hardly read but Burnett's romance or libel, called by him *The History of his own Times*. 'Tis read by men, women, and children.' *Reliqu. Hearn* II. 200

<sup>2</sup> *Memoirs of the Reign of George II., from his Accession to the Death of Queen Caroline*. By John, Lord Hervey. Edited by J. W. Croker 2 vols 1848.

<sup>3</sup> *Letters of Horace Walpole, Earl of Orford, to Horace Mann* 4 vols. London: 1843-4.

often remarkable, and a like similarity is observable in Walpole's *Memoirs*, which belong mainly to our next period. A more general resemblance to be noted is the cynicism and spirit of detraction in their estimate of their contemporaries which characterise both writers.

CHAP  
IX

The *Memoirs* of KER OF KERSLAND,<sup>1</sup> who was employed as a secret agent of the British Government in the earlier years of the eighteenth century, illustrate the undercurrent of the political life of the time. DR. KING'S collection of *Anecdotes*<sup>2</sup> contains a noteworthy sketch of the Pretender by a zealous Jacobite of the period, together with interesting recollections of the chief members of the Jacobite party, and also of some of the leading literary men of the age, especially of Pope and Atterbury.

Ker of  
Kersland.

King's  
*Anecdotes*.

*Foreign Affairs*—The *Memoirs* of the DUKE OF BERWICK,<sup>3</sup> a natural son of James II, are partly autobiographical, and furnish a record of a brilliant military career on the part of one who was for a long time closely associated with the history of English affairs on the Continent.

*Memoirs of  
Duc de  
Berwick.*

For the period 1697 to 1700, a collection of the *Letters* of William III. and Louis XIV. and of their ministers, edited by Grimblot,<sup>4</sup> will be found useful in connexion

*Letters of  
William  
III. &c.*

<sup>1</sup> *The Memoirs of John Ker, of Kersland, in North Britain, Etc. : containing his secret Transactions and Negotiations in Scotland, England, the Courts of Vienna, Hanover, and other Foreign Parts. With an Account of the Rise and Progress of the Ostend Company in the Austrian Netherlands* Published by himself. London, 1726.

<sup>2</sup> *Political and Literary Anecdotes of his own Times* By Dr. William King, Principal of St Mary's Hall, Oxon. 2nd edit. 1819

<sup>3</sup> *Mémoires du Maréchal de Berwick, écrits par lui-même, avec une suite abrégée de 1716 jusqu'à sa mort en 1734.* Forming volumes 65 and 66 in 'Collections des Mémoires relatifs à l'histoire de France,' edited by Petitot and Monmerque

<sup>4</sup> *Letters of William III. and Louis XIV. and of their Ministers, illustrative of the domestic and foreign politics of England from the Peace of*



CHAP.  
IXMarl-  
borough  
Des-  
patches.

both with the domestic and the foreign policy of England.

In the year 1842 a collection of the *Marlborough Despatches*<sup>1</sup> was discovered at Hensington, near Woodstock, and subsequently printed. Earl Stanhope, however, is of opinion that they were neither written nor dictated by the Duke, but prepared by his secretaries, and subsequently merely signed by him. They contain but little that is of historical interest.

The  
Duchess  
Marl-  
borough.

A full account of the special literature illustrative of the character and life of the duchess of Marlborough is given in Burton's *History of the Reign of Queen Anne*, i. 28-30.

Somer-  
ville's  
Reign of  
Queen  
Anne.

*Non-Contemporary Writer*—The publication of the sources described at the commencement of this chapter suggested to a Presbyterian minister, named SOMERVILLE, the idea of writing a *History of the Reign of Queen Anne* which should at once represent a fuller command of the facts, and at the same time be free from party spirit. His work appeared at the close of the last century, but was attended with little success and failed even to attract the criticism of the chief literary organs of the day. The Preface, however, will be found useful from the account there given of the sources from whence the writer's materials were drawn; and the Appendix is of value as containing an abridgment of the Articles of the Union and other original documents.

(C.) **Writers of the Present Century.**—Material service was rendered in the first quarter of this century towards making the political history of the present period better known, by the writings of Archdeacon COXE (the editor

*Ryswick to the Accession of Philip V. of Spain.* Edited by P. Grimblot. 2 vols. 1848.

<sup>1</sup> *The Letters and Despatches of John, Duke of Marlborough, 1702-12.* Edited by Sir George Murray. 1845

of the *Shrewsbury Correspondence*), whose *Lives* of MARLBOROUGH, WALPOLE, and HENRY PELHAM are the result of considerable labour and research. Though wanting in the higher merits of historical composition, they are full and accurate, and from the important parts played by the characters to whom they severally relate and the large amount of material incorporated from State documents, they may be regarded as belonging quite as much to the historical as to the biographical literature of the period. In his *Life of Marlborough*, Coxe had access to the very important collection of manuscripts preserved at Blenheim, from which he printed copious extracts; and in the prefaces to the *Lives* of Walpole and Pelham will be found a full enumeration of the manuscript sources from whence these works were compiled.

CHAP  
IX.

Coxe's  
*Lives of Marlborough, Walpole, and Henry Pelham*

A *Life of Marlborough* by SIR ARCHIBALD ALISON, of which a third edition appeared in 1855, was designed to impart to the subject greater dramatic interest, but his fulsome panegyric of his hero is probably yet further removed from faithful portraiture than the harsh judgments of Macaulay.

Alison's  
*Life of Marlborough*.

Preceding histories of the eighteenth century have, however, been to a great extent superseded by the works of EARL STANHOPE, who published between the years 1836 and 1854 his *History of England from the Peace of Utrecht to the Peace of Versailles*, 1713-1783, and somewhat later, his *History of the Reign of Queen Anne*, resuming, in the latter work, the narrative at the point where it was left by Macaulay. Without any pretension to the great literary powers and fertility of illustration possessed by his predecessor, earl Stanhope succeeds perhaps to a greater extent in commanding the confidence of the reader. His narrative is clear; his judgments are fair and temperate in expression; and few

Earl Stanhope's  
*History of England*.

CHAP.  
IX.Burton's  
*Reign of  
Queen  
Anne.*

histories of so recent a period are so honourably characterised by the desire to render equal justice to all parties.

The history of the *Reign of Queen Anne* has also been written by DR. BURTON, who had a certain advantage over all earlier writers on the period, in having access to the Godolphin Papers, now at the British Museum,—a collection especially rich in the private correspondence of contemporary statesmen on subjects of political importance. His treatment of his materials differs from that of earl Stanhope in the greater prominence assigned to the religious movements of the period,—Marlborough's campaigns, although excellently described, being treated with somewhat disproportionate brevity. As a whole, the work, while ably executed in parts, is wanting in lucid arrangement and is marred by some serious inaccuracies.

Lecky's  
*History of  
England.*

A third work, *The History of England in the Eighteenth Century*, by MR. LECKY (2nd ed. 1879),<sup>1</sup> differs in its conception both from that of earl Stanhope and that of Mr. Burton. He describes it as his object 'to disentangle from the great mass of facts those which relate to the permanent forces of the nation, or which indicate some of the more enduring features of national life.' His treatment accordingly embraces (to quote his own description) 'the growth or decline of the monarchy, the aristocracy, and the democracy, of the Church and of Dissent, of the agricultural, the manufacturing, and the commercial interests; the increasing power of Parliament and of the press; the history of political ideas, of art, of manners, and of belief; the changes that have taken place in the social and economical condition of the people; the influences that have modified national character; the relations of the mother country to its dependencies,' &c

<sup>1</sup> Only two volumes of this work have as yet appeared.

Much information concerning the War of the Spanish Succession (1701-1714) is to be found in lord Mahon's (now earl Stanhope) *History of the Reign of Queen Anne*, and in his earlier production, the *History of the War of the Succession in Spain*. Macaulay's graphic outline of the subject in his *critique* of the latter work is familiar to most readers. A far more adequate and complete treatment of the subject, however, will be found in CARL VON NOORDEN'S *Europäische Geschichte im achtzehnten Jahrhundert*<sup>1</sup> (vols i. to iii), which gives us the results of a much more thorough investigation of the original sources. Of these, the principal are the Coxe, Stepney, Hyde, Mitchell, and Gualterio Papers in the British Museum; the Reports sent to their respective Governments from the embassies at Vienna and London; the confidential letters of L'Hermitage, a secret political agent, from London, the correspondence of Marlborough with Heinsius; and the despatches preserved in the archives at Berlin, of Spanheim, the Prussian ambassador to the English court.

CHAP.  
IX.

Works relating to the War of the Spanish Succession

The *Annals and Correspondence* of the EARLS OF STAIR, by J. M. GRAHAM,<sup>2</sup> have been compiled from the Stair Papers and other collections of their letters. Those relating to the second earl, who served under Marlborough in his foreign campaigns, are of real value for the contemporary political history.

The Earls of Stair

The *Life* of CARSTAIRS, the collector of the State Papers above referred to, has been written by MR STORY.<sup>3</sup> Carstairs, who was a presbyterian minister, may be accepted as a good representative of the mode-

Life of Carstairs.

<sup>1</sup> Dusseldorf: 1870-82. First, Second, and Third Parts 'Der spanische Erbfolgekrieg.'

<sup>2</sup> *Annals and Correspondence of Viscount and the first and second Earls of Stair*. By John Murray Graham. 2 vols. Edinburgh, 1875

<sup>3</sup> *William Carstairs. a Character and Career of the Revolutionary Epoch* (1649-1715). By R. H. Story, Minister of Rosneath.

CHAP  
IX

*Lives of  
Pitt,  
Bentley,  
and  
Newton.*

Macaulay's  
*Essays.*

Nichols's  
*Literary  
Anecdotes.*

rate party of his denomination at this period. 'In craft and courage,' says Macaulay, 'he had no superior among the politicians of his age' His experiences supply a remarkable picture of Scottish affairs at this time, and especially of the unrestrained cruelties of the Royal Commissioners under Charles II. and James II.

For the career of the first PITT, the *Life* by THACKERAY (1827) supplies us with a large mass of information and copious extracts from his official correspondence, but as a biography the work is equally wanting in critical discernment and literary merit The *Life of Bentley*, by BISHOP MONK (1823), and the *Life of Sir Isaac Newton*, by SIR DAVID BREWSTER (1855), are respectively excellent illustrations of the learning and the science of the age. To the former should be added the admirable study by DE QUINCEY.<sup>1</sup> Among the contributions of Macaulay to the history of a period with which his acquaintance was unrivalled, are his Essay on the fragment by Mackintosh, already referred to,—that on *Walpole's Letters* (one of the happiest and most just of his critical performances),—and the first Essay on the Earl of Chatham (occasioned by the publication of the *Life* by Thackeray), in which he follows Pitt's career to the close of the reign of George II. His estimate of ATTERBURY, as given in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, has been reprinted in the collected *Biographies* from his pen published by Messrs Longman.

The great collection entitled *Literary Anecdotes of the Eighteenth Century*, by J. G. NICHOLS,<sup>2</sup> abounds with facts and anecdotes which are generally illustrative of

<sup>1</sup> Collected Works, vol vi

<sup>2</sup> *Literary Anecdotes of the Eighteenth Century* By John Nichols 6 vols 1812-14 *Illustrations of the Literary History of the Eighteenth Century. Intended as a Sequel to the Literary Anecdotes.* 8 vols. 1817-1858.

the times, and is invaluable as a work of reference. MR. C. WORDSWORTH'S *University Life* (1874) and *University Studies* (1877) in the *Eighteenth Century* render much service in illustrating the state of education and learning; while the relations of learning to religious thought, and the points most in dispute within the pale of the English Church, may be pursued in detail by the aid of professor J. E. B. MAYOR'S elaborate notes to BAKER'S *History of St John's College, Cambridge*.

CHAP.  
IX

Wordsworth's  
*University Life*, &c.

The third volume of Mr Hunt's *History of Religious Thought* supplies us with a series of skilful analyses of the chief theological and speculative works of the century. His labours, however, are restricted for the most part to writers of the orthodox school. In MR. LESLIE STEPHEN'S *History of English Thought in the Eighteenth Century* (2 vols, 1876) a wider range is taken, and special attention is devoted to that sceptical element which forms the distinguishing characteristic of our national literature in the latter half of the century, and which exercised a potent influence on the political and social life of the period both in England and on the Continent. Mr. Stephen's volumes are well deserving of careful study, however much the conclusions to which they point may be a subject of dispute.

Hunt.

Leslie  
Stephen.

Another work of considerable research and critical power is *The English Church in the Eighteenth Century*, by C. J. ABBEY and J. H. OVERTON (2 vols, 1878). While written from the stand-point of a professed supporter of the Church, it is catholic and liberal in its treatment, and the views of both Jacobite and Nonjuror are analysed with much care and with scrupulous impartiality. As a comprehensive and temperate exposition of a wide and difficult subject, these volumes will not soon be superseded.

Abbey and  
Overton.

## CHAPTER X.

## THE RESTORATION OF AUTHORITY.

CHAP.  
X  
Authorities  
already de-  
scribed.

(A.) **Contemporary Writers.**—Among the works named in the preceding chapter, the *Walpole Letters* and lord Hervey's *Memoirs*, together with Coxe's *Life of Pelham*, are the principal original sources that continue to be available.

Calendars  
of *State  
Papers*.

For the reign of George III., two *Calendars of State Papers* of the 'Domestic Series' have recently appeared,<sup>1</sup> which contain the first nine years. The want occasioned by the absence of similar volumes for the subsequent years is in some measure supplied by the numerous collections of the *Correspondence* of the chief statesmen and political characters of the period which have been published during the last half-century.<sup>2</sup> Among these the

<sup>1</sup> *Calendar of Home Office Papers of the Reign of George III.* Edited by Joseph Redington. Vol. i. (1760-65); vol. ii. (1766-69) 1878-79

<sup>2</sup> The following observations, by an eminent critic, on the special value of material of this kind, deserve to be noted 'Letters and despatches, like journals entered day by day, have this advantage over memoirs, that they exhibit faithfully the impressions of the moment, and are written without knowledge of the ultimate result. They are, therefore, more trustworthy than any narrative composed after the whole series of events has been worked out, at a time when the narrator is tempted to suppress, or has learnt to forget, the proofs of his own want of foresight. In confidential correspondence, written without any expectation of publicity, weaknesses and minor defects of the writer will be disclosed, many transient feelings or thoughts will appear which his deliberate judgment would have rejected; but where there is genuine ability and true integrity, these qualities will be more apparent from their evidence being undesignated.' SIR G. C. LEWIS, *Essays on the Administrations*, &c., p. 158.

*Grenville Papers*<sup>1</sup> are perhaps the most important. They extend over thirty years, commencing from 1742, and are especially valuable for the seven concluding years of George II. and the first ten of the following reign. The Preface, by the editor, is designed to vindicate the claims of the two brothers, Richard and George, to a higher place in the estimation of posterity than was conceded to them by contemporary criticism or has been adjudged to them by later writers.

CHAP.  
X

*The Grenville  
Papers*

For the period 1744-1770, the *Bedford Correspondence*<sup>2</sup> illustrates the political life of England, the DUKE OF BEDFORD having successively filled during those years the office of First Lord of the Admiralty, Secretary of State, Lord Lieutenant of Ireland, ambassador at Paris, and President of the Council. With respect to the negotiations which resulted in the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, this collection is the best source of information. The Introduction, by the late earl Russell, will also repay perusal.

*The  
Bedford  
Correspondence*

The *Correspondence* of the first WILLIAM PITT,<sup>3</sup> which should be read in conjunction with the *Letters* of Horace Walpole, was published in 1840. The *Memoirs* of LORD ROCKINGHAM<sup>4</sup> include much of his correspondence, and illustrate the new policy of which, as distinguished both from that of the duke of Bedford's

*Pitt Correspondence.  
Memoirs  
of Lord  
Rockingham*

<sup>1</sup> *The Grenville Papers being the Correspondence of Richard Grenville, Earl Temple, K.G., and the Right Hon George Grenville, their Friends and Contemporaries.* Edited, with Notes, by William James Smith. 4 vols 1852.

<sup>2</sup> *Correspondence of John, fourth Duke of Bedford. selected from the Originals at Woburn Abbey.* With an Introduction by Lord John Russell. 3 vols. 1842.

<sup>3</sup> *Correspondence of William Pitt, Earl of Chatham.* 4 vols 8vo. 1840

<sup>4</sup> *Memoirs of the Marquis of Rockingham and his Contemporaries with original Letters and Documents now first published.* By George Thomas, Earl of Albemarle. 2 vols 1852



CHAP.  
X.

*Correspondence of George III and Lord North.*

party and that of lord Chatham's party, he became the recognised leader soon after the accession of George III.

The *Correspondence of George III. with Lord North*,<sup>1</sup> dating from 1768 to 1783, and embodying all the letters preserved in the royal library at Windsor Castle, is chiefly valuable as indicating the personal sentiments and policy of the king. The editor has prefixed to the collection a useful Introduction, and has appended to the correspondence a large body of explanatory notes.

The *Malmesbury Correspondence.*

The *Malmesbury Correspondence*,<sup>2</sup> which commences in the year 1768, extends to 1797. The record of nearly thirty years' service of the Crown, it much surpasses most similar collections in interest, and proves alike the high sense of duty by which the writer was actuated, and the ability with which his diplomatic functions were discharged. The earlier part relates to his missions to the court of Spain, of Russia (in the time of Catharine II), and of the Hague.

Burke's *Correspondence, Speeches, and Pamphlets.*

An imperfect collection of the *Correspondence* of BURKE is included in the edition of his *Works*,<sup>3</sup> published in 1852; his *Speeches*<sup>4</sup> appeared in a collected form soon after his death. Among his political pamphlets, the *Observations on a Late State of the Nation* (1769), the *Thoughts on the Cause of the Present Discontents* (1770), his speech on *American Taxation* (1774), that *On Conciliation* (1775), and his *Letters on the Trade of Ireland*

<sup>1</sup> *The Correspondence of King George III with Lord North. From 1768 to 1783.* Edited from the Originals at Windsor, with an Introduction and Notes, by W. Bodham Donne. 2 vols. 1867.

<sup>2</sup> *Diaries and Correspondence of James Harris, first Earl of Malmesbury.* 4 vols. 1844.

<sup>3</sup> *The Works and Correspondence of Edmund Burke* A new edition. 8 vols 1852. [On the wanting portions of the *Correspondence* see Preface to Macknight's *Life*, pp. ix and x]

<sup>4</sup> *The Speeches of the Right Hon Edmund Burke in the House of Commons and in Westminster Hall.* 4 vols. 1816.

(1778), are the most important of those belonging to the present period.

CHAP.  
X.

The *Correspondence* of LORD CORNWALLIS,<sup>1</sup> whose military and political career extended from 1776 to 1805, is of value in connexion with Indian and American history. His command in the American War was during the period 1776 to 1781, and during the last two years he exercised an independent control of the English forces in the only quarter where active operations were carried on. His first administration as governor-general in India commenced with the year 1786, and lasted till 1793, during which time he was engaged for two years in the Mysore War, and also drew up the fiscal and judicial regulations which continued for more than half a century to be in force in the Presidency of Bengal.

*Cornwallis  
Correspondence.*

A series of *Letters*, addressed by SIR SAMUEL ROMILLY<sup>2</sup> to his brother-in-law, the Rev. Mr Roget, at Lausanne, contains some account of the principal events occurring in England during the period 1780-83.

*Romilly's  
Letters*

The *Memoirs of the Court and Cabinets of George III*,<sup>3</sup> which purport to have been compiled by the DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM, are valuable on account of the correspondence they contain, to which, indeed, the editor has

*Duke of  
Buckingham's  
Memoirs of  
the Court  
of George  
III.*

<sup>1</sup> *Correspondence of Charles, first Marquis Cornwallis, edited with Notes by Charles Ross, Esq* 3 vols 2nd edit. 1859

<sup>2</sup> *Memoirs of the Life of Sir Samuel Romilly, written by Himself with a selection from his Correspondence* Edited by his Sons 3 vols 1840

<sup>3</sup> *Memoirs of the Court and Cabinets of George the Third, from original family Documents* By the Duke of Buckingham and Chandos. Vols 1 and II (2nd edit) 1853, vols III and IV 1855. [The task of editing the first two volumes of these papers was unfortunately confided by the duke of Buckingham to an incompetent person, who was also completely ignorant of the times and characters with which they are concerned. A large number of the more important errors were pointed out by a writer in the *Quarterly Review*, (vol XCII, pp 421-446), they remain, however, for the most part uncorrected in the second edition of the first two volumes.]

CHAP.  
X.

done little more than supply the connecting links. They commence with the year 1782, and extend to 1800. The letters are chiefly those that passed between different members of the Grenville family, and of these, those of Mr. William Grenville (afterwards lord Grenville) to his brother, the Marquis of Buckingham, are by far the most important. Among the subjects which the volumes for this period serve to illustrate are the administration of lord North, the formation of the Coalition Ministry and breaking up of the Whig party, and the king's first illness.

*Rose Correspondence*

Two other collections, which date from the same period, are the *Rose Correspondence*<sup>1</sup> and the *Auckland Correspondence*,<sup>2</sup>—the former terminating with the year 1815, the latter a year earlier. Both GEORGE ROSE and LORD AUCKLAND were the confidential advisers of the younger Pitt, and the former was in frequent communication with the chief politicians of the time. The latter, whose name is associated with the reform of the penal code (1778) and the commercial treaty with France (1786), was a nobleman of highly cultivated and dispassionate intellect, but his want of 'anti-Gallican instincts' rendered him unpopular with the country. His *Journal* and *Letters* should be read in conjunction with those of lord Malmesbury and George Rose, in both of which his conduct and motives are somewhat unfavourably represented.

*Auckland Correspondence.*

Horace,  
Walpole's  
*Memoirs.*

Horace Walpole's *Memoirs of the Last Ten Years of George II.*<sup>3</sup> and his *Memoirs of the Early Reign of George*

<sup>1</sup> *Diaries and Correspondence of the Right Hon. George Rose containing original Letters of the most distinguished Statesmen of his Day.* Edited by the Rev. Leveson Vernon Harcourt 2 vols. 1860.

<sup>2</sup> *The Journal and Correspondence of William, Lord Auckland, with a Preface and Introduction by the Bishop of Bath and Wells.* 4 vols. 1861-2.

<sup>3</sup> *Memoirs of the Last Ten Years of the Reign of George II.* By Horace Walpole, Earl of Orford. 2 vols. 1822.

III.<sup>1</sup> (which comprise the first twelve years) are perhaps the most really useful contemporary chronicles. His position and connexions enabled him to acquire the best information respecting court intrigues and state diplomacy, while his abstention from active political life probably led him to form a somewhat less prejudiced estimate of men and measures. He has, however, been censured for the severity and partiality of many of his judgments; and the discrepancies in his recorded opinions of the same individuals in different parts of the *Memoirs* are obvious. Walpole himself alleges that they are 'the memoirs of men who had many faults, written by a man who had many himself.' 'The contradictory opinions,' he says, 'which may appear in them from being written at different periods, forbid this work to aim at the regular march of history. As I knew men more, I may have altered my sentiments of them, they themselves may have changed' (*Memoirs of George III.*, i 3).

CHAP.  
X

His own  
description  
of their  
character

In one important respect the service rendered by Walpole in his earlier work is deserving of note. We have already seen (*supra*, p. 384) of what imperfect and doubtful materials our earlier parliamentary history is composed—the Journals of the two Houses and the Rolls representing the primary sources, supplemented by the biassed accounts of contemporary writers. It was not, indeed, until after the brief but decisive struggle of 1771 that the right of the press to publish reports of debates in either House was admitted and recognised.<sup>2</sup> Prior to that time, the *Gentleman's Magazine*, of which the first volume appeared in 1731, and the

His Notes  
on the De-  
bates in  
Parlia-  
ment.

The Gentle-  
man's  
Magazine,

<sup>1</sup> *Memoirs of the Reign of George III.* By Horace Walpole. Now first published from the original MSS. Edited, with Notes, by Sir Denis Le Marchant. 4 vols. 1845.

<sup>2</sup> See on this subject Massey, *Hist of England*, II. 93-124, Trevelyan, *Early Life of Charles James Fox*, c. VIII.

CHAP.  
X.and *The  
Annual  
Register.*

*Annual Register*, which commences in 1758, had ventured on little more than an occasional report of a speech of special interest delivered in the '*House of Commons*,' and a list of the supplies annually voted by Parliament. Special reports, by members of the House, such as those already described (see chapters vii. & viii), still lurked in manuscript. Of no period subsequent to the reign of James I. are the reports more meagre than those of that between the fall of Sir Robert Walpole (1742) and the outbreak of the War with the French in America (1758), and the value of Horace Walpole's earlier work consists to no small extent in the fact that it in some measure supplies this deficiency by the accounts furnished for the years 1750-60. He himself regularly attended the more important debates in the House of Commons, and took notes of the speeches; these he subsequently wrote out at greater length, with comments on the manner in which each speech was received by the House, and other details. The criticism contained in his later work is scarcely less valuable, his remarkable insight into character, combined with his great literary power, giving to these Reports an altogether exceptional interest.

For the second Parliament of George III. (May 1768 to June 1774), known as the 'Unreported Parliament,' we have the *Debates* left in manuscript by SIR HENRY CAVENDISH<sup>1</sup>. This collection, the publication of which was never completed, comprises in the printed volumes a large number of speeches by Burke, before unpublished, together with much curious matter appended by

Cavendish's  
*Debates.*

<sup>1</sup> *Sir Henry Cavendish's Debates of the House of Commons, during the Thirteenth Parliament of Great Britain, &c.* Edited from the original MSS by J. Wright 2 vols 1841-3 [The publication of this work was broken off when it had progressed as far as the year 1771.]

Mr. J. Wright, the editor, from letters, private journals, and memoirs.

CHAP.  
X

The *Letters of Junius*,<sup>1</sup> which appeared between January 1769 and November 1771, attracted the attention of the political world no less by their boldness, vigour of thought, and striking literary merits, than by the intimacy they indicated with cabinet secrets and the curiosity they thus excited as to their authorship. As a feature in the history of the times, their chief significance is in the evidence they afford of the intense animosity with which the reactionary policy of the dukes of Grafton and Bedford was regarded by the people. The arguments brought forward by the editor of the *Grenville Papers* (see *supra*, p. 384) to prove that lord Temple was the author and not Sir Philip Francis, are not generally regarded as conclusive.

*Letters of  
Junius*

The *Diary* of BUBB DODINGTON<sup>2</sup> (afterwards lord Melcombe) dates from 1748 to 1761; it is the journal of an active politician who, after having been a warm supporter of Walpole, more than once changed sides after his leader's downfall. Part of the *Diary* is devoted to reminiscences of earlier years, among which we have an amusing account of the dispute between George II. and the prince of Wales in 1737, a matter in which the narrator took an active part.

Bubb Dod-  
ington's  
*Diary*

(B.) **Biographies**—The *Life of Mr. Pitt* (3 vols, 1811) by BISHOP TOMLINE, his college tutor, is a dull and somewhat disingenuous performance which has been

*Lives of  
William  
Pitt,*

<sup>1</sup> *Junius* including *Letters by the same Writer under other Signatures, now first collected* To which are added his confidential Correspondence with Mr Wilkes, and his private Letters addressed to H. S. Woodfall. With a preliminary Essay 1875.

<sup>2</sup> *A Diary of the late George Bubb Dodington, from Mar. 8, 1748-9 to Feb. 6, 1761* With an Appendix containing many curious and interesting Papers referred to in the *Diary* Published from his Lordship's original MSS by H. S. Wyndham. 4th edit. 1809.

CHAP.  
X

Lord Shelburne,  
Burke, C.  
J. Fox,  
Clive, Wesley,  
Lord Mansfield,  
and  
Sheridan

superseded by the work of EARL STANHOPE,<sup>1</sup> who, in addition to the papers in Tomline's possession, had access to Pitt's unprinted correspondence with George III. The *Life of Lord Shelburne*, by LORD EDMOND FITZMAURICE, notwithstanding the shortness of the duration of the Shelburne ministry, is of considerable value from the light it throws on the policy and views of a statesman, who, in common with both the Pitts, represented the more enlightened conception of government which gradually superseded the rule of the Whig aristocracy.<sup>2</sup> A *Life of Burke*, by MACKNIGHT,<sup>3</sup> furnishes all the requisite information respecting that statesman's private life and political career; the study by MR. MORLEY,<sup>4</sup> of the same subject, exhibits Burke more especially in relation to his age and to the public events of the time. The *Early History of Charles James Fox*, by MR. TREVELYAN,<sup>5</sup> is written with much graphic power, and, whether regarded as a portraiture of character or as an illustration of the political life of these times, is a volume of the highest interest. It concludes with Fox's final secession from the ministerialist party in 1774. The *Memorials and Correspondence of Fox*, edited by EARL RUSSELL,<sup>6</sup> were originally compiled by Fox's nephew (the third

<sup>1</sup> *Life of the Right Hon. William Pitt*. By Earl Stanhope. 4 vols. 2nd edit. 1862.

<sup>2</sup> *The Life of William, Earl of Shelburne, afterwards first Marquis Lansdowne with Selections from his Papers and Correspondence* By Lord Edmond Fitzmaurice Vol. i. (1737-66), vol. ii. (1766-76), vol. iii. (1776-1805). 1875-6.

<sup>3</sup> *History of the Life and Times of Edmund Burke*. By Thomas Macknight 3 vols. 1858 [In this work the writer has availed himself of both the published and unpublished portions of the *Cavendish Debates*]

<sup>4</sup> *Edmund Burke: a historical Study*. By John Morley 1867.

<sup>5</sup> *The Early History of Charles James Fox* By George Otto Trevelyan, M.P. 3rd edit. 1881.

<sup>6</sup> *Memorials and Correspondence of Charles James Fox* Edited by Lord John Russell. 3 vols. 1853-4

lord Holland) and Mr. Allen, who each appended numerous explanatory notes. The criticism and elucidations by the final editor are of that judicious and practical character which he was eminently qualified to supply; and although the work presents a somewhat disjointed and irregular appearance, an eminent authority has observed that 'it contains so much authentic information, accompanied with criticism so intelligent and so candid, that no Englishman who desires to understand the history of his country between the years 1768 and 1792 can fail to read it with advantage and pleasure. Much of the materials in these volumes has since been given to the public in the *Life and Times of Fox* (3 vols.), published by earl Russell in 1866. The *Life of Clive*, by SIR JOHN MALCOLM (3 vols., 1856), is mainly a compilation from Clive's correspondence (both official and private) supplemented by the reports of Parliamentary Committees. It was left by the author in an unfinished state and was completed by another hand. SOUTHEY'S *Life of Wesley* (2 vols., 1820), an unequal though interesting narrative, may be supplemented by the more judicious and sympathetic work of Mr. TYERMAN.<sup>2</sup> The *Life of LORD MANSFIELD* in Campbell's *Lives* (*supra*, p. 229) is conceived in a less depreciatory spirit than many of the biographies in the same series and is a work of real merit. MOORE'S *Life of Sheridan*, a production of somewhat superficial brilliancy, written in a vein not unsuited to the subject, is still deserving of perusal. BROUGHAM'S *Statesmen of the Reign of George III.*,<sup>3</sup> includes the chief English politicians of the period, but the general ability of the sketches very imperfectly atones

Lord  
Brough-  
am's  
*Statesmen  
of the Reign  
of George  
III.*

<sup>1</sup> Lewis (Sir G. C.) *Administrations of Great Britain*, &c., p. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *The Life and Times of Wesley*. By the Rev. L. Tyerman. 3 vols.

1871.

<sup>3</sup> See *Works of Henry, Lord Brougham* (1868), vols. III. and IV.



CHAP  
X

for the strong party feeling and personal resentments of which they are the vehicle.

(C) **Later Historical Writers.**—The *History of England from the Accession to the Decease of King George III* (7 vols, 1840), by JOHN ADOLPHUS, passed through four large editions in the course of thirty-eight years. The writer was a barrister, in good practice, in the early part of the present century, and his undertaking was much patronised by the aristocracy. His mode of treatment, however, is now somewhat obsolete, and it was difficult for one writing within so short an interval from the period, to describe either the chief actors concerned or the political questions then at issue with the desirable degree of impartiality and candour. In the 'Additional Preface' to the edition of 1840, he specifies the sources from whence his work is derived,—a list in which much of the material noted in the present chapter is wanting

John  
Adolphus.  
b 1764  
d 1845,  
His *His-  
tory of  
England*

Craik and  
Macfar-  
lane.

A more recent production is that by CRAIK and MACFARLANE,<sup>1</sup> which is a compilation of considerable merit. Here the writers aim at the study of the national development rather than at the recital of political events, their facts being grouped under the different heads of 'Civil,' 'Religious,' 'Laws,' 'Industry,' 'Literature,' 'Manners and Customs,' and 'People.'

Mr Mas-  
sey's *Reign  
of George  
III.*

MR. MASSEY'S able work<sup>2</sup> is written with much the same purpose. It commences with an introductory sketch of events from the fall of Sir Robert Walpole, and reaches to the year 1802. The work is dispassionate and impartial in its tone, but the writer has been considered

<sup>1</sup> *The Pictorial History of England during the Reign of George III : being a History of the People as well as a History of the Kingdom.* By G. S. Craik and C. Macfarlane. 4 vols. 1853.

<sup>2</sup> *A History of England during the Reign of George III.* By William Massey, M P Vol. I. (1745-70), vol. II. (1770-80), vol. III (1781-93); vol IV (1793-1802). 1855-63.

to incline somewhat to the side of severity in his estimate of the character of George III.

CHAP.  
X

The *Constitutional History of England* by SIR ERSKINE MAY (2 vols, 1861), has been generally recognised as an adequate continuation of the labours of Hallam on the same subject. It reaches to the year 1860.

Sir Erskine  
May's  
*Constitutional  
History*

Much sound and able criticism on the *Administrations* of this and the following period will be found in the *Essays* on the subject by the late Sir G. C. Lewis,<sup>1</sup> the first of which treats of the administrations of lord North, lord Rockingham, lord Shelburne, and Mr. Pitt.

Sir G. C.  
Lewis's  
*Essays on  
the Ad-  
ministra-  
tions*

The *Memoirs of the Whig Party*, by the third LORD HOLLAND,<sup>2</sup> although a production hardly worthy of either the writer or the subject, contains some interesting facts, especially with respect to the character and policy of Lord Shelburne.

Lord Hol-  
land's  
*Memoirs  
of the Whig  
Party.*

Another volume, edited by Mr. T. Wright, *A Caricature History of the Georges*,<sup>3</sup> supplies us with an illustration of the satirical literature of the period; and, if furnishing amusement rather than instruction, affords also significant evidence of the contemptible spirit in which the warfare of political parties was then often carried on.

Wright's  
*Caricature  
History.*

<sup>1</sup> *Essays on the Administrations of Great Britain from 1783 to 1830.* By the Right Hon. Sir George Cornewall Lewis, Bart. Edited by Sir Edmund Head 1864.

<sup>2</sup> *Memoirs of the Whig Party during my Time.* By Henry Richard, Lord Holland. Edited by his Son, Henry Edward, Lord Holland. 2 vols. 1854.

<sup>3</sup> *Caricature History of the Georges or, Annals of the House of Hanover, compiled from the Squibs, Broadsides, Window Pictures, Lampoons, and Pictorial Caricatures of the Time.* By Thomas Wright. 1867.

## CHAPTER XI.

## THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

CHAP.  
XI

Authorities  
already de-  
scribed.

(A.) **Contemporary Writers**—Among the authorities described in the preceding chapter, the third and fourth volumes of the *Buckingham Memoirs* may be consulted for details connected with the contest on the Regency question, the French Revolution, the war against France, the Irish Rebellion of 1798, and the Legislative Union between Great Britain and Ireland. These volumes, having been edited by another hand, are free from the glaring inaccuracies which belong to the former two. To the whole work, the *Memoirs of the Court of the Regency*, issued under the same auspices, form a kind of continuation which dates from the year 1811 to 1820. The *Malmesbury Correspondence* supplies a good account of the negotiations with the French Republic in the years 1796-7, and afford convincing evidence, in disproof of the insinuations of Thiers, that the English government and their representative were alike actuated by a sincere desire for peace. The concluding volume of the *Life of Lord Shelburne* supplies an interesting study of one who, amid the general panic that followed upon the excesses of the French Revolution, remained faithful to the principles of his party. To the *Rose Correspondence* may now be added George Rose's *Diary*, which dates from Pitt's resignation in 1801 to the year 1815. The

*Correspondence* of lord Cornwallis may be consulted for the history of the Rebellion in Ireland, for the Union with England, and for the Peace of Amiens (1802), in both of which latter measures he was the leading negotiator. The *Correspondence* of Sir Samuel Romilly, especially that with M. Dumont, continues to offer some good illustration of the state of the political world, and to this must now be added his private *Journal* of his parliamentary life, during the years 1806 to 1818. The second, third, fourth, and fifth of Sir G. C. Lewis's *Essays* treat successively of the Administration of Pitt and the Catholic question; the negotiations of lord Cornwallis and the Irish Union; the Addington, Pitt, Grenville, Portland, and Perceval Administrations, and lord Liverpool's Administration, down to 1822. The second volume of lord Holland's *Memoirs of the Whig Party* gives some interesting details respecting the formation of the 'All the Talents' Ministry, their administration and dismissal.

BURKE'S *Reflections*<sup>1</sup> (1790), on the one hand, and Sir JAMES MACKINTOSH'S *Vindiciæ Gallicæ* (1791) and ERSKINE'S *View of the Causes and Consequences of the Present War with France* (1797) on the other, exemplify the widely different sentiments with which the outbreak and progress of the French Revolution were regarded by the two chief contemporary parties in England.

Burke, Mackintosh, and Erskine on the French Revolution.

(B) **Biographies and Correspondence.**—The *Diary and Correspondence* of LORD COLCHESTER<sup>2</sup> illustrate the views and character of a moderate Tory, who, while a zealous promoter of schemes of public utility, was throughout his career a steady opponent of all innovation, and especially distinguished by his opposition to the removal of the

*Diary and Correspondence of Lord Colchester.*

<sup>1</sup> *Reflections on the French Revolution.* Vol. II of *Works*, edited by E. J. Payne. Clar. Press.

<sup>2</sup> *The Diary and Correspondence of Charles Abbot, Lord Colchester. Speaker of the House of Commons, 1802-17.* Edited by his Son, Charles, Lord Colchester. 3 vols. 1861.

CHAP.  
XI

*Life and  
Correspon-  
dence of  
Lord Sid-  
mouth*

political disabilities to which Roman Catholics at that time were still subjected.

LORD SIDMOUTH'S *Life and Correspondence*, edited by PELLEW,<sup>1</sup> though a work of but slight literary merit, contains many interesting facts. It serves also to explain the policy of a statesman on whose behalf his defenders urge that he was called to the head of affairs under circumstances of exceptional difficulty, and that his genuine merit was obscured by the brilliancy of Pitt; while by less favourable critics he is censured for a repressive rather than remedial policy, and is held to have been mainly responsible for the massacre at Peterloo.

*Twiss's  
Life of  
Lord  
Eldon*

The *Life of Lord Eldon*, by HORACE TWISS,<sup>2</sup> portrays with greater success the experiences of a politician of the same school as the two foregoing. It is derived partly from autobiographical materials left by lord Eldon himself, and partly from numerous letters addressed to him by George III., George IV., and other members of the royal family.

*Yonge's  
Life of  
Lord  
Liverpool.*

The long administration of LORD LIVERPOOL is to be followed in the *Life* by MR. YONGE.<sup>3</sup> His highly encomiastic narrative is devoted to a representation of his subject, according to which a statesman of moderate ability, sound sense, and high character, but wanting in

<sup>1</sup> *The Life and Correspondence of the Right Hon Henry Addington, first Viscount Sidmouth* By the Hon. George Pellew, D.D., Dean of Norwich 3 vols 1847.

<sup>2</sup> *The Public and Private Life of Lord Chancellor Eldon, with Selections from his Correspondence* By Horace Twiss. 3rd edit 3 vols. 1846

<sup>3</sup> *The Life and Administration of Robert Banks, second Earl of Liverpool, K.G* By Charles Duke Yonge 3 vols 1868. [In contrast to the theory of his biographer, Mr Knight's view (*Hist. of the Peace*, bk. 1.) represents the more general opinion: 'The conduct of the war was not his,—he suffered others to starve the war The peace was not his,—he gave to others the uncontrolled power of prescribing the laws of victory.']

comprehensive judgment or political foresight, is credited with a principal share in bringing about the national prosperity which followed on the Peace, and is even designated as 'the very last minister who had been able fully to carry out his own political views.'

CHAP  
XI

ERSKINE'S *Speeches* (4 vols, 1847) have been edited by lord Brougham, who has also appended a *Memoir*, which may be compared with that in the sixth volume of Campbell's *Lives of the Lord Chancellors*. The latter composition is free from the depreciatory spirit which characterises so many of the *Lives* in the same series; the writer declares that Erskine commands his 'love and respect,' and holds that he 'saved the liberties of his country.'

Erskine's  
*Speeches*

*Lives of*  
Erskine by  
Brougham  
and Camp-  
bell

The *Memoirs and Correspondence* of FRANCIS HORNER<sup>1</sup> have been compiled by his brother. His reputation is chiefly that of a profound financier, whose views were in many respects in advance of his age; but during the last few years of his life (1812-16) he took a more prominent share in the debates of the House of Commons—his voice, in those exceptionally turbulent times, being invariably raised in support of a moderate and pacific policy.

*Memoirs*  
and *Corre-*  
*spondence*  
of Francis  
Horner.

Among the numerous *Lives* of WELLINGTON, that by BRIALMONT,<sup>2</sup> an officer in the Belgian army, is the most satisfactory. It is written throughout with great impartiality, and is the result of many years' conscientious labour and research. To military students it is of especial value on account of the clearness and ability with which

Brialmont's  
*Life of*  
*Wellington.*

<sup>1</sup> *Memoirs and Correspondence of Francis Horner, M P* Edited by his Brother, Leonard Horner, Esq., F R S. 2nd edit with Additions 2 vols. 1853.

<sup>2</sup> *History of the Life of Arthur, Duke of Wellington, from the French of M. Brialmont* With Emendations and Additions by the Rev. G. R. Gleig. 4 vols. 1858.

CHAP.  
XI*Wellington Despatches.*

the strategic genius that directed Wellington's campaigns is brought before the reader.

Of the *Wellington Despatches*, during the campaigns of 1796-1815, a second edition appeared in 1844-7, in eight octavo volumes. This collection has been further augmented by a supplementary series, extending to fifteen additional volumes (1858-72). His *Civil Correspondence* is comprised in five volumes, published from 1867 to 1873. Of his correspondence during his Indian administration a useful selection for students has been edited by Mr. S. J. Owen; this contains also the text of treaties, and other important papers, and is illustrated by maps and plans (Clarendon Press, 1877).

*Lives and Correspondence of Nelson and Collingwood*

The *Life of Nelson* by SOUTHEY, one of his happiest efforts, may be regarded as an English classic. NELSON'S *Despatches*<sup>1</sup> have been edited by Sir Harris Nicolas. Another *Life*, by CLARKE and MCARTHUR,<sup>2</sup> is accompanied by a *Life*, by the same writers, of Nelson's fellow-commander and intimate friend, LORD COLLINGWOOD. Collingwood's *Correspondence*,<sup>3</sup> official as well as private, has also been published; and his despatches, which do equal credit to his heart and to his head, rank among the most favourable specimens of this class of literature.

*Life of Lord Dundonald.*

The volumes edited and compiled by MR. FOX BOURNE, which illustrate the romantic career of LORD DUNDONALD,<sup>4</sup> are partly autobiographical. They com-

<sup>1</sup> *The Despatches and Letters of Vice-Admiral Horatio, Viscount Nelson.* 7 vols. 1844-5.

<sup>2</sup> *Life and Services of Horatio, Viscount Nelson, from his Lordship's MSS.* By the Rev. James Stainer Clarke and John McArthur 3 vols

<sup>3</sup> *A Selection from the public and private Correspondence of Lord Collingwood, interspersed with Memoirs of his Life* By G. L. Newnham Collingwood. 4to 1828

<sup>4</sup> *The Life of Thomas, Lord Cochrane, tenth Earl of Dundonald, G.C.B., Admiral of the Red, Rear-Admiral of the Fleet.* By Thomas, eleventh Earl, and H. R. Fox Bourne. 2 vols. 1869

pose a narrative fraught with experiences of singular interest For the present period, however, their main value is in connexion with the years 1810-20, when, as admiral Cochrane, he commanded the English fleet off South America during the War of Independence in the Spanish colonies.

CHAP.  
XI.

LORD DUDLEY'S *Letters to the Bishop of Llandaff* (new edition, 1841) contains some amusing gossip and criticism relating to public men and events during the period 1814-23.

Lord Dudley's  
*Letters*

Of the events which took place in the manufacturing districts of Lancashire and other parts of England during the years 1816 to 1821, BAMFORD'S *Passages in the Life of a Radical* affords a graphic and highly instructive record.

Bamford's  
*Life of a  
Radical*

The painful end of LORD LONDONDERRY<sup>1</sup> (better known as lord Castlereagh) marks the close of the present period. The *Life* of this statesman, together with that of his brother, SIR CHARLES STEWART, has been written by ALISON, and the volumes, which partake more of the character of a general history than a personal narrative, rank among the best of this writer's performances. Although conceived in no impartial spirit, the work may be regarded as a successful endeavour to rescue lord Londonderry's fame from much of the obloquy to which he was unjustly exposed during his life. 'There is perhaps,' says his biographer, 'no great man of his age, either in Great Britain or on the Continent, whose public conduct and motives of action have come so immaculate from the most searching test, or have borne so well the minutest examination by the most unfriendly

*Lives of  
Lord  
Londonderry and  
Sir Charles  
Stewart, by  
Alison*

<sup>1</sup> *Lives of Lord Castlereagh and Sir Charles Stewart, the Second and Third Marquesses of Londonderry, with Annals of Contemporary Events in which they bore a Part.* From the Original Papers of the Family. By Sir Archibald Alison, Bart. 3 vols 1861.



CHAP.  
XI.

---

eyes' (iii. 183). Lord Londonderry's *Correspondence* (1850) has been edited by his brother, who survived him more than thirty years. The public life of the latter was comparatively brief, extending only from his mission as ambassador to Vienna in 1814 to his withdrawal from diplomatic service after the Congress of Vienna in 1823.

Von Sy-  
bel's  
*French Re-  
volution.*

(C.) **Latest Historical Writers.**—Among the many productions to which the French Revolution has given rise, the work of VON SYBEL<sup>1</sup> is generally regarded as the ablest, and is perhaps the most impartial. The writer's treatment of his subject is of that philosophical character by which he is distinguished as an historian, and he co-ordinates the Revolution with the two last divisions of Poland and the disintegration of the German Empire as one of the great events which mark the fall of Feudalism.

Alison's  
*History of  
Europe*

SIR ARCHIBALD ALISON'S *History of Europe*, from the year 1789 to 1815, although often superficial in its treatment and wanting in the higher merits of historical composition, besides exhibiting throughout an almost servile deference to the views of the Tory party of his time, is still the most complete source of information for the main facts of the period when all European history took its direction from the action and policy in France. In conjunction with the later volumes, the student should read SIR WILLIAM NAPIER'S *History of the War in the Peninsula*,<sup>2</sup> which supplies some important corrections of Alison's narrative. A *Continuation* of the *History of Europe*, which subsequently appeared, is still

Napier's  
*War in  
the Pen-  
insula.*

<sup>1</sup> *History of the French Revolution.* By Heinrich von Sybel, Professor of History in the University of Bonn. Translated from the third edition by Walter C. Perry. 4 vols. 1867

<sup>2</sup> *History of the War in the Peninsula and in the South of France, from the year 1807 to the year 1814.* By Major-General Sir W. F. P. Napier. New edit. 6 vols. 1851.

more strongly characterised by the author's design of making his subject the vehicle for enforcing his particular views, and is loaded with much irrelevant disquisition. At this point, however, commences MR SPENCER WALPOLE'S *History of England*,<sup>1</sup> a far more judicious and careful performance. The writer has, indeed, been censured for giving somewhat undue importance to the bureaucratic influences of the time, and his treatment does not exhibit any of the higher powers of philosophic generalisation, but his research is extensive, and the commercial, economic, and financial questions which now begin to enter more largely than ever into the political history of the nation, are treated with sound judgment and conspicuous moderation. A valuable aid in the more detailed study of these questions is afforded by TOOKE'S *History of Prices*,<sup>2</sup> which contains an elaborate series of statistics from 1793 to 1837. With the year 1816 commences the *History of the Peace*, by HARRIET MARTINEAU<sup>3</sup> Of this, however, the first book (which extends to the death of George III) is written by Charles Knight, and it is consequently only to the last two years of the present period that her work relates. In its composition, the authoress had access to unpublished sources of information, and was aided by the advice and criticism of some distinguished politicians of the Whig party. Generally speaking, it may be said that this *History* is less full of detail and less complete than Mr. Walpole's, but is far more animated in its description of events, while in its estimate of characters

CHAP.  
XI

Spencer  
Walpole's  
*History of  
England.*

Tooke's  
*History of  
Prices*  
Martineau's  
*History of  
the Peace.*

<sup>1</sup> *A History of England from the Conclusion of the Great War in 1815.*  
By Spencer Walpole 3 vols 1878-80

<sup>2</sup> *A History of Prices and of the State of the Circulation from 1793  
to 1837, preceded by a brief Sketch of the Corn Trade in the last two Cen-  
turies.* By Tooke and Newmarch 6 vols. 1838-57.

<sup>3</sup> *The History of England during the Thirty Years' Peace, 1816-46.*  
By Harriet Martineau. 2 vols. 1849.

CHAP  
XI

---

Pauli's  
*Geschichte*  
*Englands*

and the statemanship of the period it evinces powers of a high order. DR. PAULI'S *Geschichte Englands*<sup>1</sup> contains no facts which may not be found in the foregoing writers ; but the introduction and first four chapters are of some interest, as occasionally presenting us with the views of an enlightened Continental historian respecting the foreign policy and diplomatic relations of England at this critical period.

<sup>1</sup> *Geschichte Englands seit den Friedensschlüssen von 1814 und 1815*, von Reinhold Pauli, Leipzig, 1864.

# SUPPLEMENT.



## INTRODUCTORY.

(P. 207.)—A second edition of PICTET's volumes appeared in 1887, but the work has by no means kept pace with the discovery of new material, while later writers have criticised very severely both his method and many of his statements. A valuable sketch of the whole literature of the subject is given in cc. 1. and 11 of Dr. O. SCHRADER'S *Sprachvergleichung und Urgeschichte*, translated in 1890 by F. B. Jevons,<sup>1</sup> a work which offers the most detailed and elaborate treatment of the subject as yet accessible in English. To this may be added HEARN'S *Aryan Household* (*supra*, p. 210, n. 3), designed more especially as an introduction to comparative jurisprudence

SUPPLE-  
MENT

Aryan  
languages  
and early  
history

(P. 215.)—The *Dictionary of National Biography*, edited by Mr Leslie Stephen and Mr Sidney Lee, has already reached the letter M; it supplies a collection of concise biographies by a large number of experts, and incorporates both the latest information and the most recent criticism. The chief sources for a more detailed study of each life are also systematically given. The information thus afforded may be sometimes advantageously supplemented by the use of *La Grande Encyclopédie* (Paris, 1886- ), also in progress and reaching to FRANCO. In this the historical and biographical articles are mainly under the direction of MM Berthelot,

Works on  
Biography.

<sup>1</sup> *Prehistoric Antiquities of the Aryan Peoples: a Manual of Comparative Philology and the earliest Culture.* Translated by F. B. Jevons. 1890.

## SUPPLEMENT

A. Giry, E. Levasseur, and H. Marion, and are accompanied by extremely full bibliographies.

A valuable collection of more detailed biographies is offered in the two series entitled *English Men of Action* and *Twelve English Statesmen*<sup>1</sup>

The following criticism should be noted :

Freeman's  
criticism  
of Hardy.

No one did better service to the study of English history than Sir Thomas Hardy did in his own line. But his own line was the history of the books themselves, not the appraising of the matter which they contained. His estimates of the different authors in his catalogue have always seemed to me singularly weak. Put a book into the hands, I will not say of Dr. Stubbs, who stands by himself, but of Dr. Luard or the late Mr. Dimock, and you get a different result. They understood their authors. Sir Thomas Hardy did not.—The late E. A. Freeman in *Acad.*, July 1, 1882.

Oxford  
Historical,  
Harleian,  
Henry  
Bradshaw,  
Pipe Roll,  
and Selden  
Societies

(P. 223)—The object of the OXFORD HISTORICAL SOCIETY (f. 1884) is the publication of original documents and works of research relating to the University, City, and County of Oxford. The HARLEIAN SOCIETY (f. 1869) is devoted to the investigation of pedigrees and family history. The volumes contain the heraldic visitations of London and the English counties in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, together with the marriage licences of London. The HENRY BRADSHAW SOCIETY (f. 1889)<sup>2</sup> has for its aim the reprinting of liturgical MSS. or rare editions, preference being given to those which bear upon the history of the Church of England and of the Prayer Book. The PIPE ROLL SOCIETY (f. 1883) has for its primary object the publication of the Pipe Rolls of the reign of Henry II. The SELDEN SOCIETY (f. 1887) is designed 'to encourage the study and advance the knowledge of the history of English law,' and its publications contain a large amount

<sup>1</sup> *William the Conqueror*, by E. A. Freeman; *Henry II.*, by Mrs J. R. Green; *Edward I.*, by T. F. Tout; *Henry VII.*, by James Gairdner; *Cardinal Wolsey*, by Bishop Creighton; *Elizabeth*, by E. S. Beesly; *Oliver Cromwell*, by Frederic Harrison; *William III.*, by H. D. Traill; *Walpole and Chatham*, by John Morley; *Pitt*, by Lord Rosebery; *Nel.*, by J. R. Thursfield.

<sup>2</sup> So named after a former librarian of the University Library, Cambridge, an eminent authority on English mediæval service books.

of matter of general interest relating to fairs, municipalities, and manorial courts<sup>1</sup> The *English Historical Review*, commenced under the editorship of Professor Creighton and continued under that of Dr. S. R. Gardiner and Dr. R. L. Poole, has already supplied a series of valuable critiques, addressed mainly to professional students of history,<sup>2</sup> which will be found of the greatest utility, the design being also to assist and interest the general reader. Contributions of considerable interest have also appeared in the Transactions of the ROYAL HISTORICAL SOCIETY (f. 1868).

SUPPLE-  
MENT  
*English  
Historical  
Review*

(P. 227) —A descriptive catalogue of the Records themselves has since been compiled by MR. SCARGILL-BIRD,<sup>3</sup> in which all the principal documents contained in the Record Office have undergone methodical classification. In connexion with such documents, it will be useful to note the publication of Mr. Edward Maunde Thompson's *Handbook of Greek and Latin Palaeography* (1893), which deals with the entire history of both Greek and Latin writing, and includes not only the Irish

Catalogue  
of the  
Records

<sup>1</sup> An account of the principal classes of manuscripts with which the Society proposes to deal has been published separately (28 pp. quarto), price 1s., by B. Quaritch.

<sup>2</sup> Among the articles which have already appeared, the following are especially deserving of notice in connexion with English history:

Vol. I — *German Schools of History*, by Lord Acton—an admirable aperçu of the chief contributions to historical literature made by Germany during the last half century; *The Restoration Settlement of the English Church*, by Rev. N. Pocock. Vol. II — *Charles I and the Earl of Glamorgan*, by Professor Gardiner. Vol. III — *Gneist on the English Constitution*, by G. W. Prothero; *The Plantation of Munster*, by R. Dunlop. Vol. V — *Comparative History of England and France during the Middle Ages*, by C. V. Langlois. Vol. VI. — *Warham's Visitation of Monasteries*, by Miss Bateson; *Dr. Nicholas Sander*, by Dr. J. H. Pollen; *The Royal and Merchant Navy under Elizabeth*, by M. Oppenheim. Vol. VII. — *Vinogradoff's Villainage in England*, by F. Seebohm, *Henry II and the Criminous Clerks*, by Professor Maitland; *The Royal Navy under James I*, by M. Oppenheim; *Edward Augustus Freeman*, by the Right Hon. James Bryce. Vol. VIII. — *Folkland*, by Professor Vinogradoff; *Anglo-Saxon Law*, by Sir Frederick Pollock; *The Royal Navy under Charles I*, by M. Oppenheim.

<sup>3</sup> *Guide to the Principal Classes of Documents in the Public Record Office*. By S. R. Scargill-Bird. 1891.

SUPPLE-  
MENT

and Anglo-Saxon hands, but also manuscripts in those hands written in the English language. Mr. C. T. Martin's volume, *The Record Interpreter* (1892), will be found not less serviceable, although in a more limited field. It contains a collection of abbreviations both of Latin and French words used in English historical manuscripts and records, and also a list of Latin names of places and of episcopal sees in Great Britain and Ireland.

Doyle's  
*Official  
Baronage  
of England*

(P. 229.)—*The Official Baronage of England*,<sup>1</sup> by JAMES E. DOYLE, designed by the compiler to 'assist the study of English history, and principally of mediæval English history,' and 'to do for the chiefs of the active ruling class of the earlier ages what our modern Peerages and Parliamentary Compañions do for the legislators and officials of the present day,' supplies (1) dates of birth, succession, and death, (2) the varying titles of each line; (3) the offices held by each peer; (4) their marriages; (5) their armorial bearings. It also gives etchings of portraits of one or more of the most distinguished members of each house. The published volumes, however, relate only to the four highest ranks of the English peerage, barons being excluded, except in the case of those whose title remained the same after promotion to a higher grade in the peerage. The work may accordingly be advantageously supplemented by *The Complete Peerage of England, Scotland, Ireland, Great Britain, and the United Kingdom*, by G. E. C.;<sup>2</sup> while the whole subject receives valuable illustration from the article 'The Peerage,' by Mr. Round, in the *Quarterly Review* (Oct. 1893).

*The  
Complete  
Peerage*

Cunning-  
ham's  
*English  
Industry  
and Com-  
merce*.

The treatment adopted by DR. CUNNINGHAM in his *Growth of English Industry and Commerce*<sup>3</sup> is free from the defects above noted in Macpherson (*supra*, p. 229). The author has also had the advantage of access to a vast amount of material

<sup>1</sup> *The Official Baronage of England, showing the Succession, Dignities, and Offices of every Peer from 1066 to 1885.* Vols. 1-III. 1886.

<sup>2</sup> *The Complete Peerage of England, Scotland, Ireland, Great Britain and the United Kingdom, extant, extinct, or dormant.* Vols. 1.-IV. (comprising half the work), 1887-92.

<sup>3</sup> *The Growth of English Industry and Commerce during the early and middle Ages.* By W. Cunningham. Camb. Univ. Press, 1890.

which was not within his predecessor's reach, and has skilfully fused it into animated narrative. Among the numerous subjects treated in his first volume are: the growth of the towns under the Danes, the position of the Jews in England, the relations between the Gilds and the municipal life, usury and interest.

SUPPLE-  
MENT.

## CHAPTER I.

(P. 242.)—MR CHARLES ELTON'S *Origins of English History* (second edition 1890) is a valuable contribution to our knowledge of this period, the aim of the writer having been to reconstruct, by the methods of modern scientific research, the history of these islands from the time of the first references in the Greek geographers down to the conversion of the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity.

Elton's  
*Origins of  
English  
History.*

## CHAPTER II.

### A.D. 450 TO THE NORMAN CONQUEST.

(P. 249.)—*Contemporary Writers.*—The *Historia Regum* of SIMEON OF DURHAM has recently been included in the Rolls Series.<sup>1</sup> The editor, Mr. Thomas Arnold, while pronouncing the work greatly inferior, in respect of originality, to the *History of the Church of Durham* by the same writer, points out its value as an authority for many events in the North of England and the South of Scotland, on which the Saxon chronicles are almost silent. From the year 881, however, the narrative is mainly derived from Florence of Worcester; and where passages present themselves identical with what we find in William of Malmesbury, Simeon must again be looked upon as the borrower.

Simeon of  
Durham.

(P. 251.)—The *De Regum Gestis*<sup>2</sup> of WILLIAM OF MALMESBURY has also appeared under the editorship of Dr.

William of  
Malmes-  
bury.

<sup>1</sup> *Historia Regum, with Continuation by John of Hexham.* Edited by T. Arnold R S 1885

<sup>2</sup> *De Regum Gestis Anglorum Libri V; et Historiae Novellae Libri III.* Edited by William Stubbs. Vols. 1 and II. R. S. 1887-89.



## SUPPLEMENT.

Writers  
on Constitutional  
History  
Taswell-  
Langmead,

Stubbs, who in his preface discusses his author's special qualifications and merits, and explains the 'definite and distinguished place which he occupies in the developement of historic study in England and in Western Europe generally'

(P. 257)—*Modern Writers—English Constitutional History*, by the late T. B. TASWELL-LANGMEAD,<sup>1</sup> is a work condensing in a succinct and well-arranged manner the main results presented in the works of Stubbs, Hallam, and Erskine May. The compiler has, however, consulted the original authorities on many important questions, and has made good use of the statutes. He has also appended useful footnotes, explanatory of the more strictly legal points from time to time involved. Additional notes and appendices have been contributed by the editor.

Gneist,

The work of GNEIST<sup>2</sup> on the English Constitution is scarcely less indispensable to the English student than the works of Stubbs and Hallam, while, as a distinguished jurist and politician in Germany, he surveys his subject from a different standpoint. As compared with the great historians of our mediæval constitution, he has sometimes the advantage in method and arrangement, and his conclusions are generally expressed, if less judiciously, with definiteness and originality. He also supplies much with respect to questions concerning which Hallam is almost silent, *e.g.*, the machinery of government, the offices of state, the local and provincial authorities, the nature of the different bodies or institutions by which the country was governed.<sup>3</sup>

Professor  
Dicey,

PROFESSOR DICEY'S Lectures<sup>4</sup> afford an admirable analysis of the fundamental principles of the English Constitution, and especially those features which distinguish that Constitution from others.<sup>5</sup> His illustrations are selected with great skill,

<sup>1</sup> *English Constitutional History*. 4th edition, revised, with notes, &c. By C. H. E. Carmichael. London: Stevens, 1891.

<sup>2</sup> *The History of the English Constitution*. Translated by P. A. Ashworth. 2 vols. 2nd edition. 1890.

<sup>3</sup> See a criticism by Mr. G. W. Prothero in *Hist. Review*, iii. 1-33.

<sup>4</sup> *Introduction to the Study of the Law of the Constitution*. By A. V. Dicey. 3rd edition. 1889.

<sup>5</sup> The subjects are as follows. The true nature of Constitutional Law;

and the volume constitutes a worthy companion to the equally admirable essays in the work of Mr. Bagehot on the English Constitution

M. BOUTMY, in his *English Constitution*,<sup>1</sup> traces the results of the more important changes in the relations of the different classes to each other which have taken place since the Norman Conquest. He lays special stress on those changes which have been due to economic causes, and insists strongly on the close connexion between constitutional and economic development—French history supplying him with many interesting parallels and contrasts. In a particularly suggestive chapter he traces the origin of the present system of parliamentary government, and maintains that, notwithstanding its present democratic associations, it could only have arisen under a narrow oligarchy, such as that which ruled England in the last century. M. Boutmy's point of view differs in some material respects from that of previous writers on our Constitution, and his pages contain not a few startling statements, for the most part, however, resting on solid argument. The freshness and vivacity of his treatment still further contribute to render the volume one of the most stimulating treatises that have for a long time appeared on the subject.

SIR WILLIAM ANSON'S *Law and Custom of the Constitution* <sup>2</sup> supplies an exposition of 'the law relating to existing constitutions, with so much of history as is necessary to explain how they have come to be what they are.' The first volume contains a concise and clear account of the present constitution of Parliament—its mode of summons and of dissolution, composition and privileges, together with the process of legislation, the relations of ministers to Parliament, and Parliament as a court of law. The second volume deals with the royal the Sovereignty of Parliament; comparison between Parliament and non-sovereign Law-making Bodies, the Rule of Law, its nature, and its applications.

<sup>1</sup> *The English Constitution*. By Emile Boutmy. Translated by Isabel M. Eaden. With a Preface by Sir Frederick Pollock. 1891.

<sup>2</sup> *The Law and Custom of the Constitution*. Part 1—*Parliament*. Part II—*The Crown*. By Sir William R. Anson, Bart. Clarendon Press, 1892.

SUPPLE-  
MENT

Mr. Bage-  
hot,  
M.  
Boutmy,

Sir  
William  
Anson,

SUPPLE-  
MENT.

Dr. Todd,

prelative and title; the councils of the Crown, especially the Cabinet; the departments of government, the dependencies, the revenue, the army and the navy, Church and State, and the law courts. The work is scarcely less indispensable to the student of constitutional history than to the constitutional lawyer. The same may be said of Dr TODD'S *Parliamentary Government in England*,<sup>1</sup> which supplies the most complete account of our existing Parliamentary system. In this most valuable work the author traces the development of that system from its commencement in the eighteenth century down to the present day, illustrating every point with great fulness of detail. His work contains a mass of information which no student of the English constitution can afford to ignore. Of more extended scope, but much less complete in respect of detail, is Mr. Hearn's work, *The Government of England*,<sup>2</sup> which traces in a singularly lucid and masterly manner the origin and growth of the royal power, together with those of the functions and prerogatives of the two Houses of Parliament and of political representation.

Professor  
Earle,

(P. 257)—In the volume entitled *A Handbook to the Land Charters*, by PROFESSOR EARLE, his selection is made with reference to (1) the outline and structure of the Land Charter or public grant of land, including some notice of the marks of degeneracy, (2) the relations between land tenure and the elementary frame of English society, (3) the varying conditions of the two languages employed in the composition of these documents. For the rich and peculiar information they contribute towards the early history of property, society, and institutions, and the manifold light they cast upon the English language, these documents will well repay very careful study, and form an excellent introduction to that of Domesday Book. In his valuable preface, which will be found full of instruction for younger students, the editor indicates the chief methods

<sup>1</sup> *Parliamentary Government in England*. By Alpheus Todd. 2 vols. 2nd edit. 1887. A new and condensed edition (2 vols. 1892), edited and re-arranged by Mr. Spencer Walpole, is especially adapted for students.

<sup>2</sup> *The Government of England its Structure and its Development*. By the Hon. W. E. Hearn, Q. C. 2nd edit. 1887.

which may be employed to test the authenticity of charters, especially that of a comparison of texts drawn from original charters with those derived from copies in later chartularies. The new theory which he puts forward of the origin of the English village community has been criticised by Mr. W. H. Stevenson in the *Hist. Review*, iv. 355-359. In direct connexion with this latter subject, PROFESSOR VINOGRADOFF'S *Villainage in England*<sup>1</sup> and his article on Folkland (*supra*, p. 407, n. 2) afford an elaborate study of the legal and economic condition of the English peasantry in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. In his view, the facts and theories disclosed by the documents of this age can only be accounted for by the supposition that large masses of men had been falling from freedom into servitude, and that beneath the nominal organisation the remains of a free village community can be detected. His researches are not yet completed, but, so far as they extend, are occupied rather with the later than the earlier period

SUPPLE-  
MENT

Vino-  
gradoff

### CHAPTER III.

#### FROM THE NORMAN CONQUEST TO THE ACCESSION OF KING JOHN.

(P. 259.)—The Bayeux Tapestry has been reproduced in a series of engravings (folio) by Stothard, published by the Society of Antiquaries (of London); and in quarto, with elucidations, by the Arundel Society<sup>2</sup>

The  
Bayeux  
Tapestry.

*Contemporary Writers.*—The *Historia Novorum in Anglia* and *Vita Anselmi* by EADMER—the former dealing with the public career of Anselm and the history of his times, the latter with his inner life and spiritual experiences—have appeared under the editorship of Mr. Martin Rule.<sup>3</sup> (P. 262.)—WILLIAM

New edi-  
tions of  
Eadmer,  
William of  
Newbury,  
and the  
Minoi

<sup>1</sup> *Villainage in England* By Professor Vinogradoff Clarendon Press, 1892

<sup>2</sup> *The Bayeux Tapestry reproduced in Autotype Plates. with Historic Notes* By Frank Rede Fowke 1890

<sup>3</sup> *Eadmeri Historia Novorum in Anglia et Opuscula duo de Vita Sancti Anselmi et quibusdam Miraculis ejus.* Edited by the Rev. Martin Rule. R. S. 1884.

SUPPLE-  
MENT.Chro-  
niclers,

OF NEWBURY has been edited by Mr. R. Howlett,<sup>1</sup> who, in his preface, characterises his author as supplying 'to a great degree a commentary and a collateral narration running parallel with and completing the minor chroniclers of this period' These minor chroniclers have also now appeared under his editorship,<sup>2</sup> being: 1 The *Gesta Stephani Regis Anglorum* 2 The *Chronicle* of RICHARD OF HEXHAM 3. The *Relatio de Standardo*, by AELRED, abbat of Rievaulx. 4 The metrical *Chronicle* of JORDAN FANTOSME 5. The *Chronicle* of RICHARD OF DEVIZES In the *Gesta*, the editor considers, we have proof of the prevalence of a larger amount of order and a more regular administration of justice than we should have been inclined to look for in so stormy a period, the author, he conjectures, was some court ecclesiastic—not improbably the bishop of Winchester, who was chaplain to Henry of Blois. The *Chronicle* of ROBERT OF TORIGNI, abbat of St Michel, which occupies the third volume, reaches only to the year 1159, and its special value is limited to the quarter of a century preceding that date The abbat was one who knew the world; he had visited Paris and had been twice in England, and his position gave him excellent opportunities for becoming well informed with respect to contemporary events The Norman-French versification of GAIMAR'S *History* (*supra*, p 260) has been added to the same series, with a translation into English verse by Mr. C T. Martin.

and of  
Gaimar.Giraldus  
Cam-  
brensis.

(P. 265)—The eighth and concluding volume of GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS contains the treatise *De Principum Instructione* Of this only the first book in any degree corresponds to its title, forming an excellent illustration of the really considerable learning of the age. The second and third books, on the other hand, are historically valuable in proportion as they deviate

<sup>1</sup> *Historia Rerum Anglicarum Libri V.* Edited by R. Howlett. 2 vols R S 1884-5 (Forming vols 1. and 11. of 'Chronicles of the Reigns of Stephen, Henry II. and Richard III') The second volume contains also the *Continuatio* of William of Newburgh's *History* to the year 1298; and the *Draco Normannicus* of Etienne of Rouen.

<sup>2</sup> *Chronicles of the Reign of Stephen, Henry II, and Richard I* Vols. iii and iv. 1886-90.

from the primary purpose of Giraldus, which was to exhibit the character of Henry II in the darkest colours Giraldus appears to have been largely actuated by feelings of resentment at Henry's treatment of the Church, and his hatred for the Norman and Angevin kings was only equalled by his contempt for the people over whom they tyrannised.

SUPPLEMENT.

(P. 267.)—A further help to the study of Domesday Book will be found in *Domesday Studies*,<sup>1</sup> among which Mr. ROUND's paper on 'The Danegeld and the Finance of Domesday' may be noted as especially instructive

*Domesday Studies*

Mr. Robertson's arduous labours on BEKET now extend to seven volumes Of these the fourth contains the two anonymous Lives (of which the former is that usually ascribed to Roger of Pontigny, the latter that known as the Lambeth), and also the two compilations (from the whole series of contemporary Lives) which have each received the name of the *Quadrilogus* The three remaining volumes contain the *Letters* Mr Robertson's own estimate of the subject of his labours has been long ago summed up in his *Beket, Archbishop of Canterbury* (London · 1859) The two volumes of the Icelandic *Thomas Saga*, edited by Mr. Magnússon for the same series, supply details from a lost *Life* by one Robert, prior of St. Frideswide, which are of considerable value. In studying the foreign commercial relations of England, no little assistance will be derived from the Calendars of State Papers in the archives and collections in Venice, edited by Mr. Rawdon Brown The highly interesting Preface to Volume I. is especially recommended for perusal.

*Lives and Letters of Beket.*

*Later Writer.*—The monumental work of MADOX,<sup>2</sup> an eminent antiquary of the earlier part of last century, had its origin in a design 'to give such an account of things as might be elicited and drawn out of the memorials cited from time to time ; and not to cite memorials and vouchers for establishing

Madox.

<sup>1</sup> *Domesday Studies · being the papers read at the meetings of the Domesday Commemoration* 1886 Edited by P. E Dove 2 vols. 1888-94

<sup>2</sup> *The History and Antiquities of the Exchequer of the Kings of England, from the Norman Conquest to the end of the Reign of Edward II.* By Thomas Madox. 2 vols 1769.

SUPPLE-  
MENT.

of any private opinion preconceived in my own mind ;' and the materials he employed were, to cite his own words, 'Records of the highest nature, to wit, the great Rolls of the Pipe, the memoranda of the Exchequer, the Rolls of several sorts in the Tower of London.' The results attained by these labours have been, for the most part, reproduced in a more concise and intelligible form in the works of Stubbs and Gneist ; but chapters x-xviii, treating of the Crown revenue, fines, amerancements, aids, escuage, tallage, prize and customs, still well deserve to be consulted.

Stokes on  
Irish  
Church  
History.

(P. 268.)—*Recent Writers*—PROFESSOR STOKES' *Lectures on Ireland and the Celtic Church*,<sup>1</sup> originally delivered at Trinity College, Dublin, are specially adapted to young students, and the general treatment is of an uncontroversial character. The companion volume, *Ireland and the Anglo-Norman Church*,<sup>2</sup> was designed to illustrate the process whereby the Irish Church of the tenth century was gradually Anglicised, and assumed the character which it continued to retain down to the time of the Reformation.

Miss  
Norgate.

MISS NORGATE'S *England under the Angevin Kings*,<sup>3</sup> embracing the period 1154-1272, is a work of a high order and invaluable as an aid to the study of the period. It traces with considerable ability the growth of the great house of Anjou and the policy of Henry II., the treatment, however, is open to the criticism that events in England are sometimes subordinated to those on the Continent. Freeman's criticism (*Hist. Review*, II. 774-780) sets forth the chief merits of the work and touches leniently on its defects.

Dowell's  
History of  
Taxation.

(P. 268.)—For the history of taxation, which with the reign of Henry II. enters upon a new phase, the work of MR. DOWELL<sup>4</sup> affords additional illustration of the subject as treated incidentally by Stubbs. Of the four volumes which

<sup>1</sup> *Ireland and the Celtic Church a History of Ireland from St. Patrick to the English Conquest in 1172* By G. T. Stokes 1887.

<sup>2</sup> *Ireland and the Anglo-Norman Church* By G. T. Stokes, 1889.

<sup>3</sup> *England under the Angevin Kings* By Kate Norgate. 2 vols. 1887.

<sup>4</sup> *A History of Taxation and Taxes in England from the earliest Times to the present Day.* By Stephen Dowell 4 vols. 1884-88.

compose the work, the first two treat of the history of taxation generally, from times prior to the Norman Conquest down to the year 1882, the latter two are devoted to the history of particular taxes. In his *Antiquities of the Exchequer*<sup>1</sup> Mr. HUBERT HALL supplies a graphic account of the fiscal system, and in his *History of the Customs Revenue*<sup>2</sup> an equally clear narrative of the changes that have occurred in the collection of those duties

SUPPLE-  
MENT.

The series entitled *Historic Towns*,<sup>3</sup> edited by the late Professor Freeman and the Rev. Wm. Hunt, supplies valuable illustrations of our national life, while local history in its relation to national history is dealt with in a more general manner in FREEMAN'S volume entitled *English Towns and Districts*.<sup>4</sup> The *Gild Merchant*,<sup>5</sup> by MR GROSS, is designed to throw light not only on the development of gilds but also on that of the municipal constitution. The second volume contains numerous documents, now first printed from the originals in the Record Office or in the archives of the chief cities of England. The work of MR HIBBERT<sup>6</sup> on the same subject affords an excellent illustration of the gild system as exhibited in connexion with a single town. Mrs J R GREEN'S *Town Life*, though nominally limited to the fifteenth century, deals with the general development of municipal institutions in earlier times, and the late Miss Lamond's edition of WALTER OF HENLEY'S

*Historic  
Towns*

Gross

Hibbert

Mrs J R.  
Green

<sup>1</sup> *Antiquities and Curiosities of the Exchequer*. By Hubert Hall. 1891.

<sup>2</sup> *A History of the Customs Revenue in England from the earliest Times to the Year 1827*. By Hubert Hall. 2 vols 1885.

<sup>3</sup> *Bristol*, by the Rev. W. Hunt, *Carlisle*, by Bishop Creighton; *Cinque Ports*, by Montagu Burrows; *Colchester*, by Rev E. L. Cutts; *Exeter*, by E. A. Freeman; *London*, by Rev W. J. Loftie; *Oxford*, by Rev C. W. Boase; *Winchester*, by Rev. G. W. Kitchin; *York*, by Rev. James Raine.

<sup>4</sup> *English Towns and Districts A series of Addresses and Sketches*. By E. A. Freeman. 1883.

<sup>5</sup> *The Gild Merchant a contribution to British Municipal History*. 2 vols Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1891.

<sup>6</sup> *The Influence and Development of English Gilds as illustrated by the history of the Crafts Gilds of Shrewsbury* Camb. Univ. Press, 1892.



SUPPLEMENT.

Works on  
Economics  
by Rogers

and  
Professor  
Ashley.

*Husbandry* is to be noted as containing four interesting treatises connected with estate management and domestic life.

The late Professor ROGERS' two work, *The Economic Interpretation of History*,<sup>1</sup> and *Six Centuries of Work and Wages*,<sup>2</sup> reproduce, in more popular form, the principal views already advanced in his *History of Prices*, some of which, however, have been severely criticised by more recent writers

PROFESSOR ASHLEY'S *Economic History*,<sup>3</sup> although rather a series of essays on special points than a complete and systematic treatise, is a work of high merit and great research. It exhibits, more particularly, the analogy between English and Continental economic progress in a manner that is highly interesting.

## CHAPTER IV.

### FROM THE ACCESSION OF KING JOHN TO THE DEATH OF EDWARD II.

*Flores Historiarum.*

(P. 272.)—*Contemporary Writers*.—The *Flores Historiarum* in the new edition by Luaid<sup>4</sup> has been subjected to further criticism which has tended somewhat to modify the conclusions the editor had previously arrived at with respect to the share of Matthew Paris in the most important portion of the work—1235–1259. He finds evidence that the different portions were written at St. Albans, but holds that 'it is scarcely conceivable that Paris, who had already abridged and added to his larger work in the *Historia Anglorum*, could have made this second abridgement as well' As regards the entire collection he concludes (III. p. ix) that 'it is the work of various persons; that it was composed at different times, in different places, and with

<sup>1</sup> *The Economic Interpretation of History*. By J. E. Thorold Rogers. 1888.

<sup>2</sup> *Six Centuries of Work and Wages* By J. E. Thorold Rogers. 1885.

<sup>3</sup> *An Introduction to English Economic History and Theory*. By W. J. Ashley. 2 vols 1888. Vol. 1. pt. 1 2nd edit., 1892

<sup>4</sup> *Flores Historiarum* Edited by the Rev H. R. Luaid Vol. 1 : The Creation to A.D. 1066 Vol. II : A.D. 1067–1264. Vol. III. : A.D. 1265–1326. R. S. 1890.

very varying intentions' Mr Hewlett, in his edition of the *Flores* by ROGER OF WENDOVER,<sup>1</sup> in investigating the much vexed question of Roger's originality, does little more than adopt the conclusions of Luard. He points out that, generally speaking, Roger contrasts unfavourably with Matthew Paris, his successor as historiographer to the monastery of St Albans, who appears often 'to have detected the deficiencies of his predecessor's narrative and endeavoured to amend them' (III. xix)

SUPPLE-  
MENT

Roger of  
Wendover

(P 275.)—*The Chronicles of the Reigns of Edward I and Edward II* contain the following (i) the *Annales Londonienses*, which down to the year 1301 are chiefly an abridgement of the *Flores Historiarum*, but from that date to 1316 are especially valuable; (ii) the *Annales Paulini*, also an abridgement of the *Flores* and copied from a Westminster MS of that work down to 1306, but presenting new and original matter from that date to 1341, (iii) *Commendatio Lamentabilis*, a MS printed for the first time and representing a sort of funeral sermon on the death of Edward I. This is of value as clearly establishing the broad fact that the English Justinian gained the admiration of his contemporaries very much by virtue of those features in his character and policy which have won for him the esteem of posterity, (iv) the *Gesta Edwardi de Carnarvon*, a short chronicle of the reign of Edward II by a canon of the Augustinian Priory of Bridlington in Yorkshire, (v) the *Vita Edwardi II* attributed to a monk of Malmesbury, (vi) the so-called *Vita et Mors Edwardi II*, a chief authority for Edward's reign, by SIR THOMAS DE LA MORE, a knight of the shire for Oxfordshire in 1340. Sir Thomas was the patron of GEFREY LE BAKER, of whose chronicle, printed by Dr. Giles in his *Scriptores Monastici*, the *Vita* is really a portion, but abridged and slightly altered in the earlier parts. With respect to this work Dr Stubbs comes to the conclusion that although 'filtered through the somewhat uncertain medium' of the chronicle of Geoffrey Le Baker, and incorporating for the worse a certain admixture of Adam of Murimuth's

*Chronicles*  
of the  
Reigns of  
Edward I.  
and Ed-  
ward II.

<sup>1</sup> *Chronica Rogeri de Wendover, sive Flores Historiarum*. Vols 1-III. : Edited by Henry G. Hewlett. R S 1886-89-

SUPPLEMENT.  
MEN.

Letter  
Books of  
Christ  
Church.

language and chronology, it is in the main trustworthy, but whether really derived from a French original is doubtful.

(P. 275).—*The Letter Books of Christ Church, Canterbury*,<sup>1</sup> commence with the fourteenth century and belong to the golden age of that great foundation when the shrine of the martyred Becket attracted pilgrims and oblations from every part of England. They supply material of very varied interest, and conclude with a summons of Henry VIII. to the prior to furnish soldiers to aid in the suppression of the Pilgrimage of Grace. Of the metrical *Chronicle* of ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER,<sup>2</sup> the editor, Dr. Aldis Wright, observes that it 'possesses no original value except for the period of the Barons' war in the reign of Henry III., where the narrative becomes that of a contemporary.' Prior to this period, it is simply a rhyming chronicle compiled from Geoffrey of Monmouth, Henry of Huntingdon, William of Malmesbury, &c.

Robert of  
Gloucester.

Lyte's  
History of  
Oxford.

(P. 283).—*The History of the University of Oxford*<sup>3</sup> by Mr. MAXWELL LYTE carries the subject down to the year 1530. He supplies a clear and connected narrative which is often of considerable interest and importance in relation to the national life; but the work is defective as regards original research, and fails to embody the results arrived at by recent investigators respecting mediæval university organisation and development.

Rashdall's  
Mediaeval  
Universities.

MR. RASHDALL'S volume on *The Mediaeval Universities* treats chiefly of their origin, organisation, and development down to the year 1500, especial attention being bestowed on the three typical universities of Bologna, Paris, and Oxford.

Papal  
History

*Papal History*.—An English calendar of all entries in the Papal Regesta of the Middle Ages which illustrate the history of Great Britain and Ireland has been commenced by MR. BLISS, the first volume of which extends from 1198 to 1304.

<sup>1</sup> *The Letter Books of the Monastery of Christ Church, Canterbury*. Edited by J. B. Sheppard. Vols 1–III. R. S. 1887–89.

<sup>2</sup> *The Metrical Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester*. Edited by W. Aldis Wright. Parts I and II. R. S. 1887.

<sup>3</sup> *History of the University of Oxford from the earliest times to 1530*. By H. C. Maxwell Lyte. 1886.

MR. JOSEPH JACOBS' *Jews of Angevin England* (Nutt, 1893) is a careful gleaning of all the evidence afforded by English records with respect to the position of the Jewish community under English rule at this period. He shews that the loss of Normandy in the reign of John was attended by results fatal to the Jewish interests and involving a general decline in the position which the race had hitherto held in Europe.

SUPPLE-  
MENT

## CHAPTER V.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE DEATH OF  
RICHARD III.

(P. 292.)—*Contemporary Writers*.—A sixth volume of the collection of chronicles by JOHN DE WAURIN has appeared (1891) and a translation of the fifth volume by Mr. E. L. C. P. Hardy (1891); the excellent indices which accompany these later volumes offer material assistance. The ninth and concluding volume of HIGDEN's *Polychronicon* contains the *Chronicle* by JOHN OF MALVERN, this relates to the period 1381–1394, and offers in connexion with the reign of Richard II some interesting points of comparison with Walsingham. The same editor has undertaken a new edition of the *Chronicle* by HENRY KNIGHTON,<sup>1</sup> of which the first volume has appeared. The *Year Books* of the reign of King Edward III are collections of the cases in the assize courts recorded in the Norman-French of the period, and are here accompanied by a parallel translation. They abound with interesting illustrations of the contemporary social life of England.

John de  
Waurin,  
Higden,  
Knighton

Year Books  
of Ed-  
ward III.

*Recent Writers*.—*A History of England under Henry IV.* by MR WYLIE<sup>2</sup> is an elaborate, but not yet completed, study of a hitherto imperfectly worked period. In the present volume the writer has omitted no important source of information, and his researches throw light on many of the chief questions that arise. The treatment, however, is somewhat wanting in the higher qualities of historical composition and in critical power.

Wylie.

<sup>1</sup> *Chronicle of Henry Knighton*. Edited by the Rev. J. R. Lumby. Vol. 1. R. S. 1889.

<sup>2</sup> *History of England under Henry IV.* By J. H. Wylie. Vol. i. (1399–1405); vol. ii. (1405–6). 1884–94.

SUPPLE-  
MENT.Sir James  
Ramsay

The same description applies in a certain measure to the work of SIR JAMES RAMSAY, *Lancaster and York*,<sup>1</sup> which deals with our fifteenth-century history down to the battle of Bosworth. The writer has, however, put together an eminently trustworthy chronicle compiled from nearly all the available materials for the period. The battles of the Wars of the Roses are especially described with great accuracy and illustrated with maps

Denton

The late W. DENTON's *England in the Fifteenth Century*<sup>2</sup> is a useful compilation from very various sources, both original and secondary. It supplies much that serves to illustrate the political and social condition of the nation at this period, but the prevailing estimate of the writer is distinctly pessimistic

The Black  
Death:  
1349.

DR. GASQUET's monograph on *The Black Death* contains much interesting statistical information, and traces the disastrous effects of that terrible visitation on the monasteries and the work of the Church; while DR. CREIGHTON's *History of Epidemics* (Cambridge, 1891) treats of the more general history of such occurrences from 664 to 1666, and illustrates the insanitary conditions of ordinary life in which they had their rise.

## CHAPTER VI.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII. TO THE DEATH OF  
ELIZABETH.

(Pp. 302-319)—*Contemporary Authorities*—The chief additions to the published records are the *Materials for the Reign of Henry VII.*, edited by Mr Campbell,<sup>3</sup> valuable mainly in connexion with domestic and local history and genealogy; the new series of the *Acts of the Privy Council*, edited by Mr. Dasent, covering the period 1542-1556; the *Records of the English Catholics*,<sup>4</sup> and the seventh volume of the *Records of*

The  
English  
Catholics

<sup>1</sup> *Lancaster and York a Century of English History* [1399-1485]. By Sir J. H. Ramsay. 2 vols Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1892.

<sup>2</sup> *England in the Fifteenth Century* By Rev W. Denton. 1888

<sup>3</sup> *Materials for a History of the Reign of Henry VII., from original Documents preserved in the Public Record Office* Vols 1 and II. Edited by Rev W Campbell. R. S. 1873-77

<sup>4</sup> *Records of the English Catholics.* Vol. 1 Douay Diaries; vol. II. Letters of Cardinal Allen. Nutt & Co.

*the English Province of the Society of Jesus*, edited by Father Foley<sup>1</sup> The last of these works gives all the known facts relating to the formal organisation of the Jesuit Order in this country, from the first appearance of its emissaries in the reign of Elizabeth down to the year 1773, and contains also a large amount of biographical material

SUPPLE-  
MENT.

The  
Jesuits

The great collection, edited by M Kervyn de Lettenhove,<sup>2</sup> of the despatches of the Spanish ambassadors at the English court, and especially those of the envoys from the Netherlands, addressed to the court at Brussels, affords invaluable information respecting the relations existing between England and the Low Countries in the second half of the century

England  
and the  
Low  
Countries.

(319-325) — *Non-Contemporary* — For a thoroughly critical estimate of *Bacon's Life of Henry VII.* the sixth volume of the edition of his works by Ellis, Spedding, and Heath should be consulted

Bacon's  
*Henry VII*

The completeness with which Mr Spedding's investigation was carried out (says Mr Gardner) is really beyond all praise Not a manuscript in the British Museum bearing on the history of Henry VII escaped his notice, and wherever Bacon's statements require correction or modification, the reader will find the whole state of the case explained with remarkable lucidity in footnotes

The *Fragmenta Regalia*<sup>3</sup> of SIR ROBERT NAUNTON, a diplomatist in the reigns of Elizabeth and James, is characterised by much sagacious observation, and is noteworthy as estimating the events and notable personages of the time in their relations to the developement of the political constitution of the country. Of this work the Italian version of GREGORIO LETI's book,<sup>4</sup> published in 1703, purports to be a translation. It is, however, much more. Leti's book is one of remarkable

Sir Robert  
Naunton

Gregorio  
Leti.

<sup>1</sup> *Records of the English Province of the Society of Jesus.* By Henry Foley, S.J. Vol vii.

<sup>2</sup> *Relations politiques des Pays-Bas et de l'Angleterre sous le règne de Philippe II* 10 vols. 4to. Bruxelles, 1882-91.

<sup>3</sup> *Fragmenta Regalia Observations on Queen Elizabeth, her Times, and her Favourites.* Printed in *Harleian Miscellany*, vol. ii; *Phoenix*, vol 1; *Somers Tracts*, vol 1

<sup>4</sup> *La vie d'Elizabeth, reine d'Angleterre. Traduite de l'Italien de Mons. Grégoire Leti.* 2 vols Amsterdam, 1684.

SUPPLE-  
MENT

Daniel  
Neal and  
his critics.

originality, and proves him to have been in advance of his age, but the freedom of his observations led to his being ordered by the Privy Council to quit England.

Henry  
Wharton  
on Burnet.

The undeniable defects of NEAL'S *History of the Puritans* called forth a series of able, though far from unbiassed, criticisms from Isaac Maddox, who replied to the first volume,<sup>1</sup> and ZACHARY GREY, who in the years 1736-39 published his 'Impartial Examination' of the second, third, and fourth, in which Neal's 'numerous mistakes in history and unfair way of quoting his authorities' are unsparingly exposed. A similar piece of criticism was that by HENRY WHARTON, who in 1693 put forth under a pseudonym<sup>2</sup> a 'Specimen of some Errors and Defects in Burnet's *History of the Reformation*' Burnet replied, after Wharton's death, in the introduction to his third volume, but contented himself with imputing to his critic motives of malevolence and revenge.

(P. 324.)—*Irish History.*

The Calendars of State Papers relating to Ireland in the reign of Elizabeth have been carried down to December 1597, stopping short of the rebellion of 'the arch-traitor of Ulster,' but depicting a pitiable condition of affairs in which, to quote the language of Mr Atkinson (the latest editor), 'rapine, bloodshed, poverty, and intrigue' form the chief features. The whole period has been specially treated in MR BAGWELL'S three volumes, *Ireland under the Tudors*.<sup>3</sup> Like Mr Lecky (*supra*, p 324) he gives an introductory sketch of the earlier period which affords some interesting points of comparison. The failure of the Tudor rule to bring about a complete union was owing, in his opinion, mainly to the Reformation. His treatment combines thorough original research with the exercise of an independent judgement, and in the third volume he supplies a highly instructive study of the social condition of the Irish in the sixteenth century. The volumes contain some excellent maps. The work of

<sup>1</sup> *A Vindication of the Government, Doctrine and Worship of the Church of England, established in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth, against the injurious reflections of Mr Neal, &c* 1733.

<sup>2</sup> Harmer (Anthony). *A Specimen of some Errors and Defects in the History of the Reformation of the Church of England; wrote by Gilbert Burnet, D.D* 1693

<sup>3</sup> *Ireland under the Tudors, with a succinct Account of the earlier History.* By Richard Bagwell, M.A. 3 vols. 1886-90.

HAASENKAMP<sup>1</sup> is occupied mainly with the eighteenth century and is largely derived from Lecky; it presents, however, a useful and impartial condensation of facts, the account of Ireland under Grattan's Parliament being especially full and good. MR MONTGOMERY'S *History of Land Tenure in Ireland*<sup>2</sup> is divided into three parts. In the first he deals with the primitive customs indicated in the Brehon laws and other similar sources, sketches the results of the English conquest, and describes the English settlements down to the accession of James I, in the second he treats of the Protestant ascendancy down to the year 1850, the third part is occupied with the last forty years, and deals with the Devon Commission, the Acts of 1870 and 1881, &c. The whole volume supplies a careful and trustworthy outline of the subject. *The Macdonnells of Antrim*,<sup>3</sup> by MR. G. HILL, traces the careers of the 'Princes of the Isles' from the earliest times down to the creation of the earldom of Antrim in 1620, when Sir Randel Macdonnell was raised to the peerage in recognition of his services in connexion with the settlement of Ulster, and narrates the history of the subsequent bearers of the title.

*West Indies*.—The *Chronological History of the West Indies* (3 vols. 1827), by CAPT. THOMAS SOUTHEY, is a trustworthy summary commencing with the year 1492, in which events in the several 'Columbian' islands are related in the strict chronological order of their occurrence.

Southey's  
*West  
Indies*

*Recent Writers*—The first volume of Professor Wilhelm Busch's<sup>4</sup> *England unter den Tudors*, a work which it is proposed to complete in six volumes, is devoted to an elaborate study of the reign of Henry VII. The trades, crafts, agricultural conditions, and courts of justice in the England of those days, as well as our commercial relations with the Low Countries and the Hansa, are illustrated with especial care and minuteness. Appendix II supplies a critical account of the original sources for the period.

Professor  
W. Busch.

For the following reign the valuable fragment by PAULI in the second series of his *Aufsätze*, 'Die Anfänge Heinrichs VIII.'

Pauli.

<sup>1</sup> *The History of Ireland from the Reformation to the Union*. By R. Hassenkamp. Translated by E. A. Robinson. 1888.

<sup>2</sup> *The History of Land Tenure in Ireland*. By W. E. Montgomery. Camb. Univ. Press, 1889.

<sup>3</sup> *An Historical Account of the Macdonnells of Antrim including Notices of some other Septs, Irish and Scottish*. By the Rev. George Hill. Belfast, 1873.

<sup>4</sup> *König Heinrich VII.* Stuttgart, 1892.



- SUPPLEMENT** (pp. 126-292), affords an elaborate study of the conditions under which the young monarch succeeded to the throne, and of the events of the first six subsequent years. The late **PROFESSOR BREWER'S** *Introductions* to the Calendars for the reign (*supra*, p. 312) have been published as a separate work.<sup>1</sup> He himself modestly estimated his performances as an endeavour not 'to write history, but to shew the bearings of these materials upon history.' His labours, however, offer to the student an amount of guidance which will be sought for in vain in many works of a far more pretentious character.
- Literature of the Divorce.** The questions connected with Catherine of Aragon's two marriages have been newly investigated by MR. GAIRDNER<sup>2</sup> in the fresh light afforded by the study of the archives of Simancas, while PROFESSOR FROUDE has placed before us the history of her divorce<sup>3</sup> as it presented itself to the observation of the diplomatic representatives of her family. The publication of DR. EHSES'<sup>4</sup> volume affords special guidance in connexion with the same subject in its relation to the papal court. DR. GASQUET has put forth a narrative of the dissolution of the English monasteries which offers the strongest contrast to the representations of Cromwell's servile and unscrupulous agents (*supra*, p. 309). But the large amount of material at his command (before inaccessible) entitles him to be regarded as an authority on the subject, and his views are urged with a cogency which will meet with almost unqualified acceptance.
- Archbold.** MR. ARCHBOLD'S volume is a valuable addition to our knowledge of the facts relating to the suppression of these foundations in Somersetshire. **FATHER HENDRIKS,**<sup>5</sup> in his account of

<sup>1</sup> *The Reign of Henry VIII. from his Accession to the Death of Wolsey.* By the late J. S. Brewer. Edited by James Gairdner. 2 vols. 1884.

<sup>2</sup> *Katharine of Arragon's First Marriage.* By J. Spedding. *Katharine of Arragon's Second Marriage.* By J. Gairdner. Two papers in *Studies in English History* 1881.

<sup>3</sup> *The Divorce of Catherine of Aragon the Story as told by the Imperial Ambassadors resident at the Court of Henry VIII.* By J. A. Froude 1891.

<sup>4</sup> *Römische Dokumente zur Geschichte der Ehescheidung Heinrichs VIII von England* 1527-34. Mit Erläuterungen herausgegeben von Dr. Stephan Ehse. Paderborn, 1893.

<sup>5</sup> *The London Charterhouse. its Monks and its Martyrs; with a short*

the Charterhouse and its dissolution, sketches its history from the days of Sir Walter Manny, the original founder, down to the breaking up of the community at Sheen, and its subsequent settlement at Louvain. On certain points his account offers some correction of Professor Froude's account of the same incidents. The social condition of England in the reign of Edward VI. receives considerable illustration from the interesting tract, *The Discourse of the Common Weal*,<sup>1</sup> edited by the late Miss Lamond, who has shown that it clearly belongs to this highly transitional period.

The circumstances under which Mary ascended the throne have received additional illustration from the narrative of GUARAS,<sup>2</sup> a Spanish merchant who resided for a short time in England. His account is that of one well versed in politics, he having been employed, in the absence of a regularly accredited ambassador, as Spanish diplomatic agent in London during the years 1572-77. To him we are indebted for a more authentic version than we find elsewhere of Northumberland's speech on the scaffold, and also for the fact of Mary's flight having taken place two days before her brother's death. PROFESSOR FROUDE's narrative of the expedition of the Armada<sup>3</sup> is derived mainly from the various Spanish accounts collected in the compilation by Don Cesares Fernandez Duro, published in 1584, supplemented by information derived from Strada's 'De Bello Belgico'. These he has woven together into a graphic and brilliant sketch, although the impartial and complete story still, probably, remains to be written.

Guaras.

Professor  
Froude

*Account of the English Carthusians after the Dissolution.* By Dom Lawrence Hendnks, Monk of St. Hugh's Charterhouse, Sussex. 1889

<sup>1</sup> *A Discourse of the Common Weal of this Realm of England*. First printed in 1581 and commonly attributed to W. S. Edited by the late Elizabeth Lamond. Cam. Univ Press, 1893

<sup>2</sup> *Antonio de Guaras: the Accession of Queen Mary, by a Spanish Merchant resident in London.* Edited, with an Introduction, Translation, Notes and an Appendix of Documents, by R. Garnett. 1892

<sup>3</sup> *The Spanish Story of the Armada, and other Essays.* By J. A. Froude. 1892.

## SUPPLEMENT.

Literature  
relating to  
Mary,  
Queen of  
Scots.

The literature relating to Mary, Queen of Scots, has recently received considerable accessions. MR HOSACK,<sup>1</sup> who ranges himself among her defenders, pleads her cause with much force, and elaborately discusses in detail all the main points. The work of Mr HENDERSON<sup>2</sup> is a compendious statement of the case against her, but somewhat excessive importance is attached to one document which the author prints for the first time. The work of KERVYN DE LETTENHOVE<sup>3</sup> supplies an account of Mary's trial and Ridolfi's plot. It is written from a strongly Roman Catholic point of view, and is vitiated by an unfounded theory of the political influence of a Puritan party in England, headed by Burghley and Walsingham, who sought clandestinely to bring about Mary's destruction, and fabricated the evidence on which she was condemned. The two published volumes of Mr. SKELTON'S<sup>4</sup> work, which extends to the abdication of Mary in 1567, are to be noted as also supplying a well-written and interesting account of the general condition of Scotland at this time, and a justification of Maitland as the only disinterested and patriotic statesman. Mr Skelton attacks Murray and defends Mary. The introductory chapter contains a list of the chief authorities, with useful criticisms, and explains fully the standpoint from which the author has treated his subject.

Writers on  
Church  
history:  
Canon  
Dixon,  
J. H.  
Blunt,  
Gasquet.

(P. 326).—In Church history, CANON DIXON'S third and fourth volumes carry his *History of the Church of England* down to the death of Mary (1558); the second volume of MR. J. H. BLUNT'S *History of the Reformation* extends his treatment of the subject to the Savoy Conference and the revision of the Prayer Book. The work of DR. GASQUET—*Edward VI. and the Book of Common Prayer*<sup>5</sup>—illustrates with unprecedented fullness and clearness (mainly from the manuscript now identified as Cranmer's) the changes involved in the Prayer Books of 1549 and 1552; it also supplies a large amount of collateral evidence with respect to the true state of

<sup>1</sup> *Mary Queen of Scots and her Accusers.* By J. Hosack. 2 vols. 1889.

<sup>2</sup> *The Casquet Letters, and Mary Queen of Scots.* By T. F. Henderson. 1889.

<sup>3</sup> *Marie Stuart. Œuvre puritaine, le procès, le supplice* [1585-87]. By Baron Kervyn de Lettenhove. 2 vols. Paris, 1890.

<sup>4</sup> *Maitland of Lethington and the Scotland of Mary Stuart.* By J. Skelton. 2 vols. 1887-88.

<sup>5</sup> *Edward VI and the Book of Common Prayer: an Examination into its Origin and early History, with an Appendix of unpublished Documents.* By F. H. Gasquet and Edmund Bishop. 1890.

religious feeling and observance at this period. *The Letters and Memorials of Cardinal Allen*<sup>1</sup> throw new light on the intrigues of the papists and the plans for the invasion of England prior to the Spanish Armada; while MR. LAW'S<sup>2</sup> volume illustrates the notable divisions that existed between the Seculars and the Seminarists—especially on the question of allegiance to the Crown—throughout Elizabeth's reign. For the corresponding period in Scotland, the *Lectures* of the late DR LEE<sup>3</sup> supply a trustworthy outline. The 'Bibliography' contained in MR. H. M. DEXTER'S *Congregationalism*<sup>4</sup> extends from 1547 to 1879, and will be found of material assistance to those engaged in special researches on questions connected with religious controversy.

SUPPLE-  
MENT

*Letters of*  
Cardinal  
Allen  
T. G. Law.

John Lee  
Dexter.

The volume recently edited by DR. G. W. PROTHERO,<sup>5</sup> and designed as 'a contribution towards filling up the gap' between the corresponding volumes edited by Dr. Stubbs and Dr. Gardiner (*infra*, p. 435), consists of extracts from the Statutes, Journals of Parliament, the Foedera, State Papers, and other contemporary authorities which serve to illustrate the legislation of the time, the powers of Parliament and of the Star Chamber, the Privy Council and Court of High Commission. The views and demands of the Puritans and Presbyterians, the system of taxation, Church government and local government, the jurisdiction of the justices of the peace, the operation of the poor law, etc., also receive considerable elucidation. In his *Introduction*, extending to 125 pages, the

Prothero's  
*Select*  
*Statutes.*

<sup>1</sup> *Letters and Memorials of Cardinal Allen.* Edited by F. Knox. 1882.

<sup>2</sup> *A historical Sketch of the Conflicts between Jesuits and Seculars in the Reign of Elizabeth.* By T. G. Law. 1890.

<sup>3</sup> *Lectures on the History of the Church of Scotland from the Reformation to the Revolution Settlement.* By the late Very Rev. John Lee, D.D. Edited by his Son. 2 vols. 1860.

<sup>4</sup> *The Congregationalism of the last three hundred Years, as seen in its Literature. With a Biographical Appendix.* By Henry Martyn Dexter. New York, 1880.

<sup>5</sup> *Select Statutes and other Constitutional Documents illustrative of the Reigns of Elizabeth and James I.* By G. W. Prothero. Clarendon Press, 1894.

## SUPPLEMENT

Cunningham's  
*Growth of English Industry.*

Mullingers  
*Cambridge*,  
vol II

Biographies of  
Colet,  
Fisher,  
Pole,  
George Buchanan,  
Andrew Melville,  
Raleigh

editor sums up the main facts which exhibit the 'Documents' in their relation to the period.

The second volume of Dr CUNNINGHAM'S important work (*supra*, p 408) deals with the rise and fall of the mercantile system, commencing with the Elizabethan age and carrying the subject down to the year 1546.

The writer's *History of the University of Cambridge*,<sup>1</sup> continued down to the accession of Charles I, traces the subject through the eventful years when the organisation of the academic body was remoulded, and Puritanism, largely the outcome of Cambridge influences, strove to assert an uncontrolled ascendancy in the University. In biography, MR LUPTON'S careful and scholarly *Life of Colet* admirably supplements the treatment of the same subject in MR SEEBOHM'S *Oxford Reformers* (*supra*, p 328), while presenting certain modifications in the portraiture. As a study of a character whose influence was great both on religious thought and on education, this volume has a peculiar value. The *Life of Bishop Fisher*, by MR BRIDGETT, is an interesting, though far from impartial, account of one whose career and character alike appeal with considerable force to the sympathies of the enlightened Catholic. The *Life of Cardinal Pole*, by MR F. G. LEE, may be advantageously compared with that in Hook's *Lives*, to which it offers the strongest possible contrast. MR P. HUME BROWN'S admirable study of *George Buchanan* affords an excellent illustration of the learning of the age and especially of its progress in Scotland. Dr Jessopp's *One Generation of a Norfolk House*<sup>2</sup> is professedly concerned with the career of the Jesuit father, Henry Walpole, a member of the family of the Walpoles of Houghton, who was executed at York in 1595. The amount of illustration introduced, both of the provincial life and the religious history of the later years of Elizabeth's reign, give the volume, however, a wider value,

<sup>1</sup> *The University of Cambridge* Vol II. From the Royal Injunctions of 1535 to the Accession of Charles I. By James Bass Mullinger. Camb. Univ. Press, 1884.

<sup>2</sup> *One Generation of a Norfolk House a Contribution to Elizabethan History.* By Augustus Jessopp, D.D. 1879.

while the numerous notes and a list of 'rarer books' will be found useful by the student. The *Life of Andrew Melville*, by M'CRIE,<sup>1</sup> pursues the subject of the developement of religious belief in Scotland under the influence of the Reformation, and is characterised by the same research and ability which are so conspicuous in his volume on Knox. MR. STEBBING'S *Ralegh*<sup>2</sup> is also an able and careful production, though marked throughout by a strong prepossession in favour of his hero, whom he seeks entirely to exonerate from the charges which brought him to the scaffold. The absence throughout of any reference to authorities somewhat diminishes the value of the work for the student.

## CHAPTER VII.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF JAMES I TO THE ESTABLISHMENT  
OF THE PROTECTORATE.

(P. 331).—*State Papers*.—The *Calendars* for the period of the Commonwealth, embracing the years 1649-60, have now been brought to completion under the editorship of Mrs Everett Green, and extend to thirteen volumes. They contain the Order Books and other memoranda of the Council of State, which, it is to be remembered, then absorbed into itself the chief powers of the whole system of executive government which had existed under the Crown—the Privy Council, Exchequer and Admiralty departments, etc. Virtually itself a Committee, the labours of the Court were supplemented by (1) the Committee for the Advance of Money (1642-55), having for its special function the finding of money for the war against the King, either by voluntary or compulsory assessments, or by special assessments on the estates of delinquents; (2) the Sequestration Committee, subsequently merged in the Committee for Compounding (1644-57), instituted for

Calendars  
of State  
Papers

<sup>1</sup> *The Life of Andrew Melville containing Illustrations of the ecclesiastical and literary History of Scotland With an Appendix, consisting of original Papers* By Thomas M'Crie, D D 2 vols 2nd ed 1824.

<sup>2</sup> *Sir Walter Ralegh, a Biography* By William Stebbing, M.A. Clarendon Press, 1891.

SUPPLE-  
MENT.

the purpose of receiving from delinquents themselves (1) a confession of their delinquency, (2) a pledge of adherence to the present Government, (3) a full account on oath of their possessions, real and personal. Of the proceedings of these Committees, Calendars have also been edited by Mrs Everett Green, and the evidence afforded attests the sufferings inflicted upon the royalists and enables us to understand the extensive changes brought about in the distribution of landed property in England.

Clarke  
Papers.

The *Clarke Papers*<sup>1</sup> have a special value from the light they throw upon the history of the Army during the period of its greatest political importance—the years 1647–49, they also illustrate in a striking manner the general temper and views of the Puritan soldiery. The *Letters* and *State Papers* found among Milton's<sup>2</sup> collections relate both to home and foreign affairs during the period 1649–58, and many of them are of considerable interest. The correspondence is less full after the commencement of the Protectorate.

Milton  
Papers.

Clarendon

(P 332)—*Contemporary Writers*—The new edition of CLARENDON'S *History*, by Mr Macray,<sup>3</sup> will henceforth be the edition for the student. The text has throughout been collated with the original manuscript, and the passages from the *Life* have been carefully distinguished from those from the *History*. JOHN NICOLL was a Writer to the Signet at Edinburgh, and, although of a time-serving disposition and superstitious in the extreme, a careful observer of events; his *Diary*,<sup>4</sup> compiled partly from notes written at the time, partly

John  
Nicoll.

<sup>1</sup> *Selections from the Papers of William Clarke, Secretary to the Council of the Army, 1647–49, and to General Monck and the Commanders of the Army in Scotland, 1651–60*. Edited by C. H. Firth. Vol. 1. C. S. 1891.

<sup>2</sup> *Original Letters and Papers of State addressed to Oliver Cromwell, concerning the Affairs of Great Britain. From the year MDCXLIX to MDCLVIII. Found among the Political Collections of Mr John Milton*. Now first published from the Originals by John Nickolls, jun. 1743.

<sup>3</sup> *History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars of England*. Re-edited, with Notes, by W. D. Macray. 6 vols. Clarendon Press, 1889.

<sup>4</sup> *A Diary of public Transactions and other Occurrences, chiefly in Scotland, from January 1650 to June 1667*. By John Nicholl. 4to. Bannatyne Club, 1836.

from the newspaper Journals and public Intelligencers, illustrates the state of popular feeling during the Commonwealth and at the Restoration, and preserves the record of numerous local occurrences. SIR RICHARD BULSTRODE'S *Memoirs*<sup>1</sup> are mainly a compilation (made after his death by a publisher of the name of Mist) from Clarendon, Whitelock, and Warwick, but they also contain original matter of some value. Both ASHBURNHAM<sup>2</sup> and BERKELEY<sup>3</sup> accompanied Charles on his flight to Carisbrooke, and the *Memoirs* by the former are chiefly valuable in connexion with that episode. Berkeley's narrative, conceived from a different point of view, commences with the negotiations between the army and the King after his removal from Holmby House; it bears the impress of an honest and veracious writer, and possesses a corresponding value.

SUPPLEMENT

Bulstrode

Ashburnham  
Berkeley

The *Life of the Duke of Newcastle*,<sup>4</sup> by his duchess, has been newly edited by Mr Firth, whose familiarity with the pamphlet literature of the Civil War is conspicuous both in the excellent notes to this edition and in the well-chosen illustrative matter in the Appendix. The *Memoirs of the Verney Family* supply an interesting study, derived chiefly from letters, of the careers of the members of an ancient house who played an important part both in parliament and in the battle-field during the Commonwealth. WISHART'S *Memoirs of Montrose*,<sup>5</sup> with the interesting *Memoir* of the author, will be found useful for events in Scotland and illus-

*Memoirs of  
Duke of  
Newcastle,  
Verney  
Family,  
Montrose*

<sup>1</sup> *Memoirs and Reflections upon the Reign and Government of King Charles I and King Charles II . . . wherein the character of the Royal Martyr and of Charles II. are vindicated from fanatical aspersions.* 1721

<sup>2</sup> Ashburnham (J), *A Narrative of his Attendance on Charles I*, &c 2 vols. 1830

<sup>3</sup> *Memoirs of Sir John Berkley.* 1699 Also in *Harleian Miscellany*, vol. ix.

<sup>4</sup> *The Life of William Cavendish, Duke of Newcastle.* By Margaret, Duchess of Newcastle. Edited by C. H. Firth, M.A. 1886.

<sup>5</sup> *The Memoirs of James, Marquis of Montrose* (1639-50) By the Rev George Wishart, D.D. (Bishop of Edinburgh, 1662-70) Translated, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendix, by Rev. A. D. Murdoch and H. F. Moiland Simpson 1893



SUPPLE-  
MENT

trate the persecution to which episcopalianism was there exposed at that time. This edition also contains a good list of authorities, and prints for the first time the fragment of part ii.

(P 339)—*Irish History*.

For the reign of James, the *Calendars of State Papers* are now complete; the concluding volume containing a large amount of material which explains the conditions that followed upon the Plantation of Ulster and the difficulties which surrounded the new settlers. The important collection by Mr. J. T. GILBERT<sup>1</sup> contains a *History of the Irish Confederation* by RICHARD BELLINGS, the value of which is greatly enhanced by the letters and documents added by the editor, mostly taken from the Carte MSS. at Oxford. This work should be studied along with the *Contemporary History* of events in Ireland, also edited by Mr. Gilbert. His use of his materials is, however, seriously warped by his determination to call in question all the evidence which tells against the Irish Catholics, and his general treatment of successive questions may be compared with that in the two volumes edited by Miss HICKSON.<sup>2</sup> The evidence collected in this latter work establishes the essential truth of the current accounts respecting the Irish Massacres of 1641 and 1642, and the appalling cruelties by which the outbreak was accompanied. The proceedings of the High Court of Justice are also here for the first time published, and considerable light is thrown on Cromwell's administration. Miss Hickson, however, also writes in a strongly partisan spirit, and her conclusions sometimes betray a want of critical discernment. A new edition of LUDLOW'S *Memoirs* (*supra*, p 343) is announced for publication, edited by Mr. C. H. Firth.

Lister

*Writers of the Present Century*—A *Life of Clarendon*, by T. H. LISTER,<sup>3</sup> the novelist, was published in 1838; it was severely criticised by J. W. Croker in the 'Quarterly Review,' the author replying to his criticisms in a separate volume published in the following year.

Dr

Gardiner.

DR. GARDINER'S more recent labours continue here to

<sup>1</sup> *History of the Irish Confederation and the War in Ireland* (1643-49). 7 vols 4to. Originally published by Gill & Son, Dublin; now by Quaint, London.

<sup>2</sup> *Ireland in the Seventeenth Century or, the Irish Massacres of 1641-42*. By Mary Hickson. 2 vols 1884.

<sup>3</sup> *The Life and Administration of Edward, first Earl of Clarendon, with Original Correspondence and authentic Papers never before published*. By T. H. Lister. 3 vols 1837-8. *Refutation of Misrepresentations of the 'Quarterly Review' of Lord Clarendon's Life* 1839.

afford the chief assistance his *History of England from the Accession of James I to the year 1642* and *History of the Great Civil War* (1642-49), now published in a uniform edition of fourteen volumes, reach nearly to the end of the period ; while his volume entitled *The Constitutional Documents of the Puritan Revolution* illustrates the years 1628 to 1660. The published volume of MR. GEDDES' *History of the Administration of John de Witt*<sup>1</sup> treats of the period 1623 to 1654, but is mainly valuable for the last four years—the period when negotiations between the English Commonwealth and the Dutch Republic, with a view to an alliance, broke down , when war was waged at sea, and the keen subtle intellect of the Grand Pensionary was vainly endeavouring to take the measure of Cromwell. The light thrown on Cromwell's character and on the questions which absorbed the minds of men in the Low Countries—the dissolution of the alliance with France, the attitude towards England, the conditions of union among the Provinces, and the struggle with the Prince of Orange—makes this instalment one of no little value. It may be supplemented by the work of M. Lefèvre-Pontalis<sup>2</sup> Mr. W. A. S. HEWINS' *English Trade and Finance in the Seventeenth Century* (1892) embodies many fresh and interesting details relating to the industries and commerce of the period.

Geddes

Hewins.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## FROM THE PROTECTORATE TO THE REVOLUTION.

(P 362)—*Contemporary Writers*.—The new edition of Pepys. PEPPYS' *Diary*<sup>3</sup> gives, for the first time, the full text of the original, and the notes by Lord Braybrooke have been revised and considerable additions made.

<sup>1</sup> *History of the Administration of John de Witt, Grand Pensionary of Holland*. By James Geddes. Vol 1 (1623-54) 1879

<sup>2</sup> *Jean de Witt, grand pensionnaire de Hollande*. 2 vols Paris, 1884 Translated by S. E and A Stephenson 2 vols London, 1885 (In the translation most of the notes, referring to the original sources, are omitted )

<sup>3</sup> *The Diary of Samuel Pepys, Clerk of the Acts and Secretary to the*

SUPPLE-  
MENT.Comte de  
Cominges.Marquis  
d'Harcourt.*Lives of the  
Norths.*Ranke on  
Clarke

The *Correspondence* of the COMTE DE COMINGES,<sup>1</sup> French Ambassador at the English Court, addressed to the Grand Monarque, gives the views of an intelligent, although by no means unprejudiced, observer on English affairs during the years 1661 to 1666, on the internal politics and foreign relations of the country, and also on literary and religious matters. The incidents recorded are often highly amusing, and Cominges' criticisms eminently suggestive. The collection was almost entirely overlooked by Macaulay. The *Correspondance* of the MARQUIS D'HARCOURT,<sup>2</sup> ambassador at the French Court during the reigns of Charles II and Philippe V., exhibits more fully than any other source the crafty and unscrupulous policy of Louis XIV. The second series of the *Archives of the House of Orange-Nassau*,<sup>3</sup> edited by Groen van Prinsterer, contains many letters and documents relating to English history in the seventeenth century, and the *Letters* of William III, contained in the fifth volume, are described by Ranke as of considerable importance.

*Non-contemporary Writers* — The *Lives* of the three NORTHS (*supra*, p. 365) have recently been edited afresh by Dr. Jessopp,<sup>4</sup> to whom we are also indebted for an excellent edition of the *Autobiography* of Roger North himself.<sup>5</sup>

(P. 366) — The materials collected in CLARKE'S *Life of James II* have been carefully sifted by Ranke in his *History of England* (vi 29-45) he concludes that they are 'the work of various periods, written in various styles and manners,' and that while the biography is 'one-sided, partial, and personal,' it notwithstanding 'gives valuable information, which forms a

*Admiralty, &c* Edited, with Additions, by Henry B. Wheatley, F.S.A. 1893

<sup>1</sup> *A French Ambassador at the Court of Charles II.* By J. J. Jusserand. 1892

<sup>2</sup> *Correspondance inédite du Marquis d'Harcourt, ambassadeur de France auprès des rois Charles II et Philippe V, &c.* Avec une introduction par C. Hippeau. 2 vols. Paris, 1875.

<sup>3</sup> *Archives de la Maison d'Orange-Nassau.* Ed. Groen van Prinsterer. 2<sup>me</sup> série (1584-1688) Utrecht, 1851-1861.

<sup>4</sup> 3 vols. London, 1890

<sup>5</sup> *The Autobiography of the Hon. Roger North.* 1837.

real contribution to the history of this epoch, and especially of the years 1678-1685'

SUPPLE-  
MENT

*Recent Biographies*—The *Life of Ken*, by PLUMPTRE,<sup>1</sup> is far more complete than any preceding study, and is also conceived from a different point of view. The second edition contains additional letters to queen Mary and others. The *Life of Godolphin* by Mr ELLIOTT<sup>2</sup> is a careful piecing together of the somewhat scanty materials available for a connected account of the great finance minister of the period. He successfully vindicates Godolphin from the charge of undue subservience to Marlborough, and sets before us the portrait of an eminently cautious and somewhat phlegmatic statesman, to whom, however, he ascribes the merit of the Methuen Treaty and the legislative union of England and Scotland.

Biographies of  
Bishop  
Ken and  
Godolphin.

## CHAPTER IX

### THE REVOLUTION SETTLEMENT AND THE RULE OF THE WHIG ARISTOCRACY

(P 373)—*Contemporary Writers*—The *Wentworth Papers*<sup>3</sup> are letters to Thomas Wentworth, earl of Strafford and fourth baronet, from his mother and younger brother and intimate friends, written chiefly during his residence as envoy extraordinary at the new royal court of Berlin (1703-4), and afterwards as ambassador at the Hague (1711-14). The volume also contains some graphic sketches of contemporary statesmen. Much curious information respecting the Nonjurors will be found in the 'Biographical Memoirs of William Bowyer,' printed in the first volume of Nichols' *Literary Anecdotes*. MR LEE, in his *Daniel Defoe*,<sup>4</sup> has brought a large

*Wentworth  
Papers*

Bowyer.

Defoe.

<sup>1</sup> *The Life of Thomas Ken, D.D., Bishop of Bath and Wells.* By E. H. Plumptre, D.D. 2 vols. 2nd edit. 1890.

<sup>2</sup> *The Life of Sidney, Earl of Godolphin, K G., Lord High Treasurer of England, 1702-10.* By the Hon Hugh Elliott. 1888.

<sup>3</sup> *The Wentworth Papers, 1705-39.* With a Memoir and Notes by J. J. Cartwright. 1882.

<sup>4</sup> *Daniel Defoe his Life and recently discovered Writings, extending from 1716-29.* By William Lee. 3 vols. 1869.

## SUPPLEMENT

amount of careful research to bear upon the literary career of that writer, and has added no less than sixty-four distinct works to the list of his writings, while he also concludes that 'many works' have been erroneously attributed to him. The extracts contained in these volumes relate to the Rebellion of 1715, commerce and trade, the South Sea Bubble, and also illustrate the criminal law and procedure of the time. His investigations led him to the conclusion that it was necessary to write the life of Defoe afresh, whom, in opposition to preceding biographers (especially Wilson), he maintains to have been 'a sincere, consistent upholder of the Church of England, its establishment and its doctrines, though a Dissenter from its forms of worship.' Pococke's *Tour in Ireland in 1752*, recently edited by Professor George Stokes, supplies a valuable description of the condition of the country at that time by the pen of a careful observer

Klopp

*Recent Writers*—The voluminous work of DUNO KLOPP, *Der Fall des Hauses Stuart*, although the work of a Catholic writer, is conceived in a spirit friendly to the principles of the Revolution of 1688. It contains considerable extracts from MSS. in Austrian archives, which, however, are not always printed in full, and sometimes only in translation. In treating of English affairs the writer is too much guided by Burnet.<sup>1</sup>

Paul.

The article by PAULI, *Entstehung des Einheitsstaats in Gross-Britannien*, traces the vicissitudes which attended the growth of national unity down to the Rebellion of 1745, and may be studied with profit in connexion with yet later efforts at disunion. Another article, *Die Aussichten des Hauses Hannover auf den Englischen Thron im Jahre 1711*, is a useful addition to Ranke, as an illustration of the Hanoverian standpoint.<sup>2</sup>

Biographies of Duke of Berwick,

*Biographies*—The *Life of the Duke of Berwick*, by LIEUT.-COLONEL WILSON, is a careful and well-constructed sketch of a career which affords varied illustration of the period. Of

<sup>1</sup> *Der Fall des Hauses Stuart und die Succession des Hauses Hannover in Gross-Britannien und Irland in Zusammenhange der europäischen Angelegenheiten von 1660–1714* Von Duno Klopp. 14 vols. 1875–88.

<sup>2</sup> Both in the *Aufsätze (Neue Folge)*.

the three recent *Lives of Bolingbroke* by M. BROSCHE,<sup>1</sup> HARROP,<sup>2</sup> and J. C. COLLINS,<sup>3</sup> the first, though defective as a biography, embodies much vigorous criticism of the relations of English parties in the eighteenth century, while the author's special researches in the Venetian archives contribute materially to the elucidation of the subject; the second, which appeared a few months later, is wanting both in originality and completeness; the writer's sympathies are plainly expressed in favour of the Whig party. Mr. Collins, on the other hand, espouses the side of the Tories; his work is characterised by much careful research and his style is graphic and effective, his account of Bolingbroke in his retirement is also much fuller than that of preceding writers. In his first chapter, he passes under review the treatment of the same subject by Wingrove Cooke, Mac-knight, and M. Rémusat. The *Life of Carteret*, by Mr. BALLANTYNE, is a graphic and able delineation of the accomplished scholar and statesman whom the writer essays, and not without success, to vindicate from the misrepresentations of his enemies. The *Life of Chesterfield*, by Mr. ERNST,<sup>4</sup> is a judicious performance, grounded mainly on the earlier *Life* by Dr. Maty, but with considerable additions from the earl's own and other contemporary correspondence, and also numerous extracts, now for the first time published, from the *Newcastle Papers*.

SUPPLE-  
MENT

Boling-  
broke,  
Carteret,  
Chester-  
field.

<sup>1</sup> *Lord Bolingbroke und die Whigs und Tories seiner Zeit.* Von Moritz Brosch. Frankfurt, 1883.

<sup>2</sup> *Bolingbroke a political Study and Criticism.* By Robert Harrop 1884.

<sup>3</sup> *Bolingbroke a historical Study, and Voltaire in England.* By John Churton Collins 1886.

<sup>4</sup> *Memoirs of the Life of Philip Dormer, fourth Earl of Chesterfield, with numerous Letters now first published from the Newcastle Papers.* By W. Ernst. 1893.

## CHAPTER X.

## THE RESTORATION OF AUTHORITY (1754-1789)

## SUPPLEMENT

Correspondence of Chesterfield and of the Duke of Rutland.

(P. 334) — *Contemporary Writers*. — The *Letters* of CHESTERFIELD<sup>1</sup> (fourth earl), which have been newly edited by Mr. Bradshaw, belong to the earlier years of this period. The present edition contains all that was published by lord Mahon in the edition of 1845, together with the 'omitted passages' in the letters to the bishop of Waterford and to Chesterfield's son, afterwards given in the supplemental volume to that edition, published in 1853, but which are here printed in their proper place. This edition also contains the *Characters*. The value of the *Correspondence* between the DUKE OF RUTLAND and Pitt<sup>2</sup> is chiefly in connexion with the tenure by the former of the lord-lieutenancy in Ireland; among other interesting data, it shows that Pitt was at that time sincerely desirous of reforming the Irish Parliament, although equally determined not to admit the Catholics to power.

Dr Lecky.

*Recent Writers*. — Dr. Lecky's monumental labours (*supra*, p. 380), now brought to completion, and extending to eight volumes, continue to offer the most trustworthy guidance, for the history of England and Ireland alike, to the close of the century.

Naval History. Mahan, Colomb, Laughton.

*Naval History*. — The two volumes recently published by Captain MAHAN — *The Influence of Sea Power upon History* (1890) and *The Influence of Sea Power upon the French Revolution and Empire* (1892), together with that by Admiral COLOMB on *Naval Warfare* (1891) — are of especial interest from the new light which they throw on the subject to which they are devoted. Professor LAUGHTON'S *Studies in Naval History* have the merit of bringing out, from official records, the plain truth with respect to various crises in the annals of our contests at sea with other powers, and particularly France; they clearly demonstrate how often the stubborn courage of the English sailor has retrieved the disasters

<sup>1</sup> *The Letters of Philip Dormer Stanhope, Earl of Chesterfield, with the Characters*. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Index, by John Bradshaw. 3 vols. 1892.

<sup>2</sup> *Correspondence between the Right Honourable William Pitt and Charles, Duke of Rutland (1781-87)*. Edinburgh, 1890.

arising from defective administration, while they treat very pertinently of certain other defects which have often impaired the deficiency of the navy.

*The Colonies and America*—For colonial history, the volumes recently published by MR. C. P. LUCAS<sup>1</sup> afford excellent guidance with respect to our Mediterranean, West Indian, African, and Eastern Colonies—not including India, and similar guidance will be found in the *History of the Dominion of Canada*, by MR. GRESWELL.

For America, the *History* edited by Mr. Justin Winsor<sup>2</sup> supplies in connexion with each State a vast collection of facts as well as an almost exhaustive bibliography. The entire work suffers, however, as a whole from the co-operative method which has been had recourse to in its production, involving a sacrifice of unity of treatment and of dramatic interest, and it has been not inaptly described as ‘rather a dictionary of American history, than a history itself.’ For the whole literature relating to the American War, the volume by the same editor—*The Reader’s Handbook of the American Revolution* (1761–83)—affords all the requisite guidance. The *Facsimiles of Manuscripts relating to America*, published by Mr. B. F. Stevens,<sup>3</sup> virtually bring this source of information within the category of printed literature. It is to be observed that they are reproductions of manuscripts in *European archives only*.

SUPPLEMENT

The Colonies and America Lucas, Greswell, Justin Winsor.

Facsimiles of MSS.

## CHAPTER XI.

### PERIOD OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION (1789–1822).

(P 396.)—*Contemporary Writers*.—The selected *Letters and Despatches* of NELSON<sup>4</sup> have been edited by professor Laughton, with the design of allowing their author himself to tell the tale of his professional career. A criticism of the available sources

Correspondence of Nelson,

<sup>1</sup> *Historical Geography of the British Colonies*. By C. P. Lucas. (i) The Mediterranean and Eastern Colonies. (ii) The West Indian Colonies. (iii) West Africa. 1893–94

<sup>2</sup> *Narrative and Critical History of America*. With bibliographical and descriptive Essays on its historical Sources and Authorities. Edited by Justin Winsor. 8 vols. 1886–.

<sup>3</sup> *Facsimiles of Manuscripts in European Archives relating to America*, 1773–83. (Announced to be completed in fifty volumes of about 500 pages each.) B. F. Stevens, 4 Trafalgar Square

<sup>4</sup> *Letters and Despatches of Horatio, Viscount Nelson, K B., Duke of Bronte, Vice-admiral of the White Squadron*. Selected and arranged by John Knox Laughton. 1886



**SUPPLEMENT** for the life of his hero, and also of the different biographies that have hitherto appeared, is given in the Introduction, it supplies a satisfactory refutation of some of the scandal and misrepresentation which Southey (*supra*, p. 400) permitted to find currency in his pages, and must materially modify our estimate of the latter performance. The *Melbourne Papers*<sup>1</sup> belong chiefly to a later period, but are of some value for the period 1805-1812. The *Official Correspondence* of CANNING<sup>2</sup> during the years 1820-27 throws considerable light on the difficulties with France, arising out of the relations with Spain, on affairs in the West Indies, and on the Catholic question. The *Correspondence* of O'CONNELL<sup>3</sup> serves to illustrate about equally his personal and his political career. The editor supplies little more than a connecting thread, but has discharged his task with much skill and discernment. The private *Correspondence* of SIR ROBERT PEEL<sup>4</sup> begins with the period of his early life and extends to the year 1827.

Lord Melbourne, Canning, O'Connell, Peel.

The *History of Trades Unions*,<sup>5</sup> by Sidney and Beatrice Webb, has an important bearing on earlier economic history inasmuch as it deals with the time when such combinations were regarded as illegal, and also contains a careful examination of the alleged connexion between modern unions and mediaeval craft guilds.

<sup>1</sup> *Lord Melbourne Papers* edited by L. C. Sanders, with Preface by the Earl Cowper. 1890.

<sup>2</sup> *Canning's Official Correspondence*. Edited, with Notes, by E. J. Stapleton. 2 vols. 1888.

<sup>3</sup> *The Political and Private Correspondence of Daniel O'Connell*. Edited, with Notices of his Life and Times, by W. J. Fitzpatrick. 2 vols. 1889.

<sup>4</sup> *Sir Robert Peel from his Private Correspondence*. Published by Viscount Hardinge and the Right Hon. A. W. Peel. Edited by C. S. Parker. 1891.

<sup>5</sup> *The History of Trade Unionism*. By Sidney and Beatrice Webb. With Map and full Bibliography of the Subject. 1894.

# INDEX.

## ABB

- ABBEY (and Overton), *English Church in the Eighteenth Century*, by, 383  
 Abbotsford Club, foundation and object of, 221  
 Adam of Usk, his *Chronicon*, 287  
 Adelard, *see* St Dunstan.  
 Adolphus, John, *History of England*, by, 394  
 Aelfric Society, foundation and object of, 223  
 Alcuin, *Life and Letters* of, 248 ; his history of Archbishops of York, *ib*  
 Aldhelm, of Sherborne, *Life* of, by Farcius, 248  
 Alfred, King, his wars with the Danes, 29, *Life* of, by Asser, 245  
 Alison, Sir Archibald, *Life of Marlborough* by, 379, his *Lives of Lord Castlereagh and Sir Charles Stewart*, 401 ; his *History of Europe*, 402 ; his *Continuation*, 402  
 Almon's *Debates*, 227  
 America, resistance to taxation by, 183, and to England, 187  
 Amos, Andrew, *Great Oyer* of Poisoning, 340  
 Amundesham, John, supposed author of *Annales* of St Albans, 291  
 Anderson, collections by, relating to Mary, Queen of Scots, 317  
 André, Bernard, his *History of Henry VII.*, 303

## AVI

- Angles, the settlement of, in Britain, 16  
 Anglia Christiana Society, foundation and object of, 223  
*Anglo Saxon Chronicle*, *see* *Chronicle*.  
*Annales*, the, of the monasteries, 274  
 Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, 43, sketch of his career, 51, his conflict with William II and Henry I, 52 ; his part in the quarrel about investitures, *ib* ; *Life* of, by Eadmer, 267 ; by Dean Church, 268  
 Anstey, Mr., his *Munimenta Academica*, 300  
 Antoninus, the *Itinerary* of, 232  
 Aquitaine, retains its allegiance to the English kings, 63  
*Archæologia*, 218  
 Aims, the Cromwellian, 148 ; its character under the Protectorate, 152  
 Asiatic monarchies, nature of, 2  
 Asser, *Life of Alfred*, by, 245  
 Athens, its political system contrasted with that of Persia, 4  
 Atterbury, bp, criticism on, by Macaulay, 382  
*Auckland Correspondence*, the, 383  
 Augustine, preaches Christianity in England, 22, his behaviour to the British priests, 25  
 Avesbury, Robert, his account of Edward III, 284  
 Avignon, the Popes at, 84

## BAB

- B**ABYLON, fall of, 3  
 Bacon, Lord Chancellor, fall of, 133; his *Life of Henry VII.*, 322; *Life of*, by Spedding, 356  
 Bailie, Robert, *Letters and Journals of*, 351  
 Baker, Thomas, his *History of St. John's College*, 383  
 Balcanqual, Dr., the author of the *Large Declaration*, 341  
 Bale, John, his *Scriptores Britanniae*, 212  
 Balfour, Sir James, his *Annales of Scotland*, 341  
 Bamford, *Passages in the Life of a Radical* by, 401  
 Bancroft, George, his *History of the United States*, 356  
 Bannatyne Club, foundation and object of, 221  
 Barillon, *Despatches of*, 363  
 Baronage, the, its tyranny in Stephen's reign, 55; its power weakened by Henry II., 56  
 Bassompierre, M. de, *Memoir of the Embassy of*, 345  
 Baxter, Richard, *Autobiography of*, 364  
 Bayeux Tapestry, the, 259  
 Bec, the abbey of, 51  
 Becket, Archbishop, see Beket.  
 Bede, his *Ecclesiastical History*, 28, the Venerable, 234; his *History*, 235-6; editions of, 237; his *Life of St. Cuthbert*, 247  
 Bedell, bishop, *Lives of*, 348  
 Bedford Correspondence, the, 385  
 Beket, Thomas, his quarrel with Henry II., 59; his murder, 60; account of, by William of Newbury, 262; *Lives of*, 267; Freeman's *Essay on*, 268  
 Bekynton, bishop, his *Correspondence*, 292  
 Berwick, duke of, *Memoirs of*, 377  
 Bertram, C. J., forges the *de Situ Britanniae*, 241  
*Biography, Dictionary of Christian*, 257  
 Birch, colonel, *Memoir of*, 348  
 Birch, Dr., his *Historical View*,

## BRI

- 346; his *Courts of James I. and Charles I.*, 351  
 Bishoprics, the English, their relation to the kingdoms, 27  
 Bishops, their position after the Teutonic conquest of the empire, 14  
 Blaauw, M., his *Barons' War*, 283  
 Black Death, the, 92  
 Black Prince, the, his chivalry, 90  
 Blake, admiral, *Life of*, by Dixon, 369  
 Blondel, Robert, his *de Reductione Normanniae*, 294  
 Blunt, Mr. J. H., his *Reformation in England*, 326  
 Boderie, le Fèvre de la, correspondence of, 345  
 Bollandus, John, his *Acta Sanctorum*, 218  
 Bolingbroke, Lord, his political pamphlets and correspondence, 374-5  
 Bonaparte, Napoleon, his rise to power, 195  
 Boniface, St., preaches in Germany, 28  
 Boniface VIII., Pope, issues the Bull *Clericus laicos*, 79  
 Boston, John, his *Catalogus*, etc., 211  
 Bourne, Mr. Fox, his *Life of Lord Dundonald*, 400  
 Boyer, A., *History of the Reign of Queen Anne* by, 375, *Life of Sir W. Temple* by, 365  
 Brentano, Dr., his *Essay on Gilds*, 277  
 Brewer, Mr., his prefaces to the *Monumenta Franciscana* and Roger Bacon, 282; his view of British history, 244  
 Brewster, Sir David, see Newton.  
*Brief Discourse, the*, or the *Troubles at Frankfort*, 313  
 Bright, professor, his *Early English Church History*, 257  
 Britain, Roman province in, 15; English settlements in, 16  
 Britons, their treatment by the English, 16

## BRO

- Brodie, George, the *Constitutional History* of, 352  
 Brompton, John, *Chronicon* of, 268  
 Brooke, lord, his *Discourse of Episcopacy*, 342  
 Brougham, lord, his *Statesmen of Reign of George III.*, 393, his *England under the House of Lancaster*, 300  
 Bruce, J. C., *The Roman Wall* of, 243  
 Bryce, professor, his *Holy Roman Empire*, 268  
 Buchanan, George, his *History of Scotland*, 324  
 Buckingham, George Villiers, duke of, his position under Charles I., 134  
 Buckingham, duke of, *Memoirs of the Court of George III.* by, 387; his *Memoirs of the Court of the Regency*, 396  
 Buckle, T. A., his criticism of Geoffrey of Monmouth, 239  
 Bulke, Edmund, his political principles, 181, his views on the Middlesex election, and on American taxation, 183; his opinions compared with those of Bacon, 184; *Correspondence* of, 386, *Speeches* of, *ib.*, political pamphlets of, *ib.*; *Life* of, by Macknight, 392, study of, by Mr John Morley, 392; his *Reflections on the French Revolution*, 397  
*Burleigh Papers*, the, 316  
 Burnet, bishop, his *History of the Reformation*, 320, his *Lives of the Dukes of Hamilton*, 348; *Own Times* of, 358  
 Burton, Dr., his *Reign of Queen Anne*, 380; his *History of Scotland*, 355  
 Burton-upon-Trent, *Annals of the monastery* of, 274  
 Burton, H., his *Protestation Protested*, 342  
 Burton, T., *Diary* of, 362  
 Bury, Richard of, his *Philobiblon*, 295

## CAT

- CÆDMON, his poetry, 28  
*Cabala*, the, 315  
 Cabinet Government, establishment of, 167  
 Calais, loss of, 112  
 Calamy, Edmund, his abridgement of Baxter's *Autobiography*, 365; his *Lives of the ejected Ministers*, 365  
 Calderwood, David, his *History of the Kirk of Scotland*, 313  
 Calendars of State Papers, 226  
 Calvin, John, his dogmatic system, 113  
 Camden Society, foundation and object of, 222  
 Camden, William, his *Annals of James I.*, 332, his *Life of Queen Elizabeth*, 311; *Britannia* of, 242, his *Anglica*, etc., *ib.*  
 Campbell, lord, his *Lives of the Lord Chancellors*, 229, of the *Chief Justices*, *ib.*  
 Canada, the conquest of, 178  
 Candidus, Hugo, his *History of the Monastery at Peterborough*, 264  
 Canning, George, foreign policy of, 196  
 Capgrave, John, his *Chronicle of England*, 288, his *Book of the Noble Henries*, *ib.*  
 Carey, Sir Robert, *Memoirs* of, 349  
*Carew Letters*, the, 319, 333  
 Carew, Sir Peter, his *Life* by Hooker, 311  
 Carleton, Sir Dudley, correspondence of, 346  
 Carlyle, Thomas, his *Letters and Speeches of Cromwell*, 353  
 Carstairs, William, his edition of *State Papers*, 372, *Life* of, by Story, 381  
 Cate, Thomas, *Life of Ormonde* by, 352  
 Castlereagh, Viscount, *see* London-derry  
 Catholics, the English, Elizabeth's distrust of, 116, their persecution, 119; their treatment by James I., 131, feeling against, in the reign of Charles II., 158

## CAV

- Cave, William, his *Historia Litteraria*, 214
- Cavendish, Sir Henry, his *Debates of the 'Unreported Parliament'*, 390
- Caxton Society, foundation and object of, 223
- Celibacy of the clergy, opinions of Dunstan on, 36; arguments in favour of, 48
- Cella, John de, part author of the *Historia Major*, 272
- Ceori, their position in the English tribe, 17
- Challoner, his *Missionary Priests*, 318
- Chamberlayne, Edward, his *Anghae Notitia*, 359
- Chancellors, the Lord, *Lives of*, 229
- Chandler's *Debates*, 227
- 'Chaplain, the,' his account of Henry V, 289-90
- Charles I, engages in war with Spain and France, 134; his breach with the House of Commons, 136; nature of the opposition to, 137; his arbitrary government, 139, introduces a new Prayer-book into Scotland, 141, his quarrel with the Long Parliament, 143; character of his supporters in the Civil War, 144; execution of, 149; correspondence of, with Henrietta Maria, 344
- Charles II, restoration of, 154; growing distrust of, 158
- Charter, the Great, its grant by John, 66
- Chatham, the Earl of, becomes Prime Minister, 180, his views on the Middlesex election and on American taxation, 183, death of, 187
- Chetham Society, foundation and object of, 223
- Chivalry, character of, in the reign of Edward III, 90
- Christie, Mr W. D., his *Life of Ashley Cooper*, 369, his *Memoir of Dryden*, 370
- Chronicle, the Anglo-Saxon*, 237;

## COB

- editions of, 238, texts of, 245; periods at which they respectively terminate, 259; the Peterborough version of, 264
- Chroniques de London*, 278
- Church, dean, his *Beginning of the Middle Ages*, 257, his *Life of Anselm*, 268
- Church and State, their relations in the Middle Ages, 49
- Church of England, its separation from Rome, 106; its character in the reign of Elizabeth, 113; its development under Elizabeth, 121; its character in the eighteenth century, 173; the influence of Wesley on, 177
- Church, the Christian, its character in the Roman empire, 11; its relations with the empire, 12; its organisation, 16; its relations with the Teutonic conquerors of the empire, 13
- Church, the English, its origin, 22; its monasticism, 23; its penitential system, 24; its relation to the State, 27; its effect on the growth of national unity, 26; organised by William I. and Lanfranc, 50
- Churton, Ralph, his *Life of Norwell*, 328
- Cirencester, Richard of, not the author of the *de Situ Britanniae*, 241
- Civil War, the first, 147; the second, 149
- Clarendon, Lord Chancellor, his system of government, 154; his *History of the Rebellion*, 334; his *Short View*, 339
- Clarendon *State Papers*, the, 336
- Clarke, J. S., *Life of James II.*, by, 366
- Cluniac reforms, the, 47
- Clive, lord, *Life of*, by Sir John Malcolm, 393
- Cnut, his reign, 38
- Coalition Ministry, the dismissal of, 188
- Cobbett, William, his *Parliamentary Debates*, 228

## COL

- Colchester, lord, *Diary and Correspondence of*, 397  
 Collier, Jeremy, his *Ecclesiastical History*, 319  
 Collingwood, lord, *Life of*, by Claike and McAlthur, 400  
 Commendation of freemen, 34  
 Commons, House of, its constitution, 88; growing strength of, 90; its position in Elizabeth's reign, 126; its position at the death of Elizabeth, 128, its increased importance after Elizabeth's death, 129, its treatment of Catholics and Puritans, 131; its ecclesiastical policy in the reign of Charles I., 135; supremacy of, 163, first results of its supremacy, 166, its relation to the nation, 168; its relation to the constituencies after the death of Anne, 171, expulsion of Wilkes from, 183; gives a majority to any ministry in power, 185, its constitution in 1783, 189, *Journals of*, 228  
 Commonwealth, the, its meaning as a political term, 110; Elizabethan conception of, 116  
 Compurgators, oath of, 21  
*Confirmatio Cartarum*, 80  
 Cooper, C. H., and Thompson, *Athenae Cantabrigienses of*, 330  
*Cooper, Ashley, Life of*, by Christie, 369  
 Coote, Mr., his *Romans of Britain*, 244  
 Cornwallis, lord, *Correspondence of*, 387  
 Courtenay, Hon. T. P., see Temple  
 Coventry, Walter de, *Memorale of*, 273  
 Cox, archdeacon, his edition of the *Shrewsbury Correspondence*, 371; his *Lives of Marlborough, Walpole, and Pelham*, 379  
 Craik (and Macfarlane), *History of England by*, 394  
 Cranmer, Archbishop, his religious position, 111  
 Cromwell, Oliver, his services, 147; his Protectorate, 150, difficulties

## DIC

- in the way of his government, 151, and the Earl of Manchester, documents relating to, 344, edition of his *Letters and Speeches*, by Carlyle, 353  
 Croyland, monastery of, history of, 255  
*Croyland Chronicle*, the, *Continuation of*, 296  
 Crusades, the, 61; authorities for, 269  
 Cuthbert, St., *Lives of*, 247

- DALRYMPLE, Sir David, *Memorials and Letters of*, 334  
 Dalrymple, Sir John, his *Memorials of Great Britain, &c.*, 363  
 Danes, the, wars with, 29; conquer England under Cnut, 38  
 Daniel, Sam., *History of England by*, 279  
 Danish settlements in England, 29  
 Danish wars, destruction of culture in England, 36  
 D'Avaux, Ct., *Negotiations of*, 363  
 Davison, Wm., *Life of*, by Sir H. Nicolas, 328  
 Debates, parliamentary, early collections of, 227  
 Debates (Commons) of 1610, 1620, and 1621, 335; do 1625, 336  
 Debates (Lords) of 1621, 1624, 1626, 335  
 Debrett's *Debates*, 227  
 Declaration of indulgence, the, issued by James II., 160  
 De Quincey, criticism on Bentley by, 382  
 Devereux, Mr., his *Lives of the Devereux*, 329  
 Devil, the, legends of, 25  
 Devizes, Richard of, his *Chronicle*, 264  
 D'Ewes, Sir Simonds, his *Journals of the Elizabethan Parliaments*, 227, 315; *Autobiography of*, 348  
*Dialogus de Scaccario*, the, 268  
 Diceto, Ralph of, his *Chronicles*, 250, his *Imagines Historiarum*, 263, important for reign of Henry II., 26.

## DIG

- Digges, Sir Dudley, his *Compleat Ambassador*, 314  
 Disraeli, Isaac, his *Commentaries on Reign of Charles I.*, 353  
 Dissenters, their treatment under the Restoration, 156; relations of, with political parties, 172  
 Divine Right of Kings, meaning of the doctrine of the, 154  
 Dixon, Mr R. W., his *History of the Church of England*, 326  
 Dixon, H., his *Lives of Blake and Penn.*, 369  
 Dodd, Charles, his *Church History*, 322  
 Dodington, Bubb, *Diary* of, 391  
 Domesday Book, 45; facsimile edition of, 267  
 Dryden, John, political poems of, 366; writers on, 369,  
 Dudley, lord, *Letters* of, 401  
 Dudo of St Quentin, authority for Norman history, 258  
 Dugdale (Sir W.), his *Monasticon*, 257  
 Dumont, M., *Corps Universel* of, 345  
 Dundonald, lord, *Life* of, by Fox Bourne, 400  
 Dunstan, archbishop, his ecclesiastical policy, 35, favours education and clerical celibacy, 36  
 Dunstan, St., *Lives* of, 249, 253  
 Dunstable, *Annals* of the monastery of, 274  
 Durham, Simeon of, his *History*, 249

**E**ADMER, his *Historia Novorum*, 259

- Ealdorman, his position in an English tribe, 17  
 Earle, professor, his edition of the *A. S. Chron.*, 238  
 Earls, Cnut's appointment of, 38  
 Early English Text Society, foundation and object of, 224  
*East India Company, Annals of the*, by Bruce, 327  
 Ebrachar, *see* St. Dunstan.

## ELI

- Ecclesiastical, force of the term as applied to history, 235  
 Eddius, author of *Life* of Wilfrid, 247  
 Edgar, cedes Lothian to the Scottish King, 30, constitution of England in his reign, 32, the secular laws of, 37  
 Edmund Ironsides, his reign, 38  
 Edward the Confessor, reign of, 38; his love of foreigners, 39; *Life* of, 247, *Lives* of, 252  
 Edward the Elder, his wars with the Danes, 30  
 Edward I., character of his reign, 75, his ideas of the kingly power, 76, his relations with France, 78; his dispute with the clergy and the baronage, 79, completes the English Parliament, 80  
 Edward II., his reign, 81; authorities for reign of, 275-6  
 Edward III., his French wars, 86  
 Edward IV., causes of the strength of his government, 99, *Historie of the Arrivall* of, 295  
 Edward V., *Docket Book* of, 297  
 Edward VI., his reign, 111  
*Edward VI., Literary Remains of*, 310  
 Egbert, unites the English kingdoms, 28  
 Eighteenth century, state of society in the first half of, 173  
 Eldon, lord, *Life* of, by Horace Twiss, 398  
 Elot, Sir John, his leadership of the Commons, 135  
 Elizabeth, difficulties at the beginning of her reign, 113; her religious compromise, 114; character of the church of her reign, 115, her treatment of religious parties, 116; her rivalry with Mary Queen of Scots, 117; her conduct towards the Catholics, 119, her treatment of the Puritans, 121, literature of her reign, 123, development of the English character in her reign, 124, her sympathy with the nation, 125

## ELL

- Ellis, Sir Henry, his *Historical Letters*, 219, his criticism on Polydore Vergil, 298-9  
 Elmham, Thomas, his *Life of Henry V.*, 289  
*Enimae Encomium*, the, 247  
 Empire, the Roman, *see* Rome.  
 England, early institutions of, 17; introduction of Christianity into, 22; union of the kingdoms of, under Egbert, 28; tendency to break up in Edgar's reign, 37; Norman organisation of, 43; effect of the loss of Normandy on, 64; its connection with Flanders, 86; influence of the French Revolution on, 193; its relations with France, 195, foreign policy of, 196; its struggle with Napoleon, 196  
 English, the, settlement of, in Britain, 16; their institutions, 17; effect of war on the institutions of, 18; growth of kingship amongst, 19; their relation to the Norman kings, 45  
 English Historical Society, foundation of, 222  
 Eoils, their position in the English tribe, 17; superseded by the hegns, 32  
 Erskine, lord, his pamphlet on the War, 397, *Speeches* of, 399  
 Ethelwerd, *Chronicle* of, 246  
 Ethelred of Rievaulx, his *Life* of Edward the Confessor, 252  
 Ethelred the Unready, his weakness, 37  
 Evelyn, John, *Diary* of, 361  
 Evesham, Battle of, 74  
 Exclusion Bill, the, 159

FABYAN, Robert, *Chronicle* of, 297

*Sanfax Correspondence*, the, 350

Faustus, *see* Aldhelm

Fiefdom, origin of, 32; its establishment in England, 43

Fiddes, Richard, his *Life of Wolsey*, 323

## FRE

- Fielding, evidence of his works, 173  
 Fisher, bishop, *Life* of, by Lewis, 323  
 Fitz-Neal, Richard, probably the author of work ascribed to Benedict of Peterborough, 262  
 Fitzmaurice, lord Edmund, his *Life of Lord Shelburne*, 392  
 Flanders, connection of England with, 86  
 Fletcher of Saltoun, *Discourses* of, 375  
 Forster, John, his works relating to the Commonwealth, 354  
 Forster, Mr. W. E., his pamphlet on Macaulay, 367  
 Foss, Mr., his *Lives of the Judges*, 228  
 Fox, Charles James, his quarrel with Shelburne, 188; *History of Reign of James II.* by, 366; *Early History* of, by Trevelyan, 392, *Memorials* of, by Earl Russell, *ib.*; *Life and Times* of, by same, *ib.*  
 Foxe, John, his *Actes and Monuments*, 309  
 France under Philip II., 63; its relations with Edward I., 78; antagonism of the Restoration Parliaments to, 157; European wars of, 194  
 Francis of Assisi, character of his work, 72  
 Frankfort, the exiles at, 114  
 Frankfort, *Troubles at*, *see* Brief Discourse, 313  
 Fray Francisco, his treatise on the Spanish marriage, 340  
 Frederick II., his struggle with the Popes, 71  
 Freeman, Mr. E. A., his *Comparative Politics*, 209; on the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, 237, 238, on Henry of Huntingdon, 250; on the *Lives* of Edward the Confessor, 253; his *History of the Norman Conquest*, 256, 268, his account of the Angevin reigns, 282; on the wars of Edward III. and Henry V., 300



## FRE

- French Revolution, the prevalent ideas of, 192; its influence in England, 193  
 Friars, the, arrive in England, 71; contrasted with the monks, 72  
 Froissart, his adaptation of Jean le Bel, 294  
 Froude, Mr. James A., his *History of England*, 325  
 Fuller, Thomas, his *Church History*, 319; his *Worthies of England*, 323  
 Fulman, William, his *Scriptores Rerum Anglicanarum*, 217

**G**AIMAR, Geoffrey, his *Histoire des Angles*, 260

Gardner, Mr. James, his *Life of Richard III.*, 299; his articles on fifteenth century history, 301; his criticism on Polydore Vergil, 302, n. 1

Gale, Thomas, his *Scriptores XV.*, 217; his edition of Gildas, 233

Gardiner, Stephen, his religious position, 111

Gardiner, Mr. S. R., his works on English history in the seventeenth century, 354

Geffcken, Heinrich, his work on *Church and State*, 301

George III., his struggle for power, 180; defeats the Whigs, 186; State Papers of the reign of, 384; his *Correspondence* with Lord North, 386

Gerard, John, *Life* of, by Morris, 318

Germans assail the Roman empire, 13

Gervase of Canterbury, chiefly a compiler, 264

Gery, Robert, continued Cave's *Historia*, 214

Gesiths, relations of, with the king, 19

*Gesta Stephani*, the, 260

Giffard, Lady, her *Life of Sir W. Temple*, 369

Gildas, his *de Excidio Britanniae*, 233

## GUN

Gilds, history of, 277

Giraldus Cambrensis, works of, 265

Giseseburn, *see* Hemmingfold.

Godwin, his influence in England, 39

Godwin, William, his *History of the Commonwealth*, 352

Goodman, Dr. Godfrey, his *Court of James I.*, 332

Grafton, Richard, continued Harding's *Chronicle*, 292

Graham of Claverhouse, *see* Napier.

Giamont, Count de, *Memoirs* of, 362

Granville, cardinal, his *Correspondence*, 316

Gray, John de, nominated archbishop, 64

Great Council, the, compared with the Witenagemot, 46, its power over taxation, 68

Greek republics, character of, 3

Green, Mrs. Everett, her *Lives of the Princesses*, 228

Gregory I., Pope, sends Augustine to England, 25

Gregory VII., Pope, his idea of papal absolutism, 48; his ideal of the papacy contrasted with that of Innocent III., 65

Gregory IX., Pope, his quarrel with Frederick II., 71

Gregory, William, his *Chronicle*, 279

*Grenville Papers*, the, 385

Guey, Anchtell, his collection of *Debates*, 227

*Grey Friars of London*, *Chronicle of the*, 309

Grosseteste, Robert, his *Letters*, 280

Guest, Dr. E., his opinion on Gildas, 233; on the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, 237; pamphlets on British history by, 243

Guizot, *Essays* of, 268; his *Histoire de la Civilisation*, etc., 282, his works on English history, 354

Gunpowder Plot, materials for the history of the, 340

## GUT

- Guthry, Henry, *Memoirs* of, 341  
 Guy, bishop of Amiens, on the  
 battle of Hastings, 259

**H**ALKET, lady, *Autobio-*  
*graphy* of, 349

Hall, Anthony, texts edited by,  
 217

Hall, Edward, his *Two Noble*  
*Families*, &c., 299; his value for  
 the Tudor period, 302-3

Hallam, on the 'four causes,' 283;  
 on chivalry, 300; value of his  
*Constitutional History* for the  
 sixteenth century, 326

Halliwell, J O, his *Letters of the*  
*Kings of England*, 350

Hamilton, dukes of, Burnet's *Lives*  
 of, 348

*Hamilton Papers*, the, 350

Hampton Court, Conference at,  
 130

*Hardwicke Papers*, the, 314

Hardy, Sir T. D., his criticism on  
 Bale, 213; on Tanner, 214; his  
*Descriptive Catalogue*, 215; his  
 Syllabus of Rymer's *Foedera*, 225;  
 on the Rolls of Parliament, 225;  
 his opinion on Gildas, 234; his  
 criticism of Geoffrey of Mon-  
 mouth, 240, of Ethelwerd, 246;  
 his criticism on Eddius, 247

Hardyng, John, *Chronicle* by, 292

*Harleian Miscellany*, the, 231

Harold is chosen king, 39

Harsfield, Nicholas, his *Pretended*  
*Divorce*, &c., 304

Harrison, William, his *Description*  
*of England*, 307, his *Chronicle*  
*of Scotland*, 307

Hatton, Sir Christopher, *Life* of,  
 by Sir H. Nicolas, 328

*Hatton Family*, the, *Correspondence*  
 of, 350

Hansard, his *Parliamentary Debates*,  
 228

Hausser, Ludwig, his *History of the*  
*Reformation*, 326

Haweis, Mr., his *Sketches of the Re-*  
*formation*, 326

Hayward, Sir John, his *Life* of

## HOL

*Edward VI.*, 322; his *Annals*  
*of Elizabeth*, *ib.*

Hearne, Thomas, merits of his texts  
 of authors, 216-7

Hemingford, Walter, *Chronicle* of,  
 276

Henry I., his quarrel with Anselm,  
 52; establishes order, 54

Henry II., restoration of order by,  
 55, his military reforms, 56; po-  
 litical institutions of, 58; his  
 quarrel with Becket, 59; chief  
 authorities for reign of, 262

Henry III., King, his accession, 69  
 Henry IV., the Empeioi, his  
 penance at Canossa, 42

Henry V., his French wars, 98;  
 authorities for reign of, 289

Henry VI., his weakness, 98;  
*Chronicles* for reign of, 292

Henry VII., his accession, 99;  
 nature of his authority, 100; ex-  
 tends the royal power, 101; end  
 of his reign, 103

Henry VIII., character of, 105;  
 his quarrel with the Pope, 106;  
 his use of the royal supremacy,  
 110; correspondence of, 226;  
*State Papers* for reign of, 312

Henry the Fowler imitates Edward  
 the Elder, 30

Herbert, Algernon, his *Britannia*  
*after the Romans*, 243

Herbert of Cherbury, lord, his  
*Life of Henry VIII.*, 322; his  
*Expedition to the Isle of Rhé* 340;  
*Autobiography* of, 349

Herbert, Sir Thomas, his *Memoirs*  
*of Charles I.*, 344

Heretics, statute for the burning of,  
 98

Hervey, lord, *Memoirs* of, 376

Heylin, P., his *Life of Laud*, 347

Hexham Chronicles, the, 261

Higden, *Polychronicon* of, 285

Hildebrand, *see* Gregory VII.

Hogarth, evidence of his works  
 to the state of society, 173

Holinshed, Raphael, *Chronicles* of,  
 306-7

Holland, lord, his *Memoirs of the*  
*Whig Party*, 395

## HOL

- Holles, lord, *Memoirs* of, 343  
 Honorius II, pope, his influence during the minority of Henry III, 70  
 Hook, dean, his *Lives of the Archbishops*, 283, 300  
 Hooker, John, a contributor to Holmshead's *Chronicles*, 307  
 Horner, Francis, *Memoirs* of, by his brother, 399  
 Horsley, John, *Britannia Romana* of, 242  
 Hosack, Mr John, his *Mary, Queen of Scots*, 329  
 Hoveden, Roger, *Chronica* of, 263; importance of the work as described by Stubbs, *ib*  
 Hubert, Walter, archbishop, his administration for Richard I, 61  
 Hubner, professor, his collection of Christian inscriptions in Britain, 242  
 Hugh of Lincoln, *Life* of, 267; *Life* of, by Peiry, 269  
 Hundred Years' War, the, beginning of, 87  
 Hunt, Mr. John, his *Religious Thought in England*, 326, 368, 383  
 Huntingdon, Henry of, his *Historia*, 250  
 Hurd, bishop, his *Dialogue* on Elizabeth, 322  
 Hutchinson, colonel, *Life* of, by his widow, 348

**I**NCLOSURES, the attempts to restrict, 112

- Independents, the, support toleration, 148  
 Ingulphus, spuriousness of work attributed to, 255  
 Innocent III, pope, his quarrel with John, 64; proposes to Philip II. to invade England, 65; his ideal of the Papacy contrasted with that of Gregory VII, *ib*.  
 Innocent IV, pope, his quarrel with Frederick II, 71  
 Inscriptions, ancient, collections of, *see* Bruce, Horsley, Hubner

## KEM

- Investitures, quarrel about, 53  
 Ireland, account of, by Giraldus, 265, conquest of, by Henry II, *ib* and 266, authorities for early history of, *ib*, calendars of documents relating to, *ib*, for history of, in sixteenth century, 324  
*Ireland, History of Affairs in*, 339  
 Italy, its union under Rome, 5

**J**AMES I, the first ten years of his reign, 130; his treatment of the Catholics, 131, his alliance with Spain, 132, materials for reign of, 331; writings of, 333

James II, the reign of, 160; birth of his son, 161; dethronement of, 162; *Lives* of, 366

James, William, his *Naval History*, 230

*Jane, queen, Chronicle* of, 310

Jardine, D, *On the Use of Torture*, 341

Jean le Bel, *Chronicle* of, 293

Jerusalem taken by the Mahometans, 61

Jessopp, Dr, his *One Generation of a Norfolk House*, 318

Jesuits, the, their propaganda, 118; authorities for their history, 327

John, king, his selfishness, 62; his quarrel with the king of France, 63, his quarrel with the Pope, 64, his quarrel with Innocent III, 65, his quarrel with the baronage, 66, constitutional concessions of, 68

*Judges of England, Lives* of the, 228

Judicial reforms, established by Henry II, 57

Jumièges, William of, his *Historiae Normannorum*, 258

*Junius, Letters* of, 391

Jutes, the, settlement of in Britain, 16

**K**EATING, Dr, his *History of Erna*, 266

Kemble, John M., his *Saxons in England*, 210, 255

## KEN

- Kennet, bishop, his *History of England*, 217; his *Register and Chronicle*, 359  
*Kent, Proceedings in the County of*, 338  
 Ker of Kersland, *Memoirs of*, 377  
 Ket's rebellion, 112  
 King, Dr, *Anecdotes of*, 377  
 'King's Pamphlets,' the, at the British Museum, 334  
 King, the, growth of his authority amongst the English settlers, 19; relations of, with his Witan, *ib.*; his relations with his gesiths, *ib.*; his constitutional powers in the tenth century, 35; growth of his authority after Alfred's reign, 30  
 Kirk, Mr John F., his *Life of Charles the Bold*, 301  
 Knight, Charles, his share in Miss Maitineau's *History of the Peace*, 403  
 Knighton, Henry, *History of England by*, 285

**L**ABOURERS, the condition of, 91

- Lanfranc, Archbishop of Canterbury, 43, organises the English Church, 50; *Life of*, by Milo Crispin, 267; by dean Hook, 268  
 Langtoft, Peter, his *Chronicle*, 250  
 Langton, Stephen, nominated Archbishop, 65  
 Lappenberg, his error in accepting the *de Situ* as genuine, 241  
*Large Declaration, the*, 341  
 Laud, Archbishop, his ecclesiastical policy, 136, alarm caused by his proceedings, 138, his *Letters to Strafford*, 347; *History of his troubles, &c.*, *ib.*; *Life of*, by Heylyn, *ib.*  
 Laws, early English, 254  
 Lecky, Mr. W. E. H., his *History of England*, 380  
 Legrand, Joachim, his *Histoire du Divorce*, 320  
 Leland, John, his *Collectanea and Commentarii*, 211-2  
 Le Neve, John, *Fasts of*, 229

## LON

- Leti, Gregorio, 311  
 Letters, the Royal, *temp* Henry III., 279, episcopal, of Walter de Grey, 280; papal, collections of, *ib.*  
 Levi, Professor Leone, his *History of Commerce*, 230  
 Lewes, battle of, 73  
 Lewis, son of Philip II., invited to take the English throne, 69  
 Lewis XIV, European position of, 157; his intolerance, 161  
 Lewis, John, his *Life of Fisher*, 323  
 Lewis, Sir G. C., his observations on the historical value of letters and despatches, 384; his *Essays on the Administrations*, 395  
*Liber Albus*, 278  
 Liberal movement, the, spread of, 198  
*Liber Custumarum*, 278  
*Liber de Antiquis Legibus*, 278  
 Liberty of the press, the establishment of, 165  
 Lincolnshire, the rebellion in, 1470, 295  
 Lingard, John, his error in accepting the *de Situ* as genuine, 241; value of his *History* for the sixteenth century, 326; value of his *History* for the seventeenth century, 353; his account of James II., 366  
 Liverpool, lord, *Life of*, by Mr. Yonge, 398  
 Lavius, Titus, his *Life of Henry V.*, 289  
 Lloyd, David, his *State Worthies*, 323  
 Lobanov-Rostovsky, Prince, edition of *Letters of Mary, Queen of Scots*, by, 317  
 Locke, John, his *Letters on Toleration*, 373  
 Lollardism, course of, 97  
 Lollards, the, their rise, 95  
 London, *Chronicle of*, 278  
 London Chronicle, the, *temp* Henry VII and Henry VIII, 304  
 London, City Records of, 277  
 Londonderry, lord, *Life of*, by Alison, 401, *Correspondence of*, 402

## LON

- Longman, William, his *Lectures on the History of England*, 282; his *Life of Edward III*, 300  
 Long Parliament, the, its first measures, 142; its breach with the King, 143; character of its supporters in the Civil War, 145; Cromwell's dissolution of, 149  
 Lords, House of, *Journals* of, 228; *Protests*, 336  
 Lowell, J. R., his *Essay on Dryden*, 370  
 Luard, Mr., his edition of Matthew Pans, 282  
 Ludlow, Edmund, *Memoirs* of, 343  
 Luttrell, Narcissus, *Diary* of, 362

**M**ABILLON, John, his *Acta Sanctorum*, 218

Macaulay, lord, *History* of, 367; *Essays* of, 382

MacGeogehan, the Abbé, his *History of Ireland*, 267

Mackintosh, Sir James, his *History of the Revolution*, 366; his *Vindiciæ Gallicæ*, 397

Macknight, Thomas, his *Life of Burke*, 392

Machyn, Henry, *Diary* of, 310

Macpherson, David, his *Annals of Commerce*, 229

Macpherson, James, *Original Papers* edited by, 372

Macray, Mr., his *Manual of British Historians*, 215

Magna Carta, its grant by John, 66

Maine, Sir H., his authority cited, 208; his *History of Institutions*, 209

Maitland Club, foundation and object of, 221

Maitland, Dr., his *Essays on the Reformation*, 327

Majoribanks, George, his *Annals of Scotland*, 325

Malmesbury, the Monk of, his *Life of Edward II.*, 275

Malmesbury, William of, his account of Aldhelm, 248, his *Gesta Regum Anglorum*, 251, his *de*

## MID

*Gesta Pontificum*, *ib*; his *Historia Novella*, *ib* and 260

Malmesbury Correspondence, *the*, 386

Mansfield, lord, *Life* of, by lord Campbell, 393

Manufacturing industry, its influence on politics, 190

Marianus Scotus, *Chronicle* of, 249

Markham, Clements, *Life of Fairfax* by, 356

Marlborough, duchess of, literature relating to, 378

Marlborough Despatches, *the*, 378

Marlborough, duke of, his *Life* by Coxe, 379, by Alison, *ib*

Marprelate, Martin, *see* Maskell

Marsden, J. B., his *History of the Early Puritans*, 327; his *Later Puritans*, 368

Martineau, Miss, her *History of the Peace*, 403

Mary, queen, her reign, 112

Mary II., queen, *Letters and Memoirs* of, 365

Mary, queen of Scots, her captivity, 117; materials for the history of, 317

Maskell, William, his *History of the Marprelate Controversy*, 313

Map, Walter, his *de Nugis Curialium*, 265

Massey, Mr., *History of England* by, 394

Masson, Mr. D., his *Life of Milton*, 356

Maurer, G. L. von, his *Einleitung*, &c., 210

May, Thomas, his *History of the Long Parliament*, 338

May, Sir Erskine, *History of England* by, 395

Mayor, Professor John E. B., his edition of Bede, 237, his exposure of the forgery by Bertram, 241; his edition of Baker's *History of St John's College*, 383

M'Crie's *Life of Knox*, 329

Melrose, *Chronica* of, 261

Melros State Papers, *the*, 333

Middle Ages, *the*, decline of the system of, 83

## MIG

- Migne, the Abbé, his *Patrologia Latina*, 218  
 Mignet, M., his *Histoire de Marie Stuart*, 329; his collections relating to the Spanish Succession, 364  
 Military system of England, the, Noiman changes in, 43  
 Military system, the, reformed by Henry II., 56  
 Milman, dean, his account of the rise of the Mendicant Orders, 283; his account of Boniface VIII., 16  
 Milo Crispin, his *Life of Lanfranc*, 267  
 Milton, John, prose works of, 342  
 Moberly, Dr., his edition of Bede, 237  
*Monasteries, Letters relating to the Dissolution of the*, 309  
 Monasticism, its merits and defects, 23, its character in the eleventh century, 51  
 Monk, bishop, see Bentley  
 Monmouth, Geoffrey of, his *Historia Britonum*, 239; influence of his work, 240  
 Monopolies, establishment of, 133  
 Monstrelet, Enguerrand de, his *Chronicles*, 294  
 Montfort, Simon de, his political ideas, 73  
*Montrose, Life of*, by Napier, 356  
*Monumenta Historica Britannica*, the, 242  
 Moor, Thomas de la, his *Life of Edward II.*, 276  
 More, Sir Thomas, his *Utopia*, 105, 305, his accounts of Edward V. and Richard III., 296, his *Life* by Roper, 310  
 Morley, professor H., his *English Writers*, 215  
 Motley, Mr., his *Dutch Republic and United Netherlands*, 327  
 Mozley, J. B., his *Essays on Stratford, Laud, and Cromwell*, 355  
 Muller, professor Max, his *Lecture on Language*, 207  
 Murlinger, Mr. J. B., his *History of the University of Cambridge*, 283

## NOR

- Monimuth, Adam of, continuation of, 284  
 NALSON, John, *Collection of*, 339  
 Napier, Mark, *Life of Montrose* by, 356; his *Life of Graham of Claverhouse*, 369  
 Napier, Sir William, his *History of the Peninsular War*, 402  
 Naval History, see James, 230  
 Neal, Daniel, his *History of the Puritans*, 321  
 Nelson, lord, *Life of*, by Southey, 400; his *Despatches*, 16; *Life of*, by Clarke and McArthur, 16  
 Nennius, *Historia Britonum* of, 239  
 Netherlands, the, attack of France on, 196  
 Netter, Thomas, his *Fasciculi Zizaniorum*, 297  
 Newbury, William of, his *Historia Rerum Anglicarum*, 262  
 Newton, Sir Isaac, *Life of*, by Brewster, 382  
 Nicolas, Sir Harris, his *Lives of Davison and Hatton*, 328  
 Nichols, John, his *Progresses of Queen Elizabeth*, 324; his *Progresses of James I.*, 356; *Literary Anecdotes* by, 382  
 Noailles, de, *Despatches of Antoine and Francois*, 316  
*Notitia Dignitatum*, the, 233  
 Noorden, Carl von, his *Europäische Geschichte*, 381  
 Norman conquest of England, part of a reaction of the South against the North, 41; its effect on the organisation of the country, 43  
*Normandie, Chronique de*, cited by Fabyan, 290  
 Normandy, its early relations with England, 39; taken from John, 63  
 Norman history, authorities for, 258  
 Normans, the, character of, 42, their organisation of England, 43  
 North, Lord, his coalition with Fox, 186, becomes Prime Minis-

## NOR

- ter *ib.*; his correspondence with George III, 386  
 North, Roger, *Lives* of his biotheis by, 365; his *Examen*, 359  
 Northumberland, Wilfrid in, 26;  
 cession to the King of the Scots of the Northern part of, 30

- O**CCASIONAL conformity, legislation on, 172  
 O'Curry, Mr Eugene, his *Lectures on Irish History*, 266  
 Oliphant, Mr T, his *Old and Middle English*, 208  
 Odeicus Vitalis, his *Ecclesiastical History*, 51, 260  
 Organisation of England, political, 21; ecclesiastical, 22  
*Ormonde Papers, the*, 339  
 Osbert de Clare, his *Life* of Edward the Confessor, 252  
 Osney, *Annals* of the monastery of, 275  
 Otterbourne, Thomas, his *Chronica*, 289  
 Overton, J H, *see* Abbey.  
 Oxford, University of, Puritan visitation of, 344

- P**AGE, John, his *Siege of Rouen*, 290  
 Paget, Mr., his *New Examen*, 367  
 Palfrey, J. G., his *History of New England*, 356  
 Palgrave, Sir F, *History of the English Commonwealth*, by, 255  
 Pandulph receives John's submission, 65  
 Parish, origin of the, 18  
 Paris, Matthew, his qualities as an historian, 271; his *Historia Major*, 272; his *Historia Anglorum, ib.*; period for which he is the main authority, 274  
 Parker, Archbishop, his editions of Matthew Paris and Walsingham, 215  
 Parker Society, foundation and object of, 222  
 Parliament, admission of represen-

## PIT

- tative knights to, 73; admission of representatives of the towns to, 74, its progress under Edward I, 75; its complete form, 80; rise of the House of Commons in, 88; its relation with Elizabeth, 125, growing importance of, 127; *see* Rolls; the 'Unreported,' 390  
*Parliamentary History*, the, 227  
*Paston Letters, the*, 295  
 Pauli, Reinhold, his opinion on Asser, 246; his account of the reigns of John and Henry III, 282, his *Simon von Montfort*, 283, his *Aufsätze zur Englischen Geschichte*, 299; his *Geschichte Englands seit den Friedensschlüssen*, 403  
 Pearson, Mr. C. H., his view of British history, 244  
 Peasants' revolt, the, 92  
 Pelham, Henry, *Life* of, by Cox, 378  
 Penitential system, its action as an organising power, 24, literature of the, 253  
 Penn, William, *Life* of, by Dixon, 369  
 Pepys, Samuel, *Diary* of, 361  
 Percy Society, foundation and object of, 222  
 Persia, fall of the empire of, 3  
 Peterborough, Benedict of, work ascribed to, 262, *Chronicle* of the monastery of, 277  
 Peterkin, Alexander, on the Reformed Church of Scotland, 313  
 Philip II., king of France, takes provinces from John, 63  
 Philip VI makes war with the Flemish burghers, 87  
 Pictet, M., his *Origines Indo-Européennes*, 207  
 Picts, the, their attack on south Britain, 15  
 Piers the Ploughman, 92  
 Pits, John, his *Scriptores Anglae*, 213  
 Pitt, William (the elder), his character as a statesman, 178, his *Life* by Thackeray, 382, his *Correspondence*, 385; *see* Chatham, the earl of.

## PIT

- Pitt, William (the younger), inherits his father's policy, 187; becomes Prime Minister, 188, seeks national support, 190; the later years of his ministry, 193; engages in war with France, 195; *Life* of, by Tomline, 391; by earl Stanhope, 392
- Poets of the court of Charles I., 137
- Poitiers, William of, his *Gesta Willelmi*, 258
- Pole, Reginald, the *de Unitate* of, 304
- Popes, the, claims of, 25; the decrease of their influence in England, 70
- Popish Plot, the, 159
- Porter (G. R.), his *Progress of the Nation*, 230
- Poulet, Sir Amias, *Letter Books* of, 317
- Prices, History of*, by Rogers, 301; by Tooke and Newmarch, 403
- Protestantism, its character, 108; its progress in the reign of Edward VI., 111; Elizabeth's support of, 116; views of the Jesuits on, 118
- Prothero, Mr., his *Life of Simon de Montfort*, 283
- Provisions of Oxford, the, 73
- Prynne, William, Papers relating to, 347
- Puiseux, M., his *Siège de Rouen*, 290
- Puritanism, its treatment by Elizabeth, 121; its character under Charles I., 137

RALEIGH, Sir Walter, *Life* of, by Oldys, 329; by Edwards,

- ib
- Ranke, Leopold von, his *History of the Popes*, 325; his *History of England*, 326
- Ranulf, Flambard, his tyranny, 50
- Record Commission, publications of the, 225
- 'Records,' meaning of the term, 225

## ROM

- Reformation, the age of the, its general character, 109
- Reformation, the, its influence on our historical literature, 306
- Reformation, Narratives of the*, 310
- Renaissance, the, character of, 104; its effect upon England, 105; its development under Elizabeth, 123
- Representative government, the Roman empire incapable of, 8
- Representative system in England, the, its germs, 69; Simon de Montfort's scheme of, 73; growth of, 74; completion of, 75
- Reresby, Sir John, *Travels and Memoirs* of, 360
- Restoration, the, 154
- Revolution of 1399 contrasted with the Revolution of 1688, 97
- Revolution of 1688, the, institutions established at, 163; restriction of the sphere of government as a result of, 165
- Richard, bishop of London, his *Dialogus de Scaccario*, 268
- Richard I., his reign, 61; authorities for reign of, 264
- Richard II., beginning of his reign, 93, his weakness, 96, deposition of, 97; French chroniclers on, 287
- Richard III., *Papers* of, 296
- Richey, Mr. A. G., his *Lectures on Irish History*, 324
- Rievaulx, Aethelred of, his account of the Battle of the Standard, 261
- Rishanger, William, his *Chronica*, 273
- Rockingham, lord, *Memoirs* of, 385
- Rockingham, the Marquis of, his leadership, 180; death of, 188
- Rogers, professor Thorold, his *History of Prices*, 301
- Rolls of Parliament, first publication of, 225
- Rolls Series, the, account of its origin, 219; value of the series, 220
- Roman law, revival of the study, of 55



## ROM

- Rome, its constitution, 4; effect of the conquest of Italy on the institutions of, 6, its position as head of the nations, 7, impossibility of establishing representative government in its empire, 8, establishment of the empire of, *ib*; establishment of scientific law in, 9; sacrifice of the individual to society in, 10; abstract conception of, 10; relations with the Church of the empire of, 12, Teutonic conquest of its empire, 13; its province in Britain, 15
- Romilly, Sir John, his proposals in connection with the Rolls Series, 220
- Romilly, Sir S., *Letters* of, 387; parliamentary *Journal* of, 397
- Rose Correspondence*, the, 388
- Rouen, siege of, authorities for, 290
- Rousseau, his influence on the French Revolution, 192
- Roxburgh Club, its foundation, 221
- Royal Society, the, histories of, by Sprat, Burch, Thomson, and Weld, 368
- Ruperti, Prince, Life* of, by Warburton, 356
- Rusdorf, M. de, *Mémoires* of, 346; his *Consilia et Negotia*, *ib*
- Rushworth, *Collections* of, 335
- Rymer's *Fœdera*, commencement of, 224, its defectiveness during the Commonwealth, 363

- SACHEVERELL, Dr., prosecution of, 169
- Salisbury, John of, writings of, 265
- Sander, Nicholas, *de Origine Schismatis Anglicani*, 330
- Sanderson, Robert, assisted Rymer in the compilation of his *Fœdera*, 224
- Sanford, Mr., his *Studies of the Great Rebellion*, 355
- Satirical poetry, in the twelfth century, 267
- Savile, Sir H., his *Scriptores post Bedam*, 216

## SMI

- Saxons, the, settlement of, in Britain, 16
- Scobell, H., *Collection* of, 338
- Scotland, its relations with Edward the Elder and Edgar, 30; its relations with Edward I., 77; its resistance to Charles I., 141, sources for early history of, 281; authorities for history of, in the sixteenth century, 324
- Scots, their attack on Southern Britain, 15
- Scriptores, Decem*, 216
- Seeböhm, Mr., his *Oxford Reformers*, 328
- Selden, John, one of the editors of the *Decem Scriptores*, 216
- Senlac, Harold's death at, 40
- Serfdom, growth of, 34
- Serfs, the, emancipation of, 97
- Shaftesbury, *see* Cooper.
- Shakespeare Society, foundation and object of, 222
- Shakespeare, William, his historical plays chiefly founded on Hall, 299
- Shelburne, the Earl of, his policy, 187; Prime Minister, 188; *Life* of, by lord E. Fitzmaurice, 392
- Sheridan, R. B., *Life* of, by Moore, 393
- Shipmoney, levy of, 137
- Shirley, professor, his Preface to the *Fasciculi Zizaniorum*, 301
- Shrewsbury, duke of, his *Correspondence*, 371
- Sidmouth, lord, *Life and Correspondence* of, 398
- Sidney, Sir Philip, *Life* of, by Lord Brooke, 328; do by Zouch, *ib*, do. by Fox Bourne, *ib*
- Simancas, State Papers preserved at, 317
- Simon, Earl, *see* Montfort, Simon de
- Simony, proposed abolition of, 47
- Sismondi, account of the third Crusade by, 269
- Slavery, effect of the introduction of, 1
- Smith, Adam, his influence on Pitt, 190
- Smith, John, his edition of Bede, 237

## SOC

- Social contract, the Whig theory of the, 164  
 Societies, historical, account of principal, 221-3  
 Somerset, earl of, account of trial of, by Amos, 340  
*Somers Tracts*, the, 315  
 Somerville, Thomas, his *History of Reign of Queen Anne*, 378  
 Songs, political, edited by Wright, 267, 280, 298  
 Southey, Robert, his *Life of Wesley*, 393; his *Life of Nelson*, 400  
 Spain, negotiations of James I, with, 132  
 Spalding Club, foundation and object of, 222  
 Spanish marriage, the treaty for the, 340  
 Spanish succession, collections relating to the, 364, works relating to, 381  
 Sparke, Joseph, his *Scriptt. Hist. Anglic.*, 217  
 Spedding, Mr., his *Life of Bacon*, 356  
 Spelman (and Wilkins), *Councils*, &c, by, 244  
 Spenser, Edmund, his account of Ireland, 324  
 Spottiswoode, archbishop, his *History of the Church of Scotland*, 314  
 Sprigg, Joseph, his *Anglia Rediviva*, 343  
 Stafford, William, his *Examination of Complaints*, 319  
 Stair, the earls of, *Annals* of, by Graham, 381  
 St. Albans, the historic school of, 270; importance of the monastery at, 271; activity of its chroniclers, *ib.*; *Chronica* of, edited by Riley, *ib.* n. 2; monk of, *Chronicle of England* by, 286; *Annales* of monastery of, 291  
 Stamp Act, the, imposes taxation on America, 186  
 Standard, battle of the, accounts of, by Richard of Hexham, &c, 261  
 Stanhope, earl, his *History of England and Reign of Queen Anne*, 379

## SWI

- Stanyhurst, Richard, a contributor to Holinshed's *Chronicles*, 307  
 Star Chamber, the Court of, institution of, 102  
 Starkey, Thomas, his *England in the Reign of Henry VIII.*, 305  
 State Papers, formerly not open to the inspection of men of letters, 223, calendars of, 226; for reign of James I, 330  
 State Trials, collection of, by Cobbett and Howell, 327  
 Stephen, king, anarchy of his reign, 54; authorities for his reign, 260-1  
 Stephen, Mr. Leshe, his *English Thought in the Eighteenth Century*, 383  
 Stewart, Sir Charles, *Life* of, by Alison, 401  
 Stowe, John, his *Summary, Annals, and Survey of London*, 308  
*St. Paul's, Domesday* of, 278  
 Strafford, lord, *Letters and Despatches* of, 342  
 Strickland, Agnes, her *Lives of the Queens*, 228; her *Lives of the Stuart Princesses*, 357  
 Stype, John, his *Memorials and Annals*, 321, his *Lives of Cranmer, Parker, &c.*, 323  
 Stubbes, Philip, *Anatomie of Abuses*, by, 319  
 Stubbs, professor, on the mark system, 210; his criticism on the *Lives* of Dunstan, 254; his *Documents*, &c, *ib.*; his *Select Charters*, &c, 257; his *Early Plantagenets*, 269; his preface to Walter de Coventry, 282  
 Sully, *Oeconomies Royales* of, 345  
 Supreme Head of the Church of England, title of, 110  
 Surtees Society, foundation and object of, 221  
 Swift, dean, his *Journal to Stella*, 373, his *History of Queen Anne's Reign*, *ib.*, his political pamphlets, 374; his criticisms of Clarendon and Burnet, *ib.*; his 'Tale of a Tub,' 172  
 Swinfield, bishop, the *Roll* of, 280

## SYB

- Sybel, Professor Heinrich von, *History of the French Revolution* by, 402  
*Sydney Papers*, the, 318
- 'TALE of a Tub,' representative character of its ideas, 172
- Tallages, not declared illegal in the *Confirmatio Cartarum*, 80
- Tanner, bishop, his *Bibliotheca*, 214
- Taxation, assessment of, 57
- Taylor, Rev Isaac, his *Words and Places*, 203
- Temple, Sir Wilham, his *Letters and Memoirs*, 359; *Life* of, by Hon. T. P. Courtenay, 369
- Teulet, M., his edition of the *French Despatches*, 316
- Thegns, their position in the Witenagemote, 31; their relation to the king, 33; distinguished from eorls and gesiths, *ib*
- Theodore, archbishop, his organisation of the Church, 26
- Thomason, collection of pamphlets by, 333
- Thornton, Mrs Alice, *Autobiography* of, 349
- Thorpe, Benjamin, his edition of the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, 238; his edition of the *Ancient Laws*, &c., 254
- Thurloe Papers*, the, 337
- Tindal, Nicholas, his *Continuation of Rapin*, 375
- Toleration, its adoption by the sects, 148; its prospects under the Restoration, 155
- Toleration Act, the, enactment of, 165
- Tooke (and Newmarch) *History of Prices* by, 403
- Tories, the, oppose the Exclusion Bill, 159; their depression after the death of Anne, 169; reconstruction of the party of, 186; their principles in the reign of George III., *ib*
- Townshend, Heywood, his *Historical Collections*, 315

## VOL

- Township, the, sends deputies to the hundred-mote, 18
- Tievisa, John of, his translation of Higden, 285
- Tievelyan, Mi. G O., his *Early History of C. J. Fox*, 392
- Tribe, the English, 17; their amalgamation into kingdoms, 19
- Trivet, Nicholas, his *Annales*, 273, his six Angevin kings, how reckoned, *ib* n. 2; Rishanger's work largely borrowed from, *ib*. n 3
- Trokelow, John of, his *Annales*, 275
- Tudor monarchy, the, causes of its strength, 99
- Tulloch, Dr., *Rational Theology* of, 368
- Turner, Sir James, *Memoirs* by, 365
- Twysden, Sir Roger, the *Decem Scriptores* generally known under his name, 216
- Tyeiman, Rev. L., his *Life of Wesley*, 393
- Tytler, W., his work relating to Mary, Queen of Scots, 317, 329
- USSHER, archbishop, one of the editors of the *Decem Scriptores*, 216
- Utopia, the, its characteristics, 105
- VENETIAN 'Relation,' the, *temp* Henry VII., 304
- Venetian Reports, the, in the seventeenth century, 345
- Vergil, Polydore, his *Historia Anglica*, 298; his value as a contemporary authority, 302
- Verney Family, the, *Letters and Papers of*, 335
- Veiney, Sir Ralph, his *Notes* on the Long Parliament, 337
- Vienna, the Congress of, 196
- Villanage, cry for the abolition of, 93
- Voltaire, influence of, on the French Revolution, 192

## WAC

- WACE, Robert, his *Roman de Rou*, 258  
 Waitz, G., his *Deutsche Verfassungsgesch.*, 256  
 Walcott, Mr. M. E. C., his *William of Wykeham*, 300  
 Wales, its conquest by Edward I., 77; sources for early history of, 280-1  
 Walker, Sir Edward, *Historical Discourses* of, 343  
 Wallington's *Diary*, 333  
 Walpole, Horace, *Letters* of, 376; his *Memoirs of George II* and *Memoirs of George III*, 388-90  
 Walpole, Sir Robert, *Life* of by Coxe, 379  
 Walpole, Mr. Spencer, *History of England* by, 403  
 Walsingham, Thomas, his *Historia Anglicana*, 279, 286, 290  
 War, effect of, on the English tribes, 18  
 Warburton, Eliot, *Life of Prince Rupert* by, 356  
 Ware, Sir James, his *Scriptores Hiberniae*, 214  
 Warkworth, John, *Chronicle of Reign of Edward IV*, 296  
 Waverley, *Annals* of the Monastery of, 274  
 Waurin, Jean de, *Chronicles* by, 292  
 Webb, John, his *Memorials of the Civil War*, 343  
 Wedmore, the treaty of, 29  
 Wellington, Duke of, his *Life* by Brialmont, 399, his *Despatches*, 400; his *Correspondence*, *ib*  
 Welwood, James, his *Memoirs* of a century, 351  
 Wendover, Roger of, part author of the *Historia Major*, 272  
 Wergild, payment of, 20  
 Wesley, John, preaching of, 177; his influence on a later generation, 190; *Lives* of, by Southey and Tyerman, 393  
 Wharton, Henry, continued Cave's *Historia*, 214; his *Anglia Sacra*, 216  
 Whethamstede, John, account of by

## WIT

- John Amundesham, 291; his *Register*, *ib*  
 Whigs, the, support the Exclusion Bill, 159; causes of the ascendancy of, after Anne's death, 170; their relation with the mercantile class, 172; their relation to the Dissenters, 172, their weakness at the end of the reign of George II., 176; their relations with the elder Pitt, 179; their struggle with George III., 180; adopt the teaching of Burke, 183; defeat of, by George III., 186; secession of, from Fox, 194  
 Whitelock, Sir Bulstrode, *Memoirs* of, 337  
 Wilfrid, his argument in support of the Papal claims, 26; *Life* of, 247  
 Wilkes, declared incapable of sitting in the House of Commons, 183  
 Wilkins (and Spelman) *Councils*, &c. by, 244  
 William I., defeats Harold at Senlac, 40, character of his government in England, 43; causes of his power in England, 44, his position as a national king, 44, organises the English Church, 50  
 William II., his tyranny, 50, appoints Anselm archbishop, 51; his quarrel with Anselm, 52  
 William III., his Continental position, 161; the crown offered to, 162. his position in the Government, 167, *Letters* of, edited by Grimblot, 377  
 William of Malmesbury, his historical writings, 51, *see* Malmesbury.  
 Williams, Archbishop, *Life* of, by Hackett, 348  
 Williamson, Sir Joseph, *Letters* of, 361  
 Wilson, Arthur, his *History of James I.*, 332  
 Winchester, *Annals* of the monastery of, 274  
 Winwood's *Memoirs*, 318  
 Witenagemote, the, relations of, with the king, 19; its constitur-

## WOL

- uon in the tenth century, 31 ; its constitutional powers, 35  
 Wolsey, cardinal, his *Life* by Cavendish, 310  
 Wood, Anthony, his *Athenae Oxonienses*, 323  
 Worcester, Florence of, his *Chronicon*, 252  
 Worcester, *Annals* of the monastery of, 275  
 Worcester, William of, his *Annals and Collections*, 293  
 Wordsworth, Dr, his *Ecclesiastical Biography*, 328  
 Wordsworth, Mr Christopher, *University Life and University Studies* by, 383  
 Worsaae, J J A, his *Danes and Norwegians*, 256  
 Wright, Thomas, his opinion on Gildas, 234, his *Celt, Roman, and Saxon*, 244, his opinion on

## ZWI

- Asser, 246 ; his collection of satirical poetry, 267 ; and of political songs, 280 ; his *Biographia Briannica Litteraria*, 269, his *Caricature History*, 395  
 Wriothesley, Charles, his *Chronicle*, 305  
 Wychif, his teaching, 94 ; causes of his failure, 95 ; contemporary writers on, 297 ; English works of, *ib.*  
 Wykes, Thomas, his *Chronicon*, 275

YONGE, Mr C. D., his *Life of Lord Liverpool*, 398

ZÜRICH LETTERS, the, 312  
 Zwingle, Ulrich, his influence in England, 108

## INDEX TO SUPPLEMENT.

### AEL

- A**ELRED, abbat, his *Relatio de Standardo*, 414  
 Allen, cardinal, his *Letters and Memorials*, 429  
 America, works relating to the history of, 441  
*Annales Londonienses*, period for which valuable, 419  
*Annales Paulini*, period for which valuable, 419  
 Anson, Sir W., his *Law and Customs of the Constitution*, 411  
 Aichbold, Mr W A J, his *Somerset Religious Houses*, 426  
 Aryan languages and early history, works on, 405  
 Ashburnham, J., his *Narrative*, &c., 433  
 Ashley, Prof W. J., his *Economic History*, 418

- B**ACON, lord, *see* Spedding.  
 Bagwell, Mr R., his *Ireland under the Tudors*, 424  
 Baker, Geoffrey le, his *Chronicle* the basis of the work of Sir Thomas de la More, 419  
 Ballantyne, Mr, *see* Carteret  
 Bayeux Tapestry, the, reproductions of, by Stothard and the Arundel Society, 413  
 Beket, *Lives and Letters of* 415  
 Berkeley, Sir John, his *Memoirs*, 433

### CAN

- Berwick, duke of, his *Life* by Lieut.-Col Wilson, 438  
 Biography, works on, 405  
 Black Death, the, Dr Gasquet's work on, 422  
 Blunt, Mr J. H., his *History of the Reformation*, vol 11, 428  
 Bolingbroke, lord, *Lives of*, 439  
 Boutmy, Mons. E., his *English Constitution*, 411  
 Bowyer, Wm., his *Memoirs*, 437  
*Bradshaw (Henry) Society*, design of, 406  
 Brewer, J S., his *Reign of Henry VIII*, 426  
 Bridgett, Mr T E., his *Life of Bishop Fisher*, 430  
 Brosch, Moritz, *see* Bolingbroke  
 Brown, Mr P Hume, his *George Buchanan*, 430  
 Buchanan, George, *see* Brown  
 Bulstrode, Sir Richard, his *Memoirs*, 433  
 Burnet, bishop, his *History of the Reformation* criticised by Wharton, 424  
 Busch, Prof Wilh., his *England unter den Tudors*, 425

- C**AMBRIDGE, *History of the University of*, *see* Mullinger.  
*Cananaa, History of the Dominion of*, by Greswell, 441  
 Canning, George, his *Official Correspondence*, 442

## CAN

- Canterbury, *Letter Books of Christ Church* at, 420  
 Carteret, lord, *Life* of, by Mr. Balantyne, 439; *Letters* of, 440; *Characters* of, *ib.*  
 Charles I., writers relating to, 433  
 Chesterfield, lord, *Life* of, by Mr. Ernst, 439  
 Chroniclers, the Minor, 414  
 Clarendon, lord, his *History of the Rebellion*, by Macray, 432; *Life* of, by Lister, 434  
 Clarke, Wm., *Papers* of, 432  
 Colet, dean, *see* Lupton  
 Collins, Mr. J. C., *see* Bolingbroke.  
 Colomb, Admiral, his treatise on *Naval Warfare*, 440  
 Colonial history, works relating to, 441  
 Comings, comte de, his *Correspondence*, 436  
*Commendatio Lamentabilis*, the, value of, 419  
 Commonwealth, the, State Papers for the period of, 431  
 Creighton, Dr., his *History of Episcopates*, 422  
 Croker, J. W., his criticism of Lister's *Life of Clarendon*, 434  
 Cunningham, Dr. W., his *English Industry and Commerce*, 408, ditto, vol. II., 430

- DANEGELD, the, paper on, by Mr. Round, 415  
 Defoe, Daniel, his *Life*, by Mr. Lee, 437  
 Denton, W., his *England in the Fifteenth Century*, 422  
 Devizes, Richard of, his *Chronicle*, 414  
 Dexter, Mr. H. M., Bibliography contained in his *Congregationalism*, 429  
 Dicey, Prof., his *Study of the Law of the Constitution*, 410  
*Dictionary of National Biography*, 405  
*Discourse of the Common Weal*, A., edited by Miss Lamond, 427

## FRO

- Dixon, canon, continuation of his *History of the Church of England*, 428  
*Domesday Studies*, 415  
 Dowell, Mr. Ste., his *History of Taxation*, 416  
 Doyle, J. E., his *Official Baronage of England*, 408  
 Durham, Simeon of, his *Historia Regum* by Arnold, 409

- EADMER, his *Historia Novorum*, 413; his *Vita Anselmi*, *ib.*  
 Earle, Prof., his *Handbook to the Land Charters*, 412  
 Edward I., *Chronicles of the Reign* of, 419  
 Edward II., *Chronicles of the Reign* of, 419; *Gesta* of, *ib.*; *Vitae* of, *ib.*  
 Edward III., *Year Books* of the reign of, 421  
 Elizabeth, queen, *Lives* of, by Naunton and Leti, 423  
 Elliott, Hon. Hugh, *see* Godolphin.  
 Elton, Mr. Chas., his *Origins of English History*, 409  
*Encyclopédie, La Grande*, 405  
 England, trade of, *see* Hewins  
*English Historical Review*, the, 407  
*English Men of Action*, biographies of, 406  
*English Statesmen, Twelve*, biographies of, 406  
 Ernst, Mr. W., *see* Chesterfield.

- FIRTH, Mr. C. H., his forthcoming edition of Ludlow's *Memoirs*, 434  
 Fisher, bishop, *see* Bridgett  
*Flores Historiarum*, new edition of, by Luard, 418  
 Freeman, E. A., his *English Towns and Districts*, 417  
 Froude, Prof. J. A., his *Spanish Story of the Armada*, 427

G E C

- G** E C, his *Complete Peerage*, 408  
 Gaimar, Geoffrey, Norman-French version of, 414  
 Gardiner, Dr S. R., his *History of England*, 435, his *Great Civil War*, 16; his *Documents of the Puritan Revolution*, 16  
 Gasquet, Dr., his work on the Black Death, 422; on the dissolution of the monasteries, 426; his *Edward VI. and Book of Common Prayer*, 428  
 Geddes, Mr Jas., his *Administration of John de Witt*, 435  
*Gesta Stephani*, the, new edition of, 414  
 Gilbert, Mr J T., his collections relating to Irish history, 434  
 Gilds, English, works relating to, 417  
 Giraldus Cambrensis, his *De Principum Instructione*, 414  
 Gloucester, Robert of, his metrical *Chronicle*, 420  
 Gneist, Dr., his *History of the English Constitution*, 410  
 Godolphin, earl of, his *Life* by Mr. Elliott, 437  
 Green, Mrs Everett, *Calendars of State Papers* edited by, 432  
 Green, Mrs J R., her *Town Life in the Fifteenth Century*, 417  
 Grey, Zachary, his 'Impartial Examination' of Neal's *Puritans*, 424  
 Groen van Prinsterer, his *Archives of the House of Orange-Nassau*, 436  
 Gross, Mr., his *Gild Merchant*, 417  
 Guaras, Antonio de, his *Accession of Queen Mary*, 427

**H** ALL, Mr Hubert, his *Antiquities of the Exchequer*, 417, his *History of the Customs Revenue*, 16  
 Hanover, the house of, *see* Pauli  
 Harcourt, marquis d', his *Correspondance*, 436

JAM

- Hardy, Sir T. D., criticism on, by Freeman, 406  
*Harleian Society*, publications of, 406  
 Harrop, Mr Robt, *see* Bolingbroke.  
 Hassenkamp, Mr R., his *History of Ireland*, 425  
 Hearn, Mr W. E., his *Aryan Household*, 405; his *Government of England*, 412  
 Henderson, Mr T F., his *Casquet Letters*, &c, 428  
 Hendrks, Dom L., his *London Charterhouse*, 426  
 Henley, Walter of, his *Husbandry*, edited by Lamond, 417  
 Henry IV., Wylie's *History of England under*, 421  
 Henry VII., *Materials for the Reign of*, by W Campbell, 422; *Life of*, by Bacon, 423  
 Henry VIII., Pauli on the early years of the reign of, 425, Brewer's *History of the Reign of*, 426  
 Hewins, Mr. W A S, his *English Trade and Finance*, 435  
 Hexham, Richard of, edition by Howlett, 414  
 Hibbert, Mr F. Aidan, his *Influence of English Gilds*, 417  
 Hickson, Miss Mary, her *Ireland in the Seventeenth Century*, 434  
 Higden, completion of Dr. Lumby's edition of *Polychronicon* of, 421  
 Hill, Mr. G., his *Maddonells of Antrim*, 425  
*Historic Towns*, series edited by Freeman and Hunt, 417  
 Hosack, Mr J., his *Mary Queen of Scots*, 428

**I** RISH history, authorities for, 424, 434

**J**ACOBS, Mr Joseph, his *Jews of Angevin England*, 421  
 James II., *Life of*, by J S Clarke, 436



## JES

- Jessopp, Dr, his *One Generation of a Norfolk House*, 430; his *Lives of the Norths*, 436, his *Autobiography of R North*, 2b  
 Jesuits, the, in England in the sixteenth century, 423  
 Jews, the, in England, Mr. Jacobs' work on, 421  
 Jordan Fantosme, his metrical *Chronicle*, 414

- K**EN, bishop, his *Life* by Plumptre, 437  
 Kervyn de Lettenhove, baion, collection of Spanish despatches by, 423; his *Marre Stuart*, 428  
 Klopp, Duno, his *Der Fall des Hauses Stuart*, 438  
 Knighton, Hen, new edition of his *Chronicle*, 421

- L**AUGHTON, professor, his *Studies in Naval History*, 440, his edition of Nelson's *Letters and Despatches*, 441

- Law, Mr T G, his *Jesuits and Seculars*, 429  
 Lecky, Dr W E H, completion of his *History of England*, 440  
 Lee, Mr F G, his *Life of Cardinal Pole*, 430  
 Lee, Rev John, his *History of the Church of Scotland*, 429  
 Lee, Mr Wm, see Defoe  
 Lefèvre-Pontalis, M, his *Jean de Witt*, 435  
 Leti, Gregorio, his *La vie d'Elizabeth*, 423  
 Lister, T H, see Clarendon.  
 Low Countries, see Netherlands.  
 Luard, late H R, his final conclusions with respect to the *Flores Historiarum*, 418  
 Lucas, Mr C P, his *Historical Geography of the British Colonies*, 441  
 Ludlow, Edmund, see Firth  
 Lupton, Mr. J H., his *Life of Colet*, 430  
 Lyte, Mr Maxwell, his *History of the University of Oxford*, 420

## NEW

- M**ACRAY, Mr W. D., see Clarendon  
 McCrie, Thos., his *Life of Andrew Melville*, 431  
 Maddox, Isaac, his criticism of Neal's *Puritans*, 424  
 Madox, T, his *History of the Exchequer*, 415  
 Mahan, Capt, his treatises on the *Influence of Sea Power*, 440  
 Malmesbury, monk of, author of *Vita Edwardi II*, 419  
 Malmesbury, Wm of, edition of his *De Regum Gestis* by Dr Stubbs, 409  
 Malvern, John of, his *Chronicle*, 421  
 Martin, Mr. C T, his *Record Interpreter*, 408  
 Mary Queen of Scots, literature relating to, 428  
*Melbourne Papers*, the, 442  
 Melville, Andiew, see McCrie  
 Milton, John, *Letters and Papers* found in collections of, 432  
 Montgomery, M<sup>r</sup> W E, his *History of Land Tenure in Ireland*, 425  
 Montrose, marquis of, his *Memoirs* by Wishart, 433  
 More, Sir Thomas de la, author of *Vita et Mors Edwardi II*, 419  
 Mullinger, Mr J B., his *History of the University of Cambridge*, vol II, 430  
  
**N**AUNTON, Sir Robt, his *Fragmenta Regalia*, 423  
 Naval history, works relating to, 440  
 Neal, Dan., his *History of the Puritans*, 424  
 Nelson, lord, his *Letters and Despatches*, edited by professor Laughton, 441  
 Netherlands, the, despatches of the sixteenth century relating to, 423  
 Newbury, Wm of, edition of, by Mr Howlett, 414  
 Newcastle, duke of, his *Life* by his duchess, 433

NIC

- Nicoll, John, his *Diary*, 432  
 Nonjurois, the, source for history of, 437  
 Norgate, Miss, her *England under the Angevin Kings*, 416  
 North, Roger, his *Autobiography* edited by Dr. Jessopp, 436  
 Norths, *Lives of the*, edition by Dr. Jessopp, 436

- O'CONNELL, Daniel, his *Correspondence*, 442  
 Orange Nassau, *Archives of the House of*, see Groen van Prinsterer.  
*Oxford Historical Society*, design of, 406  
 Oxford, University of, Mr. Rashdall's work relating to, 420

- PALAEOGRAPHY, works on, 407-8  
*Papal Regesta*, Calendar of, by Mr. Bliss, 420  
 Pauli, Dr. R., his articles on English eighteenth-century history, 438  
 Peel, Sir Robt., his *Correspondence*, 442  
 Peerage, works on the, 408; article on the, *ib*  
 Pepys, Sam., new edition of his *Diary*, 435  
*Pipe Roll Society*, object of, 406  
 Plumptre, Dr. E. H., see Ken.  
 Pococke, Richard, his *Tour in Ireland*, 438  
 Pole, cardinal, see Lee.  
 Privy Council, Acts of, edited by Mr. Dasent, 422  
 Prothero, Dr. G. W., his *Select Statutes*, etc., 429  
 Puitan Revolution, the, *Documents of*, 435

- RALEGH, Sir Walter, see Stebbing.  
 Ramsay, Sir Jas., his *Lancaster and York*, 422

TRA

- Ranke, Leopold, see James II.  
 Rashdall, Mr. Hastings, his work on *The Mediaeval Universities*, 420  
 Record Office, catalogue of documents in, 407  
*Records of the English Catholics*, 422; *of the English Province of the Society of Jesus*, *ib*.  
 Rogers, late J. E. Thorold, his *Economic Interpretation of History*, 418; his *Six Centuries of Work and Wages*, *ib*.  
 Round, Mr., his article on *The Peerage*, 408; on *The Danegeld*, 415  
 Rutland, duke of, his *Correspondence with Pitt*, 440

- SCARGILL-BIRD, Mr., his *Guide to the Record Office*, 407  
 Schiader, O., his *Sprachvergleichung und Urgeschichte*, 405  
*Selden Society*, object of, 406  
 Skelton, Mr. J., his *Maitland of Lethington*, etc., 428  
 Societies, recently founded historical, 406  
 Southey, Capt. T., his *Chronological History of the West Indies*, 425  
 Spedding, Jas., his criticism of Bacon's *Life of Henry VII.*, 423  
 Stebbing, Mr. W., his *Life of Raleigh*, 431  
 Stokes, Prof. G. T., his *Lectures on Ireland and the Celtic Church and Ireland and the Anglo-Norman Church*, 416  
 Stuart, the House of, see Klopp.

- TASWELL-LANGMEAD, T. B., his *English Constitutional History*, 410  
 Thompson, Mr. E. M., his *Handbook of Palaeography*, 407  
 Tongni, Robert of, his *Chronicle*, 414  
*Trades Unions, History of*, by Sidney and Beatrice Webb, 442

## UNI

**U**NIVERSITIES, the *Medieval*, Mr Rashdall's work on, 420

**V**ERNEY Family, *Memoirs of the*, 433  
 Vinogradoff, Prof, his *Villainage in England*, 413

**W**AURIN, John de, *Chronicles collected by*, 421  
 Webb, Sidney, *see* Trades Unions.

## WYL

Wendover, Roger of, his *Flores*, edited by Mr Hewlett, 419  
*Wentworth Papers*, the, edited by Mr. J. J. Cartwright, 437  
 Wharton, Hen, his *Specimen*, 424  
 Winsor, Mr. Justin, his *Narrative and Critical History of America*, 441; his *Handbook of the American Revolution*, *ib.*  
 Wishart, Rev Geo, *see* Montrose  
 Witt, John de, *see* Geddes, Lefèvre-Pontalis  
 Wright, Dr. Aldis, his edition of Robert of Gloucester, 420  
 Wylie, Mr. J. H., *see* Henry IV.

PRINTED BY

SPOTTISWOODE AND CO LTD, NEW-STREET SQUARE  
 LONDON